

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date
17 August 2006 (17.08.2006)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 2006/086562 A2

(51) International Patent Classification:
A61K 31/397 (2006.01)

(74) Agent: HANSEN, Philip E.; 5 Columbia Circle, Albany,
New York 12203 (US).

(21) International Application Number:
PCT/US2006/004601

(22) International Filing Date: 9 February 2006 (09.02.2006)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:
60/651,267 9 February 2005 (09.02.2005) US
60/676,756 2 May 2005 (02.05.2005) US
60/678,497 6 May 2005 (06.05.2005) US

(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): MICRO-
BIA, INC. [US/US]; 320 Bent Street, Cambridge, Massa-
chusetts 02141 (US).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): ZIMMER, Daniel,
P. [US/US]; 391 Broadway, Apt. 501, 96 North Street,
#3, Somerville, Massachusetts 02145 (US). TALLEY,
John J. [US/US]; 96 North Street, #3, Somerville, Mass-
achusetts 02144 (US). LUNDRIGAN-SOUCY, Regina
[US/US]; 87 Scribner Road, Tyngsboro, Massachusetts
01879 (US). ROBERTS, Shannon [US/US]; Microbia,
Inc., 320 Bent Street, Cambridge, Massachusetts 02141
(US). MARTINEZ, Eduardo [US/US]; 271 North Street,
Apt. 1, Boston, Massachusetts 02113 (US).

(81) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every
kind of national protection available): AE, AG, AI., AM,
AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN,
CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI,
GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE,
KG, KM, KN, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV,
LY, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NA, NG, NI,
NO, NZ, OM, PG, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG,
SK, SL, SM, SY, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US,
UZ, VC, VN, YU, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(84) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every
kind of regional protection available): ARIPO (BW, GH,
GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, NA, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM,
ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM),
European (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI,
FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, NL, PL, PT,
RO, SE, SI, SK, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA,
GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:

— without international search report and to be republished
upon receipt of that report

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guid-
ance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the begin-
ning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

(54) Title: PHENYLAZETIDINONE DERIVATIVES

(57) Abstract: Various azetidinone derivatives are described, as are pharmaceutical compositions containing these compounds and
methods of treatment of diseases using these compounds. Other embodiments are also described.



WO 2006/086562 A2

PHENYLAZETIDINONE DERIVATIVES

Field of the Invention

[0001] The invention relates to phenylazetidinone derivatives useful for the treatment of hypercholesterolemia and other diseases and conditions.

Background of the Invention

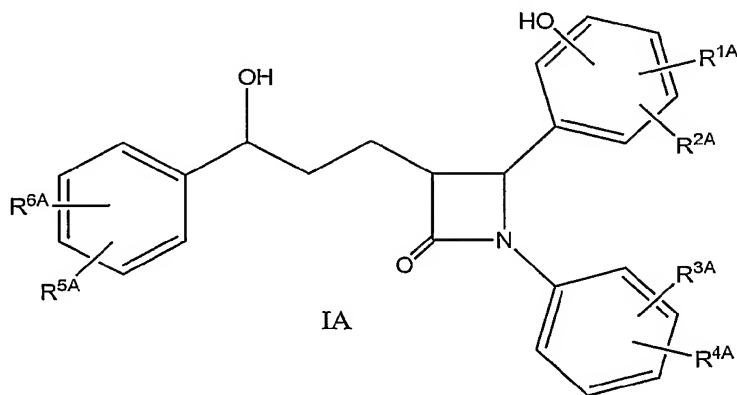
[0002] 1,4-Diphenylazetidin-2-ones and their utility for treating disorders of lipid metabolism are described in US patent 6,498,156, USRE37721, in US published patent applications 2004/0067913, 2004/0082561 and 2004/0198700, in PCT applications WO02/50027, WO2004/005247, WO2004/087655 and in European application EP 1 362 855, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference. Kværnø *et al.* Org. Lett. 2005, 4, 1145-1148 discuss the use of carbohydrate sulfonyl chlorides in glycoconjugation.

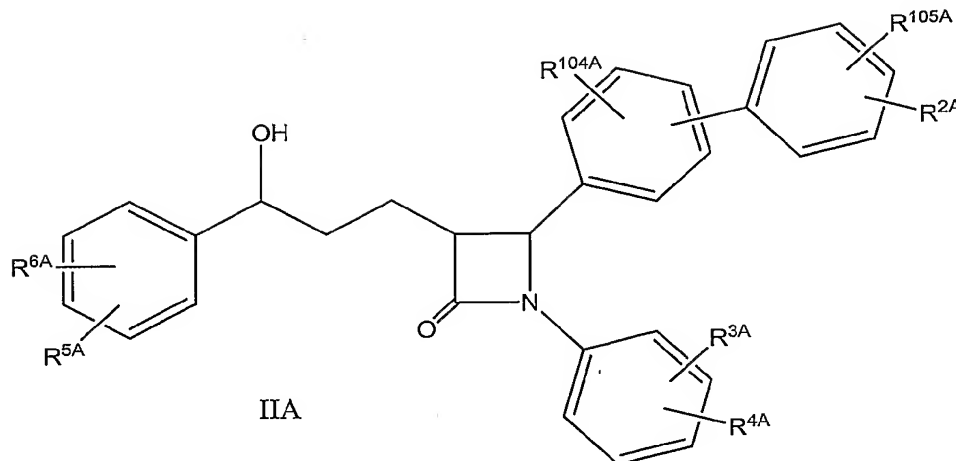
[0003] 4-Biaryl-1-Phenylazetidin-2-ones and their utility for treating disorders of lipid metabolism are described in copending commonly owned U.S. Patent Application 10/986,570 filed November 10, 2004, the disclosure of which is incorporated herein by reference.

[0004] Dugar *et al.* discuss spirocycloalkyl-substituted 1,4-diphenylazetidin-2-ones and their utility as hypocholesterolemic agents in U.S. Patent No. 5,698,548 and J. Med. Chem. 1995, 38, 4875-4877, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

Summary of the Invention

[0005] In one aspect the invention relates to compounds of formula IA or IIA





wherein

$R^{1A}, R^{2A}, R^{3A}, R^{4A}, R^{5A}$, and R^{6A} , independently of one another are chosen from:

(a) (C₁-C₃₀)-alkylene-(LAG)_{qa},

wherein at least one carbon atom of the alkylene radical is replaced by:

aryl or heteroaryl radicals, which are unsubstituted or substituted one, two, or three times by R^{7A} or by (C₃-C₁₀)-cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl radicals, which are unsubstituted or substituted one, two, three or four times by R^{7A}, and

wherein one or more carbon atoms of the alkylene radical is optionally

replaced by a radical chosen from: -S(O)_{ma}- (where ma=0-2), -O-, -(C=O)-, -(C=S)-, -CH=CH-, -C≡C-, -N[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl]-, -N(phenyl)-, -N[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl-Phenyl]-, -N(CO-(CH₂)₁₋₁₀-COOH)- and -NH-; or

(b) H, F, Cl, Br, I, CF₃, NO₂, N₃, CN, COOH, COO(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, CONH₂, CONH(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, CON[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl]₂, (C₁-C₆)-alkyl, (C₂-C₆)-alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)-alkynyl, or O-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, wherein the alkyl radical is unsubstituted or at least one hydrogen in the alkyl radical is replaced by fluorine; or

(c) SO₂NH₂, SO₂NH(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, SO₂N[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl]₂, S-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, S-(CH₂)_{na}-Phenyl, SO-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, SO-(CH₂)_{na}phenyl, SO₂-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, or

SO₂-(CH₂)_{na}-Phenyl; wherein na=0-6, and wherein the phenyl radical is unsubstituted or substituted one or two times, each substituent chosen independently from: F, Cl, Br, OH, CF₃, NO₂, CN, OCF₃, O-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, (C₁-C₆)-alkyl, and NH₂; or

- (d) NH₂ NH-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, N[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl]₂, NH(C₁-C₇)-acyl, phenyl, or O-(CH₂)_{na}-Phenyl, wherein na=0-6, and wherein the phenyl ring is unsubstituted or substituted one, two, or three times, each substituent chosen independently from: F, Cl, Br, I, OH, CF₃, NO₂, CN, OCF₃, O-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, (C₁-C₆)-alkyl, NH₂, NH-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, N[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl]₂, SO₂CH₃, COOH, COO-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, and CONH₂;

R^{7A} represents

- (a) F, Cl, Br, I, OH, CF₃, NO₂, N₃, CN, COOH, COO(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, CONH₂, CONH(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, CON[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl]₂, (C₁-C₆)-alkyl, (C₂-C₆)-alkenyl, (C₂-C₆)-alkynyl, or O-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, wherein the alkyl radical is unsubstituted or at least one hydrogen in the alkyl radical may be replaced by fluorine; or
- (b) PO₃H₂, SO₃H, SO₂NH₂, SO₂NH(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, SO₂N[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl]₂, S-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, S-(CH₂)_{na}-Phenyl, SO-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, SO-(CH₂)_{na}-Phenyl, SO₂-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, or SO₂-(CH₂)_{na}-Phenyl, wherein na=0-6, and wherein the phenyl radical is unsubstituted or substituted one or two times each substituent chosen independently from: F, Cl, Br, OH, CF₃, NO₂, CN, OCF₃, O-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, (C₁-C₆)-alkyl, and NH₂; or
- (c) C(=NH)(NH₂), NH₂, NH-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, N[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl]₂, NH(C₁-C₇)-acyl, phenyl, or O-(CH₂)_{na}-Phenyl, wherein na=0-6, and wherein the phenyl ring is unsubstituted or substituted one, two, or three times, each substituent chosen independently from: F, Cl, Br, I, OH, CF₃, NO₂, CN, OCF₃, O-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, (C₁-C₆)-alkyl, NH₂, NH(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, N[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl]₂, SO₂CH₃, COOH, COO-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, and CONH₂;

(LAG) is a sugar residue, disugar residue, trisugar residue, tetrasugar residue; a sugar acid, an amino sugar; or

an amino acid residue, or an oligopeptide residue comprising 2 to 9 amino acids; or

an acyclic, mono-, di- or tricyclic trialkylammonium radical, an acyclic mono-, di- or tricyclic trialkylammoniumalkyl radical, $-\text{O}(\text{SO}_2)\text{OH}$; $-(\text{CH}_2)_{0-10}-\text{SO}_3\text{H}$, $-(\text{CH}_2)_{0-10}-\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{OH})_2$, $-(\text{CH}_2)_{0-10}-\text{O}-\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{OH})_2$, $-(\text{CH}_2)_{0-10}-\text{COOH}$, $-(\text{CH}_2)_{0-10}-\text{C}(=\text{NH})(\text{NH}_2)$, $-(\text{CH}_2)_{0-10}-\text{C}(=\text{NH})(\text{NHOH})$, or $-\text{NR}^{8A}-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^{9A})(\text{NR}^{10A}\text{R}^{11A})$;

wherein $q_a=1-5$ and wherein R^{8A} , R^{9A} , R^{10A} and R^{11A} , independently of one another, are chosen from: H, (C_1-C_6) -alkyl, phenyl, (C_1-C_6) -alkyl-Phenyl, and (C_3-C_8) -cycloalkyl,

and wherein at least one of the radicals R^{1A} to R^{6A} must have the meaning:

$(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_{30})$ -alkylene-(LAG) $_{q_a}$,

wherein at least one carbon atom of the alkylene radical is replaced by:

aryl or heteroaryl radicals, which are unsubstituted or substituted one, two, or three times by R^{7A} , or

$(\text{C}_3-\text{C}_{10})$ -cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl radicals, which are unsubstituted or substituted one, two, three, or four times by R^{7A} , or

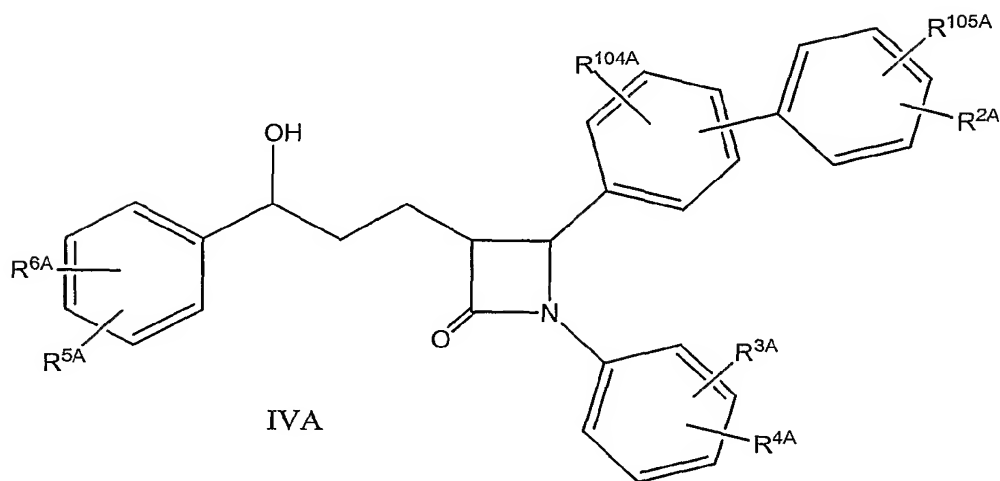
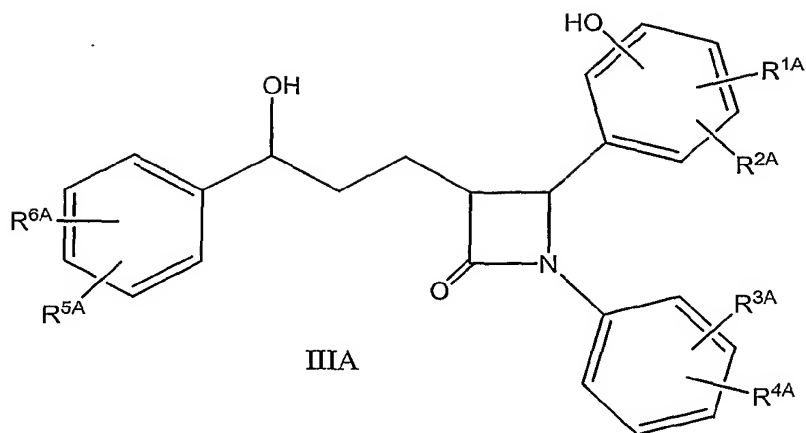
$-\text{S}(\text{O})_{ma}$ - (where $ma=0-2$), $-\text{O}-$, $-(\text{C}=\text{O})-$, $-(\text{C}=\text{S})-$, $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$, $-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-$, $-\text{N}[(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{-alkyl}]$ -, $-\text{N}(\text{phenyl})$ -, $-\text{N}[(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{-alkyl-Phenyl}]$ -, $-\text{N}(\text{CO}-(\text{CH}_2)_{1-10}-\text{COOH})$ - or $-\text{NH}-$;

R^{104A} represents one, two, three or four residues chosen independently from H, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -O-loweralkyl, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, CF_3 , nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, $-\text{PO}_3\text{H}_2$, $-\text{SO}_3\text{H}$, $-\text{B}(\text{OH})_2$, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate;

R^{105A} is chosen from H, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -O-loweralkyl, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, CF_3 , nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, $-\text{PO}_3\text{H}_2$, $-\text{SO}_3\text{H}$, $-\text{B}(\text{OH})_2$, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate.

[0006] The invention further relates to compounds of formula IIIA and IVA:

- 5 -



wherein

R^{1A}, R^{2A}, R^{3A}, R^{4A}, R^{5A}, and R^{6A}, independently of one another, are chosen from:

(C₀-C₃₀)-alkylene-(LAG)_{qa}; or

(C₀-C₃₀)-alkylene-(LAG)_{qa}, wherein at least one carbon atom of the alkylene radical

is replaced by a radical chosen from: -S(O)_{ma}- (wherein ma=0-2), -O-,

-(C=O)-, -(C=S)-, -CH=CH-, -C≡C-, -N[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl]-, -N(phenyl)-, -N[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl-Phenyl]-, -N(CO-(CH₂)₁₋₁₀-COOH)- and -NH-; or

H, F, Cl, Br, I, OH, CF₃, NO₂, N₃, CN, COOH, COO(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, CONH₂,

CONH(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, CON[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl]₂, (C₁-C₆)-alkyl, (C₂-C₆)-alkenyl,

(C₂-C₆)-alkynyl, or O-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, wherein the alkyl radical is unsubstituted

or at least one hydrogen in the alkyl radical is replaced by fluorine; or

C(=NH)(NH₂), PO₃H₂, SO₃H, SO₂NH₂, SO₂NH(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, SO₂N[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl]₂, S-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, S-(CH₂)_{na}-Phenyl, SO-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, SO-(CH₂)_{na}-Phenyl, SO₂-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, or SO₂-(CH₂)_{na}-Phenyl, wherein na=0-6, and wherein the phenyl radical is unsubstituted or substituted one or two times, each substituent chosen independently from: F, Cl, Br, I, OH, CF₃, NO₂, CN, OCF₃, O-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, (C₁-C₆)-alkyl, and NH₂; and NH₂, NH-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, N((C₁-C₆)-alkyl)₂, NH(C₁-C₇)-acyl, phenyl, or O-(CH₂)_{na}-Phenyl, wherein na=0-6, and wherein the phenyl ring is unsubstituted or substituted one, two, or three times, each substituent chosen independently from: F, Cl, Br, I, OH, CF₃, NO₂, CN, OCF₃, O-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, (C₁-C₆)-alkyl, NH₂, NH(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, N((C₁-C₆)-alkyl)₂, SO₂CH₃, COOH, COO-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, and CONH₂;

(LAG) is -(CH₂)₀₋₁₀-SO₃H; -(CH₂)₀₋₁₀-P(O)(OH)₂, -(CH₂)₀₋₁₀-O-P(O)(OH)₂, or -(CH₂)₀₋₁₀-COOH and wherein qa is 1-5; and

wherein at least one of the radicals R^{1A} to R^{6A} must have the meaning:

(C₀-C₃₀)-alkylene-(LAG)_{qa}; or

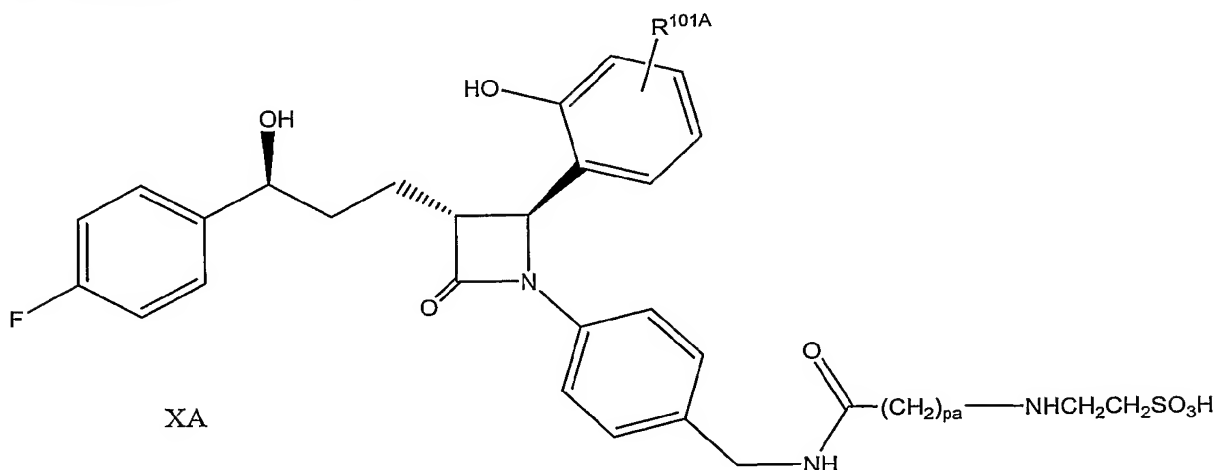
(C₀-C₃₀)-alkylene-(LAG)_{qa}, wherein at least one carbon atom of the alkylene radical is replaced by a radical chosen from: -S(O)_{ma}- (wherein ma=0-2), -O-, -(C=O)-, -(C=S)-, -CH=CH-, -C≡C-, -N[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl]-, -N(phenyl)-, -N[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl-Phenyl]-, -N(CO-(CH₂)₁₋₁₀-COOH)- and -NH-;

R^{104A} represents one, two, three or four residues chosen independently from H, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -O-loweralkyl, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, CF₃, nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate;

R^{105A} is chosen from H, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -O-loweralkyl, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, CF₃, nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl,

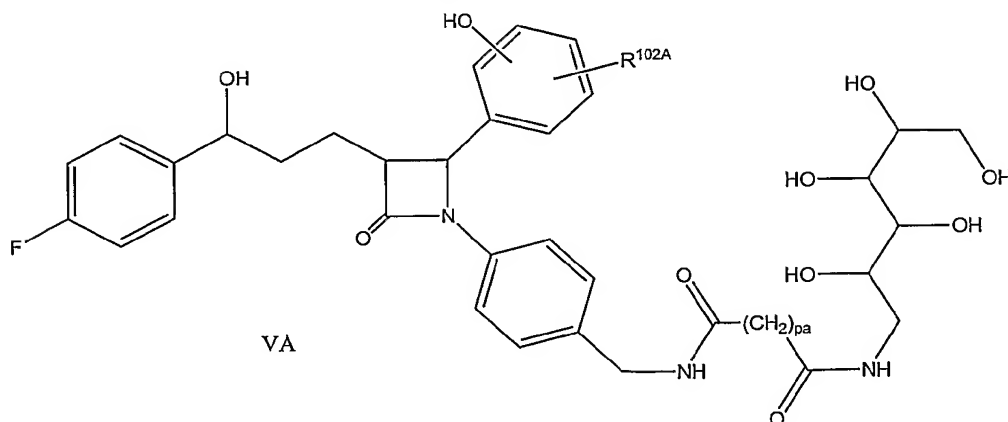
carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, $-\text{PO}_3\text{H}_2$, $-\text{SO}_3\text{H}$, $-\text{B}(\text{OH})_2$, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate.

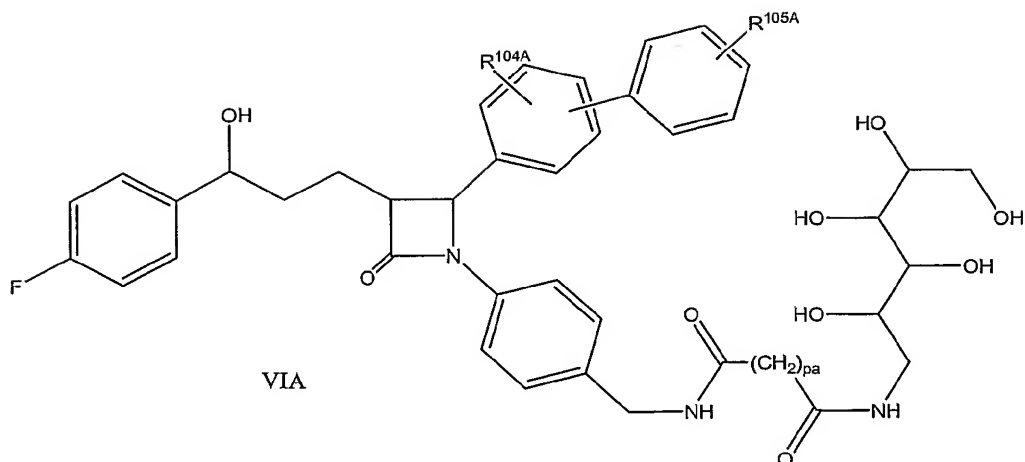
[0007] The invention further relates to compounds of formula XA, which are closely related to the compounds of formulae IIIA and IVA:



In these compounds $\text{R}^{101\text{A}}$ is chosen from H, halogen, $-\text{OH}$, loweralkyl, OCF_2H , OCF_3 , CF_2H , CH_2F , $-\text{O}$ -loweralkyl, $-\text{PO}_3\text{H}_2$, $-\text{SO}_3\text{H}$, $-\text{B}(\text{OH})_2$, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate; and p_a is 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12.

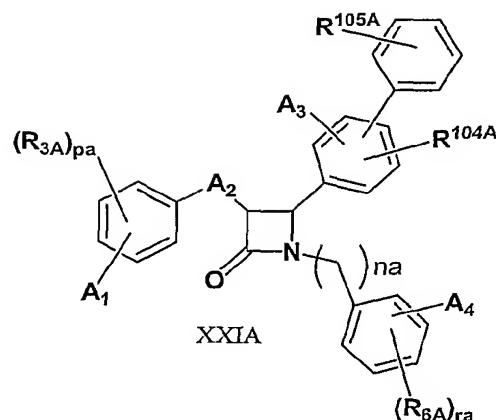
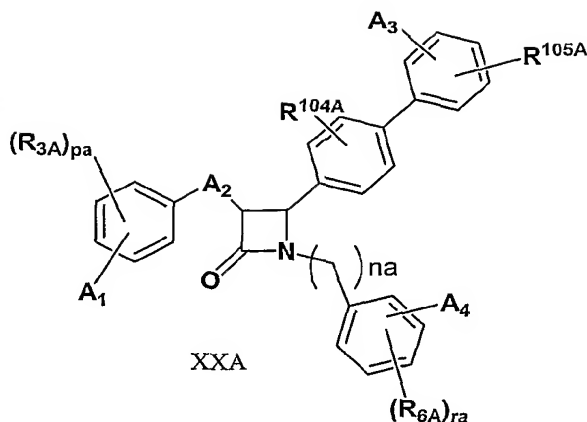
[0008] In a further aspect, the invention relates to compounds of formula VA or VIA:



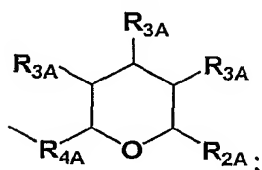


[0009] In these compounds, R^{102A} is chosen from H, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, OCF_2H , OCF_3 , CF_2H , CH_2F , -O-loweralkyl, $-PO_3H_2$, $-SO_3H$, $-B(OH)_2$, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate; R^{104} represents one, two, three or four residues chosen independently from H, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -O-loweralkyl, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, CF_3 , nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxy carbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, $-PO_3H_2$, $-SO_3H$, $-B(OH)_2$, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate; and R^{105} represents one, two, three, four or five residues chosen independently from hydrogen, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -O-loweralkyl, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, CF_3 , nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxy carbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, $-PO_3H_2$, $-SO_3H$, $-B(OH)_2$, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate; and pa is 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12.

[0010] In a further aspect, the invention relates to compounds of formula XXA and XXIA



[0011] In these compounds, A₁, A₃ and A₄ are chosen independently from hydrogen, halogen, (C₁-C₅)alkyl, (C₁-C₅)alkoxy, -COOR_{1A}, -OC(CH₃)₂COOR_{1A} and



A₂ is (C₁-C₅)alkyl, (C₁-C₅)alkoxy, (C₂-C₅)alkenyl, hydroxy(C₁-C₅)alkyl or oxo(C₁-C₅)alkyl;

R_{1A} is hydrogen or (C₁-C₅)alkyl;

R_{2A} is chosen from -CH₂OH, -CH₂OC(O)R_{1A}, and -COOR_{1A};

R_{3A} and R_{6A} are chosen independently from -OH and -OC(O)R_{1A};

R_{4A} is -(CH₂)_{ka}R_{5A}(CH₂)_{sa};

R_{5A} is a direct bond, -CH=CH-, -OCH₂-, -C(=O)-, or -CH(OH)-;

R^{104A} is chosen from H, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -O-loweralkyl, -SH, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate;

R^{105A} represents one, two, three, four or five residues chosen independently from

halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -O-loweralkyl, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy,

hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, CF₃, nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino,

dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl,

arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide,

acylamino, amidino, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a

- 10 -

sugar carbamate;

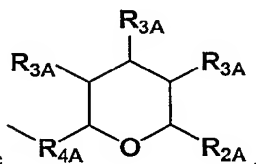
ka is zero, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10;

na is zero, one or two;

pa is zero, one or two;

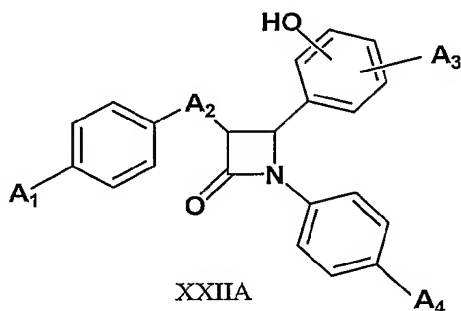
ra is zero, one or two; and

sa is zero, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10, with the proviso that the sum of ka and sa is 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10.

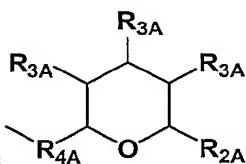


At least one of A₁, A₃ and A₄ must be

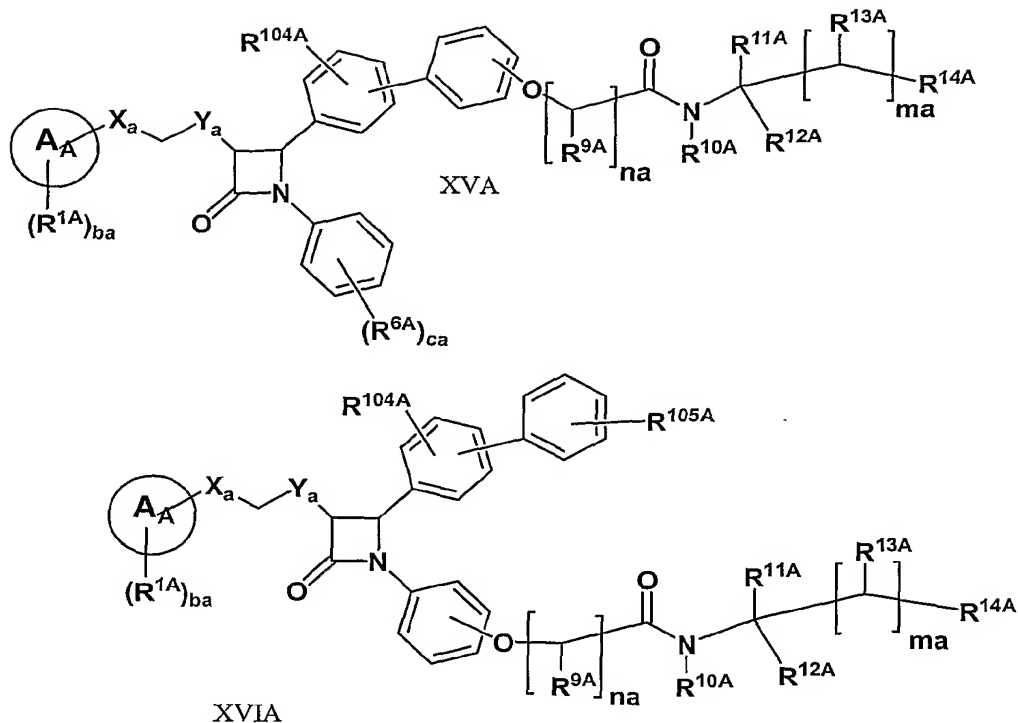
[0012] Structurally related to the foregoing compounds are compounds of formula XXIIA:



in which A₁, and A₄ are chosen independently from hydrogen, fluorine, methyl and

methoxy; A₃ is ; and A₂ is chosen from -CH₂CH₂CH₂-; -CH₂CH₂C(=O)- and -CH₂CH₂CH(OH)-.

[0013] In an another aspect, the invention relates to compounds of formula XVA and XVIA:



[0014] In these compounds

Ring A_A is selected from phenyl or thienyl;

X_a is selected from $-CR^{2A}R^{3A}-$, $-O-$, $-NR^{WA}-$ and $-S(O)_{aa}-$; wherein R^{WA} is hydrogen or C_{1-6} alkyl, and aa is 0-2;

Y_a is selected from $-\text{CR}^{4A}\text{R}^{5A}-$, $-\text{O}-$, $-\text{NR}^{\text{ZA}}-$ and $-\text{S}(\text{O})_{aa}-$; wherein R^{ZA} is hydrogen or C_{1-6} alkyl, and aa is 0-2; wherein there is at least one $-\text{CR}^{2A}\text{R}^{3A}-$ or $-\text{CR}^{4A}\text{R}^{5A}-$ group ;

R^{1A} is independently selected from halo, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkoxy and C₁₋₆alkylS(0)_{aa} wherein aa is 0 to 2; wherein **R¹** is independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more halo, C₁₋₆alkoxy and hydroxy;

ba is 0-3; wherein the values of R^{1A} may be the same or different;

R^{2A} and **R^{3A}** are independently selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkoxy and C₁₋₆alkanoyloxy; wherein **R^{2A}** and **R^{3A}** may be independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more halo or hydroxy; or **R^{2A}** and **R^{3A}** together form an oxo group;

R^{4A} and R^{5A} are independently selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy and C_{1-6} alkanoyloxy; or R^{4A} and R^{5A} together form an oxo group;

R^{6A} is independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carboxy, formyl, carbamoyl, carbamoyloxy, mercapto, sulphamoyl, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkenyloxy, C_{2-6} alkynyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyloxy, N-(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino, N,N-(C_{1-6} alkyl)₂amino, C_{1-6} alkanoylamino, C_{1-6} alkanoyl-N-(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino, C_{1-6} alkylsulphonylamino, C_{1-6} alkylsulphonyl-N-(C_{1-6} alkyl) amino, N-(C_{1-6} alkyl)carbamoyl, N,N-(C_{1-6} alkyl)₂carbamoyl, N-(C_{1-6} alkyl)carbamoyloxy, N,N-(C_{1-6} alkyl)₂carbamoyloxy, C_{1-6} alkylS(O)_{aa} wherein aa is 0 to 2, C_{1-6} alkoxycarbonyl, C_{1-6} alkoxycarbonylamino, C_{1-6} alkoxycarbonyl-N-(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino, C_{1-6} alkoxycarbonyloxy, C_{1-6} alkoxycarbonylamino, ureido, N'-(C_{1-6})ureido, N-(C_{1-6} alkyl)ureido, N,N'- C_{1-6} alkyl)₂ureido, N'-(C_{1-6} alkyl)-N-(C_{1-6} alkyl)ureido, N',N'-(C_{1-6} alkyl)₂-N-(C_{1-6} alkyl)ureido, N-(C_{1-6} alkyl)sulphamoyl, N,N-(C_{1-6} alkyl)₂sulphamoyl and phenyl; wherein R^{6A} is independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more halo, C_{1-6} alkoxy, hydroxy, amino, carboxy, C_{1-6} alkoxycarbonyl, carbamoyl, N-(C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbamoyl, N,N-(C_{1-6} alkyl)₂carbamoyl, C_{1-6} alkanoylamino, C_{1-6} alkanoyl-N-(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino, phenyl, phenoxy, benzoyl, phenyl C_{1-6} alkyl and phenyl C_{1-6} alkoxy;

ca is 0-5; wherein the values of R^{6A} may be the same or different;

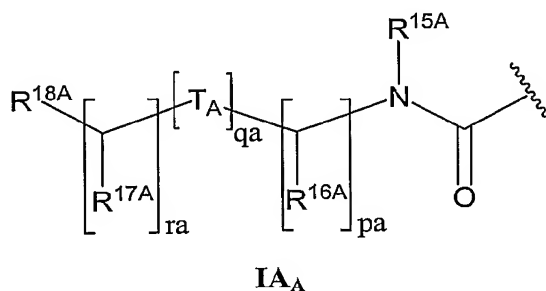
R^{9A} is hydrogen, C_{1-4} alkyl, carbocyclyl or heterocyclyl; wherein R^{9A} may be optionally substituted on carbon by one or more substituents selected from R^{23A} ; and wherein if said heterocyclyl contains an -NH- group, that nitrogen may be optionally substituted by a group selected from R^{24A} ;

R^{10A} is hydrogen, C_{1-4} alkyl;

R^{11A} and R^{12A} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4} alkyl, carbocyclyl or heterocyclyl; or R^{11A} and R^{12A} together form C_{2-6} alkylene; wherein R^{11A} , R^{12A} and the combination of R^{11A} and R^{12} taken together may be independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more substituents selected from R^{25A} ; and wherein if said heterocyclyl contains an -NH- moiety, that nitrogen may be optionally substituted by one or more R^{26A} ;

R^{13A} is hydrogen, C_{1-4} alkyl, carbocyclyl or heterocyclyl; wherein R^{13A} may be optionally substituted on carbon by one or more substituents selected from R^{27A} ; and wherein if said heterocyclyl contains an -NH-NH- moiety, that nitrogen may be optionally substituted by one or more R^{28A} ;

R^{14A} is hydrogen, halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, hydroxyaminocarbonyl, C_{1-10} alkyl, C_{2-10} alkenyl, C_{2-10} alkynyl, C_{1-10} alkoxy, C_{1-10} alkoxycarbonyl, C_{1-10} alkanoyl, C_{1-10} alkanoyloxy, N-(C_{1-10} alkyl)amino, N,N-(C_{1-10} alkyl)₂amino, N,N,N-(C_{1-10} alkyl)₃ammonio, C_{1-10} alkanoylamino, N-(C_{1-10} alkyl)carbamoyl, N,N-(C_{1-10} alkyl)₂carbamoyl, C_{1-10} alkylS(O)_{aa} wherein aa is 0 to 2, N-(C_{1-10} alkyl)sulphamoyl, N,N-(C_{1-10} alkyl)₂sulphamoyl, N-(C_{1-10} alkyl)sulphamoylamino, N,N-(C_{1-10} alkyl)₂sulphamoylamino, C_{1-10} alkoxycarbonylamino, carbocyclyl, carbocyclyl C_{1-10} alkyl, heterocyclyl, heterocyclyl C_{1-10} alkyl, carbocyclyl-(C_{1-10} alkylene)_{ea}- R^{29A} -(C_{1-10} alkylene)_{fa}, heterocyclyl-(C_{1-10} alkylene)_{ga}- R^{30A} -(C_{1-10} alkylene)_{ha}-, carboxy, sulphy, sulphino, phosphono, -P(O)(OR^{31A})(OR^{32A}), -P(O)(OH)(OR^{31A}), -P(O)(OH)(R^{31A}), or P(O)(OR^{31A})(R^{32A}), wherein R^{31A} and R^{32A} are independently selected from C_{1-6} alkyl; wherein R^{14A} may be optionally substituted on carbon by one or more substituents selected from R^{33A} ; and wherein if said heterocyclyl contains an -NH- group, that nitrogen may be optionally substituted by a group selected from R^{34A} ; or R^{14A} is a group of formula (IA_A):



wherein:

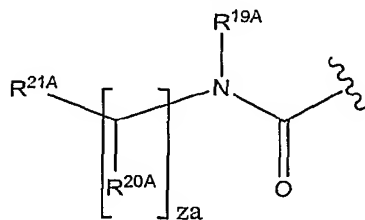
T_A is -N(R^{35A})-, -N(R^{35A})C(O)-, -O-, and -S(O)_{aa}-; wherein aa is 0-2 and R^{35A} is hydrogen or C_{1-4} alkyl ;

R^{15A} is hydrogen or C_{1-4} alkyl ;

R^{16A} and R^{17A} are independently selected from hydrogen, halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl,

alkynyl, C₁₋₆alkoxy, C₁₋₆alkanoyl, C₁₋₆alkanoyloxy, N-(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, N,N-(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂amino, C₁₋₆alkanoylamino, N-(C₁₋₆alkyl) carbamoyl, N,N-(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂carbamoyl, C₁₋₆alkylS(O)_{aa} wherein aa is 0 to 2, C₁₋₆alkoxycarbonyl, N-(C₁₋₆alkyl)sulphamoyl, N,N-(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂sulphamoyl, carbocyclyl, heterocyclyl, sulpho, sulphino, amidino, phosphono, -P(O)(OR^{36A})(OR^{37A}), -P(O)(OH)(OR^{36A}), -P(O)(OH)(R^{36A}) or -P(O)(OR^{36A})(R^{37A}), wherein R^{36A} and R^{37A} are independently selected from C₁₋₆alkyl; wherein R^{16A} and R^{17A} may be independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more substituents selected from R^{38A}; and wherein if said heterocyclyl contains an-NH-group, that nitrogen may be optionally substituted by a group selected from R^{39A};

R^{18A} is selected from hydrogen, halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, hydroxyaminocarbonyl, C₁₋₁₀alkyl, C₂₋₁₀alkenyl, C₂₋₁₀alkynyl, C₁₋₁₀alkoxy, C₁₋₁₀alkanoyl, C₁₋₁₀alkanoyloxy, N-(C₁₋₁₀alkyl)amino, N,N-(C₁₋₁₀alkyl)₂amino, C₁₋₁₀alkanoylamino, N-(C₁₋₁₀alkyl)carbamoyl, C₁₋₁₀alkoxycarbonyl, N,N-(C₁₋₁₀alkyl)₂carbamoyl, C₁₋₁₀alkylS(O)_{aa} wherein aa is 0 to 2, N-(C₁₋₁₀alkyl)sulphamoyl, N,N-(C₁₋₁₀alkyl)₂sulphamoyl, N-(C₁₋₁₀alkyl)sulphamoylamino, N,N-(C₁₋₁₀alkyl)₂sulphamoylamino, carbocyclyl, carbocyclylC₁₋₁₀alkyl, heterocyclyl, heterocyclylC₁₋₁₀alkyl, carbocyclyl-(C₁₋₁₀alkylene)_{ea}-R^{40A}-(C₁₋₁₀alkylene)_{fa}- or heterocyclyl-(C₁₋₁₀alkylene)_{ga}-R^{41A}-(C₁₋₁₀alkylene)_{ha}-, carboxy, sulpho, sulphino, phosphono, -P(O)(OR^{42A})(OR^{43A}), -P(O)(OH)(OR^{42A}), -P(O)(OH)(R^{42A}) or -P(O)(OR^{42A})(R^{43A}) wherein R^{42A} and R^{43A} are independently selected from C₁₋₆alkyl; wherein R^{18A} may be optionally substituted on carbon by one or more substituents selected from R^{44A}; and wherein if said heterocyclyl contains an -NH- group, that nitrogen may be optionally substituted by a group selected from R^{45A}; or R^{18A} is a group of formula (IB_A):

IB_A

wherein:

R^{19A} is selected from hydrogen or C_{1-4} alkyl;

R^{20A} is selected from hydrogen, halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyloxy, N-(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino, N,N-(C_{1-6} alkyl)₂amino, C_{1-6} alkanoylamino, N-(C_{1-6} alkyl)carbamoyl, N,N-(C_{1-6} alkyl)₂carbamoyl, C_{1-6} alkylS(O)_{aa} wherein aa is 0 to 2, C_{1-6} alkoxycarbonyl, N-(C_{1-6} alkyl)sulphamoyl, N,N-(C_{1-6} alkyl)₂sulphamoyl, carbocyclyl, heterocyclyl, sulpho, sulphino, amidino, phosphono, -P(O)(OR^{46A})(OR^{47A}), -P(O)(OH)(OR^{46A}), -P(O)(OH)(R^{46A}) or -P(O)(OR^{46A})(R^{47A}), wherein R^{46A} and R^{47A} are independently selected from C_{1-6} alkyl; where R^{20A} may be independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more substituents selected from R^{48A}; and wherein if said heterocyclyl contains an -NH- group, that nitrogen may be optionally substituted by a group selected from R^{49A};

R^{21A} is selected from halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, hydroxyaminocarbonyl, C_{1-10} alkyl, C_{2-10} alkenyl, C_{2-10} alkynyl, C_{1-10} alkoxy, C_{1-10} alkoxycarbonyl, C_{1-10} alkanoyl, C_{1-10} alkanoyloxy, N-(C_{1-10} alkyl)amino, N,N-(C_{1-10} alkyl)₂amino, N,N,N-(C_{1-10} alkyl)₃ammonio, C_{1-10} alkanoylamino, N-(C_{1-10} alkyl)carbamoyl, N,N-(C_{1-10} alkyl)₂carbamoyl, C_{1-10} alkylS(O)_{aa} wherein aa is 0 to 2, N-(C_{1-10} alkyl)sulphamoyl, N,N-(C_{1-10} alkyl)₂sulphamoyl, N-(C_{1-10} alkyl)sulphamoylamino, N,N-(C_{1-10} alkyl)₂sulphamoylamino, C_{1-10} alkoxycarbonylamino, carbocyclyl, carbocyclyl C_{1-10} alkyl, heterocyclyl, heterocyclyl(C_{1-10} alkyl), carbocyclyl-(C_{1-10} alkene)_{ea}-R^{50A}-(C_{1-10} alkylene)_{fa}, heterocyclyl(C_{1-10} alkylene)_{ga}-R^{51A}-(C_{1-10} alkene)_{ha}-, carboxy, sulpho, sulphino, phosphono, -P(O)(OR^{52A})(OR^{53A}), -P(O)(OH)(OR^{52A}), -P(O)(OH)(R^{52A}) or -P(O)(OR^{53A})(R^{53A}) wherein R^{52A} and R^{53A} are independently selected from C_{1-6} alkyl; wherein R^{21A} may be independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more R^{54A}; and wherein if said heterocyclyl contains an -NH- group, that nitrogen may be optionally substituted by a group selected from R^{55A};

pa is 1-3; wherein the values of R^{16A} may be the same or different;

qa is 0-1;

ra is 0-3; wherein the values of R^{17A} may be the same or different;

ma is 0-2; wherein the values of R^{13A} may be the same or different;

na is 1-2; wherein the values of R^{9A} may be the same or different;

za is 0-3; wherein the values of R^{20A} may be the same or different;

R^{23A} , R^{25A} , R^{27A} , R^{33A} , R^{38A} , R^{44A} , R^{48A} and R^{54A} are independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, hydroxyaminocarbonyl, C_{1-10} alkyl, C_{2-10} alkenyl, C_{2-10} alkynyl, C_{1-10} alkoxy, C_{1-10} alkanoyl, C_{1-10} alkanoyloxy, C_{1-10} alkoxycarbonyl, $N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)amino$, $N,N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)_2amino$, $N,N,N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)_3ammonio$, $C_{1-10}alkanoylamino$, $N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)carbamoyl$, $N,N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)_2carbamoyl$, $C_{1-10}alkylS(O)_{aa}$ wherein *aa* is 0 to 2, $N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)sulphamoyl$, $N,N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)_2sulphamoyl$, $N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)sulphamoylamino$, $N,N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)_2sulphamoylamino$, $C_{1-10}alkoxycarbonylamino$, carbocyclyl, carbocyclyl $C_{1-10}alkyl$, heterocyclyl, heterocyclyl $C_{1-10}alkyl$, carbocyclyl- $(C_{1-10}alkylene)_{ea}-R^{56A}-(C_{1-10}alkylene)_{fa-}$, heterocyclyl- $(C_{1-10}alkylene)_{ga}-R^{57A}-(C_{1-10}alkylene)_{ha-}$, carboxy, sulpho, sulphino, amidino, phosphono, $-P(O)(OR^{58A})(OR^{59A})$, $-P(O)(OH)(OR^{58A})$, $-P(O)(OH)(R^{58A})$ or $-P(O)(OR^{59A})(R^{59A})$, wherein R^{58A} and R^{59A} are independently selected from $C_{1-6}alkyl$; wherein R^{23A} , R^{25A} , R^{27A} , R^{33A} , R^{38A} , R^{44A} , R^{48A} and R^{54A} may be independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more R^{60A} ; and wherein if said heterocyclyl contains an -NH- group, that nitrogen may be optionally substituted by a group selected from R^{61A} ;

R^{24A} , R^{26A} , R^{28A} , R^{34A} , R^{39A} , R^{45A} , R^{49A} , R^{55A} and R^{61A} are independently selected from $C_{1-6}alkyl$, $C_{1-6}alkanoyl$, $C_{1-6}alkylsulphonyl$, sulphamoyl, $N-(C_{1-6}alkyl)sulphamoyl$, $N,N-(C_{1-6}alkyl)_2sulphamoyl$, $C_{1-6}alkoxycarbonyl$, carbamoyl, $N-(C_{1-6}alkyl)carbamoyl$, $N,N-(C_{1-6}alkyl)_2carbamoyl$, benzyl, phenethyl, benzoyl, phenylsulphonyl and phenyl;

R^{29A} , R^{30A} , R^{40A} , R^{41A} , R^{50A} , R^{51A} , R^{56A} and R^{57A} are independently selected from -O-, $-NR^{62A}-$, $-S(O)_{xa}-$, $-NR^{62A}C(O)NR^{63A}-$, $-NR^{62A}C(S)NR^{63A}-$, $-OC(O)N=C-$, $-NR^{62A}C(O)-$ or $-C(O)NR^{62A}-$; wherein R^{62A} and R^{63A} are independently selected from hydrogen or

C₁₋₆alkyl, and xa is 0-2;

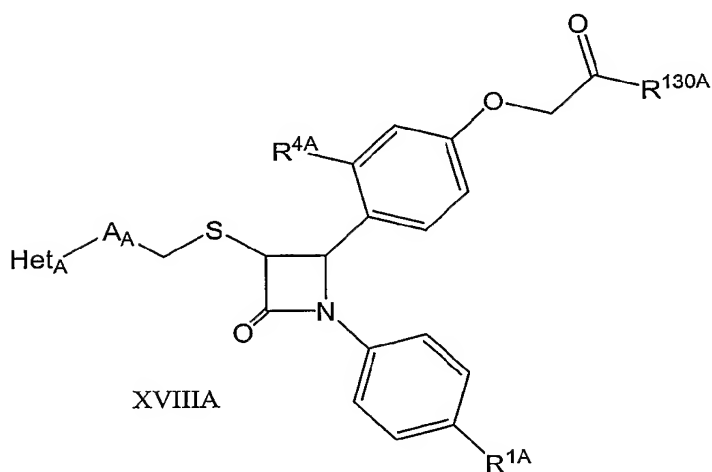
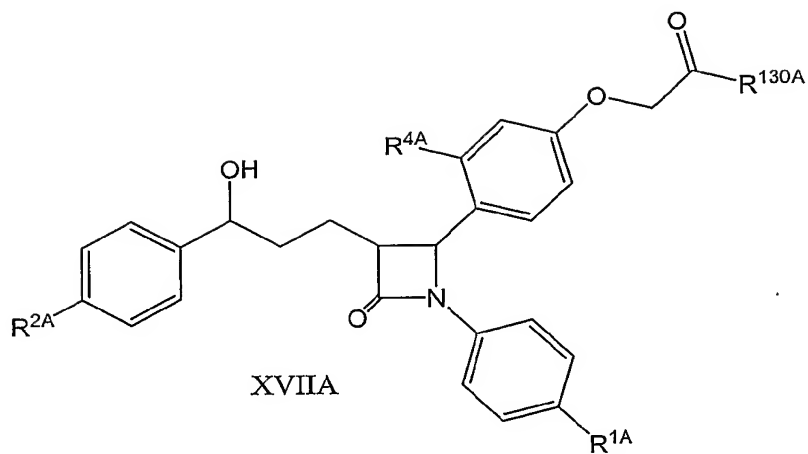
R^{60A} is selected from halo, hydroxy, cyano, carbamoyl, ureido, amino, nitro, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy, methyl, ethyl, methoxy, ethoxy, vinyl, allyl, ethynyl, methoxycarbonyl, formyl, acetyl, formamido, acetylamino, acetoxy, methylamino, dimethylamino, N-methylcarbamoyl, N,N-dimethylcarbamoyl, methylthio, methylsulphanyl, mesyl, N-methylsulphamoyl and N,N-dimethylsulphamoyl ;

R^{104A} is chosen from H, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -O-loweralkyl, -SH, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate;

R^{105A} represents one, two, three, four or five residues chosen independently from halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -O-loweralkyl, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, CF₃, nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate; and

ea, **fa**, **ga** and **ha** are independently selected from 0-2.

[0015] Two further aspects of the invention are conceptually subgenera of the foregoing compounds of formulae XVA and XVIA. They include compounds of formula XVIIA and XVIII A:



[0016] In these compounds,

R^{1A} and R^{2A} are chosen independently from H, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, OCF_2H , OCF_3 , CF_2H , CH_2F , -O-loweralkyl, $-PO_3H_2$, $-SO_3H$, $-B(OH)_2$, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate;

R^{4A} is chosen from -OH, $-PO_3H_2$, $-SO_3H$, and $-B(OH)_2$;

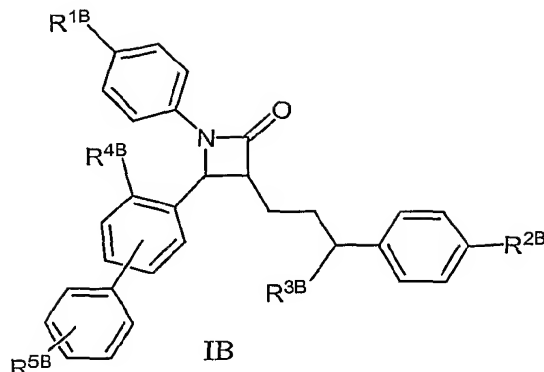
R^{130A} is a hydroxyalkylamine, an oxaalkylamine, an amino acid or a peptide;

A_A is chosen from $-CH_2-$, $-CHOH-$ and $-C(=O)-$; and

Het_A is chosen from phenyl, substituted phenyl, thienyl and substituted thienyl.

[0017] In another aspect, the invention relates to compounds of formula **IB**

- 19 -



wherein

R^{1B} is selected from the group of hydrogen, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -OCF₂H, -OCF₃, -CF₂H, -CH₂F, loweralkoxy, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, -CF₃, nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, phenyl, benzyl, phenoxy, benzyloxy, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, and a residue selected from the group of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide, and a sugar carbamate;

R^{2B} is selected from the group of hydrogen, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -OCF₂H, -OCF₃, -CF₂H, -CH₂F, loweralkoxy, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, -CF₃, nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, and a residue selected from the group of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate;

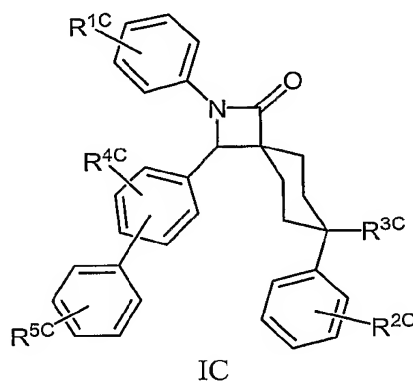
R^{3B} is selected from the group of hydrogen, -OH, and a glucuronide residue,

R^{4B} is selected from the group of hydrogen, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, loweralkoxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, -CF₃, nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, -OSO₂-R^{6Ba}, -SO₂-R^{6Ba}, and a residue selected from the group of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide, and a sugar carbamate;

- 20 -

R^{5B} is selected from the group of hydrogen, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -lower alkoxy, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, -CF₃, nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, -OSO₂-R^{6B}, -SO₂-R^{6B}, and a residue selected from the group of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide, and a sugar carbamate; and R^{6B} and R^{6Ba} are each residues independently selected from the group of a sugar, a glucuronide, a polyol, and a sugar carbamate.

[0018] In another aspect, the invention relates to compounds of formula IC



wherein

R^{1C} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -OCF₂H, -OCF₃, -CF₂H, -CH₂F, loweralkoxy, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, -CF₃, nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, phenyl, benzyl, phenoxy, benzyloxy, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, and a residue selected from the group consisting of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide, and a sugar carbamate; R^{2C} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -OCF₂H,

-OCF₃, -CF₂H, -CH₂F, loweralkoxy, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN,

-CF₃, nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, and a residue selected from the group consisting of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate;

R^{3C} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, -OH, halogen, and a glucuronide residue,

R^{4C} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, loweralkoxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, -CF₃, nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, and a residue selected from the group consisting of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide, and a sugar carbamate;

R^{5C} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -loweralkoxy, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, -CF₃, nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, -OSO₂-R^{6C}, -SO₂-R^{6C}, and a residue selected from the group consisting of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide, and a sugar carbamate; and

R^{6C} is a residue selected from the group consisting of a sugar, a glucuronide, a polyol, and a sugar carbamate.

[0019] The invention also includes pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the foregoing and following compounds, in any stereoisomeric form, or a mixture of any such compounds in any ratio.

[0020] The compounds described herein can be included in pharmaceutical formulations comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and one or more of: (1) a dyslipidemic agent, (2) an anti-diabetic agent, (3) an anti-hypertensive agent, (4) an anti-obesity agent,

(5) an agent used to treat autoimmune disorders, (6) an agent used to treat demyelination and its associated disorders, (7) an agent used to treat Alzheimer's disease, (8) a blood modifier, (9) a hormone replacement agent/composition, (10) a chemotherapeutic agent, (11) a peptide which mitigates one or more symptoms of atherosclerosis, (12) an anti-cancer agent, (13) an agent used to treat bone loss and associated disorders, (14) an inhibitor of cholesterol biosynthesis; (15) a cholesterol ester transfer protein (CETP) inhibitor; (16) a bile acid sequestrant; (17) a nicotinic acid or derivative thereof; (18) a peroxisome proliferator-activator receptor alpha agonist; (19) an acylcoenzyme A:cholesterol acyltransferase (ACAT) inhibitor; (20) an obesity control medication; (21) a hypoglycemic agent; (22) an antioxidant, (23) an antihypertensive compound and (24) other agents.

[0021] The invention also relates to methods for preventing and/or treating a disorder of lipid metabolism, including hyperlipidemia, sitosterolemia and arteriosclerotic symptoms; inhibiting the absorption of cholesterol from the intestine; reducing the blood plasma or serum concentrations of LDL cholesterol; reducing the concentrations of cholesterol and cholesterol ester in the blood plasma or serum; reducing blood plasma or serum concentrations of C-reactive protein (CRP), reducing blood plasma or serum concentrations of triglycerides; reducing blood plasma or serum concentrations of apolipoprotein B; increasing blood plasma or serum concentrations of high density lipoprotein (HDL) cholesterol; increasing the fecal excretion of cholesterol; treating a clinical condition for which a cholesterol absorption inhibitor is indicated; reducing the incidence of cardiovascular disease-related events; reducing plasma or tissue concentration of at least one non-cholesterol sterol or 5α -stanol; treating or preventing vascular inflammation; preventing, treating, or ameliorating symptoms of Alzheimer's Disease; regulating the production or level of at least one amyloid β peptide in the bloodstream and/or brain of a subject; regulating the amount of ApoE isoform 4 in the bloodstream and/or brain; preventing and/or treating obesity; and preventing or decreasing the incidence of xanthomas. The methods comprise administering a compound described herein.

[0022] The invention also relates to methods and compositions for prevention or treatment of a cholesterol-associated tumor. The methods comprise administering a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of the invention to a patient at risk of developing a cholesterol-associated tumor or already exhibiting a cholesterol-associated tumor. The method also includes coadministering a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of the invention and at least one other anticancer agent.

[0023] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can also be used in methods for treating a condition for which a cholesterol absorption inhibitor is indicated; preventing or treating a cholesterol related disease; inhibiting the absorption of or reducing plasma or tissue concentration of one or more sterols or stanols; preventing or treating sitosterolemia; preventing or treating vascular diseases/disorders and conditions, dyslipidemia, mixed dyslipidemia, hypo α -lipoproteinemia, LDL pattern B, LDL pattern A, primary dysbetalipoproteinemia (Frederickson Type III), hyperlipidemia (including but not limited to hypercholesterolemia, hypertriglyceridemia, sitosterolemia), hypertension, angina pectoris, cardiac arrhythmias, congestive heart failure, and stroke; reducing the incidence of cardiovascular disease-related events; preventing or treating vascular conditions and associated thrombotic events; preventing or treating vascular inflammation; reducing blood plasma or serum concentrations of C-reactive protein; preventing, treating, or ameliorating symptoms of Alzheimer's Disease (AD); regulating production or levels of at least one amyloid β ($A\beta$) peptide; regulating the amount of ApoE isoform 4 in the bloodstream and/or brain; preventing or treating cognitive related disorders (including dementia); preventing or treating obesity; preventing or decreasing the incidence of xanthomas; preventing or minimizing muscular degeneration and related side effects associated with certain HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors (statins); preventing or treating diabetes and associated conditions; preventing or treating at least one autoimmune disorder; preventing or treating demyelination and associated disorders; preventing or treating cholesterol associated tumors; inhibiting the expression of at least one multiple ("multi")-drug resistance gene or protein in an animal cell; enhancing the effectiveness of a chemotherapeutic agent in a subject having cancer; reversing a multi-drug resistance phenotype exhibited by an animal cell; modulating lipid raft structure;

and preventing or treating osteopenia disorders (bone loss disorders). The methods comprise administering a therapeutically effective amount of a compound or pharmaceutical formulation described herein.

[0024] The invention also relates to an article of manufacture comprising a container, instructions, and a pharmaceutical formulation as described above. The instructions are for the administration of the pharmaceutical formulation for a purpose chosen from: increasing blood plasma or serum concentrations of HDL cholesterol; increasing the fecal excretion of cholesterol; inhibiting the absorption of cholesterol from the intestine; inhibiting the absorption of or reducing plasma or tissue concentration of one or more sterols or stanols; inhibiting the expression of at least one multiple ("multi")-drug resistance gene or protein in an animal cell; modulating lipid raft structure; preventing or decreasing the incidence of xanthomas; preventing or minimizing muscular degeneration and related side effects associated with certain HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors (statins); preventing or treating a cholesterol related disease; preventing or treating a cholesterol-associated tumor; preventing or treating at least one autoimmune disorder; preventing or treating cognitive related disorders (including dementia); preventing or treating demyelination and associated disorders; preventing or treating diabetes and associated conditions; preventing or treating obesity; preventing or treating osteopenia disorders (bone loss disorders) preventing or treating sistoserolemia; preventing or treating vascular conditions and associated thrombotic events; preventing or treating vascular diseases/disorders and conditions, dyslipidemia, mixed dyslipidemia, hypo α -lipoproteinemia, LDL pattern B, LDL pattern A, primary dysbetalipoproteinemia (Frederickson Type III), hyperlipidemia (including but not limited to hypercholesterolemia, hypertriglyceridemia, sitosterolemia), hypertension, angina pectoris, cardiac arrhythmias, congestive heart failure, and stroke; preventing or treating vascular inflammation; preventing, treating, or ameliorating symptoms of Alzheimer's Disease (AD); reducing blood plasma or serum concentrations of apolipoprotein B; reducing the blood plasma or serum concentrations of C-reactive protein (CRP); reducing the blood plasma or serum concentrations of triglycerides; reducing the blood plasma or serum concentrations of LDL cholesterol; reducing the blood plasma or serum

concentrations of cholesterol; reducing the blood plasma or serum concentrations of cholesterol ester; reducing the incidence of cardiovascular disease-related events; reducing the plasma or tissue concentration of at least one non-cholesterol sterol or 5α -stanol; regulating production or levels of at least one amyloid β ($A\beta$) peptide; regulating the amount of ApoE isoform 4 in the bloodstream and/or brain; reversing a multi-drug resistance phenotype exhibited by an animal cell; the prevention or treatment of a disorder of lipid metabolism; treating a condition for which a cholesterol absorption inhibitor is indicated; enhancing the effectiveness of a chemotherapeutic agent in a subject having cancer; and treating or preventing a disease associated with lipid raft structure..

Detailed description of the Invention

[0025] Compounds of the genera represented by formulae **IA – XXIIA**, **IB**, **IIB**, **IC**, **IIC**, and subgenera thereof are inhibitors of cholesterol absorption from the intestine. As such they have utility in treating and preventing lipid disorders, such as hypercholesterolemia and hyperlipidemia. Because of their effect in lowering serum lipids, the compounds are useful in the treatment and prevention of atherosclerosis. The compounds can be used advantageously in combination with other hypolipidemic agents, including inhibitors of cholesterol biosynthesis, such as HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors. HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors include the “statins”: lovastatin (Mevacor®), simvastatin (Zocor®), pravastatin (Pravachol®), rosuvastatin (Crestor®; ZD-4522), mevastatin, atorvastatin (Lipitor®), cerivastatin (Baycol®), pitavastatin, fluvastatin (Lescol®), bervastatin, crilvastatin, carvastatin, rivastatin, sirrivastatin, glenvastatin, itavastatin, dalvastatin and those disclosed in U.S. Patent Nos. 4,231,938, U.S. Pat. No. 4,444,784, U.S. Pat. No. 4,739,073, U.S. Pat. No. 4,346, 227; EP 491,226, and U.S. Pat. No. 4,647,576. A further listing of non-limiting examples of antihyperlipidemic agents that may be used in combination with the compounds of the present invention may be found in columns 5-6 of US patent 6,498,156, WO 05/000809 (including those disclosed on page 51), WO 04/110368 (including those disclosed on page 38), WO 04/110375 (including those disclosed on page 42), WO 05/000217 (including those disclosed on pages 37– 40), and in PCT WO 04/004778, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

As described above, the formulation may additionally contain at least one bile acid sequestrant. Sequestrants include cholestyramine, colestipol and colesevelam hydrochloride. The formulation may also contain a nicotinic acid or derivative thereof. Nicotinic acid derivatives include niceritrol, nicofuranose and acipimox. The formulation may also contain a peroxisome proliferator-activator receptor alpha (PPAR α) agonist, which may be a fibric acid derivative. Thus PPAR α agonists may be used in combination therapy with agents of the present invention including but not limited to: beclofibrate, benzaifibrate, bezafibrate, binifibrate, BM 170744, ciprofibrate, clinofibrate, clofibrate, etofibrate, fenofibrate, gemcabene, gemfibrozil, GW 7647, lifibrol, LY518674 and fibric acid derivatives including Atromid®, Lopid®, and Tricor® (fenofibrate tablets). The formulation may also contain a CETP inhibitor. Examples of such are the compounds identified as JTT-705 in Nature, 406, (6792):203-7 (2000) and CP-529,414 (torcetrapib), described in US20030186952 and WO2000017164. Examples of CETP inhibitors are also found in Current Opinion in Investigational Drugs, 4(3):291-297 (2003). Other CETP inhibitors useful in the present invention include, but are not limited to, CP 532,632, BAY63-2149, SC 591, SC 795, and the like, and those disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,512, 548; WO 99/20302, WO 99/14204, WO 99/41237, WO 95/04755, WO 96/1514 1, WO 96/05227, EP 796846, EP818197, EP 818448, DE 19704244, DE19741051, DE 19741399, DE 197042437, DE 19709125, DE 19627430, DE 19832159, DE 19741400, JP 11049743, and JP 09059155; and those disclosed in J. Antibiot., 49(8): 815-816 (1996), and Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett., 6:1951-1954 (1996). The formulation may also contain an ACAT inhibitor. Examples of such are the compounds identified as avasimibe in Current Opinion in Investigational Drugs, 3(9):291-297 (2003), and CL-277,082 in Clin Pharmacol Ther. 48(2):189-94 (1990). The formulation may also contain an obesity control medication. Examples of obesity control medications include gut hormone fragment peptide YY₃₋₃₆ (PYY₃₋₃₆)(*N. Engl. J. Med.* 349:941, 2003; IKPEAPGE DASPEELNRY YASLRHYLNL VTRQRY) or a variant thereof, glp-1 (glucagon-like peptide-1), exendin-4 (an inhibitor of glp-1), sibutramine, phentermine, phendimetrazine, benzphetamine hydrochloride (Didrex), orlistat (Xenical), diethylpropion hydrochloride (Tenuate), fluoxetine (Prozac), bupropion, ephedra,

chromium, garcinia cambogia, benzocaine, bladderwrack (*focus vesiculosus*), chitosan, nomame herba, galega (Goat's Rue, French Lilac), conjugated linoleic acid, L-carnitine, fiber (psyllium, plantago, guar fiber), caffeine, dehydroepiandrosterone, germander (*teucrium chamaedrys*), B-hydroxy- β -methylbutyrate, ATL-962 (Alizyme PLC), T71 (Tularik, Inc.; Boulder CO), a ghrelin antagonist, Acomplia (rimonabant), AOD9604, alpha-lipoic acid (alpha-LA), and pyruvate. Further examples of anti-obesity agents that can be combined with agents of the present invention include those disclosed in WO 05/000809 (pages 51 (line 25) – 58 (entire page), and including the CB antagonists/inverse agonists described therein), WO 04/110368 (including those disclosed on pages 27-32), WO 04/110375 (including those disclosed on pages 34– 38), and WO 05/000217 (including those disclosed on pages 32–37) the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference. The agents of the present invention can also be used in combination therapy with the NPY5 antagonists described in WO 04/110368, WO 04/110375, and WO 05/000217. The formulation may also contain a hypoglycemic agent. Examples of of classes of hypoglycemic agents include the (1) peroxisome proliferator-activator receptor gamma agonists (including, e.g. glitazones (e.g. 5-BTzd, ciglitazone, CLX-0921, darglitazone, englitazone, isaglitazone (MCC-555), pioglitazone, rosiglitazone, troglitazone) and GW-0207, LG-100641, and LY-300512)); (2) biguanides such as metformin, phenformin, and buformin; and (3) sulfonylureas such as acetohexamide, carbutamide, chlorpropamide, diabinese, glibenclamide, gliclazide, glimepiride, glipentide, glipizide, gliquidone, glisolamide, glyburide[glibenclamide], tolazamide, and tolbutamide. The formulation may also contain an antioxidant. Examples of antioxidants include probucol and AGI-1067. The formulation may also contain an anti-diabetic agent including those disclosed in WO 05/000809 (including those disclosed on pages 49–50), WO 04/110368 (including those disclosed on pages 37-38), WO 04/110375 (including those disclosed on pages 40-41), and WO 05/000217 (including those disclosed on pages 42– 43).

[0026] The formulation may also contain an antihypertensive compound. Examples of classes of antihypertensive compounds include thiazide derivatives, β -adrenergic blockers, calcium-channel blockers, angiotensin-converting-enzyme (ACE) inhibitor, and

angiotensin II receptor antagonists. Examples of thiazide derivatives include hydrochlorothiazide, chlorothiazide, and polythiazide. Examples of β -adrenergic blockers include atenolol, metoprolol, propranolol, timolol, carvedilol, nadolol, and bisoprolol. Examples of calcium-channel blockers include amlodipine, aranidipine, azelnidipine, barnidipine, benidipine, bepridil, cinaldipine, clevidipine, diltiazem, efonidipine, felodipine, gallopamil, isradipine, lacidipine, lemildipine, lercanidipine, manidipine, nicardipine, nifedipine, nilvadipine, nimodepine, nisoldipine, nitrendipine, pranidipine, verapamil and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof. Examples of angiotensin-converting-enzyme (ACE) inhibitors include delapril, captopril, enalapril, lisinopril, quinapril, perindopril, benazepril,trandolapril, fosinopril, ramipril, and ceranapril. Examples of angiotensin II receptor antagonists include candesartan, irbesartan, olmesartan, telmisartan, and aprosartan. Additional examples of antihypertensive compounds which can be used in combination with agents of the invention include those disclosed in WO 05/000809 (including those disclosed on page 51), WO 04/110368 (including those disclosed on pages 32-36), WO 04/110375 (including those disclosed on page 43), and WO 05/000217 (including those disclosed on page 43).

[0027] In one embodiment, the invention comprises a compound of the invention together with a statin. In another embodiment, the invention further comprises an agent chosen from niacin, a sequestrant and a fibrate. In another embodiment, the invention comprises a compound of the invention together with a statin, niacin, a sequestrant and a fibrate.

[0028] As described hereinbelow, compounds of the genera represented by formulae **IA – XXIIA**, **IB**, **IIB**, **IC**, **IIC**, and subgenera thereof may be formulated with, or administered in combination therapy with, yet other therapeutic agents.

[0029] The present invention is also directed to methods of prevention or treatment of a cholesterol-associated tumor in patients who are either at risk of developing a cholesterol-associated tumor or already exhibit a cholesterol-associated tumor. The tumor may be either a benign or a malignant tumor of the prostate, breast, endometrium or colon. The compounds of the invention may be co-administered with at least one other anticancer agent, which may be a steroidal antiandrogen, a non-steroidal antiandrogen, an estrogen, diethylstilbestrol, a conjugated estrogen, a selective estrogen

receptor modulator (SERM), a taxane, or an LHRH analog. Tests showing the efficacy of the therapy and the rationale for combination therapy are presented in PCT application WO 2004/010948, the disclosure of which is incorporated herein by reference.

[0030] The compounds of the invention may reduce both cholesterol levels *in vivo* and epoxycholesterol formation and thereby inhibit initiation and progression of benign and malignant cholesterol-associated tumors or cholesterol-associated cell growth or cell-masses. Compositions disclosed herein, for example, are useful for the treatment and/or prevention of benign prostatic hypertrophy, as well as tumors associated with prostate, colon, endometrial, or breast tissues.

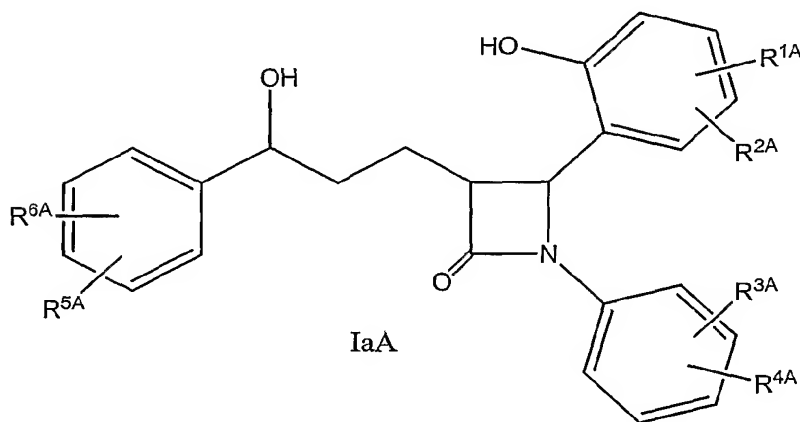
[0031] Compositions of the invention comprise an effective dose or a pharmaceutically effective amount or a therapeutically effective amount of a compound described above and may additionally comprise at least one other anticancer agent, for the treatment or prevention of benign prostatic hypertrophy or other cholesterol-related benign or malignant tumors, particularly those associated with prostate, breast, endometrial or colon tissues. Examples of agents for use in compositions and methods of the invention include steroidal or non steroidal antiandrogens such as finasteride (PROSCAR®), cyproterone acetate (CPA), flutamide (4'-nitro-3'-trifluoromethyl isobutyranilide), bicalutamide (CASODEX®), and nilutamide; estrogens, diethylstilbestrol (DES); conjugated estrogens (e.g., PREMARIN®); selective estrogen receptor modulator (SERM) compounds such as tamoxifen, raloxifene, droloxifene, idoxifene; taxanes such as paclitaxel (TAXOL®) and docetaxel (TAXOTERE®); and LHRH analogs such as goserelin acetate (ZOLADEX®), and leuprolide acetate (LUPRON®).

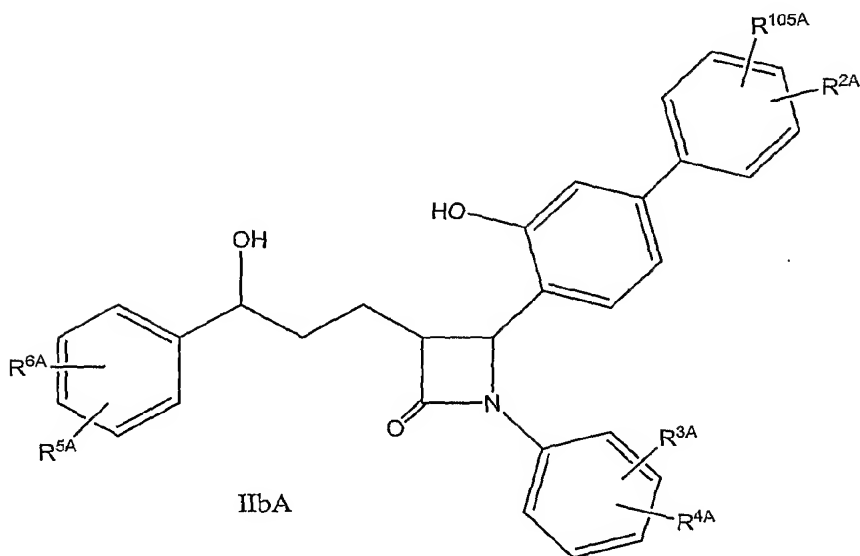
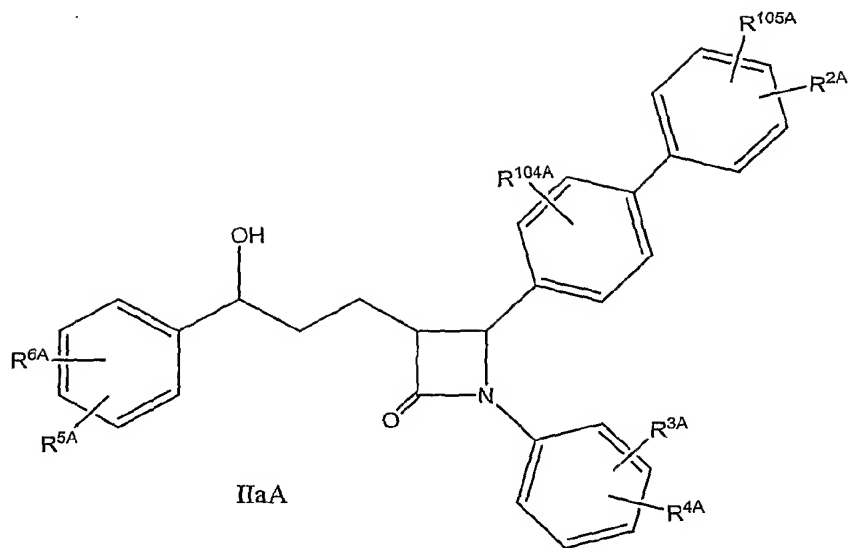
[0032] Methods of the invention parallel the compositions and formulations. The methods comprise, *inter alia*, co-administering to a patient in need of treatment a therapeutically effective amount of an azetidinone according to the invention and one or more of: (a) a steroidal or non steroidal antiandrogen; (b) an estrogen; (c) diethylstilbestrol (DES); (d) a conjugated estrogen; (e) a selective estrogen receptor modulator (SERM); (f) a taxane; and (g) an LHRH analog. The term "selective estrogen receptor modulator" includes both estrogen agonist and estrogen antagonists and refers to compounds that bind with the estrogen receptor, inhibit bone turnover and prevent bone loss. In particular, estrogen

agonists are compounds capable of binding to the estrogen receptor sites in mammalian tissue and mimicking the actions of estrogen in that tissue. Estrogen antagonists are compounds capable of binding to the estrogen receptor sites in mammalian tissue and blocking the actions of estrogen in that tissue. Exemplary SERMs are: tamoxifen (U.S. Patent 4,536,516); 4-hydroxytamoxifen (U.S. Patent 4,623,660); raloxifene (U.S. Patent 4,418,068); idoxifene (U.S. Patent 4,839,155; and droloxifene. For the taxanes see U.S. Patents 6,395,770; 6,380,405; and 6,239,167. Azetidinones of the invention may also be combined with a steroidal or non steroidal antiandrogen, as described above.

[0033] Certain compounds of the invention may have the additional advantage that they suppress serum cholesterol and/or LDL levels while themselves not being appreciably absorbed into the mammalian circulation upon oral administration. As a result of the low-to-insignificant serum levels, fewer side-effects, such as drug-drug interactions, are observed.

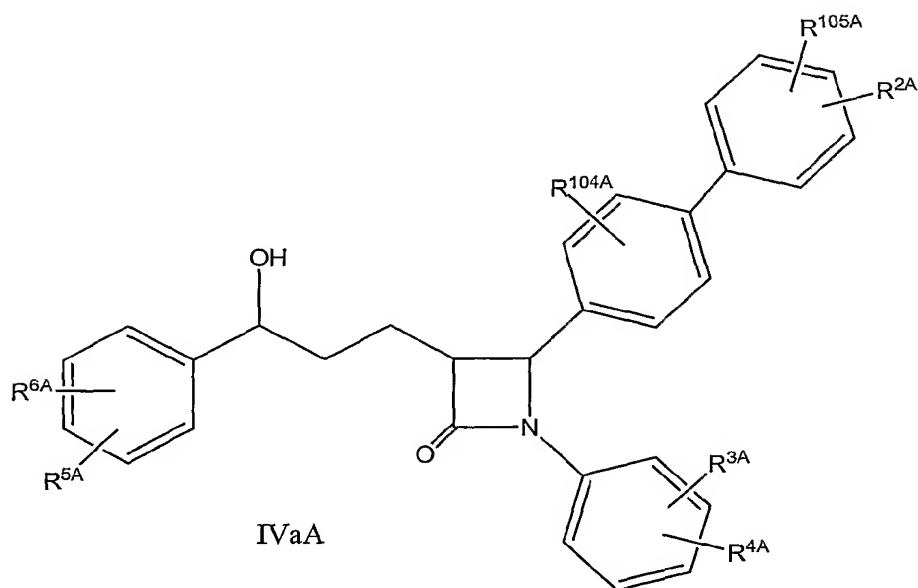
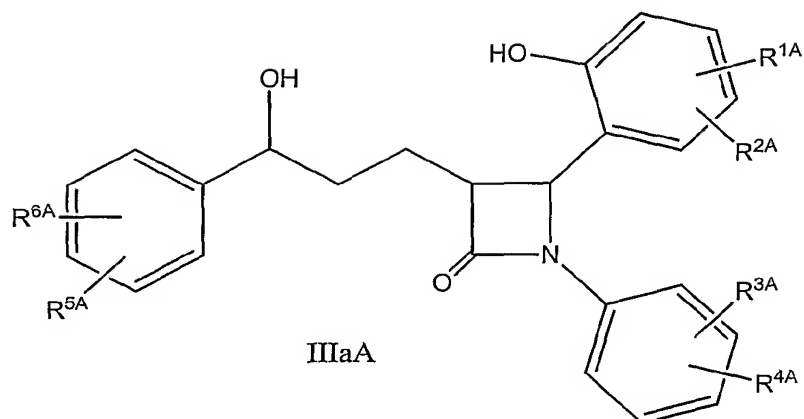
[0034] Subgenera according to the invention include compounds of formulae IaA, IIaA, and IIbA:





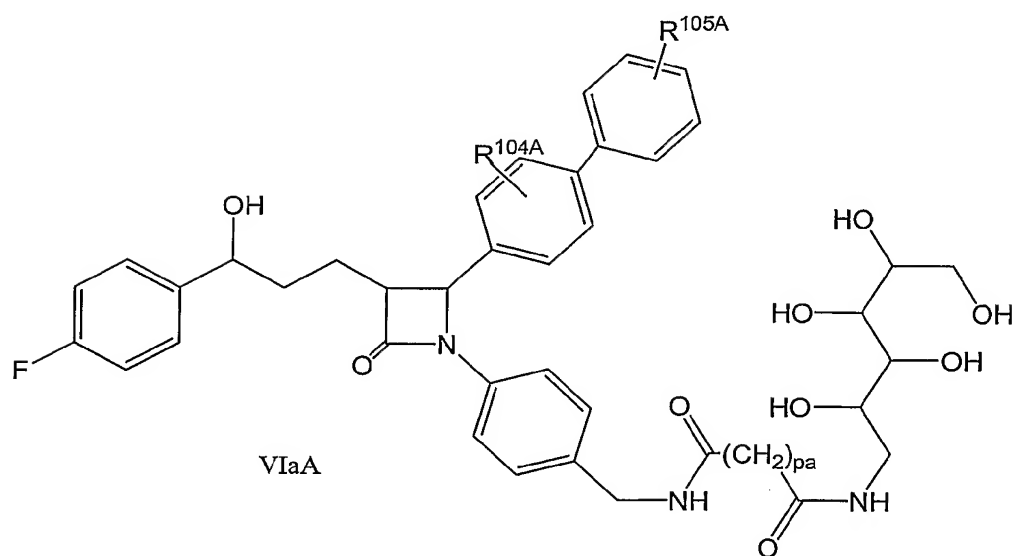
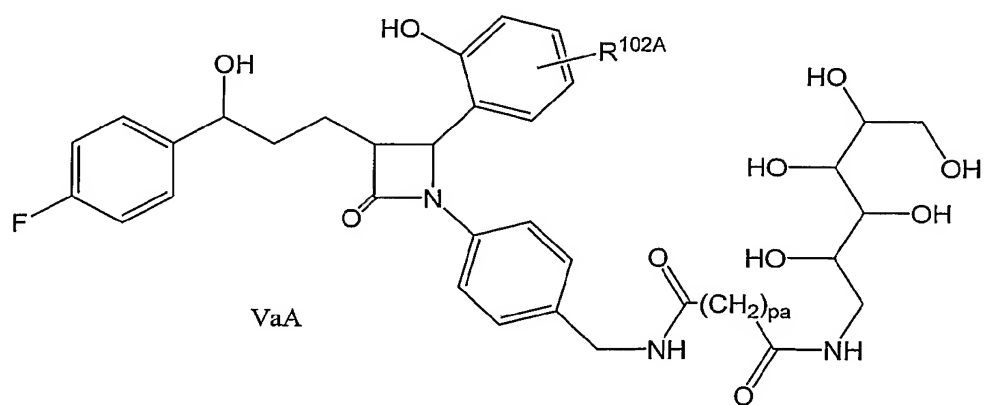
[0035] In these compounds, R^{104A} may be chosen from -OH, -SH, $-PO_3H_2$, $-SO_3H$, $-B(OH)_2$, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate and R^{105A} is chosen from H, -OH, -SH, $-PO_3H_2$, $-SO_3H$, $-B(OH)_2$, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate. In one embodiment, R^{104A} is -OH.

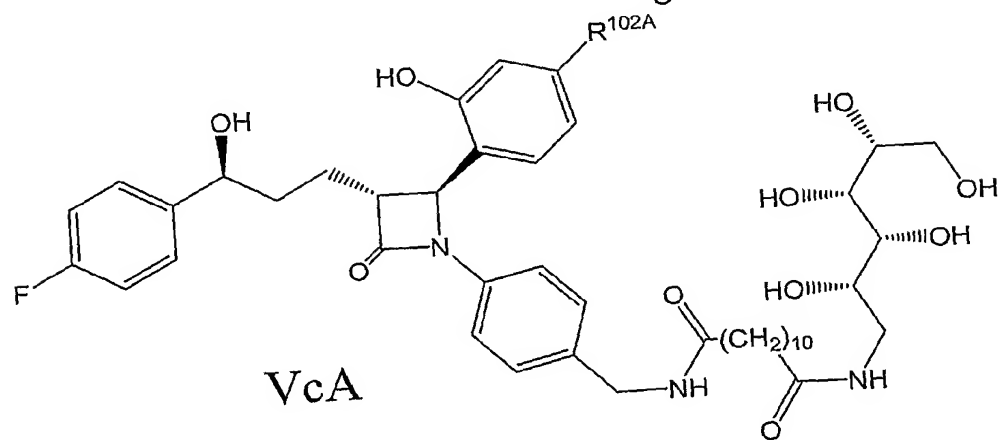
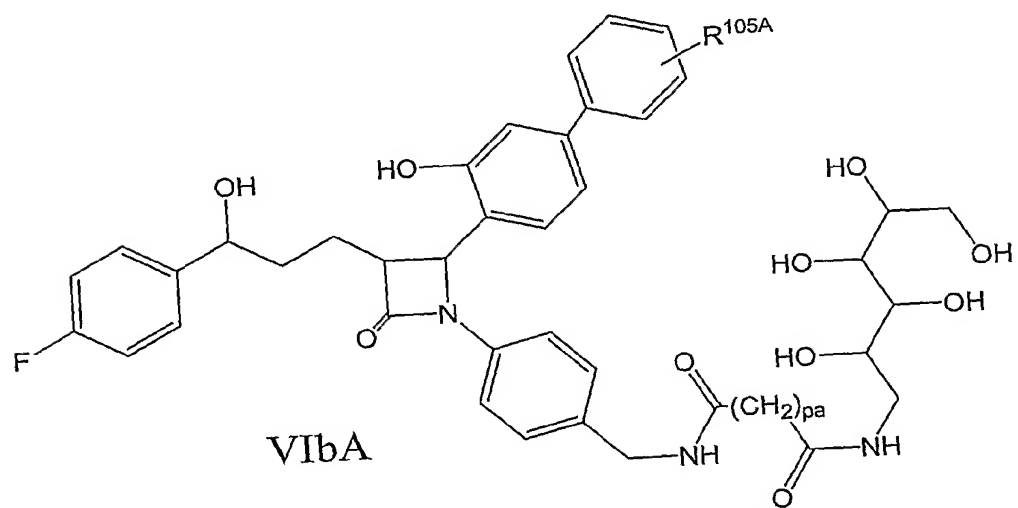
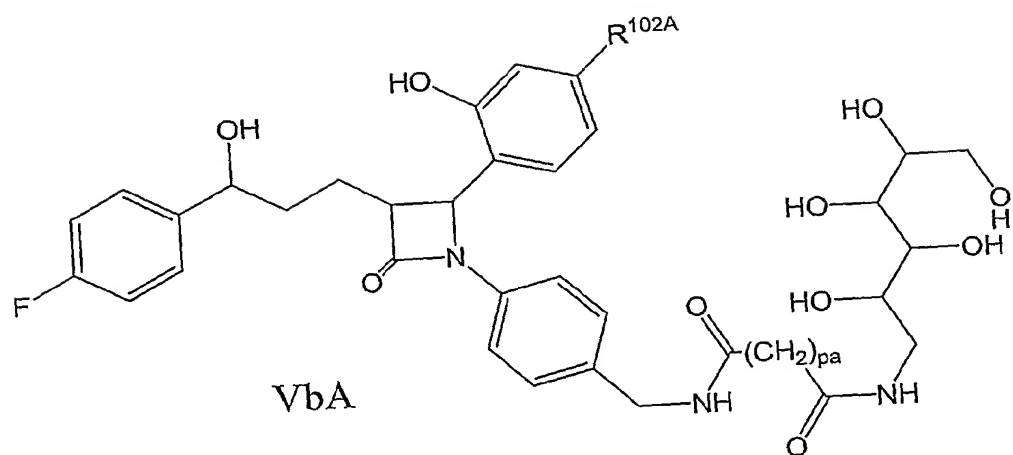
[0036] Other subgenera include compounds of formula IIIaA and IVaA:

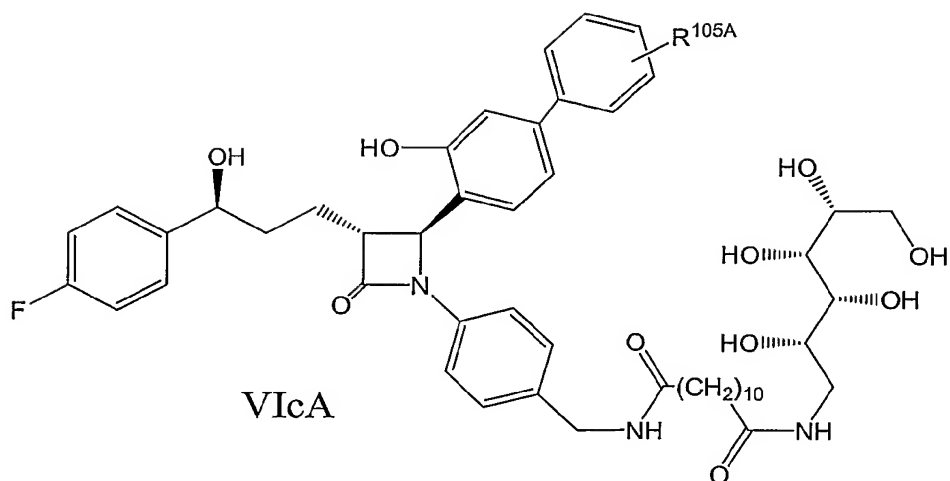


[0037] In these compounds R^{104A} may be chosen from -OH, -SH, $-PO_3H_2$, $-SO_3H$, $-B(OH)_2$, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate and R^{105A} is chosen from H, -OH, -SH, $-PO_3H_2$, $-SO_3H$, $-B(OH)_2$, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate. In one embodiment, R^{104A} is -OH. In other embodiments R^{1A} , R^{3A} and R^{5A} are H; R^{6A} is F; R^{2A} is H, OH, or OCH_3 ; and R^{4A} is (C_0-C_{30}) -alkylene-(LAG). In a specific embodiment, R^{4A} is $-CH_2NHC(=O)(CH_2)_{2-20}NHCH_2CH_2SO_3H$.

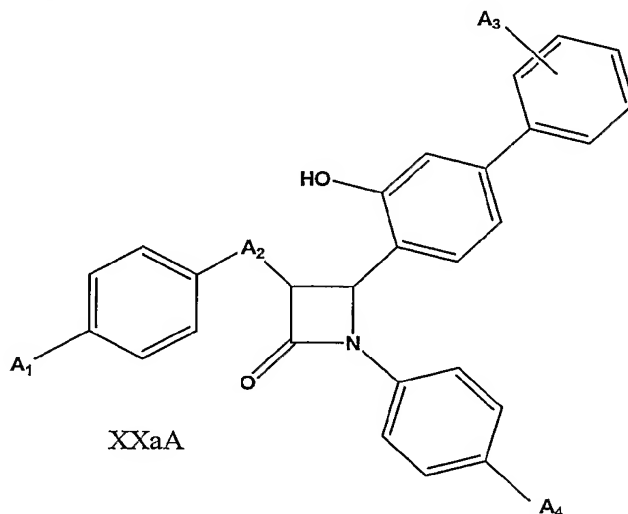
[0038] Subgenera of the class of VA and VIA include compounds of formula VaA, VIaA, VbA, VIbA, VcA and VIcA:



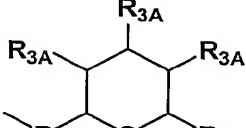




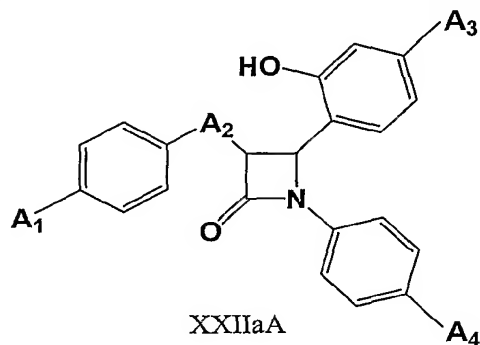
[0039] Subgenera of compounds of formula XXA include compounds of formula XXaA:



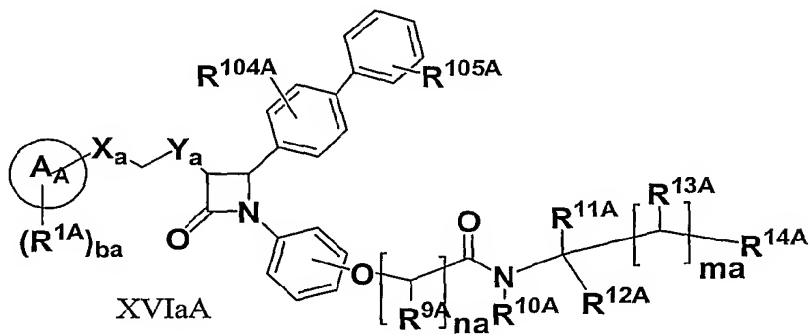
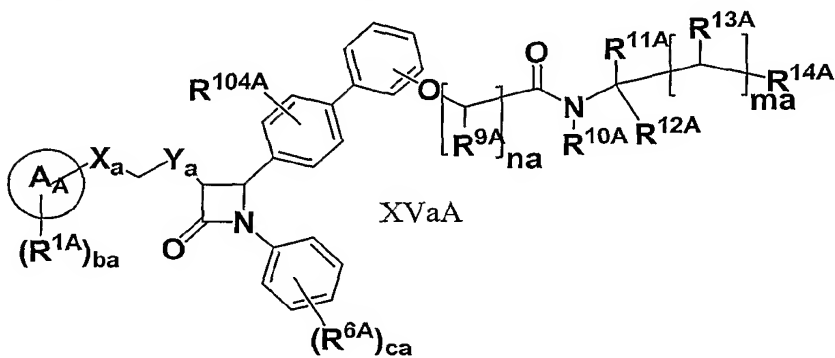
in which A₁, and A₄ are chosen independently from hydrogen, fluorine, methyl and

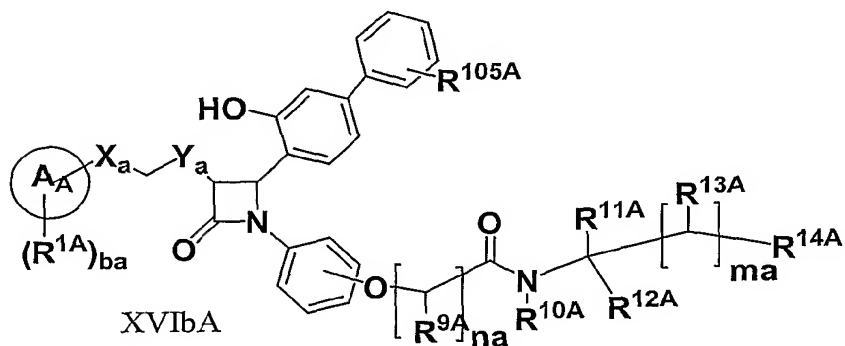
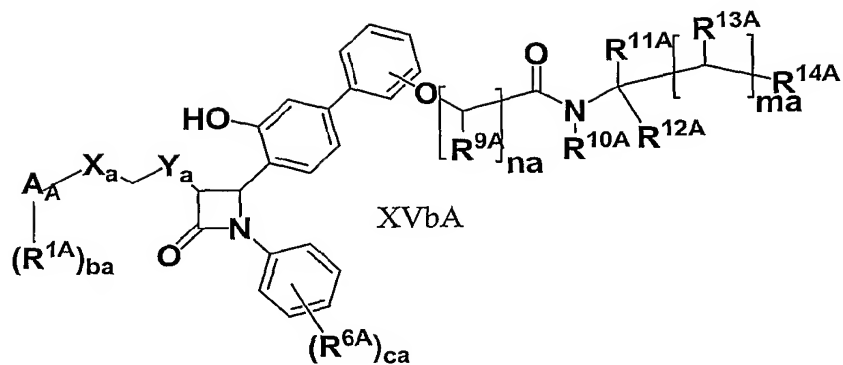
methoxy; A₃ is ; and A₂ is chosen from -CH₂CH₂CH₂-, -CH₂CH₂C(=O)- and -CH₂CH₂CH(OH)-. In certain embodiments of compounds XXA, XXIA and XXIIA, R_{2A} may be -CH₂OH; R_{3A} may be -OH; and R_{4A} may be -(CH₂)-, -CH₂CH₂-, or -CH=CH-.

[0040] A subgenus of compounds of formula XXIIA is represented by formula XXIIaA:

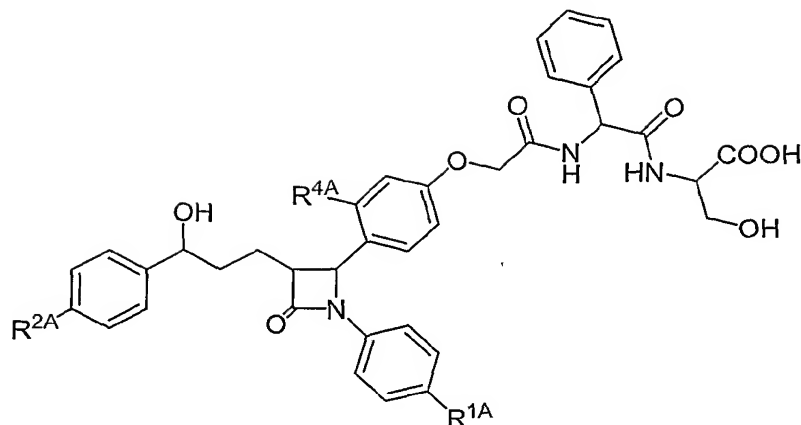


[0041] Subgenera of compounds of formulae XVA and XVIa include compounds of formula XVaA, XVIaA, XVbA and XVIbA:





[0042] Embodiments of the compounds of formulae XVIIA and XVIIIA include compounds in which R^{1A} is H or F; R^{2A} is H or F; R^{4A} is OH; and R^{130A} is chosen from -Phg-SerOH, -PhgOH, -GlyOH, -Gly-GlyOH, -NHCH₂CH₂OH and -NHCH₂CH₂OCH₃. The amino acid abbreviations are those known in the art and the attachment is by formation of an amide between the peptide (or amino acid) and the carbonyl to which R^{130A} is attached. Thus the compounds of formula XVIIA in which R^{130A} is -Phg-SerOH (i.e. phenylglycylserine) would have the following structure:



[0043] In certain embodiments of the present compounds of formula **IB**,

R^{1B} and R^{2B} are selected independently from the group of hydrogen, halogen, -OH, and lower alkoxy;

R^{3B} is selected from the group of hydrogen, -OH, and a glucuronide residue;

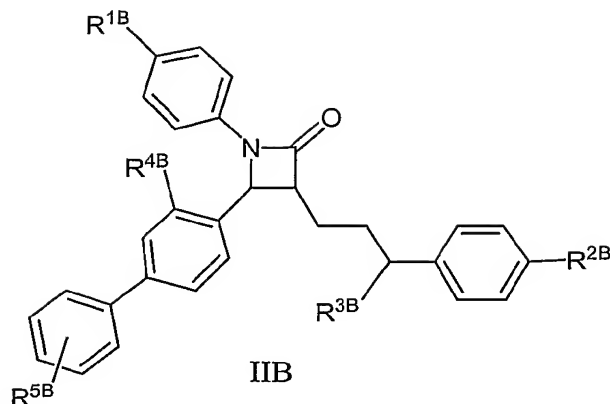
R^{4B} is selected from the group of hydrogen, -OH, -OSO₂-R^{6Ba} and -SO₂-R^{6Ba}; and

R^{5B} is selected from the group of hydrogen, -OH, -OSO₂-R^{6B} and -SO₂-R^{6B}.

[0044] As previously stated, R^{6B} and R^{6Ba} are each residues independently selected from the group of a sugar, a glucuronide, a polyol, and a sugar carbamate, as defined herein.

[0045] The invention encompasses pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the compounds disclosed herein, as well as any stereoisomeric form of the compounds, and any mixture of the compounds in any ratio.

[0046] Furthermore, in the present compounds of formula **IB**, a biphenyl is located at the 4-Position of the azetidinone ring. Thus, one subgenus includes compounds of formula **IIB**



However, the invention is not limited to this particular embodiment depicted by formula **IIB**.

[0047] In certain embodiments of formula **IB**, as well as in those of formula **IIB**, R^{1B} is either fluorine or hydrogen, and in certain embodiments, R^{2B} is fluorine.

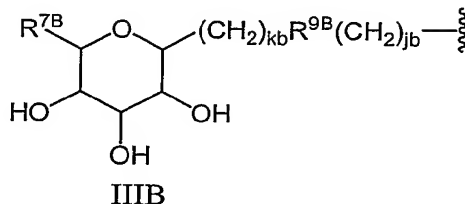
[0048] Furthermore, in certain compounds of the present invention, R^{3B} is $-OH$. In other embodiments, R^{3B} is a glucuronide residue, as defined herein.

[0049] In certain compounds of formula **IB** and **IIB**, the ortho substituent, R^{4B} , (relative to the azetidinone ring) attached to the first phenyl ring of the biphenyl is $-OH$. In others, R^{4B} includes a residue of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide, or a sugar carbamate, represented by R^{6Ba} , which is linked to the first phenyl ring through either a sulfonate ($-OSO_2-$) or sulfonyl ($-SO_2-$) linking group. In these embodiments, which are discussed below, R^{4B} is represented as $-OSO_2-R^{6Ba}$ or $-SO_2-R^{6Ba}$.

[0050] R^{5B} , which is the substituent attached to the second phenyl ring of the biphenyl located at the 4-Position of the azetidinone ring, is $-OH$ in certain embodiments. In these embodiments the hydroxyl ($-OH$) may be located in the para position or the meta position of the ring. In other embodiments, the second phenyl ring of the biphenyl is unsubstituted. In these embodiments, R^{5B} is hydrogen.

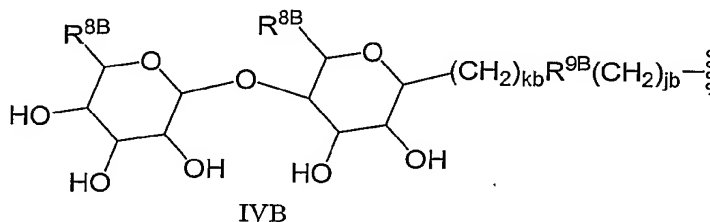
[0051] In still other embodiments, the second phenyl of the biphenyl is coupled to a residue of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide, or a sugar carbamate, designated herein as R^{6B} , via a sulfonate or sulfonyl linkage. In these embodiments, R^{5B} represents either the sulfonate link and the residue ($-OSO_2-R^{6B}$) or the sulfonyl link and the residue ($-SO_2-R^{6B}$). These R^{5B} sulfonate/sulfonyl radicals are often located in the para position.

[0052] Furthermore, when R^{5B} is $-\text{OSO}_2\text{-}R^{6B}$ or $-\text{SO}_2\text{-}R^{6B}$, R^{6B} may be a sugar residue having formula **IIIB**



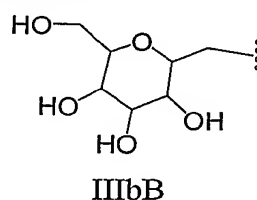
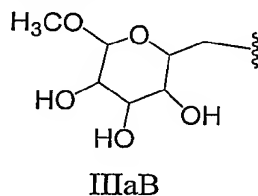
in any stereoisomeric form. R^{7B} is $-\text{OH}$, lower alkoxy or lower alkylene- OH . R^{9B} is a direct bond, $-\text{C}=\text{C}-$, $-\text{OCH}_2-$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})-$ or $-\text{CHOH}-$. In addition, j_b is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5; and k_b is zero, 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5. In structure **IIIB**, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the sulfonate or the sulfonyl link.

[0053] In certain other embodiments of R^{5B} , R^{6B} is a sugar residue having formula **IVB**:

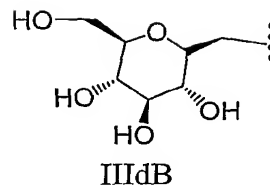
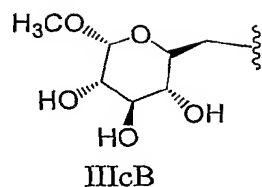


in any stereoisomeric form. In structure **IVB**, R^{8B} is lower alkylene- OH , and R^{9B} , j_b , and k_b are as previously defined. Again, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the sulfonate or the sulfonyl.

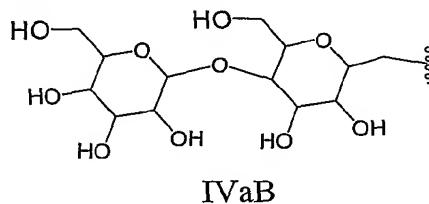
[0054] When R^{6B} is a sugar residue having formula **IIIB** or **IVB**, R^{7B} may be $-\text{OCH}_3$ or $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, and R^{9B} may be a direct bond; k_b may be 0; and j_b may be 1. These sugar residues have formulae **IIIaB** and **IIIbB**, in any stereoisomeric form:



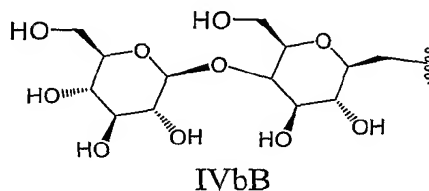
[0055] Furthermore, sugar residues **IIIaB** and **IIIbB** include, but are not limited to, stereoisomeric residues **IIIcB** and **IIIdB**, respectively



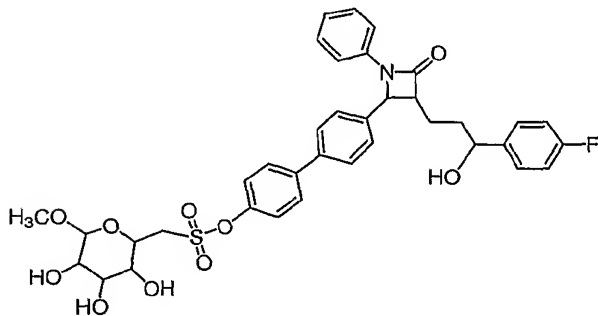
[0056] Similarly, in the aforementioned embodiments, when R^{6B} has formula **IVB**, R^{8B} may be $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, and R^{9B} may be a direct bond; kb may be 0; and jb may be 1. This sugar residue has the following formula **IVaB** in any stereoisomeric form:

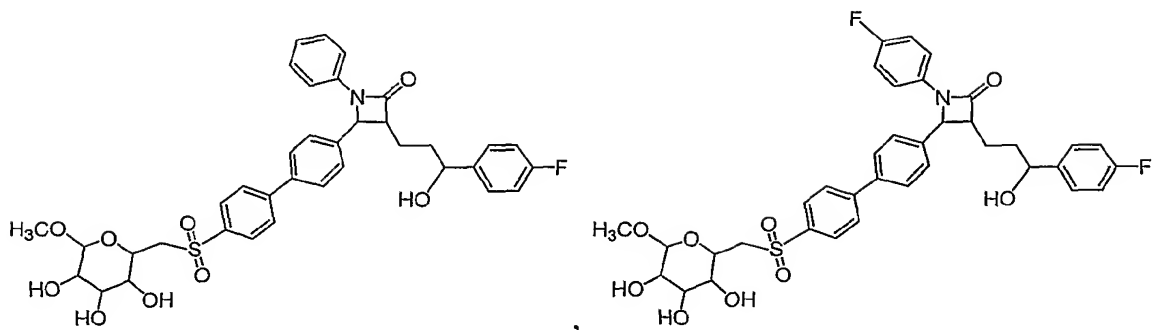
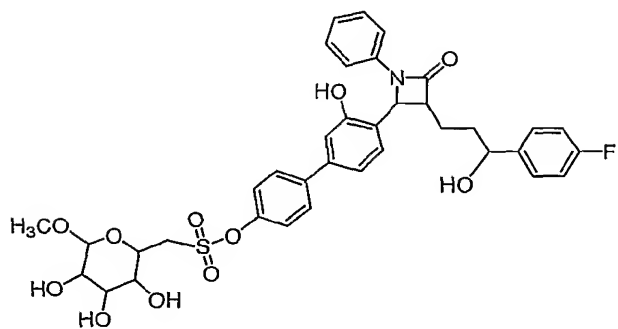
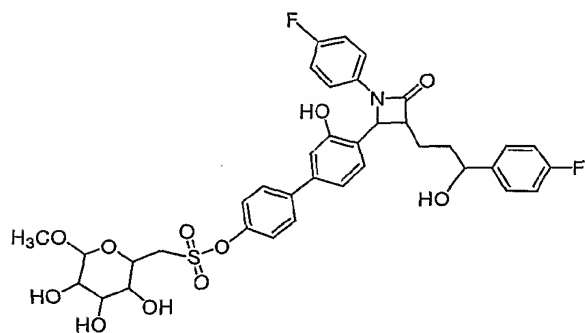
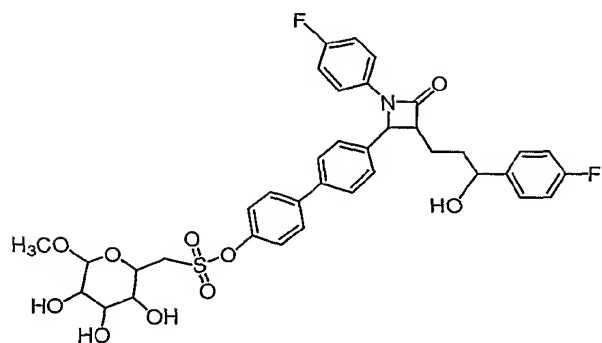


[0057] Sugar residue **IVB** includes, but is not limited to, a residue of cellobiose represented stereochemically by residue **IVbB**

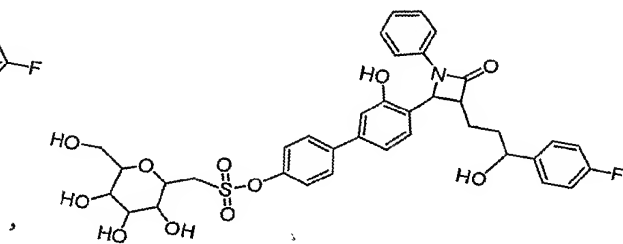
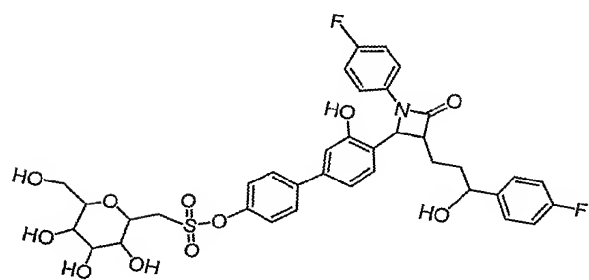
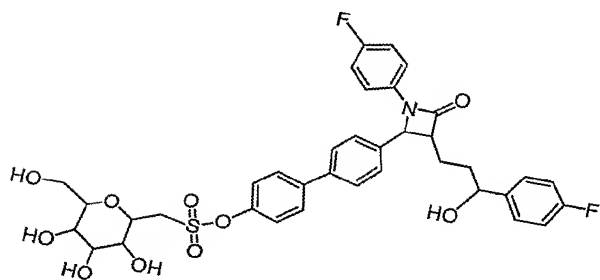
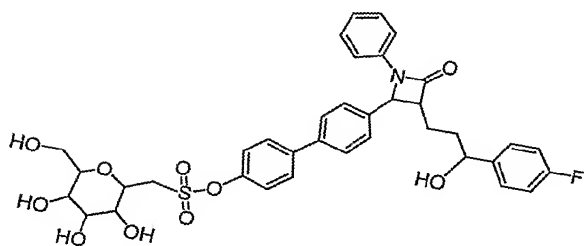
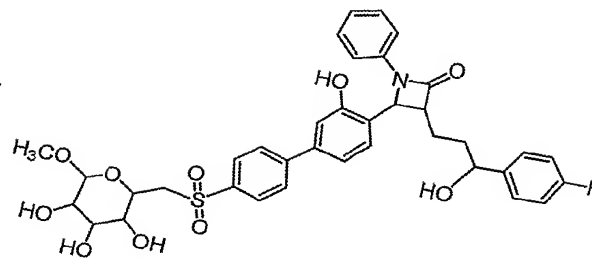
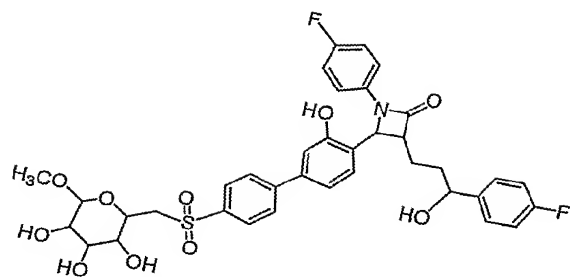


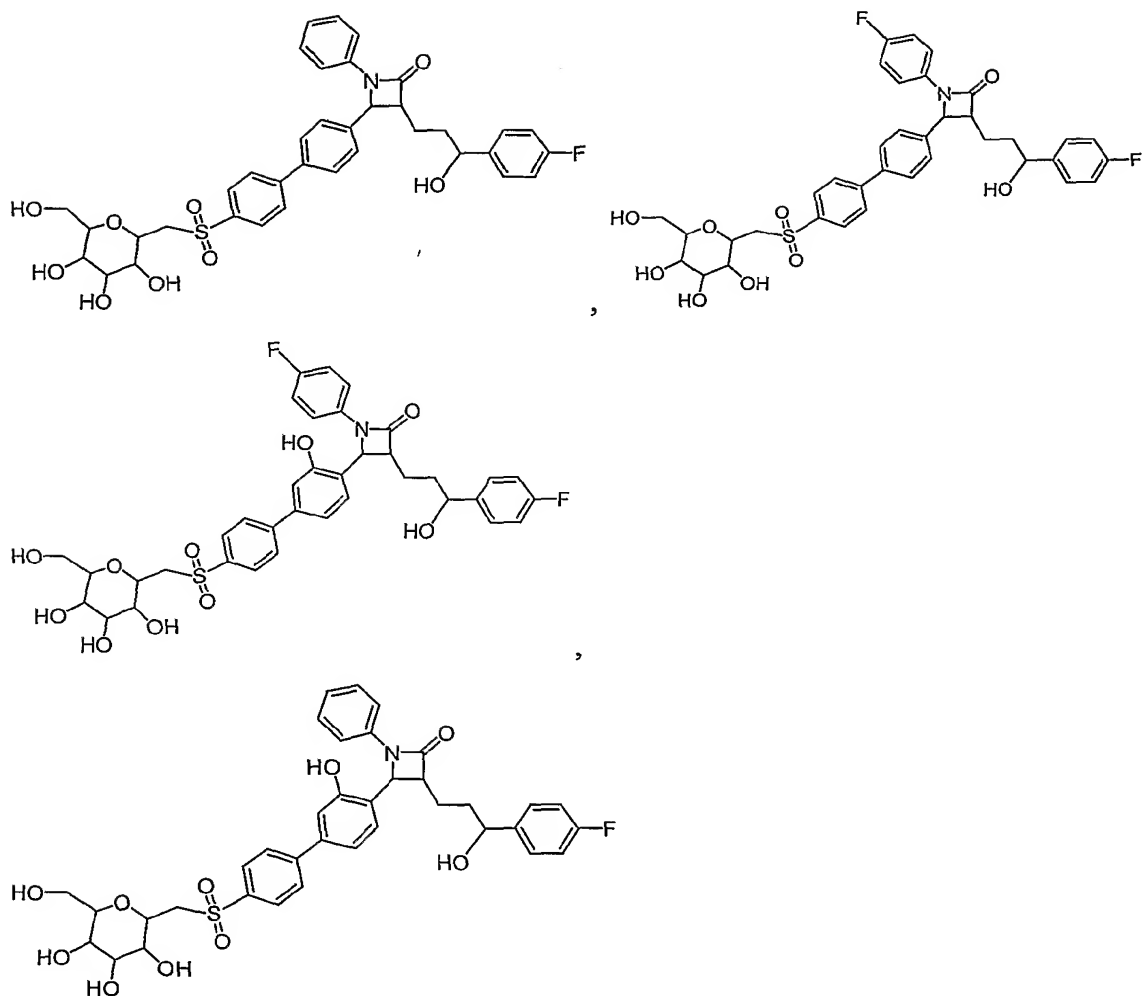
[0058] Compounds of formula **IIB**, wherein R^{5B} is $-\text{OSO}_2-R^{6B}$ or $-\text{SO}_2-R^{6B}$ attached to the para position, and R^{6B} is a sugar residue having formula **IIIaB** or **IIIbB** include, but are not limited to:





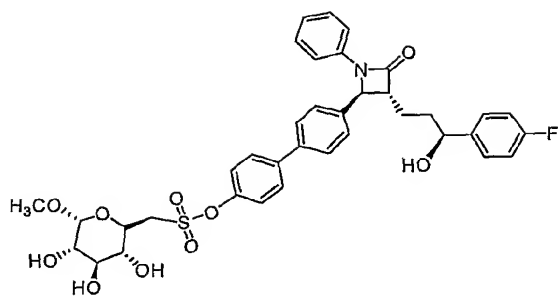
- 43 -



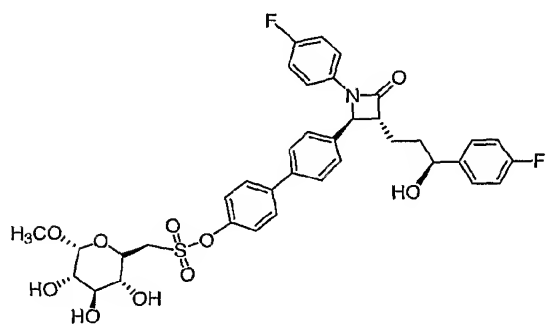


[0059] The above embodiments of formula **IIb** include all stereoisomeric forms of the compounds. To illustrate, R^{6B} may be stereoisomeric residue **IIIcB** or **IIIdB**, the 3-Position of the azetidinone ring may be of the (*S*)-configuration, and the 4-Position of the azetidinone ring may be of the (*R*)-configuration. Enantiomers corresponding to these embodiments include:

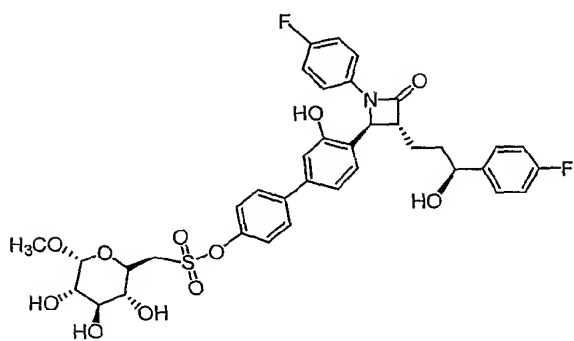
- 45 -



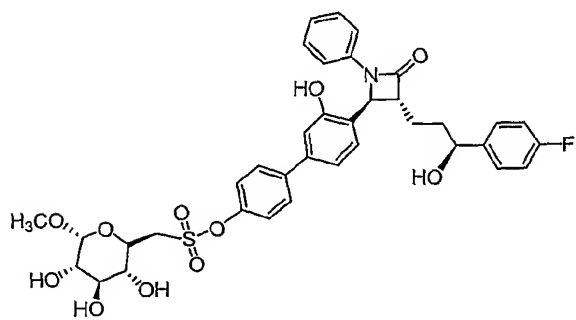
,



,

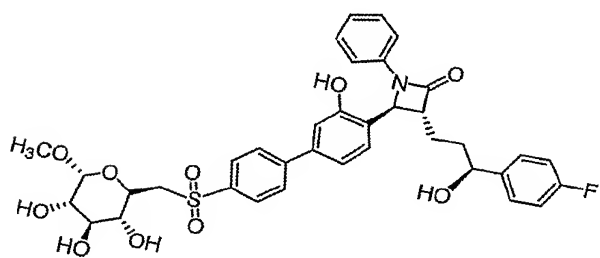
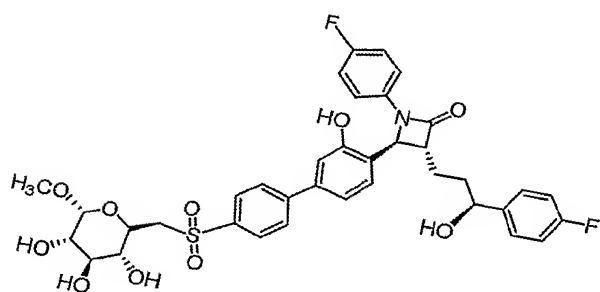
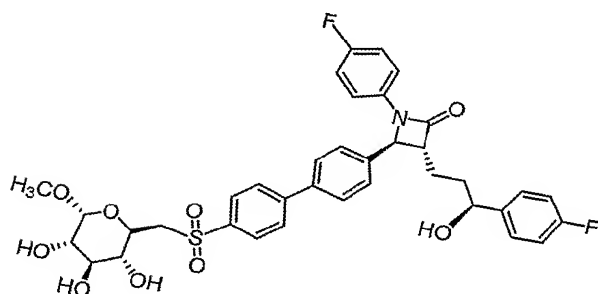
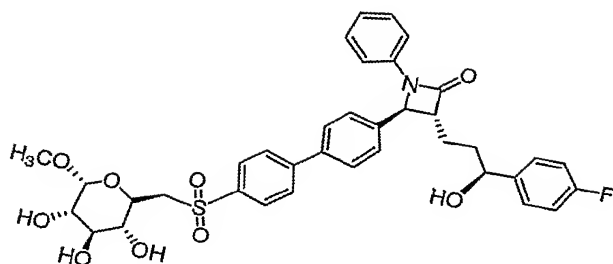


,

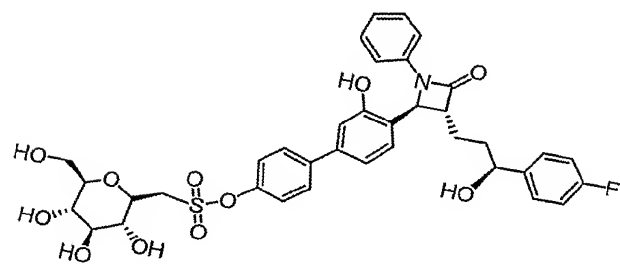
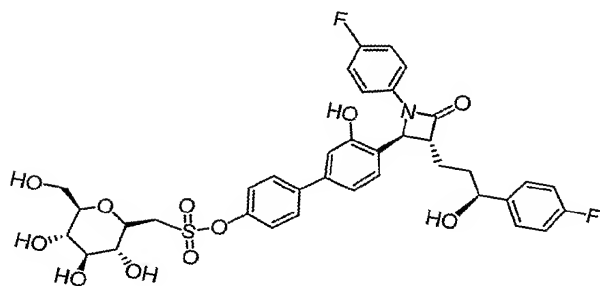
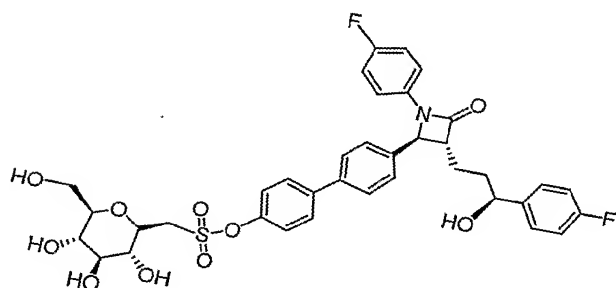
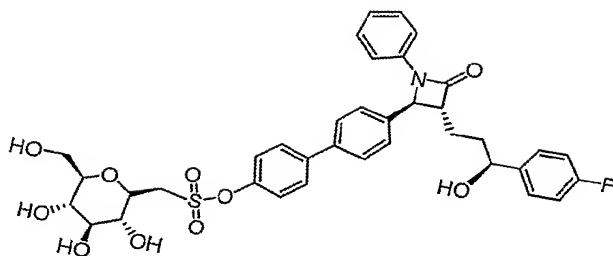


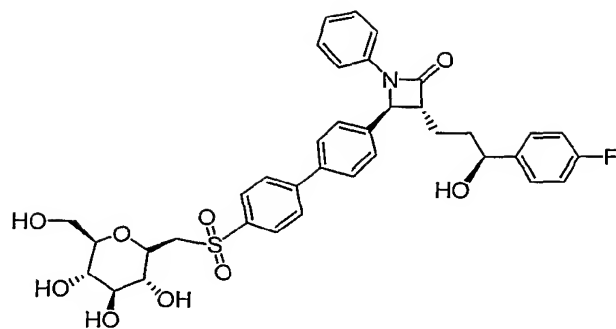
,

- 46 -

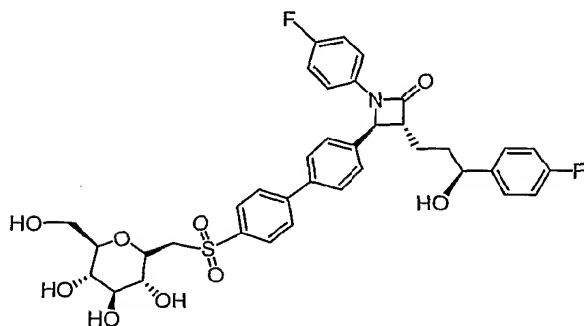


- 47 -

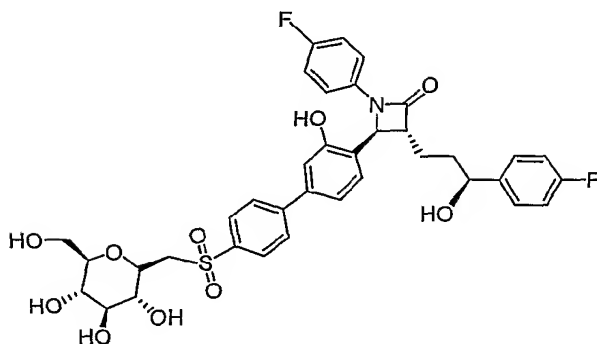




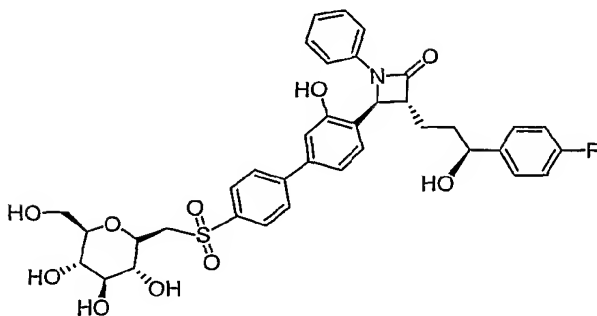
,



,



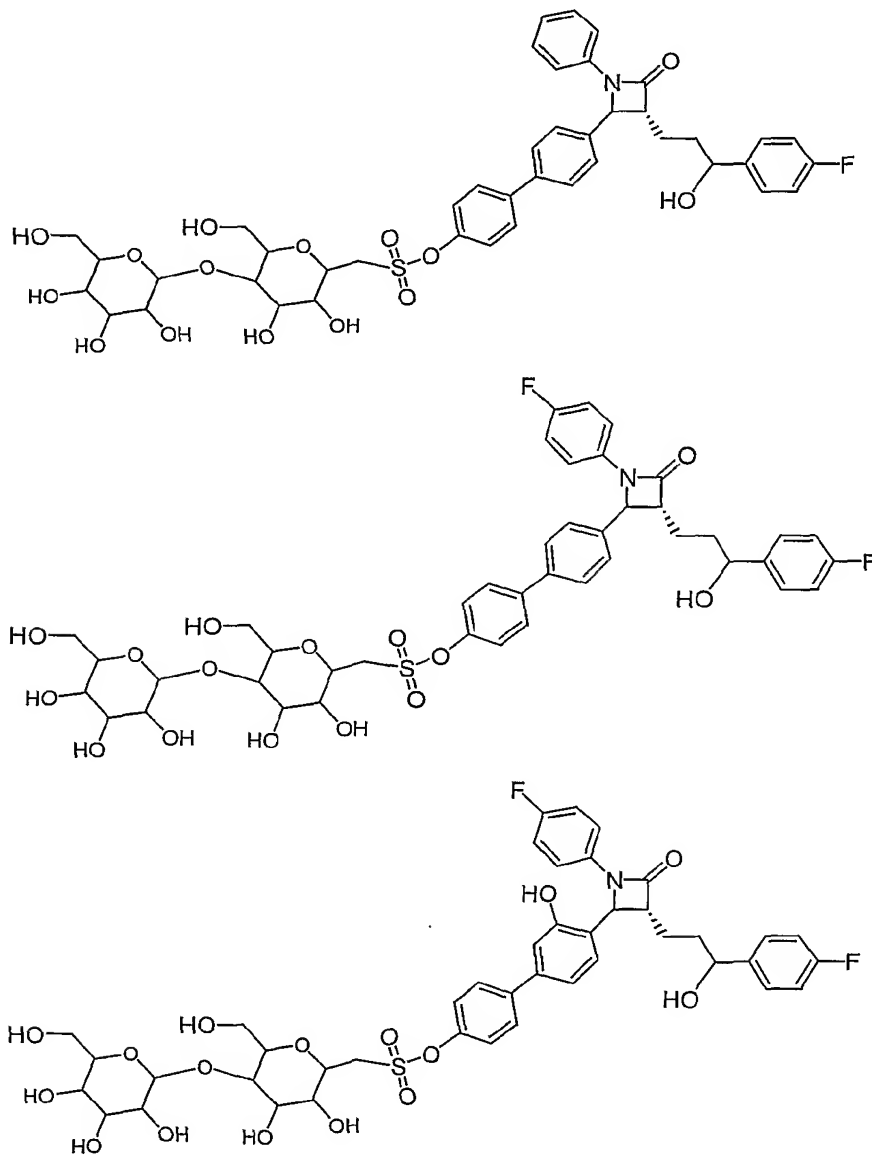
,



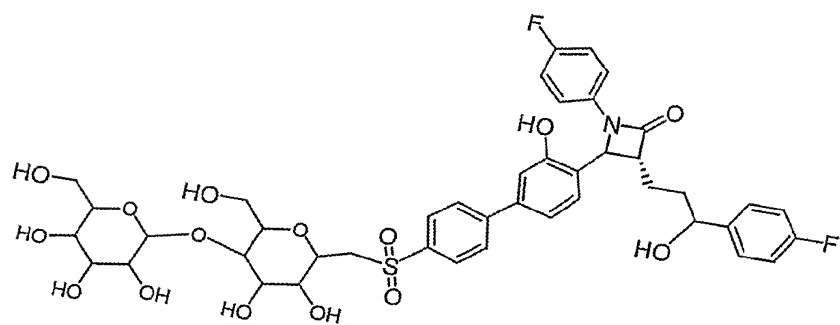
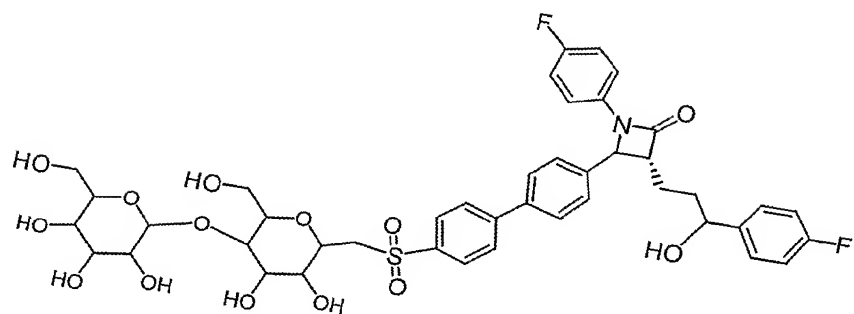
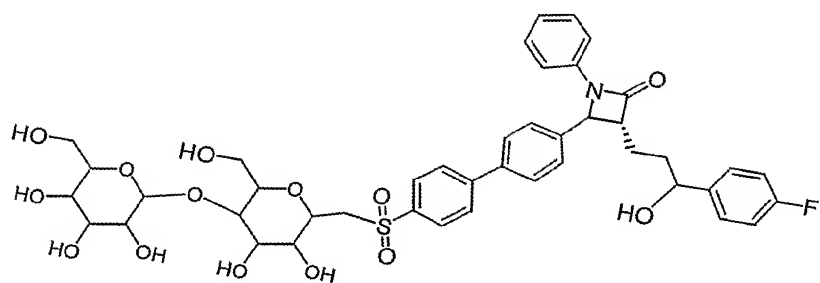
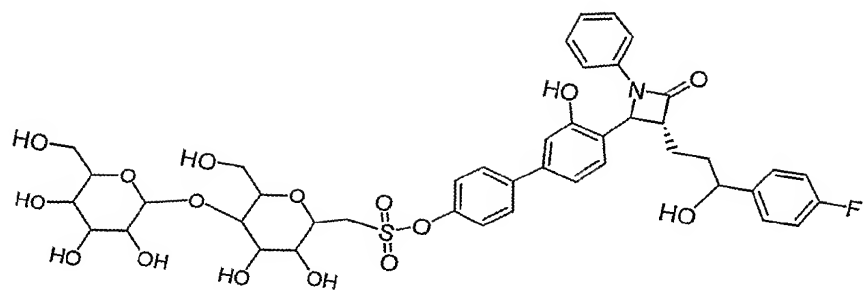
[0060] Alternatively, in other embodiments of formula **IIB**, where R^{5B} is -OSO₂-R^{6B} or -SO₂-R^{6B} is attached to the para position, and sugar residue R^{6B} is a stereoisomeric

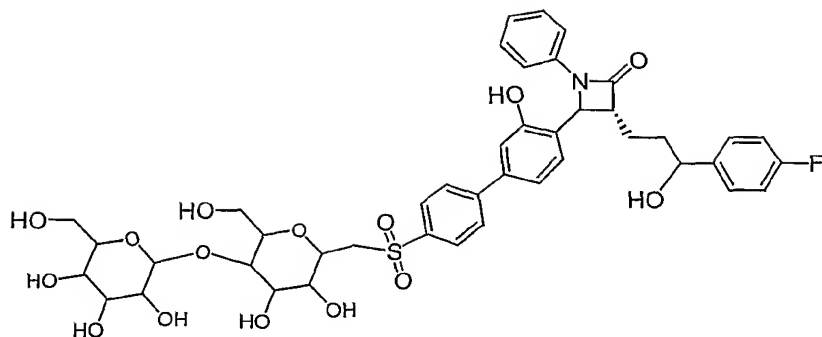
residue having formula **IIIcB** or **IIIdB**, the 3-Position of the azetidinone ring may be of the (*R*)-configuration, and the 4-Position of the azetidinone ring may be of the (*S*)-configuration. These enantiomers are not depicted herein, but such graphic representations would be obvious to those of ordinary skill in the chemical arts.

[0061] Compounds of formula **IIB**, wherein R^{5B} is OSO_2-R^{6B} or $-SO_2-R^{6B}$ attached to the para position, and R^{6B} is a sugar residue having formula **IVaB** include, but are not limited to:

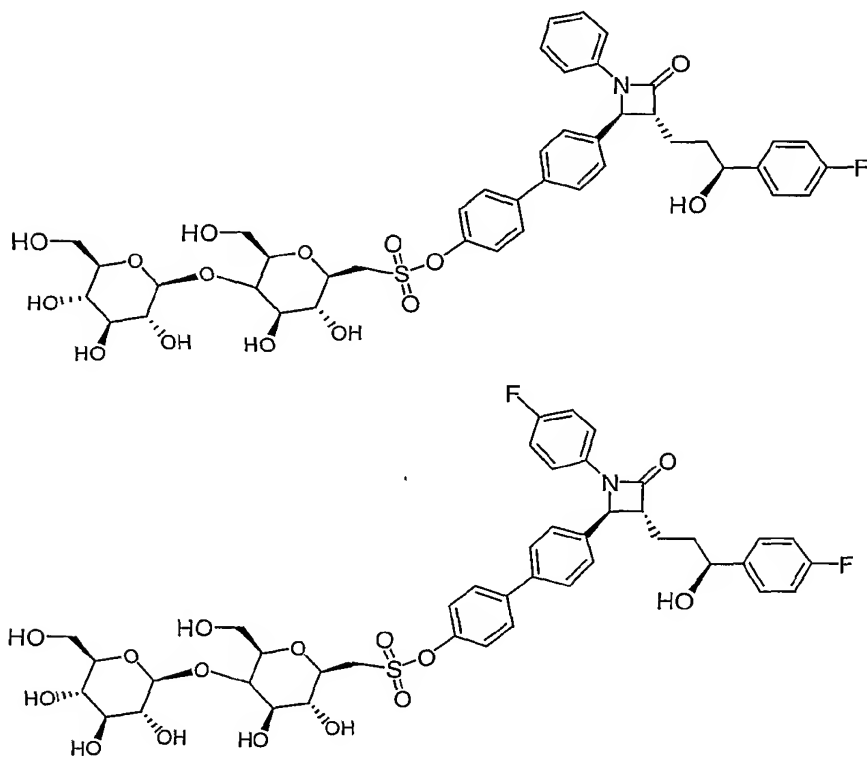


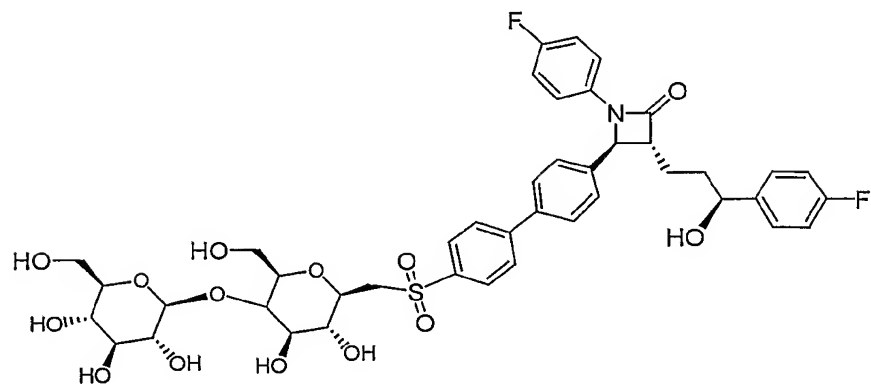
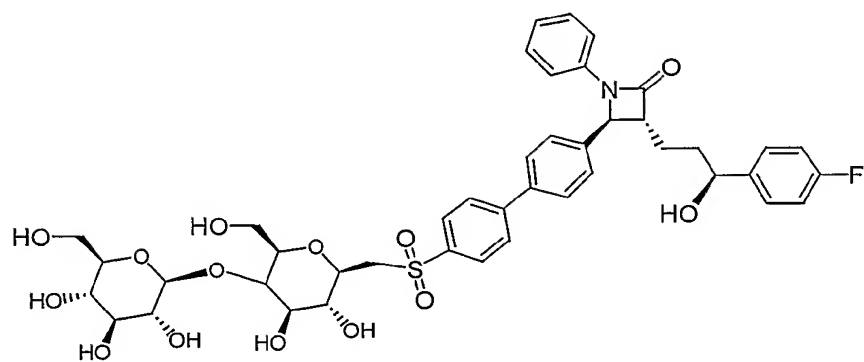
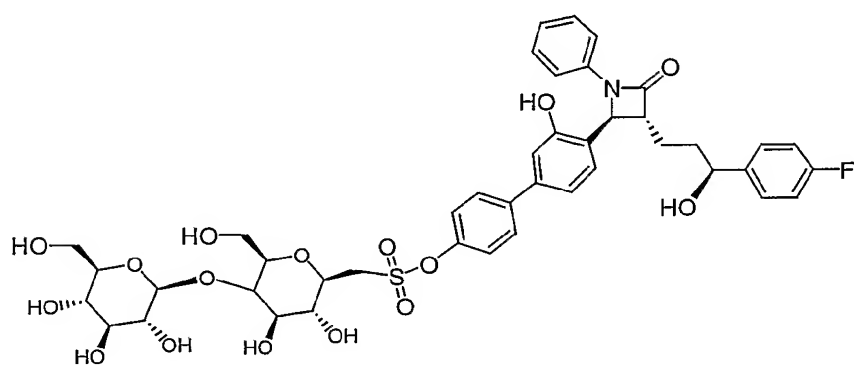
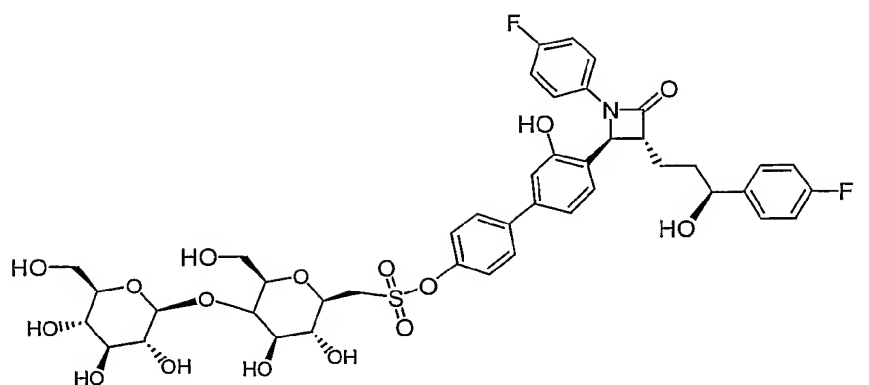
- 50 -

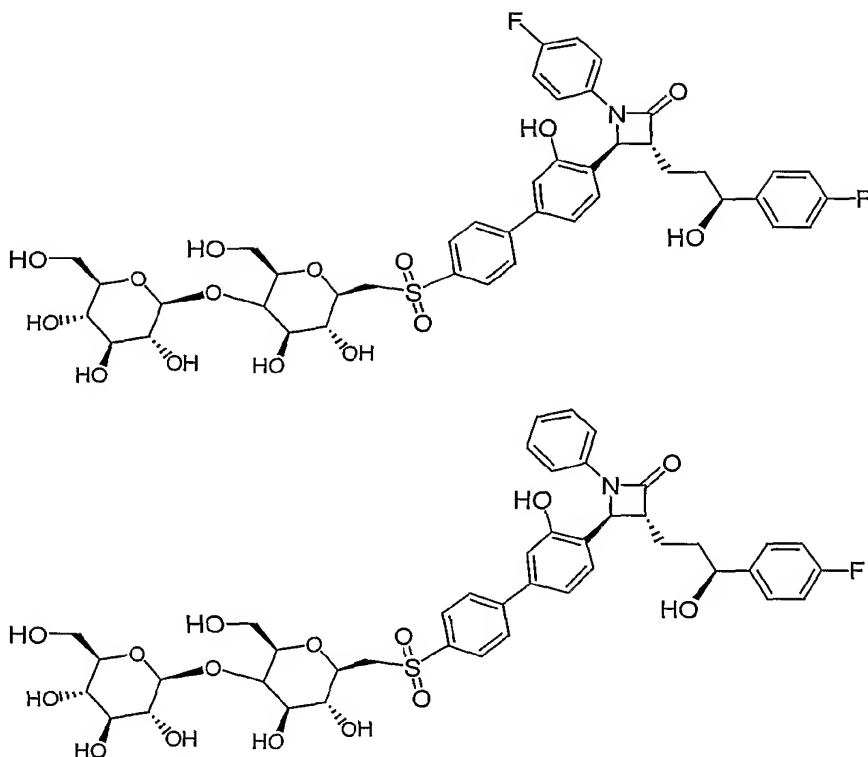




[0062] The above examples of compounds **IIB**, wherein R^{5B} is -OSO₂-R^{6B} or -SO₂-R^{6B} in the para position, and sugar residue R^{6B} has formula **IVaB**, include all stereoisomeric forms of the compounds. To illustrate, R^{6B} may be cellobiose residue **IVbB**, the 3-Position of the azetidinone ring may be of the (*S*)-configuration, and the 4-Position of the azetidinone ring may be of the (*R*)-configuration. Enantiomers corresponding to these embodiments include:







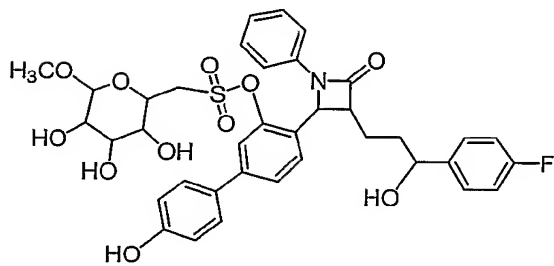
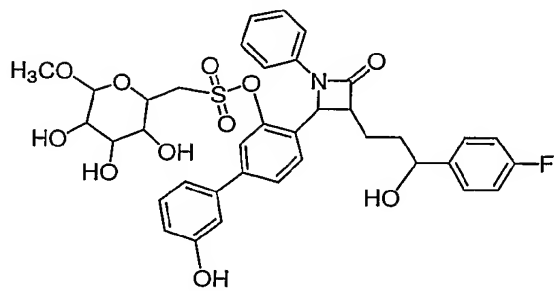
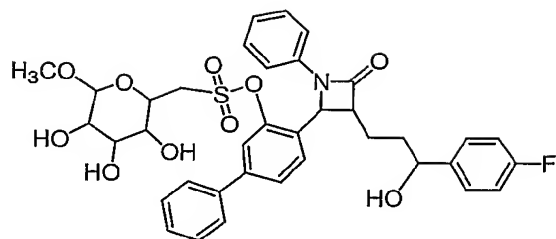
[0063] Alternatively, in other embodiments of formula **IIB**, where R^{5B} is $-\text{OSO}_2\text{-R}^{6B}$ or $-\text{SO}_2\text{-R}^{6B}$ in the para position, and R^{6B} is a cellobiose residue having formula **IVbB**, the 3-Position of the azetidinone ring may be of the (*R*)-configuration, and the 4-Position of the azetidinone ring may be of the (*S*)-configuration. These enantiomers are not depicted herein, but such graphic representations would be obvious to those of ordinary skill in the chemical arts.

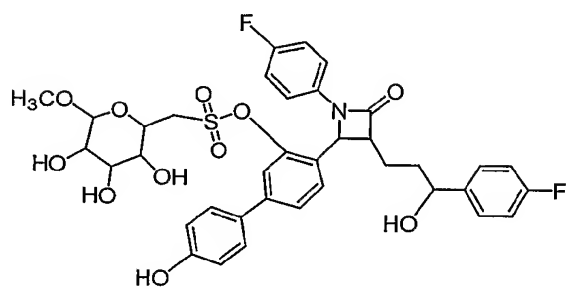
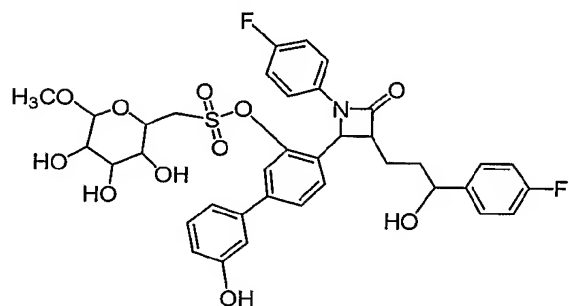
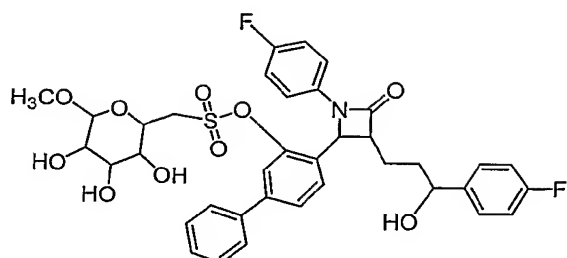
[0064] In other embodiments of the present compounds of formula **IB** and **IIB**, wherein R^{5B} is $-\text{OSO}_2\text{-R}^{6B}$ or $-\text{SO}_2\text{-R}^{6B}$, R^{6B} is a residue of a glucuronide or a sugar carbamate, as defined herein. Again, such embodiments of R^{5B} are often located in the para position. Illustrative compounds are found in the examples that follow, but the invention is not limited to those compounds, and other embodiments wherein R^{6B} is a glucuronide or sugar carbamate residue would be obvious to those of ordinary skill. Furthermore, the residues may exist in any stereoisomeric form.

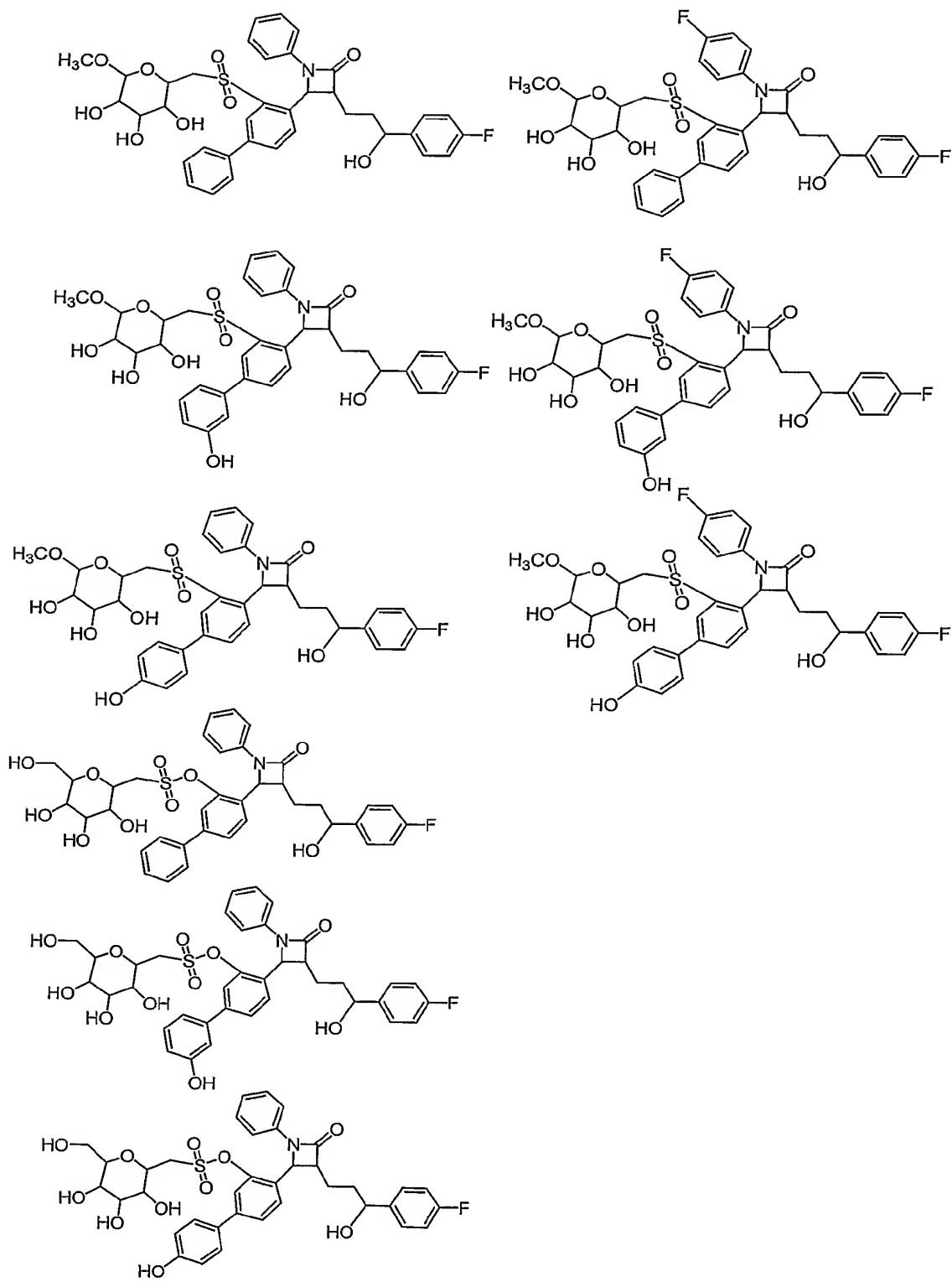
[0065] As previously mentioned, in certain compounds of formula **IB** and **IIB**, the ortho substituent, R^{4B} , attached to the first ring of the biphenyl (relative to the azetidinone ring)

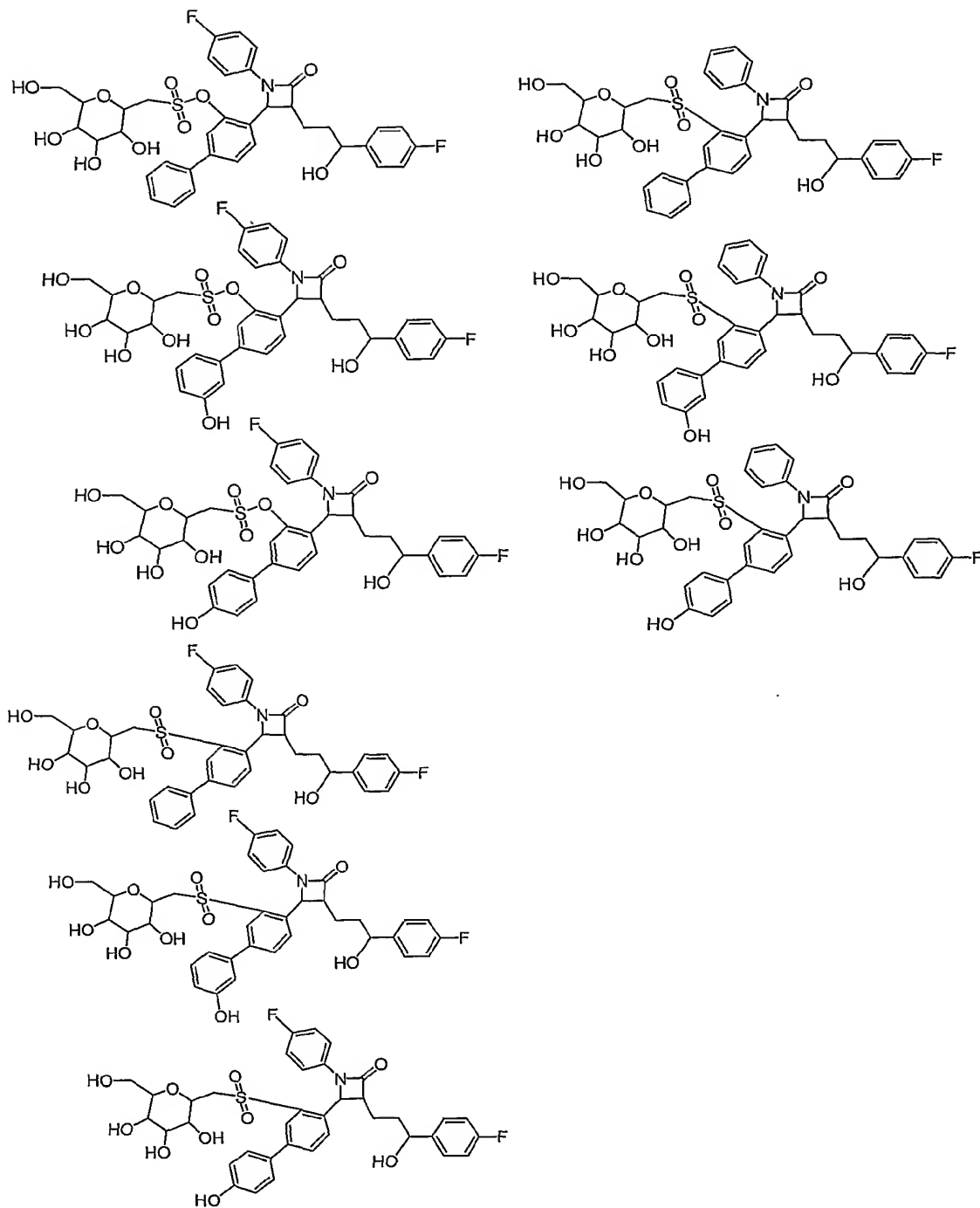
may be $-\text{OSO}_2\text{-R}^{6\text{Ba}}$ or $-\text{SO}_2\text{-R}^{6\text{Ba}}$, wherein $\text{R}^{6\text{Ba}}$ is a residue of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide, or a sugar carbamate, as defined herein. Exemplary sugar residues include, but are not limited to, those described above having structures **IIIB**, **IIIaB-dB**, **IVB**, and **IVaB-bB**. In these embodiments, $\text{R}^{6\text{Ba}}$ is coupled to the phenyl ring via a sulfonate ($-\text{OSO}_2-$) or sulfonyl ($-\text{SO}_2$) linkage. These $\text{R}^{4\text{B}}$ radicals may exist in any stereoisomeric form.

[0066] Compounds of formula **IIIB**, wherein $\text{R}^{4\text{B}}$ is $-\text{OSO}_2\text{-R}^{6\text{Ba}}$ or $-\text{SO}_2\text{-R}^{6\text{Ba}}$, and $\text{R}^{6\text{Ba}}$ is a sugar residue having formula **IIIaB** or **IIIbB** include, but are not limited to:

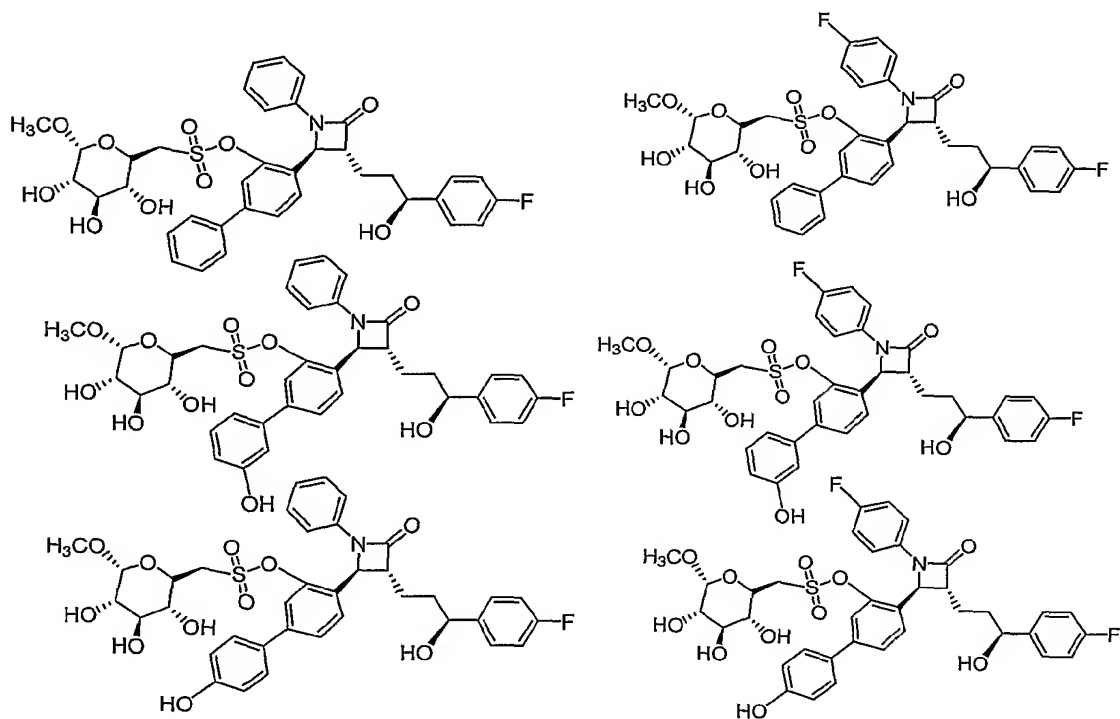


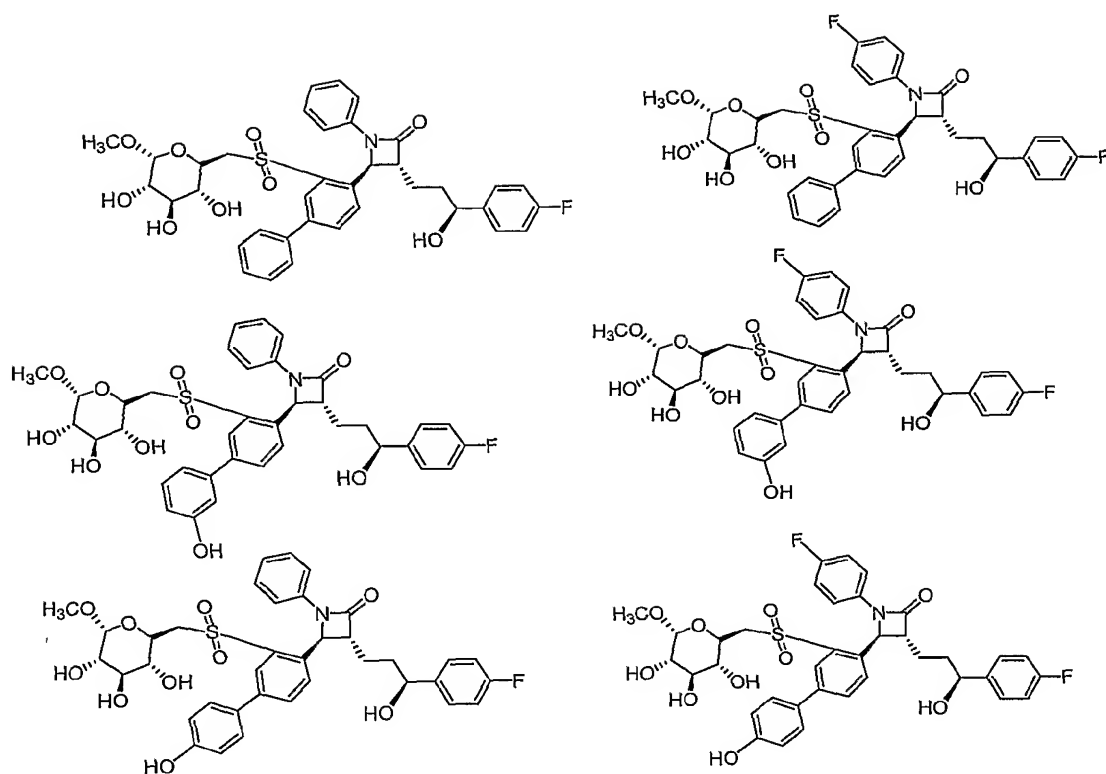


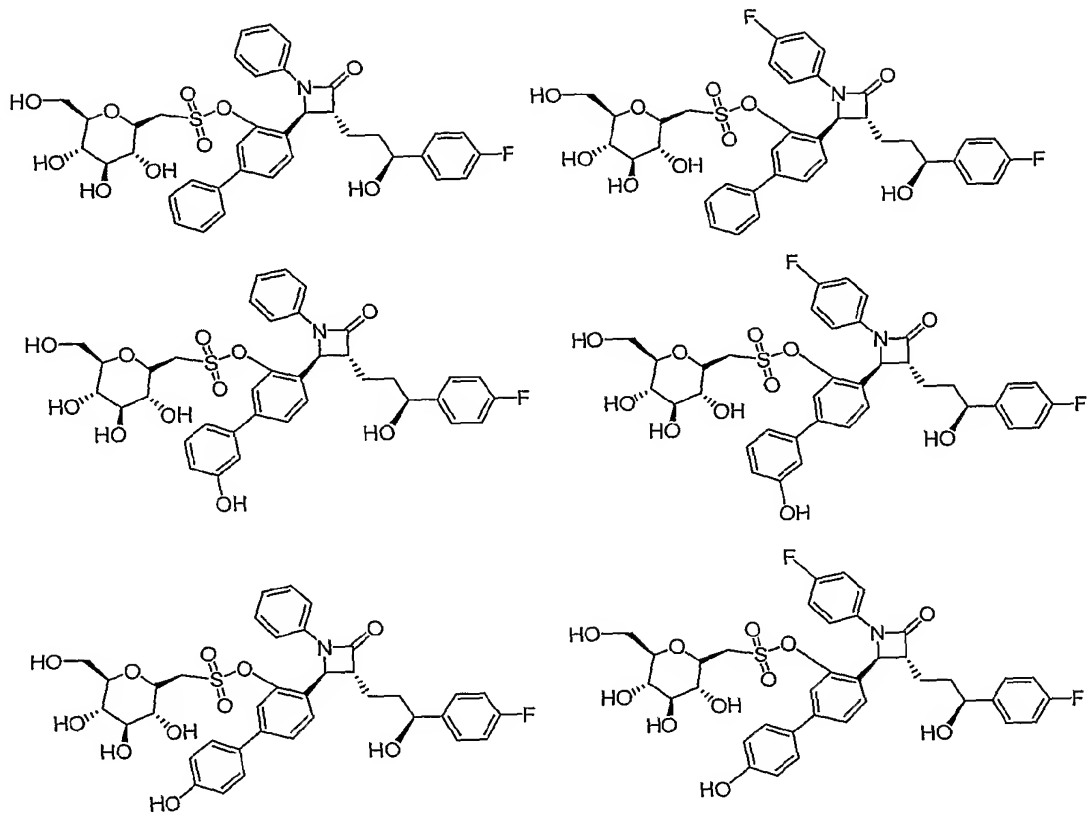


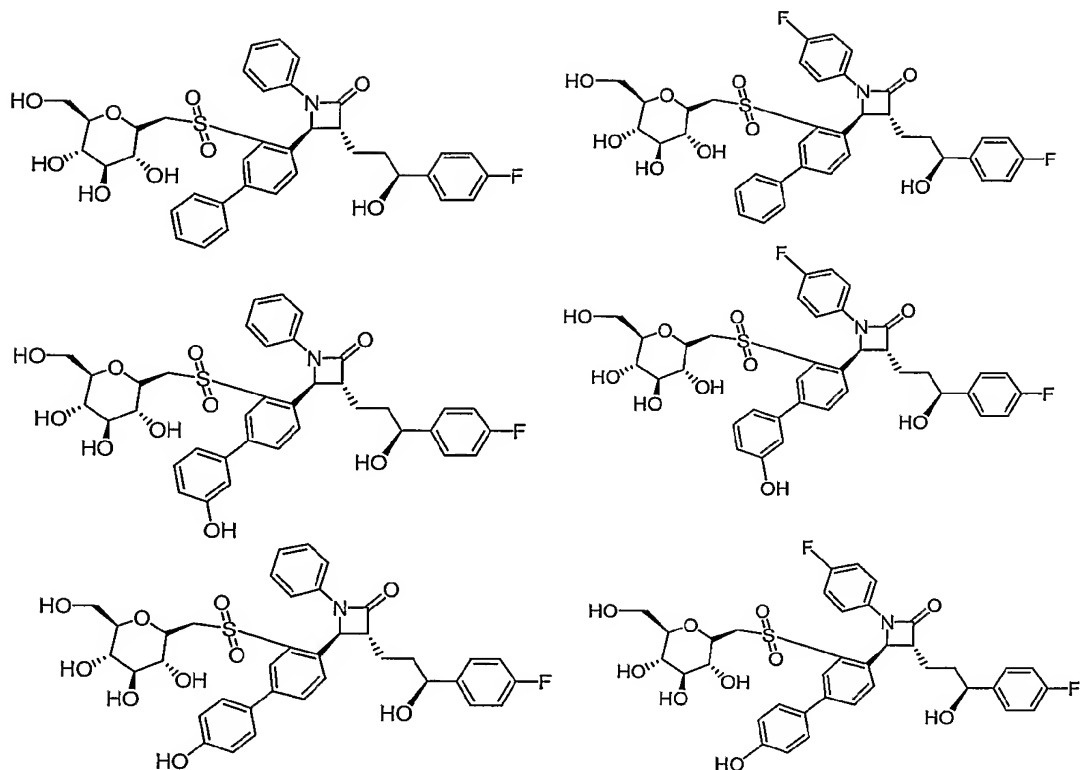


[0067] The above embodiments of formula **IIB** include all stereoisomeric forms of the compounds. To illustrate, R^{6Ba} may be stereoisomeric residue **IIIcB** or **IIIdB**, the



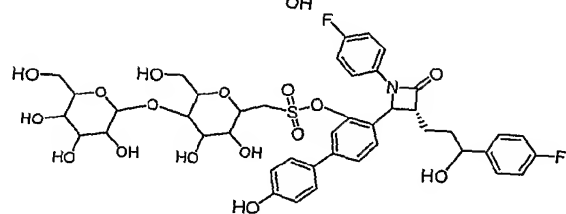
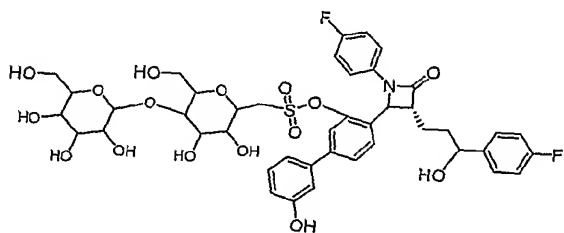
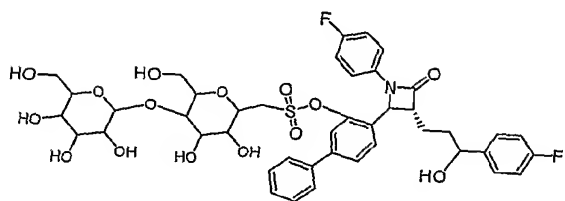
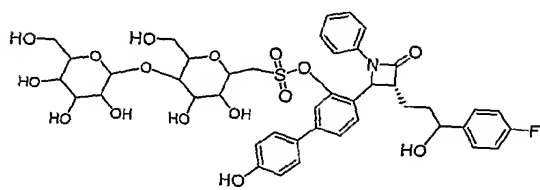
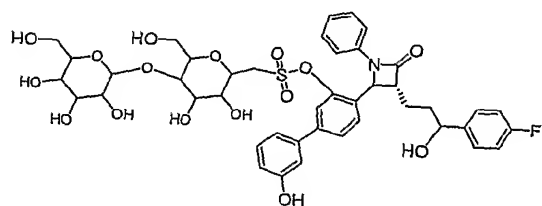
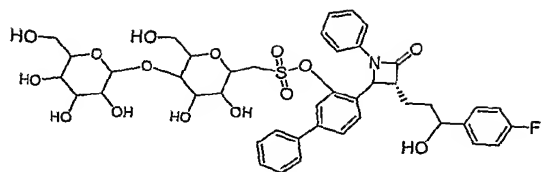


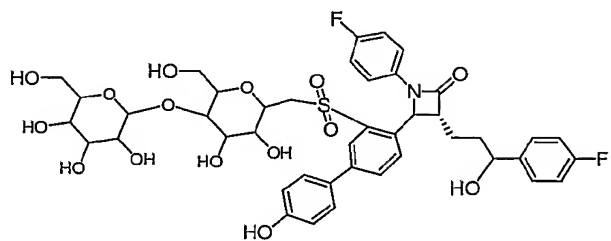
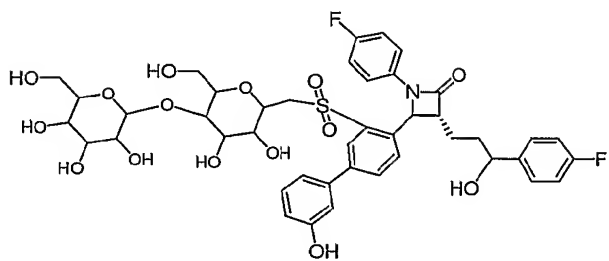
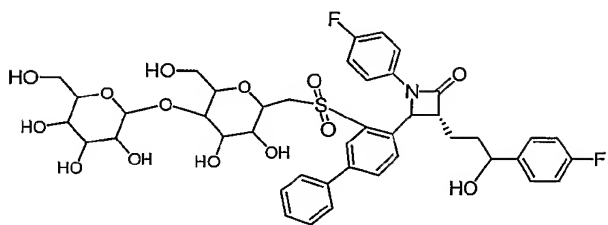
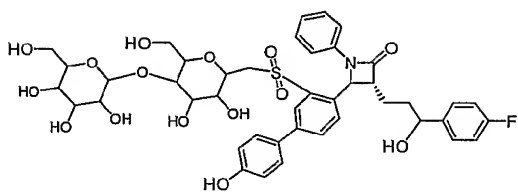
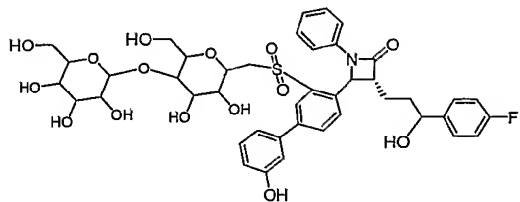
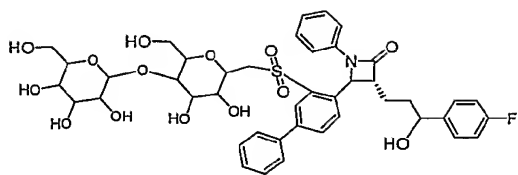




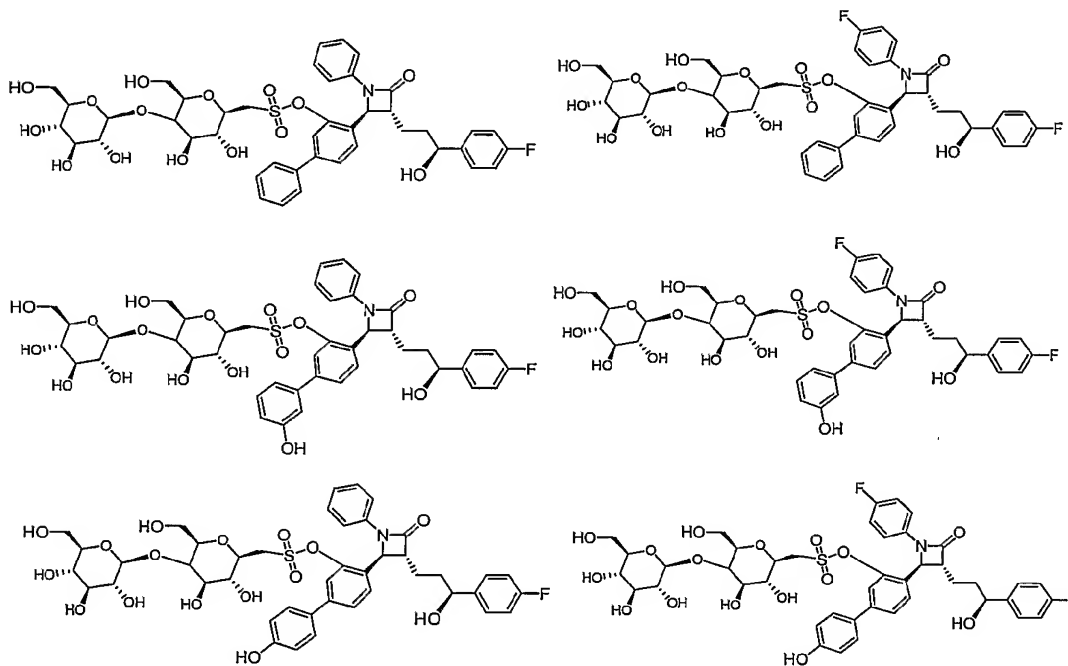
[0068] Alternatively, in other embodiments of formula **IIB**, where R^{4B} is $-\text{OSO}_2\text{-R}^{6Ba}$ or $-\text{SO}_2\text{-R}^{6Ba}$, and sugar residue R^{6Ba} is a stereoisomeric residue having formula **IIIcB** or **IIIdB**, the 3-Position of the azetidinone ring may be of the (*R*)-configuration, and the 4-Position of the azetidinone ring may be of the (*S*)-configuration. These enantiomers are not depicted herein, but such graphic representations would be obvious to those of ordinary skill in the chemical arts.

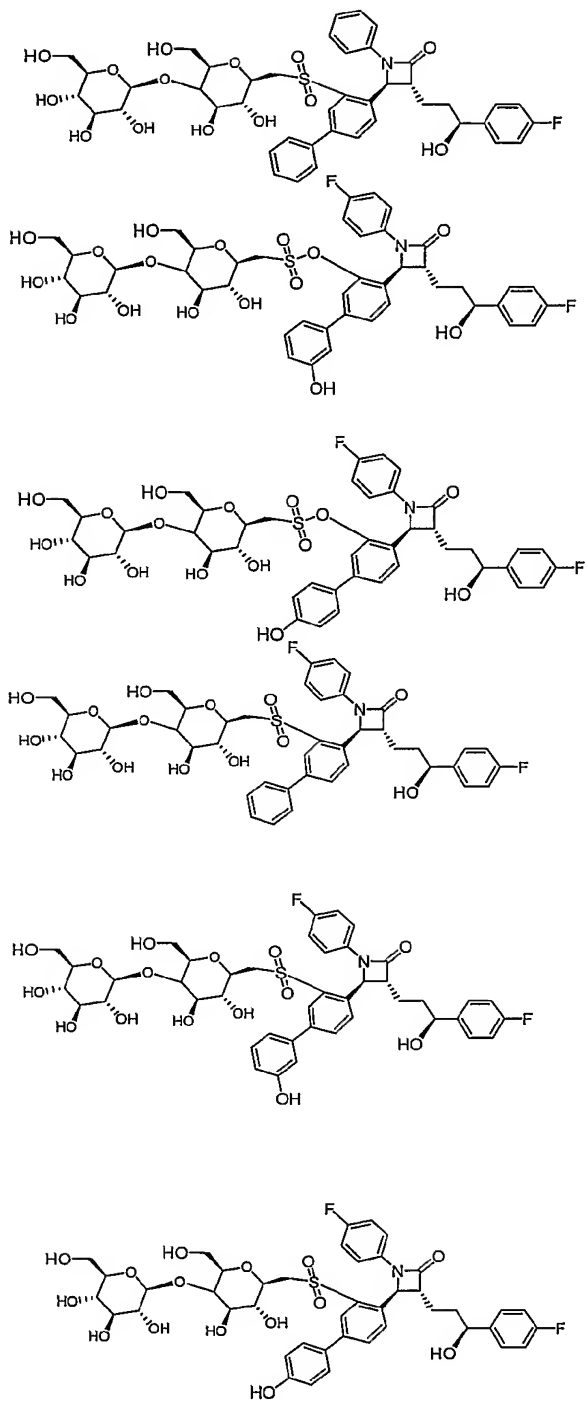
[0069] Compounds of formula **IIB**, wherein R^{4B} is $\text{OSO}_2\text{-R}^{6Ba}$ or $-\text{SO}_2\text{-R}^{6Ba}$, and R^{6Ba} is a sugar residue having formula **IVaB** include, but are not limited to:





[0070] The above examples of compounds **IIB**, wherein R^{4B} is $-\text{OSO}_2\text{-}R^{6Ba}$ or $-\text{SO}_2\text{-}R^{6Ba}$, and sugar residue R^{6Ba} has formula **IVaB**, include all stereoisomeric forms of the compounds. To illustrate, R^{6Ba} may be cellobiose residue **IVbB**, the 3-Position of the azetidinone ring may be of the (*S*)-configuration, and the 4-Position of the azetidinone ring may be of the (*R*)-configuration. Enantiomers corresponding to these embodiments include:





[0071] Alternatively, in other embodiments of formula **IIB**, where R^{4B} is $-\text{OSO}_2\text{-R}^{6Ba}$ or $-\text{SO}_2\text{-R}^{6Ba}$, and R^{6Ba} is a cellibiose residue having formula **IVBb**, the 3-Position of the

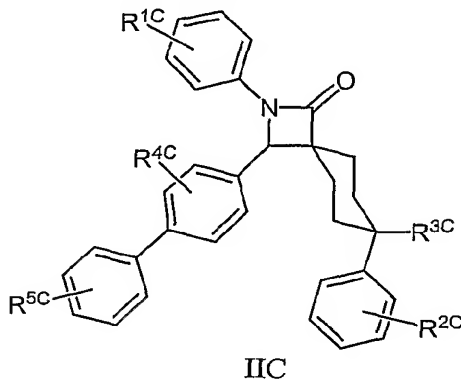
azetidinone ring may be of the (*R*)-configuration, and the 4-Position of the azetidinone ring may be of the (*S*)-configuration. These enantiomers are not depicted herein, but such graphic representations would be obvious to those of ordinary skill in the chemical arts.

[0072] In still other embodiments of the present compounds of formula **IB** and **IIB**, wherein R^{4B} is $-\text{OSO}_2\text{-R}^{6Ba}$ or $-\text{SO}_2\text{-R}^{6Ba}$, R^{6Ba} is a residue of a glucuronide or a sugar carbamate, as defined herein. Illustrative compounds are found in the examples that follow, but the invention is not limited to those compounds, and other embodiments wherein R^{6B} is a glucuronide or sugar carbamate residue would be obvious to those of ordinary skill. Furthermore, the residues may exist in any stereoisomeric form.

[0073] In the present spirocyclic biphenylazetidinone compounds of formula **IC**, a phenyl group is linked to the 3-Position of the azetidinone ring via a fused spirocyclohexylene ring. As depicted in formulae **IC** and **IIC** and compounds thereof found herein, the configuration of the substituents at the 1 and 4 positions of the cyclohexylene ring is for convenience only and is intended to encompass both the *cis* and the *trans* isomers. In general, the carbonyl at the 2-Position of the azetidinone ring and the phenyl group attached to the 4-Position of the cyclohexylene ring are equatorial, and R^{3C} is axial. However, embodiments wherein the carbonyl is not within the plane of the azetidinone ring, i.e. when the carbonyl is axial, and wherein the phenyl group is axial, and R^{3C} is equatorial are also encompassed by the present invention.

[0074] In certain embodiments of the present compounds having formula **IC**, R^{1C} and R^{2C} are selected independently from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, $-\text{OH}$, and lower alkoxy; R^{3C} and R^{4C} are selected independently from the group consisting of hydrogen, $-\text{OH}$, and a glucuronide residue; and R^{5C} is selected from the group consisting of $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{PO}_3\text{H}_2$, $-\text{SO}_3\text{H}$, $-\text{OSO}_2\text{-R}^{6C}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-R}^{6C}$, and a residue selected from the group consisting of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide, and a sugar carbamate; R^{6C} is a residue selected from the group consisting of a sugar, a glucuronide, a polyol, and a sugar carbamate.

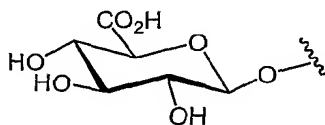
[0075] In formula **IC**, a biphenyl is located at the 4-Position of the azetidinone ring. Thus, one subgenus includes compounds of formula **IIC**



[0076] However, the invention is not limited to this particular embodiment depicted by formula **IIC**.

[0077] In certain embodiments of formula **IC**, as well as in those of formula **IIC**, one or both of R^{1C} and R^{2C} may be fluorine. When R^{1C} is fluorine, R^{1C} may be in the para position on its corresponding phenyl ring. Likewise, in certain embodiments when R^{2C} is fluorine, R^{2C} may be a para substituent. In other embodiments, one or both of R^{1C} and R^{2C} may be hydrogen.

[0078] In certain embodiments of formula **IC** and formula **IIC**, R^{3C} is -OH. In other embodiments, R^{3C} is hydrogen. In yet other embodiments, R^{3C} is a glucuronide residue. One glucuronide residue for attachment as R^{3C} has the following formula

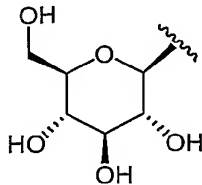


wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment. However, R^{3C} is not limited to this glucuronide residue embodiment.

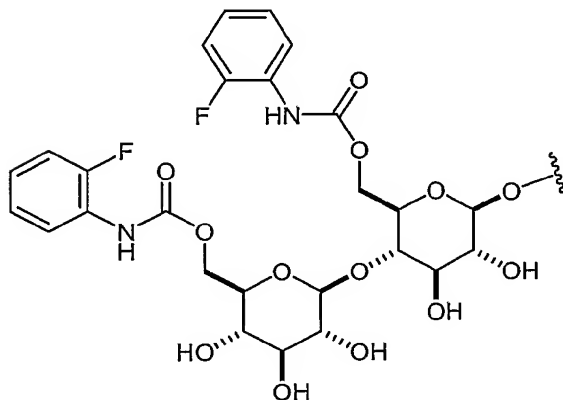
[0079] R^{4C} is -OH in some embodiments of formula **IC** and **IIC**. In other embodiments, R^{4C} is a glucuronide residue, such as, but not limited to, the one depicted above. Often, R^{4C} is located in the ortho position relative to the azetidinone ring.

[0080] In compounds where R^{5C} is -OH or a residue of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide, or a sugar carbamate, the R^{5C} substituent may be attached to either the meta or para position

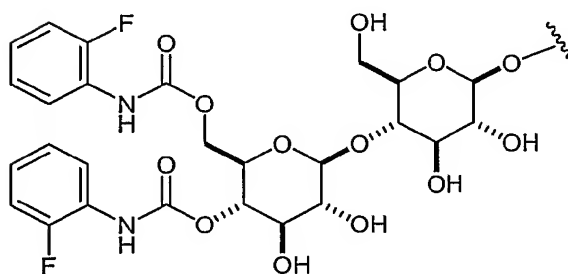
of the phenyl ring. In certain embodiments, R^{5C} is a sugar residue, such as, but not limited to that of D-glycitol having the following formula



wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the phenyl ring. In other embodiments, R^{5C} is a glucuronide residue, such as, but not limited to the one depicted above. In certain other embodiments, R^{5C} is a residue of a sugar carbamate. Sugar carbamate residues for attachment as R^{5C} include, but are not limited to the following:



and



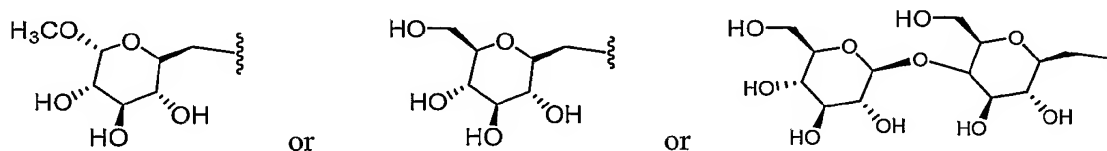
Again, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the phenyl ring.

[0081] In other embodiments R^{5C} is $-PO_3H_2$, or $-SO_3H$. In these embodiments R^{5C} is typically located at the para position of its phenyl ring.

[0082] In still other embodiments the second phenyl of the biphenyl in formula IC or IIC is coupled to a residue of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide, or a sugar carbamate, designated herein as R^{6C} , via a sulfonate or sulfonyl linkage. In these embodiments, R^{5C} represents

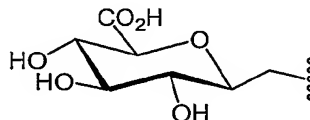
either the sulfonate link and the residue ($-\text{OSO}_2\text{-R}^{6\text{C}}$) or the sulfonyl link and the residue ($-\text{SO}_2\text{-R}^{6\text{C}}$). In certain embodiments, these $\text{R}^{5\text{C}}$ sulfonate/sulfonyl radicals are located in the para position of the phenyl ring. In other embodiments, the $\text{R}^{5\text{C}}$ sulfonate/sulfonyl radicals are meta substituents.

[0083] Furthermore, when $\text{R}^{5\text{C}}$ is $-\text{OSO}_2\text{-R}^{6\text{C}}$ or $-\text{SO}_2\text{-R}^{6\text{C}}$, $\text{R}^{6\text{C}}$ may be a sugar residue having one of the following formulae:



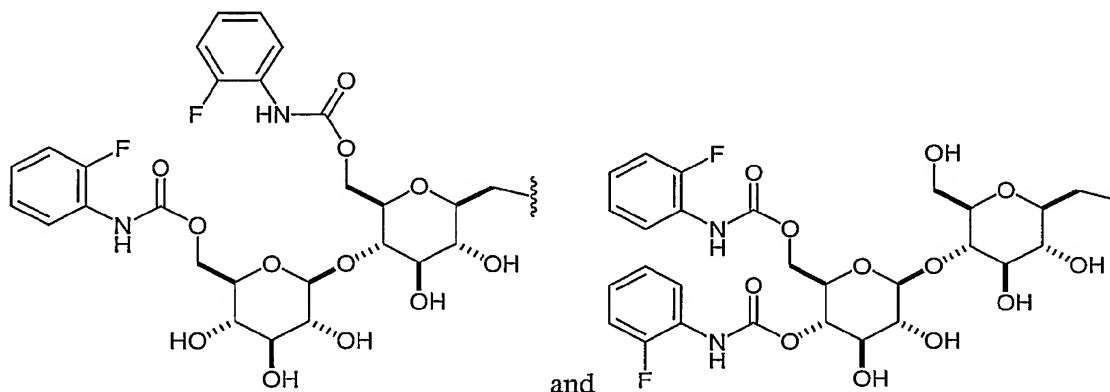
wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment. However, the invention is not limited to these sugar residues, and many other sugar residues, such as the ones listed below, are suitable for attachment to the phenyl via the sulfonyl or sulfonate linkage, as would be obvious to one of skill in the chemical arts.

[0084] Alternatively, $\text{R}^{6\text{C}}$ may be a glucuronide residue, such as, but not limited to the following:



wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment.

[0085] In other embodiments, $\text{R}^{6\text{C}}$ is a residue of a sugar carbamate, such as, but not limited to those having formulae:



wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the sulfonate or sulfonyl.

[0086] Some of the compounds of the invention are quaternary salts, i.e. cationic species.

Therefore they will always be presented as salts. Other compounds of the invention may contain basic or acidic residues, allowing them to be presented as salts. In the claims, reference to the acid includes its salts. Thus, for example, a claim to 4'-{(2*S*,3*R*)-3-[(3*S*)-3-(4-fluorophenyl)-3-hydroxypropyl]-4-oxo-1-Phenylazetidin-2-yl}-3'-hydroxybiphenyl-4-sulfonic acid is intended to encompass as well sodium 4'-{(2*S*,3*R*)-3-[(3*S*)-3-(4-fluorophenyl)-3-hydroxypropyl]-4-oxo-1-Phenylazetidin-2-yl}-3'-hydroxybiphenyl-4-sulfonate. The term "pharmaceutically acceptable salt" refers to salts whose counter ion derives from pharmaceutically acceptable non-toxic acids and bases. When the compounds contain a quat or a basic residue, suitable pharmaceutically acceptable base addition salts for the compounds of the present invention include inorganic acids, organic acids and, in the case of quats, water (which formally furnishes the hydroxide anion). Examples include hydroxide, acetate, benzenesulfonate (besylate), benzoate, bicarbonate, bisulfate, carbonate, camphorsulfonate, citrate, ethanesulfonate, fumarate, gluconate, glutamate, glycolate, bromide, chloride, isethionate, lactate, maleate, malate, mandelate, methanesulfonate, mucate, nitrate, pamoate, pantothenate, phosphate, succinate, sulfate, tartrate, trifluoroacetate, p-toluenesulfonate, acetamidobenzoate, adipate, alginate, aminosalicylate, anhydromethylenecitrate, ascorbate, aspartate, calcium edetate, camphorate, camsylate, caprate, caproate, caprylate, cinnamate, cyclamate, dichloroacetate, edetate (EDTA), edisylate, embonate, estolate, esylate, fluoride, formate, gentisate, gluceptate, glucuronate, glycerophosphate, glycolate, glycollylarsanilate, hexylresorcinate, hippurate, hydroxynaphthoate, iodide, lactobionate, malonate, mesylate, napadisylate, napsylate, nicotinate, oleate, orotate, oxalate, oxoglutarate, palmitate, pectinate, pectinate polymer, phenylethylbarbiturate, picrate, pidolate, propionate, rhodanide, salicylate, sebacate, stearate, tannate, theoclate, tosylate, and the like. When the compounds contain an acidic residue, suitable pharmaceutically acceptable base addition salts for the compounds of the present invention include ammonium, metallic salts made from aluminum, calcium, lithium, magnesium, potassium, sodium and zinc or organic salts made from lysine, N,N'-dibenzylethylenediamine, chlorprocaine, choline, diethanolamine, ethylenediamine,

meglumine (N-methylglucamine) and procaine. Other base addition salts includes those made from: arecoline, arginine, barium, benethamine, benzathine, betaine, bismuth, clemizole, copper, deanol, diethylamine, diethylaminoethanol, epolamine, ethylenediamine, ferric, ferrous, glucamine, glucosamine, histidine, hydrabamine, imidazole, isopropylamine, manganic, manganous, methylglucamine, morpholine, morpholineethanol, n-ethylmorpholine, n-ethylpiperidine, piperazine, piperidine, polyamine resins, purines, theobromine, triethylamine, trimethylamine, tripropylamine, trolamine, and tromethamine.

Therapeutic Indications

[0087] The present invention further provides methods for treating a condition for which a cholesterol absorption inhibitor is indicated; preventing or treating a cholesterol related disease; inhibiting the absorption of or reducing plasma or tissue concentration of one or more sterols or stanols; preventing or treating sistoserolemia; preventing or treating vascular diseases/disorders and conditions, dyslipidemia, mixed dyslipidemia, hypo α -lipoproteinemia, LDL pattern B, LDL pattern A, primary dysbetalipoproteinemia (Frederickson Type III), hyperlipidemia (including but not limited to hypercholesterolemia, hypertriglyceridemia, sitosterolemia), hypertension, angina pectoris, cardiac arrhythmias, congestive heart failure, and stroke; reducing the incidence of cardiovascular disease-related events; preventing or treating vascular conditions and associated thrombotic events; preventing or treating vascular inflammation; reducing blood plasma or serum concentrations of C-reactive protein; preventing, treating, or ameliorating symptoms of Alzheimer's Disease (AD); regulating production or levels of at least one amyloid β ($A\beta$) peptide; regulating the amount of ApoE isoform 4 in the bloodstream and/or brain; preventing or treating cognitive related disorders (including dementia); preventing or treating obesity; preventing or decreasing the incidence of xanthomas; preventing or minimizing muscular degeneration and related side effects associated with certain HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors (statins); preventing or treating diabetes and associated conditions; preventing or treating at least one autoimmune disorder; preventing or treating demyelination and associated disorders; preventing or treating cholesterol associated tumors; inhibiting the expression of at least one multiple

("multi")-drug resistance gene or protein in an animal cell; enhancing the effectiveness of a chemotherapeutic agent in a subject having cancer; reversing a multi-drug resistance phenotype exhibited by an animal cell; modulating lipid raft structure; and preventing or treating osteopenia disorders (bone loss disorders). The methods comprise administering a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formulae IA-XXIIA, IB, IIB, IC and IIC described herein.

[0088] The compounds described herein may inhibit cholesterol absorption and thus reduce cholesterol levels in vivo. The compositions and therapeutic methods described herein are useful for treating any condition for which a cholesterol absorption inhibitor is indicated. When administered to a patient, the compositions and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can lead to one or more of: reduced blood plasma or serum concentrations of low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL-C); reduced blood plasma or serum concentrations of very low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (VLDL-C); reduced blood plasma or serum concentrations of intermediate-density lipoprotein cholesterol (IDL-C); reduced concentrations of cholesterol and cholesterol ester in the blood plasma or serum; reduced blood plasma or serum concentrations of apolipoprotein B; reduced blood plasma or serum concentrations of triglycerides; increased clearance of triglycerides; increased blood plasma or serum concentrations of high density lipoprotein cholesterol (HDL-C); reduced blood plasma or serum concentrations of non high-density lipoprotein cholesterol (non HDL-C); reduced levels of lipoprotein(a) (Lp(a)); increased ratio of HDL-C to LDL-C; inhibition of saponified and/or non-saponified fatty acid synthesis; reduced blood plasma or serum concentrations apolipoprotein C-II; reduced blood plasma or serum concentrations apolipoprotein C-III; increased blood plasma or serum concentrations of HDL associated proteins (including but not limited to apo A-I, apo A-II, apo A-IV, and apo E), and increased fecal excretion of cholesterol.

[0089] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents (e.g. one or more dyslipidemic agents, peptides which mitigates one or more symptoms of atherosclerosis, other agents, including combinations thereof) to prevent or treat a cholesterol related disease. Cholesterol related diseases include but are not limited to diseases involving

elevated levels of LDL cholesterol, diseases involving regulation of LDL receptors, diseases involving reduced levels of HDL cholesterol, dyslipidemia, diseases involving elevated levels of non-esterified fatty acids, diseases involving reduced or deficient lipoprotein lipase levels or activity (including reductions or deficiencies resulting from lipoprotein lipase mutations), diseases involving elevated levels of ketone bodies (e.g. β -OH butyric acid), hyperlipidemia, elevated LDL Pattern B, elevated LDL Pattern A, primary dysbetalipoproteinemia (Frederickson Type III), hypercholesterolemia, hypo α -lipoproteinemia (low HDL cholesterol syndrome), hyperlipoproteinemia, elevated Lp(a) levels, hypertriglyceridemia (including Frederickson type IV and V), other aberrations of apolipoprotein B metabolism, homozygous familial hypercholesterolemia, heterozygous familial hypercholesterolemia, presumed familial combined and non-familial (non-FH) forms of primary hypercholesterolemia (including Frederickson Types IIa and IIb), cholesterol ester storage disease, and cholesterol ester transfer protein disease.

[0090] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents (e.g. one or more dyslipidemic agents, peptides which mitigates one or more symptoms of atherosclerosis, other agents, including combinations thereof) to inhibit the absorption of or reduce plasma or tissue concentration of one or more sterols (referring to, for example: (from any source and in any form: α , β and γ) saturated or hydrogenated sterols including all natural or synthesized forms and derivatives thereof, and isomers including but not limited to cholesterol, sitosterol, campesterol, stigmasterol, brassicasterol (including dihydrobrassicasterol), desmosterol, chalinosterol, poriferasterol, clionasterol, ergosterol, coprosterol, codisterol, isofucosterol, fucosterol, clerosterol, nervisterol, lathosterol, stellasterol, spinasterol, chondrillasterol, peposterol, avenasterol, isoavenasterol, fecosterol, pollinastasterol) or stanols (referring to, for example: (from any source and in any form: α , β and γ) saturated or hydrogenated stanols including all natural or synthesized forms and derivatives thereof, and isomers, including but not limited to sitostanol, campestanol, stigmastanol, brassicastanol (including dihydrobrassicastanol), desmostanol, chalinostanol, poriferastanol, clionastanol, ergostanol, coprostanol,

codistanol, isofucostanol, fucostanol, clerostanol, nervistanol, lathostanol, stellastanol, spinastanol, chondrillastanol, pepostanol, avenastanol, isoavenastanol, fecostanol, and pollinastanol and 5 α -stanols (e.g. cholestanol, 5 α -campestanol, 5 α -sitostanol)) or mixtures thereof in a subject in need of such treatment, for example, a sitosterolemic subject. Sterols and stanols also include free sterols and stanols, esterified sterols and stanols with aliphatic or aromatic acids (thereby forming aliphatic or aromatic esters, respectively), phenolic acid esters, cinnamate esters, ferulate esters, phytosterol and phytostanol glycosides and acylated glycosides or acylglycosides. Thus, terms the sterols and stanols encompasses all analogues, which may further have a double bond at the 5-Position in the cyclic unit as in most natural sterols, or one or more double bonds at other positions in the rings (for example, 6,7, 8(9), 8(14), 14 5/7) or no double bonds in the cyclic unit as in stanols.

[0091] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents (e.g. one or more dyslipidemic agents, peptides which mitigates one or more symptoms of atherosclerosis, other agents, including combinations thereof) to prevent or treat sistoserolemia in patients who are either at risk of developing sistoserolemia or already exhibit sistoserolemia, for example, as described in US20020169134. Sitosterolemia is a genetic lipid storage disorder characterized by increased levels of sitosterol and other plant sterols in the plasma and other tissues due to increased non-selective intestinal absorption of sterols and decreased hepatic removal. Individuals having sitosterolemia can exhibit one or more of the following conditions: tendon and tuberous xanthomas, arthritis, hemolytic episodes, accelerated atherosclerosis and myocardial infarctions, and can die at an early age due to extensive coronary atherosclerosis (see Nguyen et al. 1991 Journal of Lipid Research, 32: 1941-1948).

[0092] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents (e.g. one or more anti-hypertensive agents, dyslipidemic agents, peptides which mitigates one or more symptoms of atherosclerosis, other agents, including combinations thereof) to prevent or treat vascular diseases/disorders and conditions (including but not limited to

arteriosclerosis, atherosclerosis, acute vascular syndromes, peripheral arterial disease, cardiovascular disease, cerebrovascular disease (e.g. cerebral infarction or stroke (caused by vessel blockage or hemorrhage), or transient ischemia attack (TIA), syncope, atherosclerosis of the intracranial and/or extracranial arteries, and the like), renovascular disease, mesenteric vascular disease, pulmonary vascular disease, ocular vascular disease, microvascular disease (such as nephropathy, neuropathy, retinopathy), and peripheral vascular disease), hyperlipidemia (including but not limited to hypercholesterolemia, hypertriglyceridemia, sitosterolemia), hypertension, angina pectoris (including stable, chronic stable, vasospastic, and unstable angina), cardiac arrhythmias, congestive heart failure, and stroke in patients who are at risk for such a disease/condition or in need of such treatment for example, as described, in US2002147184 and US20030069221. Vascular disease is a term that broadly encompasses all disorders of blood vessels including small and large arteries and veins and blood flow. The most prevalent form of vascular disease is arteriosclerosis, a condition associated with the thickening and hardening of the arterial wall. Arteriosclerosis of the large vessels is referred to as atherosclerosis. Atherosclerosis is the predominant underlying factor in vascular disorders e.g. coronary artery disease, aortic aneurysm, arterial disease of the lower extremities and cerebrovascular disease. Other vascular conditions frequently coexist with cholesterol levels associated with atherosclerosis. These may include hypertension, angina and/or arrhythmia. Vascular conditions may be caused or aggravated by hypertension which is defined as persistently high blood pressure. Generally, adults are classified as being hypertensive when systolic blood pressure is persistently above 140 mmHg or when diastolic blood pressure is above 90 mmHG. Elevated blood pressure is a risk factor for atherosclerosis, cardiovascular and cerebrovascular disease.

[0093] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents (e.g. one or more anti-hypertensive agents, dyslipidemic agents, peptides which mitigates one or more symptoms of atherosclerosis, other agents, including combinations thereof) to reduce the incidence of cardiovascular disease-related events, for example, as described in

US20050080071. Thus the compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used to prevent or reduce the risk of an occurrence of a fatal or non-fatal cardiovascular event in patients having no history of clinically evident coronary heart disease, as well as patients having a history of clinically evident coronary heart disease (CHD). A total cholesterol level in excess of 225-250 mg/dl is associated with significant elevation of risk of CHD. The newly revised NCEP ATP III low density lipoprotein (LDL-C) goal for patients with CHD or CHD risk equivalent is <100 mg/dL (2.59 mmol/L), for individuals with two or more risk factors is <130 mg/dL (3.37 mmol/L) and for individuals with fewer than two risk factors is <160 mg/dL (4.14 mmol/L). The phrase "cardiovascular event" includes but is not limited to fatal and non-fatal acute major coronary events, coronary revascularization procedures, myocardial revascularization procedures, peripheral vascular disease, stable angina and cerebrovascular insufficiency e.g. stroke. The phrase "acute major coronary event" includes fatal myocardial infarction, witnessed and unwitnessed cardiac death and sudden death occurring from 1 hour up to 24 hours after collapse, non-fatal myocardial infarction including definite acute Q-wave myocardial infarction, non-Q-wave myocardial infarction, and silent subclinical (remote) myocardial infarction, and unstable angina pectoris. Myocardial infarction includes recurrent myocardial infarction, Q-wave myocardial infarction, non-Q-wave myocardial infarction and silent subclinical (remote) myocardial infarction.

[0094] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents (e.g. one or more blood modifiers, anti-hypertensive agents, dyslipidemic agents, peptides which mitigates one or more symptoms of atherosclerosis, other agents, including combinations thereof) to prevent or treat vascular conditions and associated thrombotic events as described, for example, in US20020147184. Vascular diseases and conditions are often associated with thrombotic events sometimes resulting in myocardial infarction, stroke and ischemic attack. A thrombotic event is one associated with the formation or presence of a thrombus (e.g. blood clot). Thrombotic events include but are not limited to arterial thrombosis, coronary thrombosis, heart valve thrombosis, coronary stenosis, stent

thrombosis and graft thrombosis. Blood clots associated with thrombotic events result from an aggregation of blood factors, primarily platelets and fibrin with entrapment of cellular elements and frequently cause vascular obstruction at the point of their formation. Blood coagulation is a process consisting of a complex interaction of various blood components, or factors, which eventually gives rise to a fibrin clot. It is often desirable to selectively block or inhibit the coagulation cascade in subjects at risk for or exhibiting a vascular disease or condition with blood modifiers e.g. heparin, coumarin, derivatives of coumarin, indandione derivatives, thrombin inhibitors, factor Xa inhibitors, or other agents. For example, in the case of atherosclerosis, proliferation of smooth muscle cells (SMCs) in the vessel wall is an important event in the formation of vascular lesions after vascular reconstruction or in response to other vascular injury. SMC proliferation typically occurs within the first few weeks and up to six months after injury. Thrombosis and or SMC proliferation are also involved in restenosis, which is the re-occlusion of the blood vessel or valve after surgical treatment e.g. angioplasty or bypass grafts. Thus, the compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used to prevent or treat restenosis. The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can also be used to improve coagulation homeostasis (including reducing plasminogen activating inhibitor (PAI)-1 activity, reducing fibrinogen, managing high levels of fibrinogen, promoting fibrinolysis, and/or reducing platelet aggregation, and/or improving endothelial function). The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used as coatings on surgical devices (e.g., catheters) and implants (e.g., stents) to reduce the risk of restenosis and thrombosis associated with invasive procedures used in the treatment of cardiovascular diseases.

[0095] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents (e.g. one or more anti-hypertensive agents, dyslipidemic agents, peptides which mitigates one or more symptoms of atherosclerosis, other agents, including combinations thereof) to prevent or treat vascular (e.g. cardiovascular, cerebrovascular, peripheral vascular, renovascular disease, mesenteric vascular, pulmonary vascular disease, ocular vascular) inflammation in a subject in need of such treatment, for example, as described in US20030119757 and

to reduce blood plasma or serum concentrations of C-reactive protein (CRP) in a subject in need of such treatment, for example, as described in US20030119757. Vascular inflammation can lead to atherosclerosis or coronary heart disease. Atherosclerosis is often indicated by a thickening and build-up of plaque in the arteries and typically occurs when the innermost layer of an artery, the endothelium, becomes damaged by cholesterol, toxins, oxidants, infectious agents and the like. The damaged endothelial cells in the artery walls produce adhesion molecules that allow white blood cells to accumulate in the vessel wall. Fats and cholesterol also build-up with the white blood cells causing inflammation of the artery. Such build-up can thicken to a point where the artery becomes vulnerable to blockage from a clot resulting in heart attack or stroke. The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy to slow the progression or cause regression of atherosclerotic plaques or lesions in, for example, coronary arteries, carotid arteries, the peripheral arterial system. Vascular inflammation often precedes the development and the continual process of atherosclerotic coronary heart disease. Vascular inflammation, beginning with an injury or change in the endothelial wall of the artery, may cause an alteration in the intimal layer that increases platelet adhesion to the endothelium. Vascular stimuli to mammals, e.g. cellular injury or inflammation, may lead to the production of various proteins, commonly called acute response proteins, in the body. CRP (C-reactive protein) is an acute response protein. Manufactured in the liver and deposited in damaged tissue, CRP is found in high levels in inflammatory fluids and in both the intimal layer of the atherosclerotic artery and within the lesions of atherosclerotic plaque. Studies have shown a positive association between CRP and coronary artery disease. For example, in a survey of 388 British men aged 50-69, the prevalence of coronary artery disease increased 1.5 fold for each doubling of CRP level (Mendall et al. (1996) BMJ. 312:1061-1065). Multiple prospective studies have also demonstrated that baseline CRP is a good marker of future cardiovascular events (Riker et al. 1998, J Investig Med. 46:391-395). Patients with CRP levels greater than about 0.4 mg/dL have been reported as having increased vascular inflammation and increased risk for vascular disease as compared to patients with levels less than 0.4 mg/dL. (L. Gruberb, "Inflammatory Markers in Acute

Coronary Syndromes: C-reactive Protein (CRP) and Chlamydia", American Heart Assoc. Scientific Sessions 2000). Patients with levels greater 3.4 mg/dL of c-reactive protein were reported to be in the highest quartile of risk. Patients in the second quartile (0.4 to 1.0 mg/dL of c-reactive protein) and third quartile (1.0 to 3.4 mg/dL of c-reactive protein) also have increased risk of vascular disease as compared to patients in the lowest quartile (<0.4 mg/dL c-reactive protein). CRP assays and methodologies for the same are available from Dade Behring Inc., Deerfield, Ill. Methods for analyzing CRPs are described, for example, in US5358852, US6040147, US6277584, and US20030119757.

[0096] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents (e.g. one or more agents used to treat Alzheimer's disease, other agents, including combinations thereof) to prevent, treat, or ameliorate symptoms of Alzheimer's Disease (AD), regulate production or levels of at least one amyloid β ($A\beta$) peptide and/or regulate the amount of ApoE isoform 4 in the bloodstream and/or brain of a subject, for example, as described in US2003013699 and US6080778. The compositions can be administered to a subject that exhibits no symptoms of AD, has AD, has a family history of AD or dementia illness, is a human, is a human and has trisomy 21 (Down's syndrome), is a human and carries one or more mutations in the genes that encode β amyloid precursor protein (presenilin-1 or presenilin-2), is a human and carries the Apolipoprotein E isoform 4 gene, is a human and is greater than about 40 years of age, is a human and is greater than about 60 years of age. The subject can have an elevated blood cholesterol level, a total serum cholesterol level that is at least about 200 mg/dl, a total low density lipoprotein (LDL) level that is greater than about 100 mg/dl. In some circumstances, the subject has an elevated level of at least one $A\beta$ peptide in the bloodstream and/or brain. In various circumstances, the subject has an elevated level of $A\beta$ -42 in the bloodstream and/or brain, has a level of $A\beta$ -42 peptide greater than about 30 pM in the bloodstream, has a level of $A\beta$ -42 peptide greater than about 40 pM in the bloodstream, has a level of $A\beta$ -42 peptide ranging from about 30 pM to about 80 pM in the bloodstream, has a level $A\beta$ -42 peptide of greater than about 50 pmol/gram of wet brain tissue. In various circumstances, the subject has a level of $A\beta$ -40 peptide greater than about 200 pM in the bloodstream, has a level of $A\beta$ -40

peptide greater than about 400 pM in the bloodstream, has a level of A β -40 peptide ranging from about 200 pM to about 800 pM in the bloodstream, has a level of A β -40 peptide greater than about 10 pmol/gram of wet brain tissue. In certain circumstances, the subject's level of A β peptide in the bloodstream is reduced from about 10 to about 100 percent from a level of A β peptides prior to administration of a composition of the present invention.

[0097] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents (e.g. one or more agents used to treat Alzheimer's disease, other agents, including combinations thereof) to prevent, treat, or ameliorate symptoms of one or more of dementia, vascular dementia, Huntington's Disease, hydrocephalus, amnesia, AIDs-related dementia, Pick's Disease, Creutzfeldt-Jakob Syndrome, electroconvulsive therapy, Huntington's disease, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, Down syndrome, mental retardation, Parkinson's Disease, mild cognitive impairment, and memory loss.

[0098] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents (e.g. one or more anti-obesity agents, other agents, including combinations thereof) to prevent or treat obesity in a subject in need of such treatment, for examples as described in US20030119428. Obesity is a common medical problem in developed countries and is a risk factor for other illnesses, e.g. hypertension, diabetes, degenerative arthritis and myocardial infarction. Weight loss medications may be appropriate for use in selected patients who are obese or who are overweight with co-morbid conditions. One measure for defining obesity is known as a body mass index (BMI), which is weight in kilograms divided by height in meters squared. A BMI of 18.5 to 24.9 is generally classified as normal, a BMI of 25.0 to 29.9 is generally classified as overweight and a BMI of 30 or greater is generally classified as obese. Alternatively, obesity may be defined as the top percentile, e.g. 15 percent, of a population's weight for a given height. Such definitions of obesity, however, are not a measure of body composition and different people may have higher or lower levels of body fat or muscle mass for their height. Nevertheless, these definitions of obesity are useful characterizations for general populations of people.

[0099] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents to prevent or decrease the incidence of xanthomas in a subject in need of such treatment, for example, as described in US20030119809. Xanthomas are benign fatty tumors associated with the accumulation of fatty materials under the surface of the skin and are often associated with those who have high triglyceride and cholesterol levels. Xanthoma itself may be indicative of an underlying disease e.g. diabetes, primary biliary cirrhosis, some types of cancer, or hypercholesterolemia.

[00100] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents (e.g. one or more anti-hypertensive agents, dyslipidemic agents, peptides which mitigates one or more symptoms of atherosclerosis, other agents, including combinations thereof) to prevent or minimize muscular degeneration and related side effects associated with certain HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors (statins), for example, as described in US20030119808. Muscle degeneration encompasses all side effects relating to muscle degradation, aches, and/or weakness that may be associated with the administration of certain statins, including rhabdomyolysis and/or myopathy. Rhabdomyolysis is the destruction or degeneration of skeletal muscle tissue that is accompanied by the release of muscle cell contents (as myoglobin and potassium) into the bloodstream resulting in hypovolemia, hyperkalemia, and sometimes acute renal failure. Certain statins, allegedly have caused severe muscle degeneration in patients; cerivastatin allegedly has been associated with deaths due to rhabdomyolysis. Myopathies which refer to disorders of muscle tissue or muscles include muscle aches and muscle weakness in conjunction with increases in creatine phosphokinase (CPK) values over ten times the upper limit of normal. Risk of myopathy may be increased during use of high dose statins and/or when statins are administered with other drugs e.g. fibrates, niacin, azole, antifungals, erythromycin, and cyclosporin. The subjects to which the compound or pharmaceutical formulation is administered include those that have or are at risk for a vascular condition, a cardiovascular condition, hypercholesterolemia, atherosclerosis, arteriosclerosis.

Suitable subjects include those having no history of clinically evident heart disease as well as those having a history of clinically evident heart disease.

[00101] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents (e.g. one more anti-diabetic agents, anti-hypertensive agents, dyslipidemic agents, peptides which mitigates one or more symptoms of atherosclerosis, other agents, including combinations thereof) to prevent or treat diabetes and associated conditions in a subject in need of such treatment, for example, as described in US20040214811. Diabetes mellitus, commonly called diabetes, refers to a disease process derived from multiple causative factors and characterized by elevated levels of plasma glucose, referred to as hyperglycemia. There are two major forms of diabetes: Type 1 diabetes (also referred to as insulin-dependent diabetes or IDDM) and Type 2 diabetes (also referred to as noninsulin dependent diabetes or NIDDM). Type 1 diabetes is the result of an absolute deficiency of insulin, the hormone that regulates glucose utilization. Type 1 diabetes has two forms: Immune-Mediated Diabetes Mellitus, which results from a cellular mediated autoimmune destruction of the β cells of the pancreas; and Idiopathic Diabetes Mellitus, which refers to forms of the disease that have no known etiologies. Type 2 diabetes is a disease characterized by insulin resistance accompanied by relative, rather than absolute, insulin deficiency. Premature development of atherosclerosis and increased rate of cardiovascular and peripheral vascular diseases are characteristic features of patients with diabetes. Diabetes and associated conditions include but are not limited to Type 1 diabetes, Type 2 diabetes, gestational diabetes mellitus (GDM), maturity onset of diabetes of the young (MODY), pancreatitis, polycystic ovarian disease, impaired glucose tolerance, insulin resistance, hyperglycemia, hyperinsulinemia, elevated blood levels of fatty acids or glycerol, obesity, Syndrome X, dysmetabolic syndrome and related diseases, diabetic complications (including retinopathy, neuropathy, nephropathy) and sexual dysfunction. The conditions, diseases, and maladies collectively referenced to as "Syndrome X" or Dysmetabolic Syndrome (as detailed in Johanson, J. Clin. Endocrinol. Metab., 1997, 82, 727-734, and other publications) include hyperglycemia and/or prediabetic insulin resistance syndrome, and is

characterized by an initial insulin resistant state generating hyperinsulinemia, dyslipidemia, and impaired glucose tolerance, which can progress to Type II diabetes, characterized by hyperglycemia, which can progress to diabetic complications.

[00102] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents (e.g. one more agents used to treat autoimmune disorders, other agents, including combinations thereof) to prevent or treat at least one autoimmune disorder in a subject in need of such treatment, for example, as described (including the rationale for the therapy) in US20040092499. Autoimmune disorders include, but are not limited to: Alopecia Areata, Ankylosing Spondylitis, Antiphospholipid Syndrome, aplastic anemia, myelodysplastic syndromes, paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinemia, pure red cell aplasia, chronic neutropenias, amegakaryocytic thrombocytopenia, antiphospholipid syndromes, autoimmune thrombocytopenia, autoimmune hemolytic syndromes, antiphospholipid syndromes, autoimmune gastritis, achlorhydria, Autoimmune Addison's Disease, Autoimmune Diabetes, Autoimmune Hemolytic Anemia, Autoimmune Hepatitis, Autoimmune chronic Hepatitis, Autoimmune hypophysitis, Autoimmune orchiditis, autoimmune ovarian failure, Behcet's Disease, Bullous Pemphigoid, Cardiomyopathy, Celiac Sprue-Dermatitis, Cicatricial pemphigoid, Chronic Fatigue Immune Dysfunction Syndrome (CFIDS), Chronic Inflammatory Demyelinating Polyneuropathy, Interstitial cystitis, Churg-Strauss Syndrome, Cicatricial Pemphigoid, CREST Syndrome, Cold Agglutinin Disease, Crohn's Disease, Dermatitis herpetiformis, Discoid Lupus, Drug-induced autoimmune disorders, Endometriosis, Epidermolysis bullosa acquisita, Essential Mixed Cryoglobulinemia, Fibromyalgia-Fibromyositis, Glomerulonephritis, Good Pasture Syndrome, Graft Versus Host Disease, Graves' Disease, Guillain-Barré, Hashimoto's Thyroiditis, Idiopathic Inflammatory Myopathies, Idiopathic Pulmonary Fibrosis, Idiopathic Thrombocytopenia Purpura (ITP), IgA Nephropathy, Insulin Dependent Diabetes, Juvenile Arthritis, Lichen Planus, Systemic Lupus Erythematosus, Ménière's Disease, Metal-induced autoimmunity disorders, Mixed Connective Tissue Disease, Multiple Sclerosis, Myasthenia Gravis, Myocarditis, Myositis, Optic neuritis, Painless/postpartum thyroiditis, Peripheral nerve vasculitis, Pemphigus Foliaceus,

Pemphigus Vulgaris, Pernicious Anemia, Polyarteritis Nodosa, Polychondritis, Polyglandular Syndromes, Polymyalgia Rheumatica, Polymyositis and Dermatomyositis, Postinfectious autoimmune disorders, Primary Agammaglobulinemia, Primary Biliary Cirrhosis, Psoriasis, Psoriatic Arthritis, Reactive Arthritis, Raynaud's Phenomenon, Reiter's Syndrome, Rheumatic Fever, Rheumatoid Arthritis, Sarcoidosis, Scleritis, Scleroderma, Sjogren's Syndrome, Stiff-Man Syndrome, Takayasu Arteritis, Temporal Arteritis/Giant-cell Arteritis, Ulcerative Colitis, Uveitis, Vasculitis, Vitiligo, Kawasaki Disease, and Wegener's Granulomatosis.

[00103] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents (e.g. one more agents used to treat demylenation and its associated disorders, other agents, including combinations thereof) to prevent or treat demyelination and associated disorders in a subject in need of such treatment, for example, as described (including the rationale for the therapy) in US20040092500. Nerve fibers are wrapped with multiple layers of insulation known as myelin sheath. Demyelination can occur through disease and results in the destruction or removal of the myelin sheath. Primary demyelinating disorders include but are not limited to multiple sclerosis, acute disseminated encephalomyelitis, adrenoleukodystrophy, adrenomyeloneuropathy, Leber's hereditary optic atrophy and HTLV-associated myelopathy. Other disorders associated with demyelination include but are not limited to Tay-Sachs disease, Niemann-Pick disease, Gaucher's disease and Hurler's syndrome; or stroke, inflammation, immune diseases, metabolic disorders, poison or drugs.

[00104] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents (e.g. one or more chemotherapeutic agents, anti-cancer agents, other agents, including combinations thereof) to prevent or treat cholesterol associated tumors in patients who are either at risk of developing a cholesterol-associated tumor or already exhibit a cholesterol associated tumor, for example, as described in US20040116358. The compounds of the invention may reduce both cholesterol levels in vivo and epoxycholesterol formation and thereby inhibit initiation and progression of benign and malignant cholesterol-associated tumors

or cholesterol-associated cell growth or cell-masses. The tumors may be benign cholesterol-associated tumors or cholesterol-associated cell growth or cell-masses including but not limited to benign tumors associated with prostate, colon, endometrial, or breast tissues or prostate, colon, breast, or endometrial cancer. Thus the compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein, for example, are useful to prevent or treat benign prostatic hypertrophy. The tumors may be malignant cholesterol-associated tumors or cholesterol-associated cell growth or cell-masses including but not limited to malignant tumors associated with prostate, colon, endometrial, or breast tissues or prostate, colon, breast, or endometrial cancer.

[00105] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents (e.g. one or more chemotherapeutic agents, anti-cancer agents, other agents, including combinations thereof) for one or more of: inhibiting the expression of at least one multiple (“multi”)-drug resistance gene or protein in an animal cell, enhancing the effectiveness of a chemotherapeutic agent in an animal having cancer, and reversing a multi-drug resistance phenotype exhibited by an animal cell all of which are, for example, described in WO05/030225. Co-administration (though not necessarily concurrent or proximal consecutive) of cholesterol absorption inhibitors and chemotherapeutic agents can inhibit the expression of multi-drug resistance genes. Thus the compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy in one or more of: a) treating or alleviating a cancer; b) preventing, treating or alleviating tumour growth; c) inhibiting or reducing the expression of one or more multiple drug resistance genes; d) inhibiting or reducing the production of one or more proteins expressed by multiple drug resistance genes; e) enhancing the effectiveness of a chemotherapeutic agent in treating a cancer; and f) sensitizing a cell to one or more chemotherapeutic agents. Multiple drug resistance genes include but are not limited to ABCB1 (MDR-1), ABCA2 (ABC2), ABCB2 (TAP), ABCB3 (TAP), ABCC1 (MRP-1), and ABCC3 (MRP-3).

[00106] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents (e.g. dyslipidemic

agents, anti-diabetic agents, anti-hypertensive agents, anti-obesity agents, agents used to treat autoimmune disorders, agents used to treat demyelination and its associated disorders, agents used to treat Alzheimer's disease, blood modifiers, hormone replacement agent/compositions, chemotherapeutic agents, peptides which mitigate one or more symptoms of atherosclerosis, anti-cancer agents, agents used to treat bone loss and associated disorders, other agents, including combinations thereof) to modulate lipid raft structure (for example by reducing the level of cholesterol in the lipid raft), for example, as described (including the related rationale) in WO05023305. Lipid rafts are discrete microdomains in the plasma membrane which are rich in sphingolipids and contain ordered cholesterol (Field et al., J. Biol. Chem., 1997, 272, 4276-4280). In a number of cells, it has become clear that certain membrane associated proteins preferentially partition into these lipid rafts (Foster, de Hoog and Mann, PNAS, 2003, 100, 5813-8). These include various seven transmembrane domain receptors and their associated G proteins and various proteins that are attached to the inner membrane leaflet through lipid moieties such as prenylation, including small molecular weight G proteins, such as Ras, Rac, cdc42 and Rho. Disruption of lipid rafts results in an uncoupling of efficient signal transduction through receptors such as G protein coupled receptors, the T cell receptor and the high affinity IgE receptor. Compounds which modulate lipid raft structure may be useful in the treatment or prophylaxis of a wide variety of diseases and conditions. The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy to prevent or treat a disease or condition associated with lipid raft structure such as respiratory tract/obstructive airways diseases and disorders (including: acute-, allergic, atrophic rhinitis or chronic rhinitis (such as rhinitis caseosa, hypertrophic rhinitis, rhinitis purulenta, rhinitis sicca), rhinitis medicamentosa, membranous rhinitis (including croupous, fibrinous and pseudomembranous rhinitis), scrofulous rhinitis, perennial allergic rhinitis, seasonal rhinitis (including rhinitis nervosa (hay fever) and vasomotor rhinitis), antitussive activity, asthma (such as bronchial, allergic, intrinsic, extrinsic and dust asthma particularly chronic or inveterate asthma (e.g. late asthma and airways hyper-responsiveness)), bronchitis (including chronic and eosinophilic bronchitis), emphysema,

chronic inflammatory diseases of the lung which result in interstitial fibrosis, such as interstitial lung diseases (ILD) (e.g., idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis, or ILD associated with rheumatoid arthritis, or other autoimmune conditions), chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD)(such as irreversible COPD), chronic sinusitis, conjunctivitis (e.g. allergic conjunctivitis), cystic fibrosis, fanner's lung and related diseases, fibroid lung, hypersensitivity lung diseases, hypersensitivity pneumonitis, idiopathic interstitial pneumonia, nasal congestion, nasal polyposis, otitis media, and chronic cough associated with inflammation or iatrogenic induced); systemic anaphylaxis or hypersensitivity responses (such as drug allergies (e.g., to penicillin, cephalosporins), insect sting allergies, pet allergies, house dust mite allergies, pollen allergies, and food related allergies which may have effects remote from the gut (such as migraine, rhinitis and eczema)); gastro-intestinal diseases and disorders (such as irritable bowel syndrome (IBS), inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), Crohn's disease, ulcerative colitis, gastric and duodenal ulceration), Fabry's disease; Kimura's disease; multiple sclerosis; wound healing; liver hepatitis and cirrhosis; rheumatoid arthritis; juvenile rheumatoid arthritis; systemic lupus erythematosus; degenerative joint disease; connective tissue diseases; ankylosing spondylitis; soft tissue rheumatism (e.g. tendonitis, bursitis); Sjogren's syndrome; psoriasis; psoriatic arthritis; neuralgia; synovitis; glomerulonephritis; vasculitis; sacoidosis; inflammations that occur as sequellae to influenza; the common cold and other viral infections; gout; pseudogout; contact dermatitis; low back and neck pain; dysmenorrhea; headache; dementias; toothache; sprains; strains; myositis; burns; injuries; pain and inflammation that follows surgical and dental procedures in a patient; Parkinsons disease; muscular dystrophy; neoplasia; hyperparathyroidism; sepsis and septic shock; infections by intracellular pathogens (including, for example, bacteria (such as Salmonella, Chlamydiae, listeria, Mycobacteria tuberculosis), viruses (such as HIV, Measles virus, Papilloma viruses, Epstein-Barr virus, Respiratory Syncytial Virus (RSV), Hepatitis, Herpes viruses, Influenza virus, Ebola and Marburg viruses), parasites (such as Plasmodium (malaria), leishmania, Trypanosoma (sleeping sickness), Toxoplasma gondii)); and bacterial infections including Shigella, Escherichia Coli (including 0157), Campylobacter, Vibrio cholerae, Clostridium difficile and Clostridium tetani.

[00107] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents (e.g. one or more dyslipidemic agents, peptides which mitigates one or more symptoms of atherosclerosis, hormone replacement agents/compositions, anti-cancer agents, chemotherapeutic agents, agents used to treat bone loss and associated disorders, other agents, including combinations thereof) to prevent or treat osteopenia disorders (bone loss disorders) in subjects in need of such treatment. There is a well documented co-morbid development of bone loss disorders (e.g. osteoporosis) and cardiovascular disease. For example, Gas-6, osteocalcin, matrix gammacarboxy glutamate protein and protein S function in both bone formation and arterial calcification. Bone loss disorders and associated conditions include but are not limited to: osteoporosis, Paget's disease (osteitis deformans), bone loss, bone fractures, bone segmental defects, abnormally increased bone turnover, conditions associated with bone fracture or deficiency, rheumatoid arthritis (including bone loss attendant rheumatoid arthritis), osteoarthritis, osteolysis (including familial expansile osteolysis and periprosthetic osteolysis), osteolytic metastases, osteolytic bone disease, metastatic bone disease, osteosarcoma, osteonecrosis, osteogenesis imperfecta, osteomyelitis (e.g. an infectious lesion in bone leading to bone loss), cleidocranial dysplasia (CCD), prosthetic loosening, periodontal disease (e.g. periodontitis) and defects, and other tooth repair processes, tooth loss, primary or secondary hyperparathyroidism, hypercalcemia (including hypercalcemia of malignancy, and multiple myeloma), cartilage defects or disorders (including cartilage degeneration), conditions associated with connective tissue repair (e.g. healing or regeneration of cartilage defects or injury), metabolic bone diseases, and transplant and drug-induced bone loss. Osteoporosis includes primary osteoporosis, secondary osteoporosis, medication-induced osteoporosis (e.g. corticosteroid-induced osteoporosis, transplant-bone disease), age-related osteoporosis in females or males, post-menopausal osteoporosis, glucocorticoid-induced osteoporosis, idiopathic osteoporosis, disease-induced arthritis (e.g. rheumatoid arthritis induced), disuse osteoporosis and arthritis, diabetes-related osteoporosis, endocrine osteoporosis (hyperthyroidism, hyperparathyroidism, Cushing's syndrome, and acromegaly), hereditary and congenital forms of osteoporosis (osteogenesis imperfecta,

homocystinuria, Menkes' syndrome, and Rile-Day syndrome) and osteoporosis due to immobilization of extremities. The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy in one more of the following: enhancing/promoting bone formation; preventing bone loss; repair of bone defects and deficiencies, such as those occurring in closed, open and nonunion fractures; prophylactic use in closed and open fracture reduction; promotion of bone healing in plastic surgery; stimulation of bone ingrowth into non-cemented prosthetic joints and dental implants; elevation of peak bone mass in perimenopausal women; prevention or treatment of growth deficiencies; prevention or treatment of increased bone formation during distraction osteogenesis; prevention or treatment of any condition that benefits from stimulation of bone formation; repair of congenital, trauma-induced or surgical resection of bone (for instance, for cancer treatment), and in cosmetic surgery; treatment of wound healing or tissue repair; treatment of subjects undergoing facial reconstruction surgery; treatment of subjects undergoing orthopedic or oral surgery; alleviation of bone pain; prevention or treatment of localized bone loss associated with periprosthetic osteolysis and bone fractures, etc.; rapid inhibition of bone resorption in a subject while obtaining a rapid reduction of bone turnover and biomarkers; rapid increase of bone mineral density; and rapid reduction of fractures. The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy to stimulate bone regeneration. The bone regeneration may be following reconstruction of bone defects in cranio-maxillofacial surgery, or following an implant into bone, for example a dental implant, bone supporting implant, or prosthesis. The bone regeneration may also be following a bone fracture.

[00108] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents for preventing and treating malignant lesions (such as ductal carcinoma in situ of the breast and lobular carcinoma in situ of the breast), premalignant lesions (such as fibroadenoma of the breast and prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia (PIN), gastrointestinal malignancies, liposarcomas and various other epithelial tumors (including breast, prostate, colon, ovarian, gastric and lung), cancer-induced asthenia (fatigue), irritable bowel syndrome, Crohn's disease,

gastric ulceritis, and gallstones, and HIV infection, other infectious diseases, drug-induced lipodystrophy, and proliferative diseases such as psoriasis, for example, as described in US20050085497.

[00109] As described, for example, in US20050101565, the compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents to prevent or treat: cancers (including but not limited to human sarcomas and carcinomas, e.g., fibrosarcoma, myxosarcoma, liposarcoma, chondrosarcoma, osteogenic sarcoma, chordoma, angiosarcoma, endotheliosarcoma, lymphangiosarcoma, lymphangioendotheliosarcoma, synovioma, mesothelioma, Ewing's tumor, leiomyosarcoma, rhabdomyosarcoma, colon carcinoma, pancreatic cancer, breast cancer, ovarian cancer, prostate cancer, squamous cell carcinoma, basal cell carcinoma, adenocarcinoma, sweat gland carcinoma, sebaceous gland carcinoma, papillary carcinoma, papillary adenocarcinomas, cystadenocarcinoma, medullary carcinoma, bronchogenic carcinoma, renal cell carcinoma, hepatoma, bile duct carcinoma, choriocarcinoma, seminoma, embryonal carcinoma, Wilms' tumor, cervical cancer, testicular tumor, lung carcinoma, small cell lung carcinoma, bladder carcinoma, epithelial carcinoma, glioma, astrocytoma, medulloblastoma, craniopharyngioma, ependymoma, pinealoma, hemangioblastoma, acoustic neuroma, oligodendroglioma, meningioma, melanoma, neuroblastoma, retinoblastoma; leukemias, e.g., acute lymphocytic leukemia and acute myelocytic leukemia (myeloblastic, promyelocytic, myelomonocytic, monocytic and erythroleukemia); chronic leukemia (chronic myelocytic (granulocytic) leukemia and chronic lymphocytic leukemia); and polycythemia vera, lymphoma (Hodgkin's disease and non-Hodgkin's disease), multiple myeloma, Waldenstrom's macroglobulinemia, and heavy chain disease (In certain embodiments, the cancers that are treated or prevented by administering the compounds described herein are insulin resistance or Syndrome X related cancers, including but not limited to breast, prostate and colon cancer); PPAR-associated disorders (including but not limited to rheumatoid arthritis; multiple sclerosis; psoriasis; inflammatory bowel diseases; breast; colon or prostate cancer; low

levels of blood HDL (HDL may be elevated in lymph and/or cerebral fluid); low levels of blood, lymph and/or cerebrospinal fluid apo E; low blood, lymph and/or cerebrospinal fluid levels of apo A-I; high levels of blood VLDL; high levels of blood LDL; high levels of blood triglyceride; high levels of blood apo B; high levels of blood apo C-III and reduced ratio of post-heparin hepatic lipase to lipoprotein lipase activity; renal diseases including but not limited to glomerular diseases (including but not limited to acute and chronic glomerulonephritis, rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis, nephrotic syndrome, focal proliferative glomerulonephritis, glomerular lesions associated with systemic disease, such as systemic lupus erythematosus, Goodpasture's syndrome, multiple myeloma, diabetes, neoplasia, sickle cell disease, and chronic inflammatory diseases), tubular diseases (including but not limited to acute tubular necrosis and acute renal failure, polycystic renal disease, medullary sponge kidney, medullary cystic disease, nephrogenic diabetes, and renal tubular acidosis), tubulointerstitial diseases (including but not limited to pyelonephritis, drug and toxin induced tubulointerstitial nephritis, hypercalcemic nephropathy, and hypokalemic nephropathy), acute and rapidly progressive renal failure, chronic renal failure, nephrolithiasis, or tumors (including but not limited to renal cell carcinoma and nephroblastoma) (In certain embodiments, renal diseases that are treated by the compounds described herein are vascular diseases, including but not limited to hypertension, nephrosclerosis, microangiopathic hemolytic anemia, atheroembolic renal disease, diffuse cortical necrosis, and renal infarcts); and septicemia and impotence (for example, which may result from cardiovascular disease).

[00110] In addition to the other subjects discussed herein, the compositions and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be administered alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents (e.g. one or more hormone replacement agents/compositions, dyslipidemic agents, peptides which mitigates one or more symptoms of atherosclerosis, anti-hypertensive agents, anti-diabetic agents, anti-obesity agents, other agents, including combinations thereof) to post-menopausal women, for example, as described in US20030119796. In various embodiments, the compositions and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be administered alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents to, for example, (1) a

subject in need of or who has undergone an organ transplant (e.g. a kidney transplant), (2) a subject who is either at risk of developing systemic lupus erythematosus or already exhibits systemic lupus erythematosus, (3) a subject who has undergone or is undergoing hemodialysis, (4) a subject who is either at risk of developing hyperhomocysteine levels or already exhibits hyperhomocysteine levels, (5) a subject who is either at risk of developing hypothyroidism or already exhibits hypothyroidism, (6) a subject who is either at risk of developing obstructive liver disease or already exhibits obstructive liver disease, (7) a subject who is either at risk of developing kidney disease or already exhibits kidney disease, (8) a subject who has undergone cardiac bypass surgery, and (9) a subject who has undergone percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty.

[00111] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be administered alone or in combination therapy with one or more additional agents to a non-human animal for a veterinary use for treating, preventing, or managing a disease or disorder disclosed herein. Non limiting examples of non-human examples include cows, horses, sheep, pigs, cats, dog, mice, rats, rabbits, guinea pigs, and fowl species (e.g. chicken, turkey, duck, goose, quail). In addition to veterinary uses, the compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be used to reduce the fat content of livestock to produce leaner meats and to reduce the cholesterol content of eggs by administering the compounds to a chicken, quail, or duck hen. For non-human animal uses, the compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein can be administered via the animals' feed or orally as a drench composition.

[00112] Certain compounds of the invention may have the additional advantage that they suppress serum cholesterol and/or LDL levels while themselves not being appreciably absorbed into the mammalian circulation upon oral administration. As a result of the low-to-insignificant serum levels, fewer side-effects, such as drug-drug interactions, are observed.

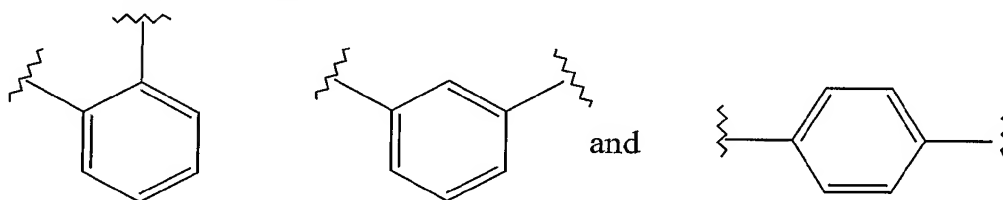
Definitions

[00113] Throughout this specification the terms and substituents retain their definitions.

[00114] Alkyl is intended to include linear, branched, or cyclic hydrocarbon structures and combinations thereof. When not otherwise restricted, the term refers to alkyl of 20 or

fewer carbons. Lower alkyl refers to alkyl groups of 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 carbon atoms. Examples of lower alkyl groups include methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, s- and t-butyl and the like. Methyl is preferred. Preferred alkyl and alkylene groups are those of C₂₀ or below (e.g. C₁, C₂, C₃, C₄, C₅, C₆, C₇, C₈, C₉, C₁₀, C₁₁, C₁₂, C₁₃, C₁₄, C₁₅, C₁₆, C₁₇, C₁₈, C₁₉, C₂₀). Cycloalkyl is a subset of alkyl and includes cyclic hydrocarbon groups of 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, and 8 carbon atoms. Examples of cycloalkyl groups include c-Propyl, c-butyl, c-Pentyl, norbornyl, adamantyl and the like.

[00115] C₁ to C₂₀ Hydrocarbon (e.g. C₁, C₂, C₃, C₄, C₅, C₆, C₇, C₈, C₉, C₁₀, C₁₁, C₁₂, C₁₃, C₁₄, C₁₅, C₁₆, C₁₇, C₁₈, C₁₉, C₂₀) includes alkyl, cycloalkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl and combinations thereof. Examples include benzyl, phenethyl, cyclohexylmethyl, camphoryl and naphthylethyl. The term "phenylene" refers to ortho, meta or para residues of the formulae:



[00116] Alkoxy or alkoxyl refers to groups of 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 or 8 carbon atoms of a straight, branched, cyclic configuration and combinations thereof attached to the parent structure through an oxygen. Examples include methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, cyclopropyloxy, cyclohexyloxy and the like. Lower-alkoxy refers to groups containing one to four carbons. Methoxy is preferred.

[00117] Oxaalkyl refers to alkyl residues in which one or more carbons (and their associated hydrogens) have been replaced by oxygen. Examples include methoxypropoxy, 3,6,9-trioxadecyl and the like. The term oxaalkyl is intended as it is understood in the art [see Naming and Indexing of Chemical Substances for Chemical Abstracts, published by the American Chemical Society, ¶196, but without the restriction of ¶127(a)], i.e. it refers to compounds in which the oxygen is bonded via a single bond to its adjacent atoms (forming ether bonds). Similarly, thiaalkyl and azaalkyl refer to alkyl residues in which one or more carbons have been replaced by sulfur or nitrogen, respectively. Examples include ethylaminoethyl and methylthiopropyl.

- [00118] Polyol refers to a compound or residue having a plurality of -OH groups. Polyols may be thought of as alkyls in which a plurality of C-H bonds have been replaced by C-OH bonds. Common polyol compounds include for example glycerol, erythritol, sorbitol, xylitol, mannitol and inositol. Linear polyol residues will generally be of the empirical formula $-C_yH_{2y+1}O_y$, and cyclic polyol residues will generally be of the formula $-C_yH_{2y-1}O_y$. Those in which y is 3, 4, 5 and 6 are preferred. Cyclic polyols also include reduced sugars, such as glucitol.
- [00119] Acyl refers to groups of 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 carbon atoms of a straight, branched, cyclic configuration, saturated, unsaturated and aromatic and combinations thereof, attached to the parent structure through a carbonyl functionality. One or more carbons in the acyl residue may be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur as long as the point of attachment to the parent remains at the carbonyl. Examples include formyl, acetyl, propionyl, isobutyryl, t-butoxycarbonyl, benzoyl, benzyloxycarbonyl and the like. Lower-acyl refers to groups containing one to four carbons.
- [00120] Aryl and heteroaryl refer to aromatic or heteroaromatic rings, respectively, as substituents. Heteroaryl contains one, two or three heteroatoms selected from O, N, or S. Both refer to monocyclic 5- or 6-membered aromatic or heteroaromatic rings, bicyclic 9- or 10-membered aromatic or heteroaromatic rings and tricyclic 13- or 14-membered aromatic or heteroaromatic rings. Aromatic 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13 and 14-membered carbocyclic rings include, e.g., benzene, naphthalene, indane, tetralin, and fluorene and the 5, 6, 7, 8, 9 and 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic rings include, e.g., imidazole, pyridine, indole, thiophene, benzopyranone, thiazole, furan, benzimidazole, quinoline, isoquinoline, quinoxaline, pyrimidine, pyrazine, tetrazole and pyrazole.
- [00121] Arylalkyl means an alkyl residue attached to an aryl ring. Examples are benzyl, phenethyl and the like.
- [00122] Substituted alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl etc. refer to alkyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, or heterocyclyl wherein up to three H atoms in each residue are replaced with halogen, haloalkyl, hydroxy, loweralkoxy, carboxy, carboalkoxy (also referred to as alkoxycarbonyl), carboxamido (also referred to as alkylaminocarbonyl), cyano, carbonyl,

nitro, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, mercapto, alkylthio, sulfoxide, sulfone, acylamino, amidino, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl, phenoxy, benzyloxy, or heteroaryloxy.

[00123] The term "halogen" means fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine.

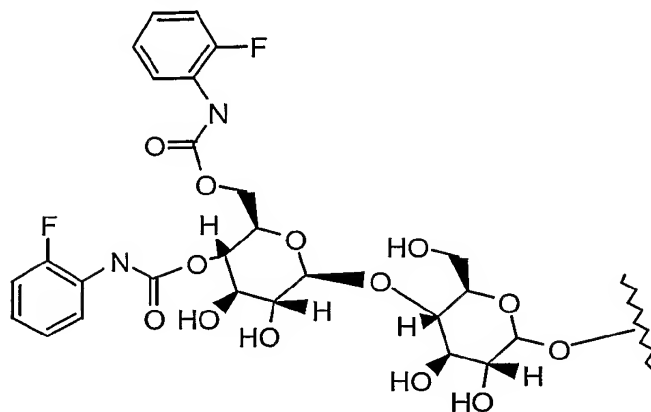
[00124] The term "sugar" is used in its normal sense, as defined in Hawley's Condensed Chemical Dictionary, 12th Edition, Richard J. Lewis, Sr.; Van Nostrand Reinhold Co. New York. It encompasses any carbohydrate comprised of one or two saccharose groups. The monosaccharide sugars (often called simple sugars) are composed of chains of 2-7 carbon atoms. One of the carbons carries aldehydic or ketonic oxygen, which may be combined in acetal or ketal forms. The remaining carbons usually have hydrogen atoms and hydroxyl groups (or protecting groups for hydroxyl, such as acetate). Among monosaccharides which would be considered within the term "sugars" as intended in this application, are arabinose, ribose, xylose, ribulose, xylulose, deoxyribose, galactose, glucose, mannose, fructose, sorbose, tagatose, fucose, quinovose, rhamnose, mannoheptulose and sedoheptulose. Among the disaccharides are sucrose, lactose, maltose, and cellobiose. Unless specifically modified, the general term "sugar" refers to both D-sugars and L-sugars. The sugar may also be protected. The sugar may be attached through oxygen (as in US patent 5,756,470) or through carbon (as in PCT WO 2002066464), the disclosures of both of which are incorporated herein by reference.

[00125] Reduced C-attached sugars or C-glycosyl compounds are also encompassed by the invention. The reduced sugars (e.g. glucitol), which could be classed either as polyols or as sugars, are also known as alditols. Alditols are polyols having the general formula $\text{HOCH}_2[\text{CH}(\text{OH})]_n\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ (formally derivable from an aldose by reduction of the carbonyl group).

[00126] The term "glucuronide" is also used in its normal sense to refer to a glycoside of glucuronic acid.

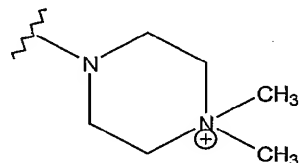
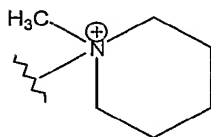
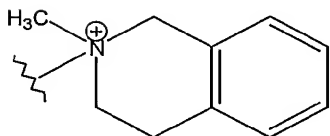
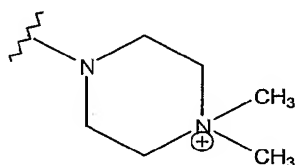
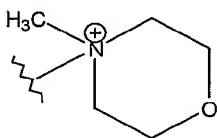
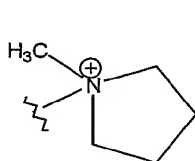
[00127] The term "sugar carbamate" refers to mono-, di- and oligosaccharides in which one or more hydroxyls have been derivatized as carbamates, particularly as phenyl carbamates and substituted phenyl carbamates. [See Detmers et al. Biochim Biophys.

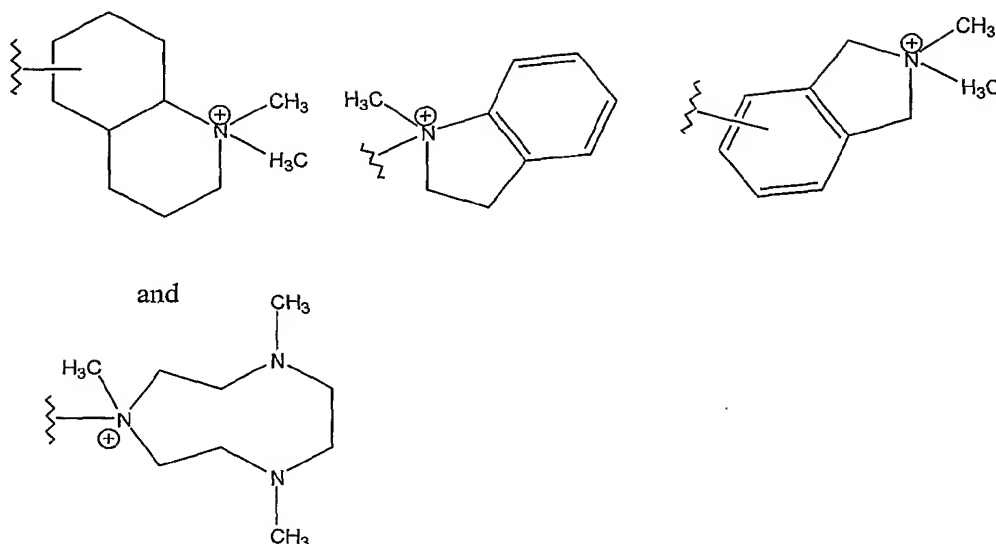
Acta 1486, 243-252 (2000), which is incorporated herein by reference.] A preferred



sugar carbamate is:

[00128] Examples of quats that fall within the definition of monocyclic and bicyclic trialkylammoniumalkyl residues include:





[00129] The term "prodrug" refers to a compound that is made more active in vivo.

Commonly the conversion of prodrug to drug occurs by enzymatic processes in the liver or blood of the mammal. Many of the compounds of the invention may be chemically modified without absorption into the systemic circulation, and in those cases, activation in vivo may come about by chemical action (as in the acid-catalyzed cleavage in the stomach) or through the intermediacy of enzymes and microflora in the gastrointestinal GI tract.

[00130] In the characterization of some of the substituents, it is recited that certain substituents may combine to form rings. Unless stated otherwise, it is intended that such rings may exhibit various degrees of unsaturation (from fully saturated to fully unsaturated), may include heteroatoms and may be substituted with lower alkyl or alkoxy.

[00131] The variables are defined when introduced and retain that definition throughout. Thus, for example, $\text{R}^{3\text{C}}$ is always chosen from H, -OH and a glucuronide residue, although, according to standard patent practice, in dependent claims it may be restricted to a subset of these values. Superscripts containing lowercase letters are added to distinguish among residues that are attached similarly and that have overlapping Markush groups. For example, the substituent attached at the 4-Position of the spiro cyclohexane ring of the compound of formula IC is always labeled $\text{R}^{3\text{C}}$, but can be $\text{R}^{3\text{C}}$, $\text{R}^{3\text{Ca}}$, $\text{R}^{3\text{Cb}}$ or

R^{3Cc} depending on the members of the Markush group defining it. For simplicity, the dependent claims, when multiply dependent, may refer to R^{3C} etc. This is intended to modify the appropriate value of the corresponding variable R^3 , R^{3Ca} , R^{3Cb} , R^{3Cc} etc. in each claim from which it depends.

[00132] It will be recognized that the compounds of this invention can exist in forms in which one isotope of a particular atom may be replaced with a different isotope of that same atom. For example, "hydrogen" may be 1H , 2H or 3H ; "carbon" may be ^{12}C , ^{13}C , or ^{14}C ; "nitrogen" may be ^{14}N or ^{15}N ; "oxygen" may be ^{16}O , ^{17}O or ^{18}O ; and the like. It will be recognized that the compounds of this invention can exist in radiolabeled form, i.e., the compounds may contain one or more atoms containing an atomic mass or mass number different from the atomic mass or mass number usually found in nature. Radioisotopes of hydrogen, carbon, phosphorous, fluorine, iodine and chlorine include 3H , ^{14}C , ^{35}S , ^{18}F , ^{32}P , ^{33}P , ^{125}I , and ^{36}Cl , respectively. Compounds that contain those radioisotopes and/or other radioisotopes of other atoms are within the scope of this invention. Tritiated, i.e. 3H , and carbon-14, i.e., ^{14}C , radioisotopes are particularly preferred for their ease in preparation and detectability. Radiolabeled compounds described herein and prodrugs thereof can generally be prepared by methods well known to those skilled in the art. Conveniently, such radiolabeled compounds can be prepared by carrying out the procedures disclosed in the Examples and Schemes by substituting a readily available radiolabeled reagent for a non-radiolabeled reagent.

[00133] The compounds of the invention can also exist in other labeled forms.

US20020009714 discloses methods of labeling and uses of labeled cholesterol absorption inhibitors. The labels can be primary labels (where the label comprises an element which is detected directly) or secondary labels (where the detected label binds to a primary label, e.g., as is common in immunological labeling). An introduction to labels, labeling procedures and detection of labels is found in Introduction to Immunocytochemistry, (2d ed.) Polak and Van Noorden,, Springer Verlag, N.Y. (1997) and in Handbook of Fluorescent Probes and Research Chemicals, Haugland (1996), a combined handbook and catalogue published by Molecular Probes, Inc., Eugene, Oreg. Primary and secondary labels can include undetected elements as well as detected elements. Useful primary and

secondary labels in the present invention can include spectral labels, which include fluorescent labels such as fluorescent dyes (e.g., fluorescein and derivatives such as fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC) and Oregon GreenTM, rhodamine and derivatives (e.g., Texas red, tetramethylrhodamine isothiocyanate (TRITC), etc.), digoxigenin, biotin, phycoerythrin, AMCA, CyDyesTM and the like), radiolabels (including those described above), enzymes (e.g., horseradish peroxidase, alkaline phosphatase etc.) spectral colorimetric labels such as colloidal gold or colored glass or plastic (e.g. polystyrene, polypropylene, latex, etc.) beads. The label may be coupled directly or indirectly to the compound of the invention according to methods well known in the art. As indicated above, a wide variety of labels may be used, with the choice of label depending on sensitivity required, ease of conjugation with the compound, stability requirements, available instrumentation, and disposal provisions. In general, a detector which monitors a protein/inhibitory agent interaction is adapted to the particular label which is used. Typical detectors include spectrophotometers, phototubes and photodiodes, microscopes, scintillation counters, cameras, film and the like, as well as combinations thereof. Examples of suitable detectors are widely available from a variety of commercial sources known to persons of skill.

[00134] Nonlimiting examples of labels include those which utilize 1) chemiluminescence (using horseradish peroxidase or alkaline phosphatase with substrates that produce photons as breakdown products) with kits being available, e.g., from Molecular Probes, Amersham, Boehringer-Mannheim, and Life Technologies/Gibco BRL; 2) color production (using both horseradish peroxidase or alkaline phosphatase with substrates that produce a colored precipitate) (kits available from Life Technologies/Gibco BRL, and Boehringer-Mannheim); 3) fluorescence (e.g., using Cy-5 (Amersham), fluorescein, and other fluorescent tags); 5) radioactivity. Other methods for labeling and detection will be readily apparent to one skilled in the art.

[00135] In one embodiment, the label is a fluorescent label. Fluorescent labels have the advantage of requiring fewer precautions in handling, and being amenable to high-throughput visualization techniques (optical analysis including digitization of the image for analysis in an integrated system comprising a computer). Preferred labels are

typically characterized by one or more of the following: high sensitivity, high stability, low background, low environmental sensitivity and high specificity in labeling. Fluorescent moieties, which are incorporated into the labels of the invention, are generally known, including Texas red, digoxigenin, biotin, 1- and 2-aminonaphthalene, p,p'-diaminostilbenes, pyrenes, quaternary phenanthridine salts, 9-aminoacridines, p,p'-diaminobenzophenone imines, anthracenes, oxacarbocyanine, merocyanine, 3-aminoequilenin, perylene, bis-benzoxazole, bis-P-oxazolyl benzene, 1,2-benzophenazin, retinol, bis-3-aminopyridinium salts, hellebrigenin, tetracycline, sterophenol, benzimidazolylphenylamine, 2-oxo-3-chromen, indole, xanthen, 7-hydroxycoumarin, phenoxazine, calicylate, strophanthidin, porphyrins, triarylmethanes, flavin and many others. Many fluorescent tags are commercially available from the SIGMA chemical company (Saint Louis, Mo.), Molecular Probes, R&D systems (Minneapolis, Minn.), Pharmacia LKB Biotechnology (Piscataway, N.J.), CLONTECH Laboratories, Inc. (Palo Alto, Calif.), Chem Genes Corp., Aldrich Chemical Company (Milwaukee, Wis.), Glen Research, Inc., GIBCO BRL Life Technologies, Inc. (Gaithersburg, Md.), Fluka ChemicaBiochemika Analytika (Fluka Chemie AG, Buchs, Switzerland), and Applied Biosystems (Foster City, Calif.), as well as many other commercial sources known to one of skill.

[00136] The labels may be covalently bound to the compounds of the invention by a tether group. The tether group can be any moiety capable of covalently linking to the inhibitors and to the labels. Preferred groups are substituted or unsubstituted alkylene, alkenylene or alkynylene of 1 to 10 carbon atoms, more preferably 1 to 4 carbon atoms. Particularly preferred groups are unsubstituted alkynylenes.

[00137] The terms "methods of treating or preventing" mean amelioration, prevention or relief from the symptoms and/or effects associated with lipid disorders. The term "preventing" as used herein refers to administering a medicament beforehand to forestall or obtund an acute episode or, in the case of a chronic condition to diminish the likelihood or seriousness of the condition. The person of ordinary skill in the medical art (to which the present method claims are directed) recognizes that the term "prevent" is not an absolute term. In the medical art it is understood to refer to the prophylactic

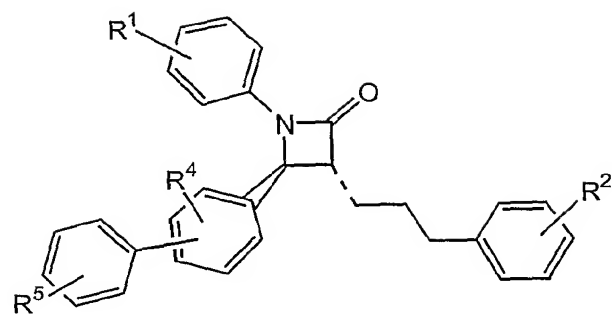
administration of a drug to substantially diminish the likelihood or seriousness of a condition, and this is the sense intended in applicants' claims. As used herein, reference to "treatment" of a patient is intended to include prophylaxis.

[00138] Throughout this application, various references are referred to. Each of the patents, patent applications, patent publications, and references mentioned herein is hereby incorporated by reference in its entirety.

[00139] The term "mammal" is used in its dictionary sense. The term "mammal" includes, for example, mice, hamsters, rats, cows, sheep, pigs, goats, and horses, monkeys, dogs (e.g., *Canis familiaris*), cats, rabbits, guinea pigs, and primates, including humans.

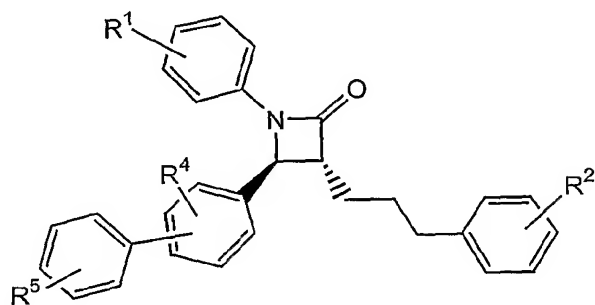
[00140] The compounds described herein contain two or more asymmetric centers and may thus give rise to enantiomers, diastereomers, and other stereoisomeric forms. Each chiral center may be defined, in terms of absolute stereochemistry, as (R)- or (S)-. The present invention is meant to include all such possible isomers, as well as, their racemic and optically pure forms. Optically active (R)- and (S)-, or (D)- and (L)- isomers may be prepared using chiral synthons or chiral reagents, or resolved using conventional techniques. When the compounds described herein contain olefinic double bonds or other centers of geometric asymmetry, and unless specified otherwise, it is intended that the compounds include both E and Z geometric isomers. Likewise, all tautomeric forms are also intended to be included.

[00141] The graphic representations of racemic, ambiscalemic and scalemic or enantiomerically pure compounds used herein are taken from Maehr J. Chem. Ed. 62, 114-120 (1985): solid and broken wedges are used to denote the absolute configuration of a chiral element; wavy lines and single thin lines indicate disavowal of any stereochemical implication which the bond it represents could generate; solid and broken bold lines are geometric descriptors indicating the relative configuration shown but denoting racemic character; and wedge outlines and dotted or broken lines denote enantiomerically pure compounds of indeterminate absolute configuration. Thus, for example, the formula WW is intended to encompass both of the pure enantiomers of that pair:

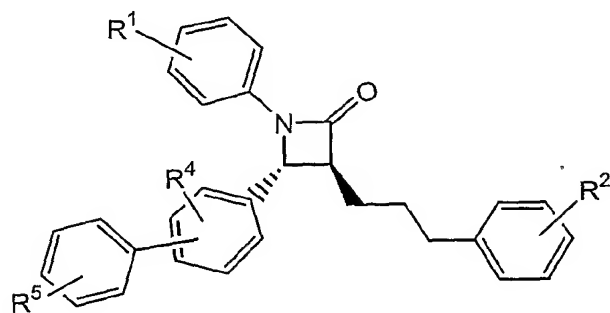


WW

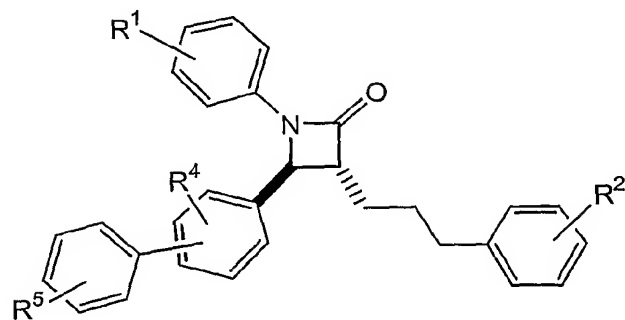
Means either pure R,S:



or pure S,R:



whereas



refers to a racemic mixture of R,S and S,R, i.e. having a trans relative configuration on the beta lactam ring.

[00142] The term "enantiomeric excess" is well known in the art and is defined for a resolution of ab into a + b as

$$ee_a = \left(\frac{\text{conc. of } a - \text{conc. of } b}{\text{conc. of } a + \text{conc. of } b} \right) \times 100$$

[00143] The term "enantiomeric excess" is related to the older term "optical purity" in that both are measures of the same phenomenon. The value of ee will be a number from 0 to 100, zero being racemic and 100 being pure, single enantiomer. A compound which in the past might have been called 98% optically pure is now more precisely described as 96% ee; in other words, a 90% ee reflects the presence of 95% of one enantiomer and 5% of the other in the material in question.

[00144] The configuration of any carbon-carbon double bond appearing herein is selected for convenience only and is not intended to designate a particular configuration; thus a carbon-carbon double bond depicted arbitrarily herein as E may be Z, E, or a mixture of the two in any proportion.

[00145] Terminology related to "protecting", "deprotecting" and "protected" functionalities occurs throughout this application. Such terminology is well understood by persons of skill in the art and is used in the context of processes which involve sequential treatment with a series of reagents. In that context, a protecting group refers to a group which is used to mask a functionality during a process step in which it would otherwise react, but in which reaction is undesirable. The protecting group prevents reaction at that step, but may be subsequently removed to expose the original functionality. The removal or "deprotection" occurs after the completion of the reaction or reactions in which the functionality would interfere. Thus, when a sequence of reagents is specified, as it is in the processes of the invention, the person of ordinary skill can readily envision those groups that would be suitable as "protecting groups". Suitable groups for that purpose are discussed in standard textbooks in the field of chemistry, such as Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis by T.W.Greene [John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1991], which is incorporated herein by reference. Particular attention is drawn to

the chapters entitled "Protection for the Hydroxyl Group, Including 1,2- and 1,3-Diols" (pages 10-86).

[00146] The abbreviations Me, Et, Ph, Tf, Ts and Ms represent methyl, ethyl, phenyl, trifluoromethanesulfonyl, toluenesulfonyl and methanesulfonyl respectively. A comprehensive list of abbreviations utilized by organic chemists (i.e. persons of ordinary skill in the art) appears in the first issue of each volume of the Journal of Organic Chemistry. The list, which is typically presented in a table entitled "Standard List of Abbreviations" is incorporated herein by reference.

[00147] While it may be possible for the compounds of the invention to be administered as the raw chemical, it is preferable to present them as a pharmaceutical composition. According to a further aspect, the present invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound of formula IA-XXIIA, IB, IIB, IC, IIC, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof, together with one or more pharmaceutically carriers thereof and optionally one or more other therapeutic ingredients. The carrier(s) must be "acceptable" in the sense of being compatible with the other ingredients of the formulation and not deleterious to the recipient thereof.

[00148] The formulations include those suitable for oral, parenteral (including subcutaneous, intradermal, intramuscular, intravenous and intraarticular), rectal and topical (including dermal, buccal, sublingual and intraocular) administration. The most suitable route may depend upon the condition and disorder of the recipient. The formulations may conveniently be presented in unit dosage form and may be prepared by any of the methods well known in the art of pharmacy. All methods include the step of bringing into association a compound of formula IA-XXIIA, IB, IIB, IC, IIC, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof ("active ingredient") with the carrier, which constitutes one or more accessory ingredients. In general, the formulations are prepared by uniformly and intimately bringing into association the active ingredient with liquid carriers or finely divided solid carriers or both and then, if necessary, shaping the product into the desired formulation.

[00149] Formulations of the present invention suitable for oral administration may be presented as discrete units such as capsules, cachets or tablets each containing a

predetermined amount of the active ingredient; as a powder or granules; as a solution or a suspension in an aqueous liquid or a non-aqueous liquid; or as an oil-in-water liquid emulsion or a water-in-oil liquid emulsion. The active ingredient may also be presented as a bolus, electuary or paste.

[00150] A tablet may be made by compression or molding, optionally with one or more accessory ingredients. Compressed tablets may be prepared by compressing in a suitable machine the active ingredient in a free-flowing form such as a powder or granules, optionally mixed with a binder, lubricant, inert diluent, lubricating, surface active or dispersing agent. Molded tablets may be made by molding in a suitable machine a mixture of the powdered compound moistened with an inert liquid diluent. The tablets may optionally be coated or scored and may be formulated so as to provide sustained, delayed or controlled release of the active ingredient therein. The pharmaceutical compositions may include a "pharmaceutically acceptable inert carrier", and this expression is intended to include one or more inert excipients, which include starches, polyols, granulating agents, microcrystalline cellulose, diluents, lubricants, binders, disintegrating agents, and the like. If desired, tablet dosages of the disclosed compositions may be coated by standard aqueous or nonaqueous techniques, "Pharmaceutically acceptable carrier" also encompasses controlled release means.

[00151] Compositions of the present invention may also optionally include other therapeutic ingredients, anti-caking agents, preservatives, sweetening agents, colorants, flavors, desiccants, plasticizers, dyes, and the like. Any such optional ingredient must be compatible with the compound of the invention to insure the stability of the formulation. The composition may contain other additives as needed, including for example lactose, glucose, fructose, galactose, trehalose, sucrose, maltose, raffinose, maltitol, melezitose, stachyose, lactitol, palatinite, starch, xylitol, mannitol, myoinositol, and the like, and hydrates thereof, and amino acids, for example alanine, glycine and betaine, and peptides and proteins, for example albumen.

[00152] Examples of excipients for use as the pharmaceutically acceptable carriers and the pharmaceutically acceptable inert carriers and the aforementioned additional ingredients

include, but are not limited to binders, fillers, disintegrants, lubricants, anti-microbial agents, and coating agents such as:

- [00153] BINDERS: polyethylene oxide, corn starch, citric acid monohydrate, potato starch, other starches, gelatin, natural and synthetic gums such as acacia, sodium alginate, alginic acid, other alginates, powdered tragacanth, guar gum, cellulose and its derivatives (*e.g.*, ethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate, carboxymethyl cellulose, carboxymethyl cellulose calcium, sodium carboxymethyl cellulose, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, polyvinyl alcohol, methyl cellulose, pre-gelatinized starch (*e.g.*, STARCH 1500® and STARCH 1500 LM®, sold by Colorcon, Ltd.), hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose, methyl cellulose, hydroxymethyl cellulose, hydroxypropyl cellulose, microcrystalline cellulose (*e.g.* AVICEL™, such as, AVICEL-PH-101™, -103™ and -105™, sold by FMC Corporation, Marcus Hook, PA, USA), or mixtures thereof;
- [00154] FILLERS: talc, sodium chloride, aluminum oxide, iron oxides (*e.g.* yellow, black, red), red ferric oxide, yellow ferric oxide, magnesium carbonate, magnesium hydroxide, magnesium aluminate, aluminum magnesium hydroxide, calcium carbonate (*e.g.*, granules or powder), calcium dihydroxide, dibasic calcium phosphate, dibasic calcium phosphate anhydrous, triacetin, lactose, hydrous lactose, tribasic calcium phosphate, calcium sulfate (*e.g.*, granules or powder), microcrystalline cellulose, silicified microcrystalline cellulose, soybean lecithin, xanthar gum, silicic anhydride, powdered cellulose, dextrates, kaolin, mannitol, silicic acid, sorbitol, starch, pre-gelatinized starch, or mixtures thereof;
- [00155] DISINTEGRANTS: agar-agar, alginic acid, calcium carbonate, simethicone emulsion, lactose monohydrate, microcrystalline cellulose, croscarmellose sodium, crospovidone, povidone, polacrilin potassium, sodium starch glycolate, potato or tapioca starch, other starches, pre-gelatinized starch, clays, other algins, other celluloses, gums, or mixtures thereof;
- [00156] SURFACTANTS: Tween 80 or polyoxyethylene-Polyoxypropylene copolymer, polyoxyethylene sorbitan, or mixtures thereof;
- [00157] LUBRICANTS: calcium stearate, magnesium stearate, mineral oil, light mineral oil, glycerin, sorbitol, mannitol, palmitic acid, polyethylene glycol, other glycols, stearic

acid, sodium lauryl sulfate, talc, hydrogenated vegetable oil (e.g., peanut oil, cottonseed oil, sunflower oil, sesame oil, olive oil, corn oil and soybean oil), zinc stearate, ethyl oleate, ethyl laurate, agar, syloid silica gel (AEROSIL 200, W.R. Grace Co., Baltimore, MD USA), a coagulated aerosol of synthetic silica (Degussa Co., Plano, TX USA), a pyrogenic silicon dioxide (CAB-O-SIL, Cabot Co., Boston, MA USA), or mixtures thereof;

[00158] ANTI-CAKING AGENTS: calcium silicate, magnesium silicate, silicon dioxide, colloidal silicon dioxide, talc, or mixtures thereof

[00159] ANTIMICROBIAL AGENTS: benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride, benzoic acid, benzyl alcohol, butyl paraben, cetylpyridinium chloride, cresol, chlorobutanol, dehydroacetic acid, ethylparaben, methylparaben, phenol, phenylethyl alcohol, phenylmercuric acetate, phenylmercuric nitrate, potassium sorbate, propylparaben, sodium benzoate, sodium dehydroacetate, sodium propionate, polysorbate, sorbic acid, thimersol, thymo, or mixtures thereof;

[00160] COATING AGENTS: sodium carboxymethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate phthalate, ethylcellulose, gelatin, pharmaceutical glaze, hydroxypropyl cellulose, hydroxypropyl methylcellulose (hypromellose), hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, methylcellulose, polyethylene glycol (e.g. polyethylene glycol 8000, polyethylene glycol 3000), polyvinyl acetate phthalate, shellac, sucrose, titanium dioxide, carnuba wax, candellilla wax, microcrystalline wax, or mixtures thereof;

[00161] COLORANTS: FD&C blue no.1, D&C yellow #10 aluminum lake, FD&C yellow #6/sunset yellow FCF aluminum lake, FD&C carmine aluminum lake and FD&C blue #1, or mixtures thereof; and

[00162] ANTIOXIDANTS: butylated hydroxyanisole, sodium ascorbate, sodium metabisulfate, malic acid, citric acid, ascorbic acid, butylated hydroxytoluene, vitamin C, propyl gallate, or mixtures thereof.

[00163] Solid oral dosage forms may optionally be treated with coating systems (e.g. Opadry® fx film coating system, for example Opadry® blue (OY-LS-20921), Opadry® white (YS-2-7063), Opadry® white (YS-1-7040), and black ink (S-1-8106).

[00164] The dose range for adult humans is generally from 0.005 mg to 10 g/day orally. Tablets or other forms of presentation provided in discrete units may conveniently contain an amount of compound of the invention which is effective at such dosage or as a multiple of the same, for instance, units containing 5 mg to 500 mg, usually around 10 mg to 200 mg. The precise amount of compound administered to a patient will be the responsibility of the attendant physician. However, the dose employed will depend on a number of factors, including the age and sex of the patient, the precise disorder being treated, and its severity.

[00165] A dosage unit (e.g. an oral dosage unit) can include from, for example, 1 to 30 mg, 1 to 40 mg, 1 to 100 mg, 1 to 300 mg, 1 to 500 mg, 2 to 500 mg, 3 to 100 mg, 5 to 20 mg, 5 to 100 mg (e.g. 1 mg, 2 mg, 3 mg, 4mg, 5 mg, 6 mg, 7 mg, 8 mg, 9 mg, 10 mg, 11 mg, 12 mg, 13 mg, 14 mg, 15 mg, 16 mg, 17 mg, 18 mg, 19 mg, 20 mg, 25 mg, 30 mg, 35 mg, 40 mg, 45 mg, 50 mg, 55 mg, 60 mg, 65 mg, 70 mg, 75 mg, 80 mg, 85 mg, 90 mg, 95 mg, 100 mg, 150 mg, 200 mg, 250 mg, 300 mg, 350 mg, 400 mg, 450 mg, 500 mg) of a compound described herein.

Combination Therapy

[00166] Combination therapy can be achieved by administering two or more agents, each of which is formulated and administered separately, or by administering two or more agents in a single formulation. Other combinations are also encompassed by combination therapy. For example, two agents can be formulated together and administered in conjunction with a separate formulation containing a third agent. While the two or more agents in the combination therapy can be administered simultaneously, they need not be. For example, administration of a first agent (or combination of agents) can precede administration of a second agent (or combination of agents) by minutes, hours, days, or weeks. Thus, the two or more agents can be administered within minutes of each other or within 1, 2, 3, 6, 9, 12, 15, 18, or 24 hours of each other or within 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 14 days of each other or within 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10 weeks of each other. In some cases even longer intervals are possible. While in many cases it is desirable that the two or more agents used in a combination therapy be present in within the patient's body at the same time, this need not be so. Combination therapy can also

include two or more administrations of one or more of the agents used in the combination. For example, if agent X and agent Y are used in a combination, one could administer them sequentially in any combination one or more times, e.g., in the order X-Y-X, X-X-Y, Y-X-Y, Y-Y-X, X-X-Y-Y, etc. Combination therapy can also include the administration of two or more agents via different routes or locations. For example, (a) one agent is administered orally and another agent is administered intravenously or (b) one agent is administered orally and another is administered locally into the site of injury (e.g. an artery). In each case, the agents can either simultaneously or sequentially. Approximated dosages for some of the combination therapy agents described herein are found in the "BNF Recommended Dose" column of tables on pages 11-17 of WO01/76632 (the data in the tables being attributed to the March 2000 British National Formulary) and can also be found in other standard formularies and other drug prescribing directories. For some drugs, the customary prescribed dose for an indication will vary somewhat from country to country.

Dyslipidemic agents

[00167] The compounds described herein can be used in therapeutic combination with one or more dyslipidemic agents. Suitable dyslipidemic agents for use in therapeutic combination with a compound described herein include bile acid sequestrants such as cholestyramine (a styrene-divinylbenzene copolymer containing quaternary ammonium cationic groups capable of binding bile acids, such as Questran® or Questran Light® cholestyramine which are available from Bristol-Myers Squibb), colestevlam hydrochloride (such as WelChol® Tablets (polyallylamine hydrochloride) cross-linked with epichlorohydrin and alkylated with 1-bromodecane and (6-bromohexyl)-trimethylammonium bromide) which are available from Sankyo), colestipol (a copolymer of diethylenetriamine and 1-chloro-2,3-epoxypropane, such as Colestid® tablets which are available from Pharmacia), dialkylaminoalkyl derivatives of a cross-linked dextran, LoCholest®, DEAE-Sephadex (Secholex®, Polidexide®), water soluble derivatives such as 3,3'-ioene, N-(cycloalkyl)alkylamines and poliglucosam, insoluble quaternized polystyrenes, saponins and mixtures thereof and those bile acid sequestrants disclosed in WO97/11345, WO98/57652, US3692895, and US5703188. Suitable inorganic

cholesterol sequestrants include bismuth salicylate plus montmorillonite clay, aluminum hydroxide and calcium carbonate antacids.

[00168] HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors are dyslipidemic agents that can be used in therapeutic combinations with compounds described herein. Suitable HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors for use in therapeutic combination with a compounds described herein include: atorvastatin (Lipitor®; disclosed in US4681893, US5385929 and US5686104), atorvastatin calcium (disclosed in US5273995), dihydrocompactin, (disclosed in US4450171), bervastatin (disclosed in US5082859), carvastatin, cerivastatin (Baycol®; disclosed in US5006530, US5502199, and US5177080), crilvastatin, dalvastatin (disclosed in EP738510A2), fluvastatin (Lescol®; disclosed in US4739073 and US534772), glenvastatin, fluindostatin (disclosed in EP363934A1), velostatin (visinolin; disclosed in US4448784 and US4450171), lovastatin (mevinolin; Mevacor® (Merck and Co.) and related compounds disclosed in US4231938), mevastatin (and related compound disclosed in US3983140), compactin (and related compounds disclosed in US4804770), pitavastatin (also known as NK-104, itavastatin, nisvastatin, nisbastatin disclosed in US5102888), pravastatin (Pravachol® (Bristol Myers Squibb) and related compounds disclosed in US4346227), rivastatin (sodium 7-(4-fluorophenyl)-2,6-diisopropyl-5-methoxymethylpyridin-3-yl)-3,5-dihydroxy-6-heptanoate), rosuvastatin/rosuvastatin calcium (Crestor®; also known as ZD-4522 or atavastatin or visastatin; disclosed in US5260440), simvastatin (Zocor® (Merck and Co.) and related compounds as disclosed in US4448784 and US4450171), sirrivastatin, CI-981, dihydroxy open statins as disclosed in US2005010561, compounds disclosed in WO03/033481, US20050085497, US4231938, US4444784, US4647576, US4686237, US4499289, US4346227, US5753675, US4613610, EP0221025, and EP491226, and optical or geometric isomers thereof; and nontoxic pharmaceutically acceptable salts, N-oxides, esters, quaternary ammonium salts, and prodrugs thereof. In HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors where an open-acid form can exist, salt and ester forms may preferably be formed from the open-acid, and all such forms are included within the meaning of the term "HMG-CoA reductase inhibitor" as used herein. Pharmaceutically acceptable salts with respect to the HMG-CoA reductase inhibitor includes non-toxic

salts of the compounds which are generally prepared by reacting the free acid with a suitable organic or inorganic base, particularly those formed from cations such as sodium, potassium, aluminum, calcium, lithium, magnesium, zinc and tetramethylammonium, as well as those salts formed from amines such as ammonia, ethylenediamine, N-methylglucamine, lysine, arginine, ornithine, choline, N,N'-dibenzylethylenediamine, chloroprocaine, diethanolamine, procaine, N-benzylphenethylamine, 1-P-chlorobenzyl-2-Pyrrolidine-1'-yl-methylbenzimidazole, diethylamine, piperazine, and tris(hydroxymethyl) aminomethane. Further examples of salt forms of HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors may include, but are not limited to, acetate, benzenesulfonate, benzoate, bicarbonate, bisulfate, bitartrate, borate, bromide, calcium edetate, camsylate, carbonate, chloride, clavulanate, citrate, dihydrochloride, edetate, edisylate, estolate, esylate, fumarate, gluceptate, gluconate, glutamate, glycollylsarsanilate, hexylresorcinate, hydrabamine, hydrobromide, hydrochloride, hydroxynapthoate, iodide, isothionate, lactate, lactobionate, laurate, malate, maleate, mandelate, mesylate, methylsulfate, mucate, napsylate, nitrate, oleate, oxalate, pamaote, palmitate, panthothenate, phosphate/diphosphate, polygalacturonate, salicylate, stearate, subacetate, succinate, tannate, tartrate, teoclate, tosylate, triethiodide, and valerate.

[00169] Prodrugs of HMG CoA reductase inhibitors are also dyslipidemic agents. In certain embodiments, the prodrug is a lipophilic ester comprising an ester prodrug linkage to the HMG-like moiety of the statin drug and a lipophilic group described, for example, in WO05023305. Lipophilic alcohols available which may be used to form such statin prodrugs, include, but are not limited to, methanol, ethanol, propan-1-ol, propan-2-ol, butan-1-ol, butan-2-ol, pentan-1-ol, hexan-1-ol, heptan-1-ol, octan-1-ol, nonan-1-ol, decan-1-ol, 2-ethyl-hexan-1-ol, 3,3, 5-trimethyl-cyclohexanol, 2-ethoxy-ethanol, and menthol. Examples of such lipophilic ester statin prodrugs include but are not limited to (3R, 5R)-3, 5-Dihydroxy-7- (2-isopropyl-4, 5-diphenyl-3-Phenylcarbamoyl-Pyrrol-1-yl)-heptanoic acid, (E)-(3R, 5S)-3, 5-Dihydroxy-7-(1-isopropyl-3-Phenyl-1H-indol-2-yl)-hept-6-enoic acid, (E)- (3R, 5S)-3, 5-Dihydroxy-7- [4-isopropyl-2- (methanesulfonyl-methyl-amino)-6-Phenyl- pyrimidin-5-yl] -hept-6-enoic acid, (E)- (3R, 5S)-7- (2-Cyclopropyl-4-Phenyl-quinolin-3-yl)- 3,5-dihydroxy-hept-6-

enoic acid, (E)- (3R, 5S)-7- (2, 6-Diisopropyl-5-methoxymethyl-4-Phenyl-Pyridin-3-yl) - 3, 5-dihydroxy-hept-6-enoic acid, including free acid and pharmaceutically acceptable salt forms thereof. Hydroxylated statin forms and ester prodrugs thereof as described, for example, in WO05023305 are also dyslipidemic agents. Hydroxylated statins include but are not limited to (3R, 5R)-3-, 5-Dihydroxy-7- [2- (4-hydroxy-Phenyl)-5-isopropyl-3-Phenyl-4-Phenylcarbamoyl-Pyrrol-1-yl] -heptanoic acid, (E)- (3R, 5S)-3, 5-Dihydroxy-7- [3- (4-hydroxy-Phenyl)-1-isopropyl-1H-indol-2-yl] -hept-6-enoic acid, (E)- (3R, 5S)-3, 5-Dihydroxy-7- [4- (4-hydroxy-Phenyl)-6-isopropyl-2- (methanesulfonyl-methyl-amino)-Pyrimidin-5-yl] -hept-6-enoic acid, (E)- (3R, 5S)-7- [2-Cyclopropyl-4- (4-hydroxy-Phenyl)-quinolin-3-yl]-3, 5-dihydroxy-hept-6-enoic acid, (E)- (3R, 5S)-3, 5-Dihydroxy-7- [4- (4-hydroxy-Phenyl)-2, 6-diisopropyl-5-methoxymethyl-Pyridin-3-yl]-hept-6-enoic acid, including free acid and pharmaceutically acceptable salt forms thereof. Ester prodrugs of hydroxylated statins are of the general formul X-Y, where X is a hydroxylated statin (e.g. (3R, 5R)-3-, 5-Dihydroxy-7- [2- (4-hydroxy-Phenyl)-5-isopropyl-3-Phenyl-4-phenylcarbamoyl-Pyrrol-1-yl]-heptanoic acid, (E)- (3R, 5S)-3, 5-Dihydroxy-7- [3- (4-hydroxy-Phenyl)-1-isopropyl-1H-indol-2-yl]-hept-6-enoic acid, (E)- (3R, 5S)-3, 5-Dihydroxy-7- [4- (4-hydroxy-Phenyl)-6-isopropyl-2- (methanesulfonyl-methyl-amino)-pyrimidin-5-yl] -hept-6-enoic acid, (E)- (3R, 5S)-7- [2-Cyclopropyl-4- (4-hydroxy-Phenyl)-quinolin-3-yl] -3,5-dihydroxy-hept-6-enoic acid and (E)- (3R, 5S)-3, 5-Dihydroxy-7- [4- (4-hydroxy-Phenyl) -2,6-diisopropyl-5-methoxymethyl-Pyridin-3-yl]-hept-6-enoic acid) and Y is chosen from formic acid, acetic acid, propan-1-oic acid, propan-2-oic acid, butan-1-oic acid, butan-2-oic acid, pentan-1-oic acid, hexan-1-oic acid, heptan-1-oic acid, octan-1-oic acid, nonan-1-oic acid, decan-1-oic acid, benzoic acid, cinnamic acid and 1-hydroxy-benzoic acid. Not limiting examples of ester prodrugs of hydroxylated statins are shown in WO05023305, figure 10.

[00170] Lipid modulating agents are dyslipidemic agents which function as high density lipoprotein (HDL), including synthetic HDL which contains lipid such as phosphatidyl choline, phosphatidyl serine, phosphatidyl ethanolamine, and other phospholipids in combination with HDL associated proteins such as ApoA-I or variants thereof including ApoAI-Milano (R173C) and biologically active peptides derived therefrom, the ApoA-I

Paris variant (R151C), the reverse lipid transport (RLT) peptides, enzymes associated with HDL such as paraoxonase, and apo E, alone or formulated in combination with liposomes or emulsions (an example of a liposomal formulation is found in WO95/23592), see, for example, US20030109442 and US20050096307. HDL associated proteins include sequences present in HDL associated proteins that associate with HDL and synthetic peptides having equivalent binding or functional characteristics. HDL-associated proteins further include apolipoproteins such as Apo E, proApoA-I, ApoA-I_{Paris}, ApoA-II, proApoA-II, ApoA-IV, ApoC-I, ApoC-II, ApoC-III, including variants thereof which have been modified to include one or more sulfhydryl groups, as described by Bielicki and Oda, *Biochemistry* 41:2089-2096 (2002). HDL-associated proteins further include paraoxonase, cholesteryl ester transfer protein, Lecithin Cholesterol Acyltransferase (LCAT), phospholipid transfer protein, including combinations thereof complexed with and without lipid. HDL-associated proteins can be used alone, in combination, complexed to one or more lipids alone or in combination complexed to one or more lipids. Non limiting examples include complexes comprising ApoA-I and lipid, complexes comprising paraoxonase and lipid, and complexes comprising ApoA-I, paraoxonase and lipid. HDL-associated proteins and lipids can be mixed in an aqueous solution in appropriate ratios complexed by methods known in the art and including freeze-drying, detergent solubilization followed by dialysis, microfluidization, sonication, and homogenization. Complex efficiency can be optimized, for example, by varying pressure, ultrasonic frequency, or detergent concentration. An example of a detergent commonly used to prepare HDL-associated protein-lipid complexes is sodium cholate. In some cases it is desirable to mix the lipid and the HDL-associated protein prior to administration. Lipids may be in solution or in the form of liposomes or emulsions formed using standard techniques such as sonication or extrusion. Sonication is generally performed with a tip sonifier, such as a Branson tip sonifier, in an ice bath. Typically, the suspension is subjected to several sonication cycles. Extrusion may be carried out by biomembrane extruders, such as the Lipex Biomembrane Extruder. Defined pore size in the extrusion filters may generate unilamellar liposomal vesicles of specific sizes. The liposomes may also be formed by

extrusion through an asymmetric ceramic filter, such as a Ceraflow Microfilter, commercially available from the Norton Company, Worcester Mass. or through a polycarbonate filter or other types of polymerized materials (i.e. plastics) commonly known. In some cases, the dyslipidemic agent comprises an HDL-associated protein with little or no lipid. Non limiting examples of lipids include phospholipids (such as soy phosphatidylcholine, egg phosphatidylcholine, soy phosphatidylglycerol, egg phosphatidylglycerol, palmitoyl-oleoyl-Phosphatidylcholine distearoylphosphatidylcholine, distearoylphosphatidylglycerol, phosphatidylcholine, phosphatidylglycerol, sphingomyelin, phosphatidylserine, phosphatidic acid, N-(2,3-di(9-(Z)-octadecenyl-oxy))-Prop-1-yl-N,N,N-trimethylammonium chloride, phosphatidylethanolamine, lysolecithin, lysophosphatidyl-ethanolamine, phosphatidylinositol, cephalin, cardiolipin, cerebroside, dicetylphosphate, dioleoylphosphatidylcholine, dipalmitoylphosphatidylcholine, dipalmitoylphosphatidylglycerol, dioleoylphosphatidylglycerol, stearyl-palmitoyl-Phosphatidylcholine, di-Palmitoyl-Phosphatidylethanolamine, distearoyl-Phosphatidylethanolamine, dimyrstoyl-Phosphatidylserine, and dioleoyl-Phosphatidylcholine) and non-Phosphorus containing lipids (such as stearylamine, docetylamine, acetyl palmitate, and fatty acid amides). Additional lipids suitable for use are well known to persons of skill in the art and are cited in a variety of well known sources, e.g., McCutcheon's Detergents and Emulsifiers and McCutcheon's Functional Materials, Allured Publishing Co., Ridgewood, N.J. Generally, it is desirable that the lipids are liquid-crystalline at 37°C, 35°C, or 32°C. The concentration of the lipid in the formulation may vary. Persons of skill may vary these concentrations to optimize treatment with different lipid components or of particular patients. ApoA1 is combined with lipid in a ratio by weight of between 1:0.5 to 1:3. In certain embodiments, more lipid being preferred for clearance of cholesterol. The ratio may be around 1:1 is to produce the most homogenous population and for purposes of producing stable and reproducible batches. In certain embodiments, the lipid modulating agent is ETC-216, which is a synthetic HDL complex composed of 14 mg/mL of recombinant apolipoprotein A-I Milano and 13 mg/mL of 1-Palmitoyl-2-oleoyl phosphatidyl choline

(POPC) complex in sucrose-mannitol-Phosphate buffer solution (sterile 6.4% sucrose, 0.8% mannitol in 6 mmol/L phosphate buffer, pH 7.4) (Esperion Therapeutics, Inc.), as a ready to inject solution or saline.

[00171] Other dyslipidemic agents which can be used a therapeutic combination with a compound described herein include:

peptides and peptide analogues that mimic the structural and pharmacological properties of human ApoA-I including those disclosed, for example in US6004925
apolipoprotein E (apoE) and isoforms thereof including that produced by the methods disclosed in WO04/108922 and US5834596;

apolipoprotein A (apoA) and isoforms thereof including that produced by the methods disclosed in WO04/108922;

ApoA-I agonists including the peptides described in US6004925 and US6037323;
HMG-CoA synthase inhibitors such as L-659,699 ((E,E)-11-[3'R-(hydroxy-methyl)-4'-oxo-2'R-oxetanyl]-3,5,7R-trimethyl-2,4-undecadienoic acid) and those disclosed in US5120729, US5064856, and US4847271;

cholesterol absorption inhibitors such as plant sterols, plant stanols and/or fatty acid esters of plant stanols such as sitostanol ester used in Benecol® margarine, stanol esters, beta-sitosterol, sterol glycosides such as tiqueside, (3R,4S)-1-(4-fluorophenyl)-3-[(3S)-3-(4-fluorophenyl)-3-hydroxypropyl]-4-(4-hydroxyphenyl)azetidin-2-one (Zetia®), and the compounds disclosed in USRE37721, WO9302048, WO05044256, WO05033100, WO05021495, WO05021497, WO05009955, WO05000353, WO04087655, WO04000804, WO04000803, WO02050068, WO02050060, WO02050027, WO04000805, WO02066464, WO03026672, WO05042692, WO05042692, and WO04005247;

phytoestrogen compounds such as disclosed in WO00/30665 including isolated soy bean protein, soy protein concentrate or soy flour as well as an isoflavone such as genistein, daidzein, glycitein or equol, or phytosterols, phytostanol or tocotrienol as disclosed in WO00/015201;

an α -glucosidase inhibitor, an aldose reductase inhibitor and/or an LDL catabolism promoter such as disclosed in EP1022272;

a matrix metalloproteinase inhibitor including but not limited to (\pm)-4-(4'-Chloro-biphenyl-4-yl)-4-hydroxy-butyric acid, (L)-2-(Dibenzofuran-2-sulfonylamino)-3-mercapto-Propionic acid, (L)-2-(Dibenzofuran-2-sulfonylamino)-3-methyl-butyric acid, (L)-2-(Dibenzofuran-2-sulfonylamino)-3-Phenyl-Propionic acid, (L)-2-(Dibenzofuran-2-sulfonylamino)-3-tritylsulfanyl-Propionic acid, (L)-2-(Dibenzofuran-2-sulfonylamino)-4-methyl-Pentanoic acid, (S)-2-(4'-Amino-biphenyl-4-sulfonylamino)-3-methyl-butyric acid, (S)-2-(4'-Bromo-biphenyl-4-sulfonylamino)-3-methyl-butyric acid, (S)-2-(4'-Bromo-biphenyl-4-sulfonylamino)-3-Phenyl-Propionic acid, (S)-2-(Dibenzofuran-2-sulfonylamino)-4-Phenyl-butyric acid, (S)-2-(dibenzofuran-3-sulfonylamino)-3-methyl-butyric acid, (S)-2-(dibenzofuran-3-sulfonylamino)-succinic acid, (S)-2-[4-(4-Benzyl-Piperidin-1-yl)-benzenesulfonylamino]-3-Phenyl-Propionic acid, (S)-2-[4-(4-(4-Methoxy-Phenyl)-Piperazin-1-yl)-benzenesulfonylamino]-Phenyl-Propionic acid, (S)-2-Acetylamino-4-dibenzofuran-2-yl-4-oxo-butyric acid, (S)-2-Amino-4-dibenzofuran-2-yl-4-oxo-butyric acid, (S)-3-Methyl-2-(4'-nitro-biphenyl-4-sulfonylamino)-butyric acid, (S)-3-Phenyl-2-[4-(4-Phenyl-Piperidin-1-yl)-benzene-sulfonylamino]-Propionic acid, (S)-4-Dibenzofuran-2-yl-4-oxo-2-(2,2,2-trifluoroacetyl-amino)-butyric acid, (S)-4-Dibenzofuran-2-yl-4-oxo-2-(3-Phenyl-Propionyl-amino)-butyric acid, (S)-4-Dibenzofuran-2-yl-4-oxo-2-Phenylacetyl-amino-butyric acid, [4-(4-Phenyl-Piperidin-1-yl)-benzenesulfonylamino]-acetic acid, 2-(4'-bromobiphenyl-4-sulfonylamino)-3-methylbutyric acid, 2-(4'-Bromo-biphenyl-4-sulfonylamino)-3-methyl-butyric acid, 4-(4'-Bromo-biphenyl-4-yl)-4-hydroxyimino-butyric acid, 4-(4'-Chloro-biphenyl-4-yl)-4-(dimethylhydrazono)-butyric acid, 4-(4'-Chloro-biphenyl-4-yl)-4-hydroxyimino-butyric acid, 4-Oxo-4-[4-(4-Phenyl-Piperazin-1-yl)-Phenyl]-butyric acid, 4-Oxo-4-[4-(4-Phenyl-Piperidin-1-yl)-Phenyl]-butyric acid, batimastat, CDP-845 (Celltech), CGS27023A (Ciba-Giegy), CI-1026, fenbufen and related compounds disclosed in US3784701 and by Child et al., J Pharm Sci 1977; 66:466-476, galardin, marimastat, N-Hydroxy-2-[4-(4-Phenyl-Piperidin-1-yl)-benzene-sulfonylamino]-acetamide, N-Hydroxy-4-oxo-4-[4-(4-Phenyl-Piperidin-1-yl)-Phenyl]-butyramide, PD 166793, RO-31-9790 (Roche), U24522 (Merck), and the compounds and/or peptides disclosed in EP0236872, EP0274453, EP0489577, EP0489579, EP0497192, EP0574758, EP2321081,

US4599361, US5183900, US5256657, US5270326, US5300501, US5304604, US5455258, US552419, US5525629, US5530128, US5530161, WO90/05716, WO90/05719, WO91/02716, WO92/09563, WO92/13831, WO92/17460, WO92/22523, WO93/09090, WO93/09097, WO93/20047, WO93/244, WO93/24449, WO94/02446, WO94/02447, WO95/13289, WO96/11209, WO97/27174, and US20050020607 (including the compounds specifically disclosed by chemical formula and name);
a sodium-Proton exchange inhibitor such as disclosed in DE19622222;
an LDL-receptor inducer or a steroidal glycoside such as disclosed in US5698527 and GB2304106;
LUV (large unilamellar vesicles) products including ETC-588 (Pfizer);
acyl coenzyme A -cholesterol acyl transferase (ACAT) inhibitors such as avasimibe (Current Opinion in Investigational Drugs. 3(9):291-297 (2003)), eflucimibe, HL-004, lecimibe, (DuP-1), KY505, SMP 797, TS-962 (Taisho Pharmaceutical Co. Ltd), F-1394, CS-505 (pactimibe), F-12511, K-10085 and YIC-C8-434, CL-277,082 (Clin Pharmacol Ther. 48(2):189-94 (1990)) and those disclosed in Drugs of the Future 24, 9-15 (1999); Nicolosi et al, Atherosclerosis (1998), 137(1), 77-85; Ghiselli and Giancarlo, Cardiovasc. Drug Rev. (1998), 16(1), 16-30; Smith, et al, Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett. (1996), 6(1), 47-50; Krause et al, Inflammation: Mediators Pathways (1995), 173-98, Publisher: CRC, Boca Raton, Fla; Sliskovic et al, Curr. Med. Chem. (1994), 1(3), 204-25; Stout et al, Chemtracts: Org. Chem. (1995), 8(6), 359-62 and US5510379, WO96/26948 and WO96/10559;
CETP inhibitors such as JTT 705 identified as in Nature 406, (6792):203-7 (2000), torcetrapib (CP-529,414 described in US20030186952 and WO00/017164), CP 532,632, BAY63-2149, CeTi-1, SC 591, SC 795 (Pharmacia), SC 744 (Pharmacia) and the like including those described in Current Opinion in Investigational Drugs. 4(3):291-297 (2003) and those disclosed in J. Antibiot., 49(8): 815-816 (1996), and Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett., 6:1951-1954 (1996) and patent publications US5512548, US6147090, WO99/20302, WO99/14204, WO99/41237, WO95/04755, WO96/15141, WO96/05227, WO038721, WO/0038722, EP796846, EP818197, EP818448, EP992496, DE19704244,

DE19741051, DE19741399, DE197042437, DE19709125, DE19627430, DE19832159, DE19741400, JP 11049743, and JP 09059155;

squalene synthetase inhibitors such as squalestatin-1, and those disclosed in US4871721, US4924024, US5712396 (α -Phosphono-sulfonates), Biller et al (1988) J. Med. Chem., 31:1869 (e.g. isoprenoid (phosphinyl-methyl)phosphonates), Biller et al (1996) Current Pharmaceutical Design, 2:1, P. Ortiz de Montellano et al (1977) J. Med. Chem. 20:243 (terpenoid pyrophosphates), Corey and Volante (1976) J. Am. Chem. Soc., 98:1291 (farnesyl diphosphate analog A and presqualene pyrophosphate (PSQ-PP) analogs), McClard et al (1987) J.A.C.S., 109:5544 (phosphinylphosphonates), Capson, T. L., PhD dissertation, June, 1987, Dept. Med. Chem. U of Utah, Abstract, Table of Contents, pp 16, 17, 40-43, 48-51, Summary, (cyclopropanes), Curr. Op. Ther. Patents (1993) 861, and patent publications EP0567026A1, EP0645378A1, EP0645377A1, EP0611749A1, EP0705607A2, EP0701725A1, US20040072830, and WO96/09827;

antioxidants such as probucol (and related compounds disclosed in US3674836), probucol derivatives such as AGI-1067 (and other derivatives disclosed in US6121319 and US6147250), tocopherol, ascorbic acid, retinol (as disclosed in WO94/15592), β -carotene, selenium, vitamin C and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and esters thereof; an antihomocysteine agent such as folic acid, folate, vitamin E, vitamin B₆, vitamin B₁₂ and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and esters thereof;

PPAR α agonists such as those disclosed in US6028109 (fluorophenyl compounds), WO00/75103 (substituted phenylpropionic compounds), WO98/43081 and fibric acid derivatives (fibrates) such as bezafibrate, bezafibrate (C.A.S. Registry No. 41859-67-0, see US3781328), binifibrate (C.A.S. Registry No. 69047-39-8, see BE884722), ciprofibrate (C.A.S. Registry No. 52214-84-3, see US3948973), clinofibrate (C.A.S. Registry No. 30299-08-2, see US3716583), clofibrate (such as ethyl 2-(p-chlorophenoxy)-2-methyl-Propionate, e.g. Atromid-S® capsules (Wyeth-Ayerst), clofibric acid, etofibrate, pirifibrate, ronifibrate, simfibrate, theofibrate, fenofibrate (such as Tricor® micronized fenofibrate ((2-[4-(4-chlorobenzoyl)phenoxy]-2-methyl-Propanoic acid, 1-methylethyl ester; Abbott Laboratories) or Lipanthyl® micronized fenofibrate (Laboratoire Fournier, France)), gemcabene, gemfibrozil (such as 5-

(2,5-dimethylphenoxy)-2,2-dimethylpentanoic acid, e.g. Lipid® tablets (Parke Davis)),
lifibrol, GW 7647, BM 170744, LY518674 and those fibrates and fibrate acid derivatives
disclosed in WO03/033456, WO03/033481, WO03/043997, WO03/048116,
WO03/053974, WO03/059864, and WO03/05875;

FXR receptor modulators such as GW 4064, SR 103912, and the like;

LXR receptor modulators such as GW 3965, T9013137, and XTC0179628, and those
disclosed in US20030125357, WO03/045382, WO03/053352, WO03/059874, and the
like;

HM74 and HM74A (human HM74A is Genbank Accession No. AY148884 and rat
HM74A is EMM_patAR098624) receptor agonists such as nicotinic acid (niacin) and
derivatives thereof (e.g. compounds comprising a pyridine-3-carboxylate structure or a
pyrazine-2-carboxylate structure, including acid forms, salts, esters, zwitterions and
tautomers, where available) including but not limited to those disclosed in Wise et al
(2003) J. Biol. Chem. 278: 9869 (e.g. 5-methylpyrazole-3-carboxylic acid and acifran
(4,5-dihydro-5-methyl-4-oxo-5-Phenyl-2-furan carboxylic acid pyridine-3-acetic acid)),
as well as 5-methyl nicotinic acid, nicotinuric acid, aluminum nicotinate, nicoclonate,
nicomol, niceritrol, oxiniac acid, nicofuranose, acipimox (5-methylpyrazine-2-
carboxylic acid 4-oxide), Niaspan® (niacin extended-release tablets; Kos) and those
which can be easily identified by one skilled in the art which bind to and agonize the
HM74A or HM74 receptor (for example using the assays disclosed in Wise et al (2003)
J. Biol. Chem 278:9869 (nicotine binding and [³⁵S]-GTPγS binding assays), Soga et al
(2003) Biochem. Biophys. Res. Comm. 303:364 (radiolabel binding assay using the
HM74 receptor which could be adapted to the HM74A receptor), Tunaru et al (2003)
Nature Medicine 9:352 (calcium mobilization assay using the HM74 receptor which
could be adapted to the HM74A receptor) and US6420183 (FLIPR assays are described
generally in and may be adapted to the HM74A or HM74 receptor);

renin angiotensin system inhibitors;

bile acid reabsorption inhibitors (bile acid reuptake inhibitors), such as BARI 1453,
SC435, PHA384640, S8921, AZD7706, and the like;

PPAR δ agonists (including partial agonists) such as GW 501516, and GW 590735, and those disclosed in US5859051 (acetophenols), WO03/024395, W097/28149, WO01/79197, WO02/14291, WO02/46154, WO02/46176, WO02/076957, WO03/016291, WO03/033493, WO99/20275 (quinoline phenyl compounds), WO99/38845 (aryl compounds), WO00/63161 (1,4-disubstituted phenyl compounds), WO01/00579 (aryl compounds), WO01/12612, WO05/028453, & WO01/12187 (benzoic acid compounds), and WO97/31907 (substituted 4-hydroxy-Phenylalconic acid compound);

sterol biosynthesis inhibitors such as DMP-565;

a sterol regulating element binding protein-I (SREBP-1) as disclosed in WO00/050574, for example, a sphingolipid, such as ceramide, or neutral sphingomyelinase (N-SMase) or fragment thereof;

triglyceride synthesis inhibitors;

microsomal triglyceride transport (MTTP or MTP) inhibitors, such as inplitapide, LAB687, 9-[4-[4-[[2-(2,2,2-Trifluoroethoxy)benzoyl]amino]-1-Piperidinyl]butyl]-N-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)-9H-fluorene-9-carboxamide, and CP346086, and those disclosed in US5595872; US5739135; US5712279; US5760246; US5827875; US5885983 and US5962440;

HMG-CoA reductase gene expression inhibitors (e.g. compounds that decrease HMG-CoA reductase expression by affecting (e.g. blocking) transcription or translation of HMG-CoA reductase into protein or compounds that may be biotransformed into compounds that have the aforementioned attributes by one or more enzymes in the cholesterol biosynthetic cascade or may lead to the accumulation of an isoprene metabolite that has the aforementioned activities (such regulation is readily determined by those skilled in the art according to standard assays (Methods of Enzymology, 110:9-19 1985))) such as those disclosed in US5041432 (certain 15-substituted lanosterol derivatives) and E. I. Mercer (1993) Prog. Lip. Res. 32:357 (oxygenated sterols that suppress the biosynthesis of HMG-CoA reductase);

squalene epoxidase inhibitors such as NB-598 ((E)-N-ethyl-N-(6,6-dimethyl-2-hepten-4-yl)-3-[(3,3'-bithiophen-5-yl)methoxy]benzene-methanamine hydrochloride);

low density lipoprotein (LDL) receptor inducers such as MD-700 (Taisho Pharmaceuticals, LY295427 (Eli Lilly), HOE-402 (an imidazolidinyl-Pyrimidine derivative that directly stimulates LDL receptor activity, see Huettinger et al (1993) *Arterioscler. Thromb.* 13:1005);
platelet aggregation inhibitors;
5-LO or FLAP inhibitors;
PPAR modulators (including compounds that may have multiple functionality for activating various combinations of PPAR α , PPAR γ , and PPAR δ) such as those disclosed in US6008237, US6248781, US6166049, WO00/12491, WO00/218355, WO00/23415, WO00/23416, WO00/23425, WO00/23442, WO00/23445, WO00/23451, WO00/236331, WO00/236332, WO00/238553, WO00/50392, WO00/53563, WO00/63153, WO00/63190, WO00/63196, WO00/63209, WO00/78312, WO00/78313, WO01/04351, WO01/14349, WO01/14350, WO01/16120, WO01/17994, WO01/21181, WO01/21578, WO01/25181, WO01/25225, WO01/25226, WO01/40192, WO01/79150, WO02/081428, WO02/100403, WO02/102780, WO02/79162, WO03/016265, WO03/033453, WO03/042194, WO03/043997, WO03/066581, WO97/25042, WO99/07357, WO99/11255, WO99/12534, WO99/15520, WO99/46232, and WO98/05331 (including GW2331 or (2-(4-[difluorophenyl]-1-heptylureido)ethyl]phenoxy)-2-methylbutyric));
lipoxygenase inhibitors including 15-lipoxygenase (15-LO) inhibitors such as those disclosed in WO97/12615 (benzimidazole derivatives), WO97/12613, WO96/38144 (isothiazolones), Sendobry et al. *Brit. J. Pharmacology* (1997) 120, 1199-1206, and Cornicelli et al, *Current Pharmaceutical Design*, 1999, 5, 11-20;
niacin-bound chromium, as disclosed in WO03/039535;
substituted acid derivatives disclosed in WO03/040114;
apolipoprotein B inhibitors such as those disclosed in WO02/090347, WO02/28835, WO03/045921, WO03/047575;
Factor Xa modulators such as those disclosed in WO03/047517, WO03/047520, WO03/048081;

ileal bile acid transport ("IBAT") inhibitors (or apical sodium co-dependent bile acid transport ("ASBT") inhibitors) such as benzothiepinines (including 1,2-benzothiazepines; 1,4- benzothiazepines; 1,5-benzothiazepines; 1,2, 5-benzothiadiazepines); IBAT inhibitors include but are not limited to compounds (e.g. those in claim 1 and the named examples) described in WO93/16055, WO94/18183, WO94/18184, WO96/05188, WO96/08484, WO96/16051, WO97/33882, WO98/38182, WO99/35135, WO98/40375, WO99/64409, WO99/64410, WO00/01687, WO00/47568, WO00/61568, DE 19825804, WO00/38725, WO00/38726, WO00/38727 (including those compounds with a 2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1-benzothiepine 1,1-dioxide structure), WO00/38728, WO00/38729, WO01/66533, WO02/50051, EP0864582 (e.g. (3R, 5R)-3- butyl-3-ethyl-1,1-dioxido-5-Phenyl-2, 3,4, 5-tetrahydro-1,4-benzothiazepin-8-yl (β -D-glucopyranosiduronic acid, WO94/24087, W098/07749, WO98/56757, WO99/32478, WO99/35135, WO00/20392, WO00/20393, WO00/20410, WO00/20437, WO01/34570, WO00/35889, WO01/68637, WO01/68096, WO02/08211, WO03/020710, WO03/022825, WO03/022830, WO03/02286, JP10072371, US5070103, EP251315, EP417725, EP489423, EP549967, EP573848, EP624593, EP624594, EP624595, EP869121 and EP1070703; S-8921 (disclosed in EP597107); 1,1-dioxo-3, 3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-1'-Phenyl-1'-[N'-(carboxymethyl) carbamoyl] methyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-1'-Phenyl-1'-[N'-(2-sulphoethyl) carbamoyl]methyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)-1'-Phenyl-1'-[N'-(2-sulphoethyl) carbamoyl]methyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(2-sulphoethyl) carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(2-sulphoethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(2-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]

benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(2-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(5-carboxypentyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(2-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{ α -[N'-(2-sulphoethyl)carbamoyl]-2-fluorobenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(R)-(2-hydroxy-1-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(R)-(2-hydroxy-1-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-{N-[(R)- α -(N'-(R)-1-[N''-(R)-(2-hydroxy-1-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]-2-hydroxyethyl} carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy}-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{ α -[N'-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{ α -[N'-(ethoxy)(methyl)phosphoryl-methyl} carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-{N-[(R)- α -(N'-(2-[(hydroxy)(methyl)phosphoryl]ethyl} carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy}-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(2-methylthio-1-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-{N-[(R)- α -(N'-(2-[(methyl)(ethyl)phosphoryl]ethyl} carbamoyl)-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy}-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-{N-[(R)- α -(N'-(2-[(methyl)(hydroxy)phosphoryl]ethyl} carbamoyl)-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy}-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[(R)-N'-(2-methylsulphinyl-1-carboxyethyl)

carbamoyl] benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; and 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methoxy-8-[N-{(R)- α -[N'-(2-sulphoethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; compounds disclosed in claims 1-10 and examples 1-44 of WO03/020710; compounds disclosed in WO03/020710 (including 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(2-(S)-3-(R)-4-(R)-5-(R)-2,3,4,5,6-Pentahydroxyhexyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(2-(S)-3-(R)-4-(R)-5-(R)-2,3,4,5,6-Pentahydroxyhexyl) carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(S)-1-carbamoyl-2-hydroxyethyl] carbamoyl] benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(hydroxycarbamoyl-methyl)carbamoyl] benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N((R)- α -{N'-[2-(N'-Pyrimidin-2-ylureido)ethyl carbamoyl]benzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N((R)- α -{N'-[2-(N'-Pyridin-2-ylureido)ethyl]carbamoyl}benzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(1-t-butoxycarbonylpiperidin-4-ylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(2,3-dihydroxypropyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N((R)- α -{N'-[2-(3,4-dihydroxyphenyl)-2-methoxyethyl]carbamoyl}benzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(2-aminoethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(piperidin-4-ylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; and 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N{(R)- α -[N'-(2-N,N-dimethylaminosulphamoyl)ethyl] carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-

tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine); compounds disclosed in claims 1-8 and examples 1-7 of WO03/022825; compounds disclosed in WO03/022825 (including 1-dioxo-3(R)-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-(R)-5-Phenyl-8-[N-((R)- α -carboxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,4-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3(S)-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-(S)-5-Phenyl-8-[N-((R)- α -carboxybenzyl)carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,4-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3(R)-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-(R)-5-Phenyl-8- (N-{(R)- α -[N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1, 4-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3(S)-3-butyl-3-ethyl-5-(S)-5-Phenyl-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N-(carboxymethyl) carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,4-benzothiazepine; 3,5-trans-1,1-dioxo-3-ethyl-3-butyl-5-Phenyl-7-bromo-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,4-benzothiazepine; 3,5-trans-1,1-dioxo-3-(S)-3-ethyl-3-butyl-4-hydroxy-5-(S)-5-Phenyl-7-bromo-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,4- benzothiazepine 3,5-trans-1,1-dioxo-3-(R)-3-ethyl-3-butyl-4-hydroxy-5-(R)-5-Phenyl-7-bromo-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,4-benzothiazepine; 3,5-trans-1,1-dioxo-3-ethyl-3-butyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,4- benzothiazepine; 3,5-trans-1,1-dioxo-3-ethyl-3-butyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N-(2-sulphoethyl) carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,4-benzothiazepine ammonia salt; 1,1-dioxo-3-(S)-3-ethyl-3-butyl-5-(S)-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N- (carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,4- benzothiazepine diethylamine salt; and 1,1-dioxo-3-(R)-3-ethyl-3-butyl-5-(R)-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N- {(R)- α -[N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl carbamoylmethoxy)-2, 3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,4- benzothiazepine diethylamine salt); compounds disclosed in claims 1-8 and examples 1-4 of WO03/022830; compounds disclosed in WO03/022830 (including 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-4-hydroxy-5-Phenyl-7-(N-{(R)- α -[N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethylthio)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydrobenzothiepine 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-4-hydroxy-5-Phenyl-7-(N-{(R)- α -[N-(2-sulphoethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethylthio)-2,3,4,5-

tetrahydrobenzothiepine ammonia salt 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-4-hydroxy-5-Phenyl-7-{N-[a-(carboxy)-2-fluorobenzyl]carbamoylmethylthio}-2,3,4,5-tetrahydrobenzothiepine; and 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-4-hydroxy-5-Phenyl-7-{N-[1-(carboxy)-1-(thien-2-yl)methyl]carbamoylmethylthio}-2,3,4,5-tetrahydrobenzothiepine); compounds disclosed in claims 1-10 and examples 1-30 WO03/0222861; compounds disclosed in WO03/0222861 (including 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8- (N-{(R)- α -[N((R)-1-carboxy-2-methylthioethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5- benzothiadiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N((S)-1-carboxy-2-(R)- hydroxypropyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N((S)-1-carboxy-2-methylpropyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N((S)-1-carboxybutyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5- benzothiadiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N((S)-1-carboxypropyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8- (N-{(R)- α -[N((S)-1-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N((S)-1-carboxy-2-(R)-hydroxypropyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5- benzothiadiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N-(2-sulphoethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8- (N-{(R)- α -[N((S)-1-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8- (N-{(R)- α -[N((R)-1-carboxy-2-methylthioethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N-{(S)-1-[N((S)-2-hydroxy-1-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]propyl} carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-

5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N-((S)-1-carboxy-2-methylpropyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N-((S)-1-carboxypropyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine; and 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)- α -carboxy-4-hydroxybenzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine); compounds having the structure of formula (EI) on page 58 of WO04/005247 (including 1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N-(2-(S)-3-(R)-4-(R)-5-(R)-2,3,4,5,6-Pentahydroxyhexyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine; 1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N-(2-(S)-3-(R)-4-(R)-5-(R)-2,3,4,5,6-Pentahydroxyhexyl) carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine; 1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R/S)- α -{N-[1-(R)-2-(S)-1-hydroxy-1-(3,4-dihydroxyphenyl)prop-2-yl]carbamoyl}benzyl) carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine (both enantiomers); 1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-{N-[(R)- α -(N-{2-(S)-[N-(carbamoylmethyl)carbamoyl] pyrrolidin-1-ylcarbonylmethyl} carbamoyl)benzyl] carbamoylmethoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine; 1,1-Dioxo-3,3-bidutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-[N-((R)- α -{N-[2-(3,4,5-trihydroxyphenyl)ethyl]carbamoyl}benzyl)carbamoylmethoxy]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine; and 1,1-Dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N-(2 (R)-3-(S)-4-(S)-5-(R)-3,4,5,6-tetrahydroxytetrahydropyran-2-ylmethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,2,5-benzothiadiazepine); compounds having the structure of formula (FI) on page 62 of WO04/005247 including (1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-((S)-1-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-((S)-1-carboxypropyl) carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-((S)-1-carboxybutyl) carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-((S)-

1-carboxy-2-methylpropyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-((S)-1-carboxy-2-methylbutyl) carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-((S)-1-carboxy-3-methylbutyl)carbamoyl] benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-((S)-1-carboxy-2-hydroxypropyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-((S)-1-carboxy-2-mesylethyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-((S)-1-carboxy-3-methylsulphonylpropyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-((S)-1-carboxy-3-mesylpropyl)carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-((S)-1-carboxyethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-((S)-1-carboxypropyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-((S)-1-carboxybutyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-((S)-1-carboxyl-2-methylpropyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-((S)-1-carboxy-2-methylbutyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-((S)-1-carboxy-3-methylbutyl) carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-((S)-1-carboxy-2-hydroxyethyl)carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-((S)-1-carboxy-2-hydroxypropyl)carbamoyl]-4-

hydroxybenzylcarbamoyl-methoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(S)-1-carboxy-2-methylthioethyl]carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(S)-1-carboxy-2-methylsulphinyethyl]carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(S)-1-carboxy-2-mesylethyl]carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(S)-1-carboxy-2-methoxyethyl]carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(S)-1-carboxy-3-methylthiopropyl]carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(S)-1-carboxy-3-methylsulphonylpropyl]carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(S)-1-carboxy-3-mesylpropyl]carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(S)-1-carboxypropyl]carbamoyl]-4-hydroxybenzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine; and 1,1-dioxo-3,3-dibutyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(S)-1-carboxyethyl]carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoyl-methoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,5-benzothiazepine); compounds having the structure of formula (GI) on page 65 of WO04/005247 (including (+/-)-trans-1,1-dioxo-3-ethyl-3-butyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(2-(S)-3-(R)-4-(R)-5-(R)-2,3,4,5,6-Pentahydroxyhexyl]carbamoyl]benzyl} carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,4-benzothiazepine; (+/-)-trans-1,1-dioxo-3-ethyl-3-butyl-5-Phenyl-7-methylthio-8-(N-{(R)- α -[N'-(2-(S)-3-(R)-4-(R)-5-(R)-2,3,4,5,6-Pentahydroxyhexyl]carbamoyl]benzyl carbamoylmethoxy)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1,4-benzothiazepine; 1,1-dioxo-3-ethyl-3-butyl-4-hydroxy-5-Phenyl-7-(N-{ α -[N'-(2-(S)-3-(R)-4-(R)-5-(R)-2,3,4,5,6-Pentahydroxyhexyl]carbamoyl]-2-fluorobenzyl} carbamoylmethylthio)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydrobenzothiazepine; and 1,1-dioxo-3-butyl-3-ethyl-4-hydroxy-5-Phenyl-7-(N-{1-

[N' - (2-(S)-3-(R)-4-(R)-5-(R)-2,3,4,5,6-Pentahydroxyhexyl) carbamoyl]-1-(cyclohexyl)methyl icarbamoylmethylthio)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydrobenzothiepine); compounds disclosed as having IBAT activity disclosed in WO04/005247; compounds disclosed as having IBAT activity in *Drugs of the Future*, 24, 425-430 (1999); or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such salt or prodrug thereof;

ATP citrate lyase inhibitors including those disclosed in US5447954;

PPAR δ activators such as disclosed in WO01/00603 (thiazole and oxazole derivatives (e.g. C.A.S. Registry No. 317318-32-4), WO97/28149 (fluoro, chloro and thio phenoxy phenylacetic), US5093365 (non-1-oxidizable fatty acid analogues), and WO99/04815;

and

other dyslipidemic agents such as benfluorex, β -Benzylbutyramide, colmestron, detaxtran, dextran sulphate sodium, eicosapentanoic acid, eritadenine, furazabol, meglutol, γ -Oryzanol, pantethine and derivatives thereof (as disclosed, for example, in US20050101565), pentaerythritol tetraacetate, α -Phenylbutyramide, pirozadil, sultosilic acid, tiadenol, triparanol, and xenbucin, isoniazid (disclosed in WO97/35576), a lanosterol demethylase inhibitor (as disclosed in WO97/48701), cholestagel (Sankyo/Geltex), lipostabil (Rhone-Poulenc), Eisai E-5050 (an N-substituted ethanolamine derivative), imanixil (HOE-402), tetrahydrolipstatin (THL), istigmastanylphosphorylcholine (SPC, Roche), aminocyclodextrin (Tanabe Seiyoku), Ajinomoto AJ-814 (azulene derivative), melinamide (Sumitomo), nitric oxide synthase isoforms (e.g. endothelial (eNOS), neuronal (nNOS) and inducible (iNOS), for example purified, recombinant or virally/retrovirally expressed), the antisense oligonucleotides described in Kipshidze, et al., *J. Am. Coll. Cardio.* 39(10):1686-1691 (2002); the nuclear targeted lacZ- and TIMP-1-encoding adenoviruses coupled to peptide-motif (HWGF) described in Turunen, et al., *Mol Ther* 6(3):306 (2002), Sandoz 58-035, American Cyanamid CL-277,082 and CL-283,546 (disubstituted urea derivatives), compounds or combinations of compounds that result in the production or enhancement of nitric oxide (for example those disclosed in WO04091626, paragraphs 46-53), acipimox, acifran, neomycin, p-aminosalicylic acid, aspirin, poly(diallylmethylamine) derivatives such as disclosed in US4759923, quaternary amine poly(diallyldimethylammonium chloride),

pancreatic cholesteryl hydrolase (pCEH) inhibitors (such as WAY-121898), fish oil (which contains Omega 3 fatty acids (3-PUFA)), combinations of one or more anti-microbial agents (e.g. tetracyclin, ofloxacin, clinafloxacin, ciprofloxacin, clindamycin, doxycycline and minocycline, erythromycin or azalides such as trythromycin, roxithromycin, zithromycin, clarithromycin and azithromycin) with one or more metal chelators (e.g. desferrioxamine mesylate, haem derivatives, penicillamine, tiopronin, trientine, dihydrochloride, diethyldithiocarbamate, acetylsalicylic acid, disodium/trisodium, edetate, edetic acid, unithiol, copper chelators (penicillamine, tiopronin, trientine, dihydrochloride, diethyldithiocarbamate, acetylsalicylic acid)) as described in WO05034962, and ionenes such as disclosed in US4027009. Tests showing the efficacy of the therapy and the rationale for the combination therapy with a dyslipidemic agent are presented in US20030069221 (wherein the dyslipidemic agents are called 'cardiovascular agents').

Anti-diabetic agents

[00172] The compounds described herein can be used in therapeutic combination with one or more anti-diabetic agents, including but not limited to:

PPAR γ agonists such as glitazones (e.g., WAY-120,744, AD 5075, balaglitazone, ciglitazone, darglitazone (CP-86325, Pfizer), englitazone (CP-68722, Pfizer), isaglitazone (MIT/J&J), MCC-555 (Mitsubishi disclosed in US5594016), pioglitazone (such as such as Actos[™] pioglitazone; Takeda), rosiglitazone (Avandia[™]; Smith Kline Beecham), rosiglitazone maleate, troglitazone (Rezulin®, disclosed in US4572912), rivoglitazone (CS-011, Sankyo), GL-262570 (Glaxo Wellcome), BRL49653 (disclosed in WO98/05331), CLX-0921, 5-BTZD, GW-0207, LG-100641, JJT-501 (JPNT/P&U), L-895645 (Merck), R-119702 (Sankyo/Pfizer), NN-2344 (Dr. Reddy/NN), YM-440 (Yamanouchi), LY-300512, LY-519818, R483 (Roche), T131 (Tularik), and the like and compounds disclosed in US4687777, US5002953, US5741803, US5965584, US6150383, US6150384, US6166042, US6166043, US6172090, US6211205, US6271243, US6288095, US6303640, US6329404, US5994554, W097/10813, WO97/27857, WO97/28115, WO97/28137, WO97/27847, WO00/76488,

WO03/000685, WO03/027112, WO03/035602, WO03/048130, WO03/055867, and

pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof;

biguanides such as metformin hydrochloride (N,N-dimethylimidodicarbonimidic diamide hydrochloride, such as Glucophage™, Bristol-Myers Squibb); metformin hydrochloride with glyburide, such as Glucovance™, Bristol-Myers Squibb); buformin

(Imidodicarbonimidic diamide, N-butyl-); etoformine (1-Butyl-2-ethylbiguanide, Schering A. G.); other metformin salt forms (including where the salt is chosen from the group of, acetate, benzoate, citrate, ftimate, embonate, chlorophenoxyacetate, glycolate, palmoate, aspartate, methanesulphonate, maleate, parachlorophenoxyisobutyrate, formate, lactate, succinate, sulphate, tartrate, cyclohexanecarboxylate, hexanoate, octanoate, decanoate, hexadecanoate, octadecanoate, benzenesulphonate, trimethoxybenzoate, paratoluenesulphonate, adamantanecarboxylate, glycoxylate, glutamate, pyrrolidonecarboxylate, naphthalenesulphonate, 1-glucosephosphate, nitrate, sulphite, dithionate and phosphate), and phenformin;

protein tyrosine phosphatase-1B (PTP-1B) inhibitors, such as A-401,674, KR 61639, OC-060062, OC-83839, OC-297962, MC52445, MC52453, ISIS 113715, and those disclosed in WO99/585521, WO99/58518, WO99/58522, WO99/61435, WO03/032916, WO03/032982, WO03/041729, WO03/055883, WO02/26707, WO02/26743, JP2002114768, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and esters thereof;

sulfonylureas such as acetohexamide (e.g. Dymelor, Eli Lilly), carbutamide, chlorpropamide (e.g. Diabinese®, Pfizer), gliamilide (Pfizer), gliclazide (e.g. Diamcron, Servier Canada Inc), glimepiride (e.g. disclosed in US4379785, such as Amaryl™, Aventis), glipentide, glipizide (e.g. Glucotrol or Glucotrol XL Extended Release, Pfizer), gliquidone, glisolamide, glyburide/glibenclamide (e.g. Micronase or Glynase Prestab, Pharmacia & Upjohn and Diabeta, Aventis), tolazamide (e.g. Tolinase), and tolbutamide (e.g. Orinase), and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and esters thereof;

meglitinides such as repaglinide (e.g. Prandin®, Novo Nordisk), KAD1229 (PF/Kissei), and nateglinide (e.g. Starlix®, Novartis), and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and esters thereof;

α glucoside hydrolase inhibitors (or glucoside inhibitors) such as acarbose (e.g. Precose™, Bayer disclosed in US4904769), miglitol (such as GLYSET™, Pharmacia & Upjohn disclosed in US4639436), camiglibose (Methyl 6-deoxy-6-[(2R,3R,4R,5S)-3,4,5-trihydroxy-2-(hydroxymethyl)piperidino]- α -D-glucopyranoside, Marion Merrell Dow), voglibose (Takeda), adiposine, emiglitate, pradimicin-Q, salbostatin, CKD-711, MDL- 25,637, MDL-73,945, and MOR 14, and the compounds disclosed in US4062950, US4174439, US4254256, US4701559, US4639436, US5192772, US4634765, US5157116, US5504078, US5091418, US5217877, US51091 and WO01/47528 (polyamines);

α -amylase inhibitors such as tendamistat, trestatin, and A1-3688, and the compounds disclosed in US4451455, US4623714, and US4273765;

SGLT2 inhibitors including those disclosed in US6414126 and US6515117;

an α P2 inhibitor such as disclosed in US6548529;

insulin secretagogues such as linogiride, A-4166, forskilin, dibutyl cAMP, isobutylmethylxanthine (IBMX), and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and esters thereof;

fatty acid oxidation inhibitors, such as clomoxir, and etomoxir, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and esters thereof;

A2 antagonists, such as midaglizole, isaglidole, deriglidole, idazoxan, caroxan, and fluparoxan, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and esters thereof;

insulin and related compounds (e.g. insulin mimetics) such as biota, LP-100, novarapid, insulin detemir, insulin lispro, insulin glargine, insulin zinc suspension (lente and ultralente), Lys-Pro insulin, GLP-1 (1-36) amide, GLP-1 (73-7) (insulintropin, disclosed in US5614492), LY-315902 (Lilly), GLP-1 (7-36)-NH₂), AL-401 (AutoImmune), certain compositions as disclosed in US4579730, US4849405, US4963526, US5642868, US5763396, US5824638, US5843866, US6153632, US6191105, and WO 85/05029, and primate, rodent, or rabbit insulin including biologically active variants thereof including allelic variants, more preferably human insulin available in recombinant form (sources of human insulin include pharmaceutically acceptable and sterile formulations such as those available from Eli Lilly (Indianapolis, Ind. 46285) as Humulin™ (human insulin rDNA

origin), also see the THE PHYSICIAN'S DESK REFERENCE, 55^{sup.th} Ed. (2001) Medical Economics, Thomson Healthcare (disclosing other suitable human insulins); non-thiazolidinediones such as JT-501 and farglitazar (GW-2570/GI- 262579), and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and esters thereof;

PPAR α/γ dual agonists such as AR-HO39242 (Astrazeneca), GW-409544 (Glaxo-Wellcome), BVT-142, CLX-0940, GW-1536, GW-1929, GW-2433, KRP-297 (Kyorin Merck; 5-[(2,4-Dioxo thiazolidinyl)methyl] methoxy-N-[[4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]methyl]benzamide), L-796449, LR-90, MK-0767 (Merck/Kyorin/Banyu), SB 219994, muraglitazar (BMS), tesaglitazar (Astrazeneca), reglitazar (JTT-501) and those disclosed in WO99/16758, WO99/19313, WO99/20614, WO99/38850, WO00/23415, WO00/23417, WO00/23445, WO00/50414, WO01/00579, WO01/79150, WO02/062799, WO03/004458, WO03/016265, WO03/018010, WO03/033481, WO03/033450, WO03/033453, WO03/043985, WO 031053976, U.S. application Ser. No. 09/664,598, filed Sep. 18, 2000, Murakami et al. Diabetes 47, 1841-1847 (1998), and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and esters thereof;

other insulin sensitizing drugs;

VPAC2 receptor agonists;

GLK modulators, such as those disclosed in WO03/015774;

retinoid modulators such as those disclosed in WO03/000249;

GSK 3 β /GSK 3 inhibitors such as 4-[2-(2-bromophenyl)-4-(4-fluorophenyl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl]pyridine and those compounds disclosed in WO03/024447, WO03/037869, WO03/037877, WO03/037891, WO03/068773, EP1295884, EP1295885, and the like;

glycogen phosphorylase (HGLPa) inhibitors such as CP-368,296, CP-316,819, BAYR3401, and compounds disclosed in WO01/94300, WO02/20530, WO03/037864, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts or esters thereof;

ATP consumption promoters such as those disclosed in WO03/007990;

TRB3 inhibitors;

vanilloid receptor ligands such as those disclosed in WO03/049702;

hypoglycemic agents such as those disclosed in WO03/015781 and WO03/040114;

glycogen synthase kinase 3 inhibitors such as those disclosed in WO03/035663 agents such as those disclosed in WO99/51225, US20030134890, WO01/24786, and WO03/059870;

insulin-responsive DNA binding protein-1 (IRDBP-1) as disclosed in WO03/057827, and the like;

adenosine A2 antagonists such as those disclosed in WO03/035639, WO03/035640, and the like;

PPAR δ agonists such as GW 501516, GW 590735, and compounds disclosed in JP10237049 and WO02/14291;

dipeptidyl peptidase IV (DP-IV) inhibitors, such as isoleucine thiazolidide, NVP-DPP728A (1-[[[2-[(5-cyanopyridin-2-yl)amino]ethyl]amino]acetyl]-2-cyano-(S)-Pyrrolidine, disclosed by Hughes et al, Biochemistry, 38(36), 11597-11603, 1999), P32/98, NVP-LAF-237, P3298, TSL225 (tryptophyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-isoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, disclosed by Yamada et al, Bioorg. & Med. Chem. Lett. 8 (1998) 1537-1540), valine pyrrolidide, TMC-2A/2B/2C, CD-26 inhibitors, FE999011, P9310/K364, VIP 0177, DPP4, SDZ 274-444, 2-cyanopyrrolidides and 4-cyanopyrrolidides as disclosed by Ashworth et al, Bioorg. & Med. Chem. Lett., Vol. 6, No. 22, pp 1163-1166 and 2745-2748 (1996), and the compounds disclosed in US6395767, US6573287, US6395767 (compounds disclosed include BMS-477118, BMS-471211 and BMS 538,305), WO99/38501, WO99/46272, WO99/67279, WO99/67278, WO99/61431 WO03/004498, WO03/004496, EP1258476, WO02/083128, WO02/062764, WO03/000250, WO03/002530, WO03/002531, WO03/002553, WO03/002593, WO03/000180, and WO03/000181;

GLP-1 agonists such as exendin-3 and exendin-4 (including the 39 aa peptide synthetic exendin-4 called Exenatide®), and compounds disclosed in US2003087821 and NZ 504256, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and esters thereof;

peptides including amlintide and Symlin® (pramlintide acetate); and

glycokinase activators such as those disclosed in US2002103199 (fused heteroaromatic compounds) and WO02/48106 (isoindolin-1-one-substituted propionamide compounds).

[00173] Showing the efficacy of the therapy and the rationale for the combination therapy with an anti-diabetic agent are presented in US20040214811.

Anti-hypertensive agents

[00174] The compounds described herein can be used in therapeutic combination with one or more anti-hypertensive agents, including but not limited to:

diuretics, such as thiazides (e.g. chlorthalidone, cyclothiazide (CAS RN 2259-96-3), chlorothiazide (CAS RN 72956-09-3, which may be prepared as disclosed in US2809194), dichlorophenamide, hydroflumethiazide, indapamide, polythiazide, bendroflumethazide, methyclothazide, polythiazide, trichlormethazide, chlorthalidone, indapamide, metolazone, quinethazone, althiazide (CAS RN 5588-16-9, which may be prepared as disclosed in British Patent No. 902,658), benzthiazide (CAS RN 91-33-8, which may be prepared as disclosed in US3108097), buthiazide (which may be prepared as disclosed in British Patent Nos. 861,367), and hydrochlorothiazide), loop diuretics (e.g. bumetanide, ethacrynic acid, furosemide, and tora-semide), potassium sparing agents (e.g. amiloride, and triamterene (CAS Number 396-01-0)), and aldosterone antagonists (e.g. spironolactone (CAS Number 52-01-7), epi renone, and the like); β -adrenergic blockers such as Amiodarone (Cordarone, Pacerone), bunolol hydrochloride (CAS RN 31969-05-8, Parke-Davis), acebutolol (\pm N-[3-Acetyl-4-[2-hydroxy-3-[(1-methylethyl)amino] propoxy]phenyl]-butanamide, or (\pm)-3'-Acetyl-4'-[2-hydroxy-3-(isopropylamino) propoxy] butyranilide), acebutolol hydrochloride (e.g. Sectral®, Wyeth-Ayerst), alprenolol hydrochloride (CAS RN 13707-88-5 see Netherlands Patent Application No. 6,605,692), atenolol (e.g. Tenormin®, AstraZeneca), carteolol hydrochloride (e.g. Cartrol® Filmtab®, Abbott), Celiprolol hydrochloride (CAS RN 57470-78-7, also see in US4034009), cetamolol hydrochloride (CAS RN 77590-95-5, see also US4059622), labetalol hydrochloride (e.g. Normodyne®, Schering), esmolol hydrochloride (e.g. Brevibloc®, Baxter), levobetaxolol hydrochloride (e.g. Betaxon™ Ophthalmic Suspension, Alcon), levobunolol hydrochloride (e.g. Betagan® Liquifilm® with C CAP® Compliance Cap, Allergan), nadolol (e.g. Nadolol, Mylan), practolol (CAS RN 6673-35-4, see also US3408387), propranolol hydrochloride (CAS RN 318-98-9), sotalol hydrochloride (e.g. Betapace AF™, Berlex), timolol (2-Propanol, 1-[(1,1-

dimethylethyl)amino]-3-[[4-4(4-morpholinyl)-1,2,5-thiadiazol-3-yl]oxy]-, hemihydrate, (S)-, CAS RN 91524-16-2), timolol maleate (S)-1-[(1,1-dimethylethyl) amino]-3-[[4- (4-morpholinyl)-1,2,5-thiadiazol -3- yl] oxy]-2-Propanol (Z)-2-butenedioate (1:1) salt, CAS RN 26921-17-5), bisoprolol (2-Propanol, 1-[4-[[2-(1-methylethoxy)ethoxy]-methyl]phenoxy]-3-[(1-methylethyl)amino]-, (±), CAS RN 66722-44-9), bisoprolol fumarate (such as (±)-1-[4-[[2-(1-Methylethoxy) ethoxy]methyl]phenoxy]-3-[(1-methylethyl)amino]-2-Propanol (E) -2-butenedioate (2:1) (salt), e.g., Zebeta™, Lederle Consumer), nebivolol (2H-1-Benzopyran-2-methanol, $\alpha\alpha'$ -[iminobis(methylene)]bis[6-fluoro-3,4-dihydro-, CAS RN 99200-09-6 see also U.S. Pat. No. 4,654,362), cicloprolol hydrochloride, such 2-Propanol, 1-[4-[2-(cyclopropylmethoxy)ethoxy]phenoxy]-3-[1-methylethyl)amino]-, hydrochloride, A.A.S. RN 63686-79-3), dexpropranolol hydrochloride (2-Propanol, 1-[1-methylethyl)-amino]-3-(1-naphthalenyloxy)-hydrochloride (CAS RN 13071-11-9), diacetolol hydrochloride (Acetamide, N-[3-acetyl-4-[2-hydroxy-3-[(1-methyl-ethyl)amino]propoxy] [phenyl]-, monohydrochloride CAS RN 69796-04-9), dilevalol hydrochloride (Benzamide, 2-hydroxy-5-[1-hydroxy-2-[1-methyl-3-Phenylpropyl)amino]ethyl]-, monohydrochloride, CAS RN 75659-08-4), exaprolol hydrochloride (2-Propanol, 1-(2-cyclohexylphenoxy)-3-[(1-methylethyl) amino]-, hydrochloride CAS RN 59333-90-3), fleistolol sulfate (Benzoic acid, 2-fluoro-, 3-[[2-[aminocarbonyl)amino]- -dimethylethyl]amino]-2-hydroxypropyl ester, (±)- sulfate (1:1) (salt), CAS RN 88844-73-9; metolol hydrochloride (Methanesulfonamide, N-[4-[1-hydroxy-2-(methylamino)propyl]phenyl]-, monohydrochloride CAS RN 7701-65-7), metoprolol 2-Propanol, 1-[4-(2-methoxyethyl)phenoxy]-3-[1-methylethyl)amino]-; CAS RN 37350-58-6), metoprolol tartrate (such as 2-Propanol, 1-[4-(2-methoxyethyl)phenoxy]-3-[(1-methylethyl)amino]-, e.g., Lopressor®, Novartis), pamatolol sulfate (Carbamic acid, [2-[4-[2-hydroxy-3-[(1-methylethyl) amino]propoxyl]phenyl]-ethyl]-, methyl ester, (±) sulfate (salt) (2:1), CAS RN 59954-01-7), penbutolol sulfate (2-Propanol, 1-(2-cyclopentylphenoxy)-3-[1,1-dimethylethyl)amino]1, (S)-, sulfate (2:1) (salt), CAS RN 38363-32-5), practolol (Acetamide, N-[4-[2-hydroxy-3-[(1-methyl-ethyl)amino]-Propoxy]phenyl]-, CAS RN 6673-35-4;) tiprenolol hydrochloride (Propanol, 1-[(1-methylethyl)amino]-3-[2-

(methylthio)-Phenoxy]-, hydrochloride, (\pm), CAS RN 39832-43-4), tolamolol (Benzamide, 4-[2-[[2-hydroxy-3-(2-methylphenoxy)-Propyl]amino]ethoxyl]-, CAS RN 38103-61-6), bopindolol, indenolol, pindolol, propanolol, tertatolol, and tilisolol, and the like;

calcium channel blockers such as besylate salt of amlodipine (such as 3-ethyl-5-methyl-2-(2-aminoethoxymethyl)-4-(2-chlorophenyl)-1,4-dihydro-6-methyl-3,5-Pyridinedicarboxylate benzenesulphonate, e.g., Norvasc®, Pfizer), clentiazem maleate (1,5-Benzothiazepin-4(5H)-one, 3-(acetyloxy)-8-chloro-5-[2-(dimethylamino)ethyl]-2,3-dihydro-2-(4-methoxyphenyl)-(2S-cis)-, (Z)-2-butenedioate (1:1), see also US4567195), isradipine (3,5-Pyridinedicarboxylic acid, 4-(4-benzofurazanyl)-1,4-dihydro-2,6-dimethyl-, methyl 1-methylethyl ester, (\pm)-4-(4-benzofurazanyl)-1,4-dihydro-2,6-dimethyl-3,5-Pyridinedicarboxylate, see also US4466972); nimodipine (such as is isopropyl (2-methoxyethyl) 1, 4-dihydro-2,6-dimethyl-4-(3-nitrophenyl)-3,5-pyridine-dicarboxylate, e.g. Nimotop®, Bayer), felodipine (such as ethyl methyl 4-(2,3-dichlorophenyl)-1,4-dihydro-2,6-dimethyl-3,5-Pyridinedicarboxylate-, e.g. Plendil® Extended-Release, AstraZeneca LP), nilvadipine (3,5-Pyridinedicarboxylic acid, 2-cyano-1,4-dihydro-6-methyl-4-(3-nitrophenyl)-,3-methyl 5-(1-methylethyl) ester, also see US3799934), nifedipine (such as 3,5-Pyridinedicarboxylic acid,1,4-dihydro-2,6-dimethyl-4-(2-nitrophenyl)-, dimethyl ester, e.g., Procardia XL® Extended Release Tablets, Pfizer), diltiazem hydrochloride (such as 1,5-Benzothiazepin-4(5H)-one,3-(acetyloxy)-5[2-(dimethylamino)ethyl]-2,-3-dihydro-2(4-methoxy-Phenyl)-, monohydrochloride, (+)-cis., e.g., Tiazac®, Forest), verapamil hydrochloride (such as benzeneacetonitrile, (alpha)-[[3-[[2-(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl) ethyl]methylamino]propyl]-3,4-dimethoxy-(alpha)-(1-methylethyl) hydrochloride, e.g., Isoptin® SR, Knoll Labs), teludipine hydrochloride (3,5-Pyridinedicarboxylic acid, 2-[(dimethylamino)methyl]4-[2-[(1E)-3-(1,1-dimethylethoxy)-3-oxo-1-Propenyl]phenyl]-1,4-dihydro-6-methyl-, diethyl ester, monohydro-chloride) CAS RN 108700-03-4), belfosdil (Phosphonic acid, [2-(2-Phenoxyethyl)-1,3-Propane-diyl]bis-, tetrabutyl ester CAS RN 103486-79-9), fostedil (Phosphonic acid, [[4-(2-benzothiazolyl)phenyl]methyl]-, diethyl ester CAS RN 75889-

62-2), aranidipine, azelnidipine, barnidipine, benidipine, bepridil, cinaldipine, clevidipine, efonidipine, gallopamil, lacidipine, lemdipine, lercanidipine, monatepil maleate (1-Piperazinebutanamide, N-(6,11-dihydrodibenzo(b,e)thiepin-11-yl)-4-(4-fluorophenyl)-, (±)-, (Z)-2-butenedioate (1:1) (±)-N-(6,11-Dihydrodibenzo(b,e)thiepin-11-yl)-4-(p-fluorophenyl)-1-Piperazinebutyramide maleate (1:1) CAS RN 132046-06-1), nicardipine, nisoldipine, nitrendipine, manidipine, pranidipine, and the like; T-channel calcium antagonists such as mibefradil; angiotensin converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors such as benazepril, benazepril hydrochloride (such as 3-[[1-(ethoxycarbonyl)-3-Phenyl-(1S)-Propyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-(3S)-benzazepine-1-acetic acid monohydrochloride, e.g., Lotrel®, Novartis), captopril (such as 1-[(2S)-3-mercapto-2-methylpropionyl]-L-Proline, e.g., Captopril, Mylan, CAS RN 62571-86-2 and others disclosed in US4046889), ceranapril (and others disclosed in US4452790), cetapril (alacepril, Dainippon disclosed in Eur. Therap. Res. 39:671 (1986); 40:543 (1986)), cilazapril (Hoffman-LaRoche) disclosed in J. Cardiovasc. Pharmacol. 9:39 (1987), indalapril (delapril hydrochloride (2H-1,2,4-Benzothiadiazine-7-sulfonamide, 3-bicyclo[2.2.1]hept-5-en-2-yl-6-chloro-3,4-dihydro-, 1,1-dioxide CAS RN 2259-96-3); disclosed in US4385051), enalapril (and others disclosed in US4374829), enalapril, enalaprilat, fosinopril, ((such as L-Proline, 4-cyclohexyl-1-[[[2-methyl-1-(1-oxopropoxy) propoxy](4-Phenylbutyl) phosphinyl]acetyl]-, sodium salt, trans—, e.g., Monopril, Bristol-Myers Squibb and others disclosed in US4168267), fosinopril sodium (L-Proline, 4-cyclohexyl-1-[[[R)-(1S)-2-methyl-1-(1-oxopropoxy)propox], imidapril, indolapril (Schering, disclosed in J. Cardiovasc. Pharmacol. 5:643, 655 (1983)), lisinopril (Merck), losinopril, moexipril, moexipril hydrochloride (3-Isoquinolinecarboxylic acid, 2-[(2S)-2-[[[1S)-1-(ethoxycarbonyl)-3-Phenylpropyl]amino]-1-oxopropyl]-1-, 2,3,4-tetrahydro-6,7-dimethoxy-, monohydrochloride, (3S)- CAS RN 82586-52-5), quinapril, quinaprilat, ramipril (Hoechst) disclosed in EP 79022 and Curr. Ther. Res. 40:74 (1986), perindopril erbumine (such as 2S,3aS,7aS-1-[(S)-N-[(S)-1-Carboxybutyl]alanyl]hexahydro-2-indolinecarboxylic acid, 1-ethyl ester, compound with tert-butylamine (1:1), e.g., Aceon®, Solvay), perindopril (Servier, disclosed in Eur. J. clin. Pharmacol. 31:519

(1987)), quanipril (disclosed in US4344949), spirapril (Schering, disclosed in *Acta. Pharmacol. Toxicol.* 59 (Supp. 5):173 (1986)), tenocapril, trandolapril, zofenopril (and others disclosed in US4316906), rentiapril (fentiapril, disclosed in *Clin. Exp. Pharmacol. Physiol.* 10:131 (1983)), pivopril, YS980, teprotide (Bradykinin potentiator BPP9a CAS RN 35115-60-7), BRL 36,378 (Smith Kline Beecham, see EP80822 and EP60668), MC-838 (Chugai, see C.A. 102:72588v and *Jap. J. Pharmacol.* 40:373 (1986)), CGS 14824 (Ciba-Geigy, 3-([1-ethoxycarbonyl-3-Phenyl-(1S)-Propyl]amino)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-*o*-1-(3S)-benzazepine-1 acetic acid HCl, see U.K. Patent No. 2103614), CGS 16,617 (Ciba-Geigy, 3(S)-[[[(1S)-5-amino-1-carboxypentyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepine-1-ethanoic acid, see US4473575), Ru 44570 (Hoechst, see *Arzneimittelforschung* 34:1254 (1985)), R 31-2201 (Hoffman-LaRoche see *FEBS Lett.* 165:201 (1984)), CI925 (*Pharmacologist* 26:243, 266 (1984)), WY-44221 (Wyeth, see *J. Med. Chem.* 26:394 (1983)), and those disclosed in US2003006922 (paragraph 28), US4337201, US4432971 (phosphoramidates);

neutral endopeptidase inhibitors such as omapatrilat (Vanlev®), CGS 30440, cadoxatril and ecadotril, fasidotril (also known as aladotril or alatriopril), sampatrilat, mixanpril, and gemopatrilat, AVE7688, ER4030, and those disclosed in US5362727, US5366973, US5225401, US4722810, US5223516, US4749688, US5552397, US5504080, US5612359, US5525723, EP0599444, EP0481522, EP0599444, EP0595610, EP0534363, EP534396, EP534492, EP0629627;

endothelin antagonists such as tezosentan, A308165, and YM62899, and the like;

vasodilators such as hydralazine (apresoline), clonidine (clonidine hydrochloride (1H-Imidazol-2-amine, N-(2,6-dichlorophenyl)4,5-dihydro-, monohydrochloride CAS RN 4205-91-8), catapres, minoxidil (loniten), nicotinyl alcohol (roniacol), diltiazem hydrochloride (such as 1,5-Benzo-thiazepin-4(5H)-one,3-(acetyloxy)-5[2-(dimethylamino)ethyl]-2,3-dihydro-2(4-methoxyphenyl)-, monohydrochloride, (+)-cis, e.g., Tiazac®, Forest), isosorbide dinitrate (such as 1,4:3,6-dianhydro-D-glucitol 2,5-dinitrate e.g., Isordil® Titradose®, Wyeth-Ayerst), isosorbide mononitrate (such as 1,4:3,6-dianhydro-D-glucitol-1,5-nitrate, an organic nitrate, e.g., Ismo®, Wyeth-Ayerst), nitroglycerin (such as 2,3 propanetriol trinitrate, e.g., Nitrostat® Parke-Davis), verapamil

hydrochloride (such as benzeneacetonitrile, (\pm)-(alpha)[3-[[2-(3,4 dimethoxyphenyl) ethyl]methylamino]propyl]-3,4-dimethoxy-(alpha)- (1-methylethyl) hydrochloride, e.g., Covera HS® Extended-Release, Searle), chromonar (which may be prepared as disclosed in US3282938), clonitate (Annalen 1870 155), droprenilamine (which may be prepared as disclosed in DE2521113), lidoflazine (which may be prepared as disclosed in US3267104); prenylamine (which may be prepared as disclosed in US3152173), propatyl nitrate (which may be prepared as disclosed in French Patent No. 1,103,113), mioflazine hydrochloride (1-Piperazineacetamide, 3-(aminocarbonyl)₄-[4,4-bis(4-fluorophenyl)butyl]-N-(2,6-dichlorophenyl)-, dihydrochloride CAS RN 83898-67-3), mixidine (Benzeneethanamine, 3,4-dimethoxy-N-(1-methyl-2-Pyrrolidinylidene)-Pyrrolidine, 2-[(3,4-dimethoxyphenethyl)imino]-1-methyl-1-Methyl-2-[(3,4-dimethoxyphenethyl)imino]pyrrolidine CAS RN 27737-38-8), molsidomine (1,2,3-Oxadiazolium, 5-[(ethoxycarbonyl)amino]-3-(4-morpholinyl)-, inner salt CAS RN 25717-80-0), isosorbide mononitrate (D-Glucitol, 1,4:3,6-dianhydro-, 5-nitrate CAS RN 16051-77-7), erythrityl tetranitrate (1,2,3,4-Butanetetrol, tetranitrate, (2R,3S)-rel-CAS RN 7297-25-8), clonitrate(1,2-Propanediol, 3-chloro-, dinitrate (7CI, 8CI, 9CI) CAS RN 2612-33-1), dipyridamole Ethanol, 2,2',2'',2'''-[(4,8-di-1-Piperidinylpyrimido[5,4-d]pyrimidine-2,6-diyl)dinitrilo]tetrakis- CAS RN 58-32-2), nicorandil (CAS RN 65141-46-0 3-), pyridinecarboxamide (N-[2-(nitrooxy)ethyl]-Nisoldipine3,5-Pyridinedicarboxylic acid, 1,4-dihydro-2,6-dimethyl-4-(2-nitrophenyl)-, methyl 2-methylpropyl ester CAS RN 63675-72-9), nifedipine3,5-Pyridinedicarboxylic acid, 1,4-dihydro-2,6-dimethyl-4-(2-nitrophenyl)-, dimethyl ester CAS RN 21829-25-4), perhexiline maleate (Piperidine, 2-(2,2-dicyclohexylethyl)-, (2Z)-2-butenedioate (1:1) CAS RN 6724-53-4), oxprenolol hydrochloride (2-Propanol, 1-[(1-methylethyl)amino]-3-[2-(2-Propenyloxy)phenoxy]-, hydrochloride CAS RN 6452-73-9), pentrinitrol (1,3-Propanediol, 2,2-bis[(nitrooxy)methyl]-, mononitrate (ester) CAS RN 1607-17-6), verapamil (Benzeneacetonitrile, α -[3-[[2-(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)ethyl]-methylamino]propyl]-3,4-dimethoxy- α -(1-methylethyl)- CAS RN 52-53-9) and the like; angiotensin II receptor antagonists such as, aprosartan, zolasartan, olmesartan, prazosartan, FI6828K, RNH6270, candesartan (1 H-Benzimidazole-7-carboxylic acid, 2-

ethoxy-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]4-yl]methyl]- CAS RN 139481-59-7), candesartan cilexetil ((+/-)-1-(cyclohexylcarbonyloxy)ethyl-2-ethoxy-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)biphenyl-4-yl]-1H-benzimidazole carboxylate, CAS RN 145040-37-5, US5703110 and US5196444), eprosartan (3-[1-4-carboxyphenylmethyl]-2-n-butyl-imidazol-5-yl)-(2-thienylmethyl) propenoic acid, US5185351 and US5650650), irbesartan (2-n-butyl-3-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)biphenyl-4-yl]methyl]1,3-diazaspiro[4,4]non-1-en-4-one, US5270317 and US5352788), losartan (2-N-butyl-4-chloro-5-hydroxymethyl-1-[(2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)biphenyl-4-yl)-methyl]imidazole, potassium salt, US5138069, US5153197 and US5128355), tasosartan (5,8-dihydro-2,4-dimethyl-8-[(2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]4-yl)methyl]-Pyrido[2,3-d]pyrimidin-7(6H)-one, US5149699), telmisartan (4'-[(1,4-dimethyl-2'-Propyl-(2,6'-bi-1H-benzimidazol-1'-yl))-1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxylic acid, CAS RN 144701-48-4, US5591762), milfasartan, abitesartan, valsartan (Diovan® (Novartis), (S)-N-valeryl-N-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)biphenyl-4-yl)methyl]valine, US5399578), EXP-3137 (2-N-butyl-4-chloro-1-[(2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)biphenyl-4-yl)-methyl]imidazole-5-carboxylic acid, US5138069, US5153197 and US5128355), 3-(2'-(tetrazol-5-yl)-1,1'-biphen-4-yl)methyl-5,7-dimethyl-2-ethyl-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine, 4'[2-ethyl-4-methyl-6-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydroimidazo[1,2-a]pyridin-2-yl)-benzimidazol-1-yl]-methyl-1,1'-biphenyl]-2- carboxylic acid, 2-butyl-6-(1-methoxy-1-methylethyl)-2-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)biphenyl-4-ylmethyl]guinazolin-4(3H)-one, 3-[2'-carboxybiphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-2-cyclopropyl-7-methyl- 3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine, 2-butyl-4-chloro-1-[[2'-(tetrazol-5-yl)biphenyl-4-yl)methyl]imidazole-carboxylic acid, 2-butyl-4-chloro-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-imidazole-5-carboxylic acid-1-(ethoxycarbonyl-oxy)ethyl ester potassium salt, dipotassium 2-butyl-4-(methylthio)-1-[[2-[[[(propylamino)carbonyl]amino]-sulfonyl](1,1'-biphenyl)-4-yl]methyl]-1H-imidazole-5-carboxylate, methyl-2-[[4-butyl-2-methyl-6-oxo-5-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1-(6H)-Pyrimidinyl]methyl]-3-thiophencarboxylate, 5-[(3,5-dibutyl-1H-1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)methyl]-2-[2-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylphenyl)]pyridine, 6-butyl-2-(2-Phenylethyl)-5[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-methyl]pyrimidin-4-(3H)-one D,L lysine salt, 5-methyl-7-n-Propyl-8-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)biphenyl-4-yl]methyl]-[1,2,4]-triazolo[1,5-c]pyrimidin-2(3H)-one, 2,7-diethyl-5-[[2'-(5-tetrazolyl)biphenyl-4-

yl)methyl]-5H-Pyrazolo[1,5-b][1,2,4]triazole potassium salt, 2-[2-butyl-4,5-dihydro-4-oxo-3-[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)-4-biphenylmethyl]-3H-imidazol[4,5-c]pyridine-5-yl)methyl]benzoic acid, ethyl ester, potassium salt, 3-methoxy-2,6-dimethyl-4-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)-1,1'-biphenyl-4-yl]methoxy]pyridine, 2-ethoxy-1-[[2'-(5-oxo-2,5-dihydro-1,2,4-oxadiazol-3-yl)biphenyl-4-yl]methyl]-1H-benzimidazole-7-carboxylic acid, 1-[N-(2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)biphenyl-4-yl-methyl)-N-valerolylaminomethyl]cyclopentane-1-carboxylic acid, 7-methyl-2n-Propyl-3-[[2'1H-tetrazol-5-yl)biphenyl-4-yl]methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-6]pyridine, 2-[5-[(2-ethyl-5,7-dimethyl-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine-3-yl)methyl]-2-quinoliny]sodium benzoate, 2-butyl-6-chloro-4-hydroxymethyl-5-methyl-3-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)biphenyl-4-yl]methyl]pyridine, 2-[[[2-butyl-1-[(4-carboxyphenyl)methyl]-1H-imidazol-5-yl]methyl]amino]benzoic acid tetrazol-5-yl)biphenyl-4-yl]methyl]pyrimidin-6-one, 4(S)-[4-(carboxymethyl)phenoxy]-N-[2(R)-[4-(2-sulfobenzamido)imidazol-1-yl]octanoyl]-L-Proline, 1-(2,6-dimethylphenyl)-4-butyl-1,3-dihydro-3-[[6-[2-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)phenyl]-3-Pyridinyl]methyl]-2H-imidazol-2-one, 5,8-ethano-5,8-dimethyl-2-n-Propyl-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)biphenyl-4-yl]methyl]-1H,4H-1,3,4a,8a-tetrazacyclopentanaphthalene-9-one, 4-[1-[2'-(1,2,3,4-tetrazol-5-yl)biphen-4-yl)methylamino]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-2-triflylquinazoline, 2-(2-chlorobenzoyl)imino-5-ethyl-3-[2'-(1H-tetrazole-5-yl)biphenyl-4-yl)methyl]-1,3,4-thiadiazoline, 2-[5-ethyl-3-[2-(1H-tetrazole-5-yl)biphenyl-4-yl]methyl]-1,3,4-thiazoline-2-ylidene]aminocarbonyl-1-cyclopentencarboxylic acid dipotassium salt, and 2-butyl-4-[N-methyl-N-(3-methylcrotonoyl)amino]-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)biphenyl-4-yl]methyl]-1H-imidazole-5-carboxylic acid 1-ethoxycarbonyloxyethyl ester, those disclosed in patent publications EP475206, EP497150, EP539086, EP539713, EP535463, EP535465, EP542059, EP497121, EP535420, EP407342, EP415886, EP424317, EP435827, EP433983, EP475898, EP490820, EP528762, EP324377, EP323841, EP420237, EP500297, EP426021, EP480204, EP429257, EP430709, EP434249, EP446062, EP505954, EP524217, EP514197, EP514198, EP514193, EP514192, EP450566, EP468372, EP485929, EP503162, EP533058, EP467207 EP399731, EP399732, EP412848, EP453210, EP456442, EP470794, EP470795, EP495626, EP495627, EP499414, EP499416, EP499415, EP511791, EP516392, EP520723, EP520724,

EP539066, EP438869, EP505893, EP530702, EP400835, EP400974, EP401030, EP407102, EP411766, EP409332, EP412594, EP419048, EP480659, EP481614, EP490587, EP467715, EP479479, EP502725, EP503838, EP505098, EP505111, EP513,979 EP507594, EP510812, EP511767, EP512675, EP512676, EP512870, EP517357, EP537937, EP534706, EP527534, EP540356, EP461040, EP540039, EP465368, EP498723, EP498722, EP498721, EP515265, EP503785, EP501892, EP519831, EP532410, EP498361, EP432737, EP504888, EP508393, EP508445, EP403159, EP403158, EP425211, EP427463, EP437103, EP481448, EP488532, EP501269, EP500409, EP540400, EP005528, EP028834, EP028833, EP411507, EP425921, EP430300, EP434038, EP442473, EP443568, EP445811, EP459136, EP483683, EP518033, EP520423, EP531876, EP531874, EP392317, EP468470, EP470543, EP502314, EP529253, EP543263, EP540209, EP449699, EP465323, EP521768, EP415594, WO92/14468, WO93/08171, WO93/08169, WO91/00277, WO91/00281, WO91/14367, WO92/00067, WO92/00977, WO92/20342, WO93/04045, WO93/04046, WO91/15206, WO92/14714, WO92/09600, WO92/16552, WO93/05025, WO93/03018, WO91/07404, WO92/02508, WO92/13853, WO91/19697, WO91/11909, WO91/12001, WO91/11999, WO91/15209, WO91/15479, WO92/20687, WO92/20662, WO92/20661, WO93/01177, WO91/14679, WO91/13063, WO92/13564, WO91/17148, WO91/18888, WO91/19715, WO92/02257, WO92/04335, WO92/05161, WO92/07852, WO92/15577, WO93/03033, WO91/16313, WO92/00068, WO92/02510, WO92/09278, WO9210179, WO92/10180, WO92/10186, WO92/10181, WO92/10097, WO92/10183, WO92/10182, WO92/10187, WO92/10184, WO92/10188, WO92/10180, WO92/10185, WO92/20651, WO93/03722, WO93/06828, WO93/03040, WO92/19211, WO92/22533, WO92/06081, WO92/05784, WO93/00341, WO92/04343, WO92/04059, US5104877, US5187168, US5149699, US5185340, US4880804, US5138069, US4916129, US5153197, US5173494, US5137906, US5155126, US5140037, US5137902, US5157026, US5053329, US5132216, US5057522, US5066586, US5089626, US5049565, US5087702, US5124335, US5102880, US5128327, US5151435, US5202322, US5187159, US5198438, US5182288, US5036048, US5140036, US5087634, US5196537, US5153347, US5191086, US5190942, US5177097,

US5212177, US5208234, US5208235, US5212195, US5130439, US5045540, US5041152, and US5210204, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and esters thereof; α/β adrenergic blockers such as nipradilol, arotinolol, amosulalol, bretylium tosylate (CAS RN: 61-75-6), dihydroergtamine mesylate (such as ergotaman-3', 6', 18-trione, 9, 10-dihydro-12'-hydroxy-2'-methyl-5'-(phenylmethyl)-, (5'(α))-, monomethanesulfonate, e.g., DHE 45® Injection, Novartis), carvedilol (such as (\pm)-1-(Carbazol-4-yloxy)-3-[[2-(o-methoxyphenoxy)ethyl]amino]-2-Propanol, e.g., Coreg®, SmithKline Beecham), labetalol (such as 5-[1-hydroxy-2-[(1-methyl-3-Phenylpropyl) amino] ethyl]salicylamide monohydrochloride, e.g., Normodyne®, Schering), bretylium tosylate (Benzenemethanaminium, 2-bromo-N-ethyl-N,N-dimethyl-, salt with 4-methylbenzenesulfonic acid (1:1) CAS RN 61-75-6), phentolamine mesylate (Phenol, 3-[[[(4,5-dihydro-1H-imidazol-2-yl)methyl](4-methylphenyl)amino]-, monomethanesulfonate (salt) CAS RN 65-28-1), solypertine tartrate (5H-1,3-Dioxolo[4,5-f]indole, 7-[2-[4-(2-methoxyphenyl)-1-Piperazinyl]ethyl]-, (2R,3R)-2,3-dihydroxybutanedioate (1:1) CAS RN 5591-43-5), zolertine hydrochloride (Piperazine, 1-Phenyl-4-[2-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)ethyl]-, monohydrochloride (8Cl, 9Cl) CAS RN 7241-94-3) and the like;

α adrenergic receptor blockers, such as alfuzosin (CAS RN: 81403-68-1), terazosin, urapidil, prazosin (Minipress®), tamsulosin, bunazosin, trimazosin, doxazosin, naftopidil, indoramin, WHP 164, XEN010, fenspiride hydrochloride (which may be prepared as disclosed in US3399192), proroxan (CAS RN 33743-96-3), and labetalol hydrochloride and combinations thereof;

α 2 agonists such as methyl dopa, methyl dopa HCL, lofexidine, tiamenidine, moxonidine, rilmenidine, guanobenz, and the like;

aldosterone inhibitors, and the like;

angiopoietin-2-binding agents such as those disclosed in WO03/030833;

anti-angina agents such as ranolazine (hydrochloride 1-Piperazineacetamide, N-(2,6-dimethylphenyl)-4-[2-hydroxy-3-(2-methoxyphenoxy)propyl]-, dihydrochloride CAS RN 95635-56-6), betaxolol hydrochloride (2-Propanol, 1-[4-[2-(cyclopropylmethoxy)ethyl]phenoxy]-3-[(1-methylethyl)amino]-, hydrochloride CAS RN

63659-19-8), butoprozine hydrochloride (Methanone, [4-[3(dibutylamino)propoxy]phenyl](2-ethyl-3-indoliziny)-, monohydrochloride CAS RN 62134-34-3), cinepazet maleate 1-Piperazineacetic acid, 4-[1-oxo-3-(3,4,5-trimethoxyphenyl)-2-Propenyl]-, ethyl ester, (2Z)-2-butenedioate (1:1) CAS RN 50679-07-7), tosifen (Benzenesulfonamide, 4-methyl-N-[[[(1S)-1-methyl-2-Phenylethyl]amino]carbonyl]- CAS RN 32295-184), verapamilhydrochloride (Benzeneacetonitrile, α -[3-[[2-(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)ethyl]methylamino]propyl]-3,4-dimethoxy- α -(1-methylethyl)-, monohydrochloride CAS RN 152-114), molsidomine (1,2,3-Oxadiazolium, 5-[(ethoxycarbonyl)amino]-3-(4-morpholinyl)-, inner salt CAS RN 25717-80-0), and ranolazine hydrochloride (1-Piperazineacetamide, N-(2,6-dimethylphenyl)₄-[2-hydroxy-3-(2-methoxyphenoxy)propyl]-, dihydrochloride CAS RN 95635-56-6); tosifen (Benzenesulfonamide, 4-methyl-N-[[[(1S)-1-methyl-2-Phenylethyl]amino]carbonyl]- CAS RN 32295-184); adrenergic stimulants such as guanfacine hydrochloride (such as N-amidino-2-(2,6-dichlorophenyl) acetamide hydrochloride, e.g., Tenex® Tablets available from Robins); methyl dopa-hydrochlorothiazide (such as levo-3-(3,4-dihydroxyphenyl)-2-methylalanine) combined with Hydrochlorothiazide (such as 6-chloro-3,4-dihydro-2H-1,2,4-benzothiadiazine-7-sulfonamide 1,1-dioxide, e.g., the combination as, e.g., Aldoril® Tablets available from Merck), methyl dopa-chlorothiazide (such as 6-chloro-2H-1,2,4-benzothiadiazine-7-sulfonamide 1,1-dioxide and methyl dopa as described above, e.g., Aldoclor®, Merck), clonidine hydrochloride (such as 2-(2,6-dichlorophenylamino)-2-imidazoline hydrochloride and chlorthalidone (such as 2-chloro-5-(1-hydroxy-3-oxo-1-isoindoliny) benzenesulfonamide), e.g., Combipres®, Boehringer Ingelheim), clonidine hydrochloride (such as 2-(2,6-dichlorophenylamino)-2-imidazoline hydrochloride, e.g., Catapres®, Boehringer Ingelheim), clonidine (1H-Imidazol-2-amine, N-(2,6-dichlorophenyl)₄,5-dihydro-CAS RN 4205-90-7); and those agents disclosed in US20030069221. Tests showing the efficacy of the therapy and the rationale for the combination therapy with an anti-hypertensive agent are described, for example, in US20030069221.

Anti-Obesity Agents

[00175] The compounds described herein can be used in therapeutic combination with one or more anti-obesity agents, including but not limited to:

11 β HSD-1 (11-beta hydroxy steroid dehydrogenase type 1) inhibitors, such as BVT 3498, BVT 2733, 3-(1-adamantyl)-4-ethyl-5-(ethylthio)-4H-1,2,4-triazole, 3-(1-adamantyl)-5-(3,4,5-trimethoxyphenyl)-4-methyl-4H-1,2,4-triazole, 3-adamantany-4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12,3a-decahydro-1,2,4-triazolo[4,3-a][1,1]annulene, and those compounds disclosed in WO01/90091, WO01/90090, WO01/90092 and WO02/072084; 5HT antagonists such as those in WO03/037871, WO03/037887, and the like; 5HT1a modulators such as carbidopa, benserazide and those disclosed in US6207699, WO03/031439, and the like;

5HT2c (serotonin receptor 2c) agonists, such as BVT933, DPCA37215, IK264, PNU 22394, WAY161503, R-1065, SB 243213 (Glaxo Smith Kline) and YM 348 and those disclosed in US3914250, WO00/77010, WO02/36596, WO02/48124, WO02/10169, WO01/66548, WO02/44152, WO02/51844, WO02/40456, and WO02/40457; 5HT6 receptor modulators, such as those in WO03/030901, WO03/035061, WO03/039547, and the like;

acyl-estrogens, such as oleoyl-estrone, disclosed in del Mar-Grasa, M. et al., Obesity Research, 9:202-9 (2001) and Japanese Patent Application No. JP 2000256190; anorectic bicyclic compounds such as 1426 (Aventis) and 1954 (Aventis), and the compounds disclosed in WO00/18749, WO01/32638, WO01/62746, WO01/62747, and WO03/015769;

CB 1 (cannabinoid-1 receptor) antagonist/inverse agonists such as rimonabant (Acomplia; Sanofi), SR-147778 (Sanofi), SR-141716 (Sanofi), BAY 65-2520 (Bayer), and SLV 319 (Solvay), and those disclosed in patent publications US4973587, US5013837, US5081122, US5112820, US5292736, US5532237, US5624941, US6028084, US6509367, US6509367, WO96/33159, WO97/29079, WO98/31227, WO98/33765, WO98/37061, WO98/41519, WO98/43635, WO98/43636, WO99/02499, WO00/10967, WO00/10968, WO01/09120, WO01/58869, WO01/64632, WO01/64633, WO01/64634, WO01/70700, WO01/96330, WO02/076949, WO03/006007,

WO03/007887, WO03/020217, WO03/026647, WO03/026648, WO03/027069, WO03/027076, WO03/027114, WO03/037332, WO03/040107, WO03/086940, WO03/084943 and EP658546;

CCK-A (cholecystokinin-A) agonists, such as AR-R 15849, GI 181771 (GSK), JMV-180, A-71378, A-71623 and SR146131 (Sanofi), and those described in US5739106; CNTF (Ciliary neurotrophic factors), such as GI-181771 (Glaxo-SmithKline), SR146131 (Sanofi Synthelabo), butabindide, PD170,292, and PD 149164 (Pfizer); CNTF derivatives, such as Axokine® (Regeneron), and those disclosed in WO94/09134, WO98/22128, and WO99/43813;

dipeptidyl peptidase IV (DP-IV) inhibitors, such as isoleucine thiazolidide, valine pyrrolidide, NVP-DPP728, LAF237, P93/01, P 3298, TSL 225 (tryptophyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid; disclosed by Yamada et al, Bioorg. & Med. Chem. Lett. 8 (1998) 1537-1540), TMC-2A/2B/2C, CD26 inhibitors, FE 999011, P9310/K364, VIP 0177, SDZ 274-444, 2-cyanopyrrolidides and 4-cyanopyrrolidides as disclosed by Ashworth et al, Bioorg. & Med. Chem. Lett., Vol. 6, No. 22, pp 1163-1166 and 2745-2748 (1996) and the compounds disclosed patent publications. WO99/38501, WO99/46272, WO99/67279 (Probiodrug), WO99/67278 (Probiodrug), WO99/61431 (Probiodrug), WO02/083128, WO02/062764, WO03/000180, WO03/000181, WO03/000250, WO03/002530, WO03/002531, WO03/002553, WO03/002593, WO03/004498, WO03/004496, WO03/017936, WO03/024942, WO03/024965, WO03/033524, WO03/037327 and EP1258476;

growth hormone secretagogue receptor agonists/antagonists, such as NN703, hexarelin, MK-0677 (Merck), SM-130686, CP-424391 (Pfizer), LY 444,711 (Eli Lilly), L-692,429 and L-163,255, and such as those disclosed in USSN 09/662448, US provisional application 60/203335, US6358951, US2002049196, US2002/022637, WO01/56592 and WO02/32888;

H3 (histamine H3) antagonist/inverse agonists, such as thioperamide, 3-(1H-imidazol-4-yl)propyl N-(4-Pentenyl)carbamate), clobenpropit, iodophenpropit, imoproxifan, GT2394 (Gliatech), and A331440, O-[3-(1H-imidazol-4-yl)propanol]carbamates (Kiec-Kononowicz, K. et al., Pharmazie, 55:349-55 (2000)), piperidine-containing histamine

H3-receptor antagonists (Lazewska, D. et al., *Pharmazie*, 56:927-32 (2001), benzophenone derivatives and related compounds (Sasse, A. et al., *Arch. Pharm.(Weinheim)* 334:45-52 (2001)), substituted N-Phenylcarbamates (Reidemeister, S. et al., *Pharmazie*, 55:83-6 (2000)), and proxifan derivatives (Sasse, A. et al., *J. Med. Chem.* 43:3335-43 (2000)) and histamine H3 receptor modulators such as those disclosed in WO02/15905, WO03/024928 and WO03/024929;

leptin derivatives, such as those disclosed in US5552524, US5552523, US5552522, US5521283, WO96/23513, WO96/23514, WO96/23515, WO96/23516, WO96/23517, WO96/23518, WO96/23519, and WO96/23520;

leptin, including recombinant human leptin (PEG-OB, Hoffman La Roche) and recombinant methionyl human leptin (Amgen);

lipase inhibitors, such as tetrahydrolipstatin (orlistat/Xenical®), Triton WR1339, RHC80267, lipstatin, teasaponin, diethylumbelliferyl phosphate, FL-386, WAY-121898, Bay-N-3176, valilactone, esteracin, ebelactone A, ebelactone B, and RHC 80267, and those disclosed in patent publications WO01/77094, US4598089, US4452813, USUS5512565, US5391571, US5602151, US4405644, US4189438, and US4242453;

lipid metabolism modulators such as maslinic acid, erythrodiol, ursolic acid uvaol, betulinic acid, betulin, and the like and compounds disclosed in WO03/011267;

Mc4r (melanocortin 4 receptor) agonists, such as CHIR86036 (Chiron), ME-10142, ME-10145, and HS-131 (Melacure), and those disclosed in PCT publication Nos. WO99/64002, WO00/74679, WO01/991752, WO01/25192, WO01/52880, WO01/74844, WO01/70708, WO01/70337, WO01/91752, WO02/059095, WO02/059107, WO02/059108, WO02/059117, WO02/06276, WO02/12166, WO02/11715, WO02/12178, WO02/15909, WO02/38544, WO02/068387, WO02/068388, WO02/067869, WO02/081430, WO03/06604, WO03/007949, WO03/009847, WO03/009850, WO03/013509, and WO03/031410;

Mc5r (melanocortin 5 receptor) modulators, such as those disclosed in WO97/19952, WO00/15826, WO00/15790, US20030092041;

melanin-concentrating hormone 1 receptor (MCHR) antagonists, such as T-226296 (Takeda), SB 568849, SNP-7941 (Synaptic), and those disclosed in patent publications

WO01/21169, WO01/82925, WO01/87834, WO02/051809, WO02/06245, WO02/076929, WO02/076947, WO02/04433, WO02/51809, WO02/083134, WO02/094799, WO03/004027, WO03/13574, WO03/15769, WO03/028641, WO03/035624, WO03/033476, WO03/033480, JP13226269, and JP1437059; mGluR5 modulators such as those disclosed in WO03/029210, WO03/047581, WO03/048137, WO03/051315, WO03/051833, WO03/053922, WO03/059904, and the like;

serotonergic agents, such as fenfluramine (such as Pondimin® (Benzeneethanamine, N-ethyl-alpha-methyl-3-(trifluoromethyl)-, hydrochloride), Robbins), dexfenfluramine (such as Redux® (Benzeneethanamine, N-ethyl-alpha-methyl-3-(trifluoromethyl)-, hydrochloride), Interneuron) and sibutramine ((Meridia®, Knoll/Reductil®) including racemic mixtures, as optically pure isomers (+) and (-), and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, solvents, hydrates, clathrates and prodrugs thereof including sibutramine hydrochloride monohydrate salts thereof, and those compounds disclosed in US4746680, US4806570, and US5436272, US20020006964, WO01/27068, and WO01/62341; NE (norepinephrine) transport inhibitors, such as GW 320659, despiramine, talsupram, and nomifensine;

NPY 1 antagonists, such as BIBP3226, J-115814, BIBO 3304, LY-357897, CP-671906, GI-264879A, and those disclosed in US6001836, WO96/14307, WO01/23387, WO99/51600, WO01/85690, WO01/85098, WO01/85173, and WO01/89528; NPY5 (neuropeptide Y Y5) antagonists, such as 152,804, GW-569180A, GW-594884A, GW-587081X, GW-548118X, FR235208, FR226928, FR240662, FR252384, 1229U91, GI-264879A, CGP71683A, LY-377897, LY-366377, PD-160170, SR- 120562A, SR- 120819A, JCF-104, and H409/22 and those compounds disclosed in patent publications US6140354, US6191160, US6218408, US6258837, US6313298, US6326375, US6329395, US6335345, US6337332, US6329395, US6340683, EP01010691, EP- 01044970, WO97/19682, WO97/20820, WO97/20821, WO97/20822, WO97/20823, WO98/27063, WO00/107409, WO00/185714, WO00/185730, WO00/64880, WO00/68197, WO00/69849, WO/0113917, WO01/09120, WO01/14376, WO01/85714, WO01/85730, WO01/07409, WO01/02379, WO01/23388, WO01/23389, WO01/44201,

WO01/62737, WO01/62738, WO01/09120, WO02/20488, WO02/22592, WO02/48152, WO02/49648, WO02/051806, WO02/094789, WO03/009845, WO03/014083, WO03/022849, WO03/028726 and Norman et al., J. Med. Chem. 43:4288-4312 (2000); opioid antagonists, such as nalmefene (REVEX®), 3-methoxynaltrexone, naloxone, and naltrexone and those disclosed in WO00/21509; orexin antagonists, such as SB-334867-A and those disclosed in patent publications WO01/96302, WO01/68609, WO02/44172, WO02/51232, WO02/51838, WO02/089800, WO02/090355, WO03/023561, WO03/032991, and WO03/037847; PDE inhibitors (e.g. compounds which slow the degradation of cyclic AMP (cAMP) and/or cyclic GMP (cGMP) by inhibition of the phosphodiesterases, which can lead to a relative increase in the intracellular concentration of cAMP and cGMP; possible PDE inhibitors are primarily those substances which are to be numbered among the class consisting of the PDE3 inhibitors, the class consisting of the PDE4 inhibitors and/or the class consisting of the PDE5 inhibitors, in particular those substances which can be designated as mixed types of PDE3/4 inhibitors or as mixed types of PDE3/4/5 inhibitors) such as those disclosed in patent publications DE1470341, DE2108438, DE2123328, DE2305339, DE2305575, DE2315801, DE2402908, DE2413935, DE2451417, DE2459090, DE2646469, DE2727481, DE2825048, DE2837161, DE2845220, DE2847621, DE2934747, DE3021792, DE3038166, DE3044568, EP000718, EP0008408, EP0010759, EP0059948, EP0075436, EP0096517, EP0112987, EP0116948, EP0150937, EP0158380, EP0161632, EP0161918, EP0167121, EP0199127, EP0220044, EP0247725, EP0258191, EP0272910, EP0272914, EP0294647, EP0300726, EP0335386, EP0357788, EP0389282, EP0406958, EP0426180, EP0428302, EP0435811, EP0470805, EP0482208, EP0490823, EP0506194, EP0511865, EP0527117, EP0626939, EP0664289, EP0671389, EP0685474, EP0685475, EP0685479, JP92234389, JP94329652, JP95010875, US4963561, US5141931, WO9117991, WO9200968, WO9212961, WO9307146, WO9315044, WO9315045, WO9318024, WO9319068, WO9319720, WO9319747, WO9319749, WO9319751, WO9325517, WO9402465, WO9406423, WO9412461, WO9420455, WO9422852, WO9425437, WO9427947, WO9500516, WO9501980,

WO9503794, WO9504045, WO9504046, WO9505386, WO9508534, WO9509623, WO9509624, WO9509627, WO9509836, WO9514667, WO9514680, WO9514681, WO9517392, WO9517399, WO9519362, WO9522520, WO9524381, WO9527692, WO9528926, WO9535281, WO9535282, WO9600218, WO9601825, WO9602541, WO9611917, DE3142982, DE1116676, DE2162096, EP0293063, EP0463756, EP0482208, EP0579496, EP0667345 US6331543, US20050004222 (including those disclosed in formulas I-XIII and paragraphs 37-39, 85-0545 and 557-577), WO9307124, EP0163965, EP0393500, EP0510562, EP0553174, WO9501338 and WO9603399, as well as PDE5 inhibitors (such as RX-RA-69, SCH-51866, KT-734, vesnarinone, zaprinast, SKF-96231, ER-21355, BF/GP-385, NM-702 and sildenafil (Viagra®)), PDE4 inhibitors (such as RO-20-1724, MEM 1414 (R1533/R1500; Pharmacia Roche), denbufylline, rolipram, oxagrelate, nitraquazone, Y-590, DH-6471, SKF-94120, motapizone, lixazinone, indolidan, olprinone, atizoram, KS-506-G, dipamfylline, BMY-43351, atizoram, arofylline, filaminast, PDB-093, UCB-29646, CDP-840, SKF-107806, piclamilast, RS-17597, RS-25344-000, SB-207499, TIBENELAST, SB-210667, SB-211572, SB-211600, SB-212066, SB-212179, GW-3600, CDP-840, mopidamol, anagrelide, ibudilast, amrinone, pimobendan, cilostazol, quazinone and N-(3,5-dichloropyrid-4-yl)-3-cyclopropylmethoxy-4-difluoromethoxybenzamide, PDE3 inhibitors (such as sulmazole, ampizone, cilostamide, carbazeran, piroximone, imazodan, CI-930, siguazodan, adibendan, saterinone, SKF-95654, SDZ-MKS-492, 349-U-85, emoradan, EMD-53998, EMD-57033, NSP-306, NSP-307, revizinone, NM-702, WIN-62582 and WIN-63291, enoximone and milrinone, PDE3/4 inhibitors (such as benafentrine, trequinsin, ORG-30029, zardaverine, L-686398, SDZ-ISQ-844, ORG-20241, EMD-54622, and tolafentrine) and other PDE inhibitors (such as cilomilast, fenoximone, pentoxifylline, roflumilast, tadalafil(Cialis®), theophylline, and vardenafil(Levitra®);

Neuropeptide Y2 (NPY2) agonists include but are not limited to: peptide YY and fragments and variants thereof (e.g. YY3-36 (PYY3-36) (N. Engl. J. Med. 349:941, 2003; IKPEAPGE DASPEELNRY YASLRHYLNL VTRQRY (SEQ ID NO:XXX)) and

PYY agonists such as those disclosed in WO03/026591, WO03/057235, and WO03/027637;

serotonin reuptake inhibitors, such as, paroxetine, fluoxetine (Prozac®), fluvoxamine, sertraline, citalopram, and imipramine, and those disclosed in US6162805, US6365633, WO03/00663, WO01/27060, and WO01/162341;

thyroid hormone β agonists, such as KB-2611 (KaroBioBMS), and those disclosed in WO02/15845, WO97/21993, WO99/00353, GB98/284425, U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/183,223, and Japanese Patent Application No. JP 2000256190;

UCP-1 (uncoupling protein-1), 2, or 3 activators, such as phytanic acid, 4-[(E)-2-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5,5,8,8-tetramethyl-2-naphthalenyl)-1-Propenyl]benzoic acid (TTNPB), retinoic acid, and those disclosed in WO99/00123;

β 3 (beta adrenergic receptor 3) agonists, such as AJ9677/TAK677 (Dainippon/Takeda), L750355 (Merck), CP331648 (Pfizer), CL-316,243, SB 418790, BRL-37344, L-796568, BMS-196085, BRL-35135A, CGP12177A, BTA-243, GW 427353, Trecadrine, Zeneca D7114, N-5984 (Nisshin Kyorin), LY-377604 (Lilly), SR 59119A, and those disclosed in US5541204, US5770615, US5491134, US5776983, US488064, US5705515, US5451677, WO94/18161, WO95/29159, WO97/46556, WO98/04526 and WO98/32753, WO01/74782, WO02/32897, WO03/014113, WO03/016276, WO03/016307, WO03/024948, WO03/024953 and WO03/037881;

noradrenergic agents including, but not limited to, diethylpropion (such as Tenuate® (1-Propanone, 2-(diethylamino)-1-Phenyl-, hydrochloride), Merrell), dextroamphetamine (also known as dextroamphetamine sulfate, dexamphetamine, dexedrine, Dexampex, Ferndex, Oxydess II, Robese, Spancap #1), mazindol ((or 5-(p-chlorophenyl)-2,5-dihydro-3H-imidazo[2,1-a]isoindol-5-ol) such as Sanorex®, Novartis or Mazanor®, Wyeth Ayerst), phenylpropanolamine (or Benzenemethanol, alpha-(1-aminoethyl)-, hydrochloride), phentermine ((or Phenol, 3-[[4,5-dihydro-1H-imidazol-2-yl)ethyl](4-methylphenyl)amino], monohydrochloride) such as Adipex-P®, Lemmon, FASTIN®, Smith-Kline Beecham and Ionamin®, Medeva), phendimetrazine ((or (2S,3S)-3,4-Dimethyl-2-phenylmorpholine L-(+)-tartrate (1:1)) such as Metra® (Forest), Plegine® (Wyeth-Ayerst), Prelu-2® (Boehringer Ingelheim), and Statobex® (Lemmon),

phendamine tartrate (such as Thephorin® (2,3,4,9-Tetrahydro-2-methyl-9-Phenyl-1H-indenol[2,1-c]pyridine L-(+)-tartrate (1:1)), Hoffmann-LaRoche), methamphetamine (such as Desoxyn®, Abbot ((S)-N, (alpha)-dimethylbenzeneethanamine hydrochloride)), and phendimetrazine tartrate (such as Bontril® Slow-Release Capsules, Amarin (-3,4-Dimethyl-2-Phenylmorpholine Tartrate);

fatty acid oxidation upregulator/inducers such as Famoxin® (Genset);

monamine oxidase inhibitors including but not limited to befloxatone, moclobemide, brofaromine, phenoxathine, esuprone, befol, tolloxatone, pirlindol, amiflamine, sercloremin, bazinaprine, lazabemide, milacemide, caroxazone and other certain compounds as disclosed by WO01/12176; and

other anti-obesity agents such as 5HT-2 agonists, ACC (acetyl-CoA carboxylase) inhibitors such as those described in WO03/072197, alpha-lipoic acid (alpha-LA), AOD9604, appetite suppressants such as those in WO03/40107, ATL-962 (Alizyme PLC), benzocaine, benzphetamine hydrochloride (Didrex), bladderwrack (focus vesiculosus), BRS3 (bombesin receptor subtype 3) agonists, bupropion, caffeine, CCK agonists, chitosan, chromium, conjugated linoleic acid, corticotropin-releasing hormone agonists, dehydroepiandrosterone, DGAT1 (diacylglycerol acyltransferase 1) inhibitors, DGAT2 (diacylglycerol acyltransferase 2) inhibitors, dicarboxylate transporter inhibitors, ephedra, exendin-4 (an inhibitor of glp-1) FAS (fatty acid synthase) inhibitors (such as Cerulenin and C75), fat resorption inhibitors (such as those in WO03/053451, and the like), fatty acid transporter inhibitors, natural water soluble fibers (such as psyllium, plantago, guar, oat, pectin), galanin antagonists, galega (Goat's Rue, French Lilac), garcinia cambogia, germander (teucrium chamaedrys), ghrelin antibodies and ghrelin antagonists (such as those disclosed in WO01/87335, and WO02/08250), GLP-1 (glucagon-like peptide 1) agonists (e.g. exendin-4), glp-1 (glucagon-like peptide-1), glucocorticoid antagonists, glucose transporter inhibitors, growth hormone secretagogues (such as those disclosed and specifically described in US5536716), interleukin-6 (IL-6) and modulators thereof (as in WO03/057237, and the like), L-carnitine, Mc3r (melanocortin 3 receptor) agonists, MCH2R (melanin concentrating hormone 2R) agonist/antagonists, melanin concentrating hormone antagonists, melanocortin agonists

(such as Melanotan II or those described in WO 99/64002 and WO 00/74679), nomegestrol acetate, phosphate transporter inhibitors, phytopharm compound 57 (CP 644,673), pyruvate, SCD-1 (stearoyl-CoA desaturase-1) inhibitors, T71 (Tularik, Inc., Boulder CO), Topiramate (Topimax®, indicated as an anti-convulsant which has been shown to increase weight loss), transcription factor modulators (such as those disclosed in WO03/026576), β -hydroxy steroid dehydrogenase-1 inhibitors (β -HSD-1), β -hydroxy- β -methylbutyrate, p57 (Pfizer), Zonisamide (Zonegran®, indicated as an anti-epileptic which has been shown to lead to weight loss), and the agents disclosed in US20030119428 paragraphs 20-26. Tests showing the efficacy of the therapy and the rationale for the combination therapy with an anti-obesity agent are presented in US20030119428.

Agents used to treat autoimmune disorders

[00176] The compounds described herein can be used in therapeutic combination with one or more agents used to treat autoimmune disorders including, but not limited to: (a) disease modifying antirheumatic drugs, including methotrexate, gold salts, D-Penicillamine, hydroxychloroquine, auranofin, sulfasalazine; (b) nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs, including indomethacin, naproxen, diclofenac, ibuprofen, aspirin and aspirin analogs, acetaminophen; (c) COX-2 selective inhibitors, including celecoxib, rofecoxib, etoricoxib, valdecoxib, lumiracoxib; (d) COX-1 inhibitors; (e) immunosuppressives, including calcineurin inhibitors such as cyclosporine and FK506; p70^{S6} kinase inhibitors such as sirolimus and rapamycin; inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase inhibitors such as mycophenolate (including mycophenolate mofetil); leflunomide, cyclophosphamide, azathioprine; (f) steroids, including prednisone, betamethasone, budesonide and dexamethasone; (g) biological response modifiers, including TNF α antagonists such as infliximab, adalimumab and etanercept; IL-1 receptor antagonists such as anakinra; humanized or chimeric antibodies or fusion proteins such as alefacept, efalizumab, daclizumab; anti-chemokine antibodies or interleukins; and (h) other agents useful for the treatment of autoimmune disorders, including chemokine receptor antagonists or modulators, cannabinoid receptor antagonists or modulators,

inhibitors of matrix metalloproteinases including those described herein, TNF α -converting enzymes, nitric oxide synthetases or phosphodiesterase IV, such as roflumilast or cilomilast; inhibitors of p38 MAP-kinase, the NF-kappa.beta., pathway or IL-1 receptor associated kinase or inhibitors of interactions involving adhesion molecules such as LFA-1, VLA-4, ICAM-1, VCAM-1, $\alpha_4\beta_7$, MAdCAM-1, and $\alpha_v\beta_3$. Tests showing the efficacy of the therapy and the rationale for the combination therapy with agents used to treat autoimmune disorders are presented in US20040092499.

Agents used to treat demyelination and associated conditions

[00177] The compounds described herein can be used in therapeutic combination with one or more agents used to treat demyelination and its associated conditions including, but not limited to: beta-interferon (such as Avonex®, Biogen, Inc. and Betaseron®, Berlex Laboratories), which can decrease the frequency and occurrence of flare-ups and slow the progression to disability, glatiramer acetate (such as Copaxone®, Teva Neuroscience, Inc.), which can reduce the frequency of relapses, and/or administration of corticosteroids, such as prednisone (available from Roxane), to relieve acute symptoms. The amount of respective antidemyelination agent to be administered to the subject readily can be determined by one skilled in the art from the Physician's Desk Reference (56.sup.th Ed. 2002) at pages 1013-1016, 988995, 3306-3310 and 3064-3066, incorporated herein by reference. Tests showing the efficacy of the therapy and the rationale for the combination therapy with agents used to treat demyelination and its associated conditions are described, for example, in US20040092500.

Agents used to treat Alzheimer's disease

[00178] The compounds described herein can be used in therapeutic combination with one or more agents used to treat Alzheimer's disease including, but not limited to: cholinesterase inhibitors (such as donepezil hydrochloride (such as Aricept® (Pfizer)), rivastigmine tartrate (such as Exelon (Novartis)), tacrine (such as Cognex® (Parke-Davis)), galanthamine derivatives (Janssen), metrifonate (Bayer Corp.), ipidacrine (Nikken Chemicals Co. Ltd.), TAK-147 & T-82 (SS Pharmaceutical Co. Ltd.), methanesulfonyl fluoride, CHF-2819, phenserine, physostigmine (Forest Laboratories, Inc.), huperzine, cymserine (Anonyx Inc.), tolserine (National Institutes of Health), ER-

127528 (Eisai Co. Ltd.), and combinations thereof), muscarinic receptor agonists (such as cevimeline, PD-151832 (Pfizer Inc.), YM-796 (Yamanouchi Pharmaceutical Inc.), P-58 (Phytopharm plc) and combinations thereof), M2 muscarinic receptor antagonists, acetylcholine release stimulators (such as minaprine, montirelin (Grunenthal GmbH), T-588 (Toyama Chemical Co. Ltd.), XE-991 and combinations thereof, choline uptake stimulators (such as MKC-231 (Mitsubishi-Tokyo Pharmaceuticals Inc)), nicotinic cholinergic receptor agonists (such as altinicline, (SIBIA Neurosciences Inc.), SIB-1553A, ABT-089 (disclosed in US5278176, Abbot), nicotine patch, GRS-21, TC-2403 and combinations thereof), anti-A β vaccines (such as AN-1792), γ -secretase inhibitors, β -secretase inhibitors, amyloid aggregation inhibitors (such as reumacon (Conpharm AB), NC-531 (Neurochem Inc.), PPI-1019 (Praecis Pharmaceuticals Inc.) and combinations thereof), amyloid precursor protein antisense oligonucleotides, monoamine reuptake inhibitors (such as NS-2330), human stem cells, gene therapy, nootropic agents (such as oxiracetam (ISF Societa Per Azioni), pramiracetam (Warner Lambert), idebenone (Takeda Chemical Inds. Ltd.), anapsos (ASAC Pharmaceuticals Intl.), nebracetam (Boehringer Ingelheim), JTP-2942 (Japan Tobacco Inc.), fasoracetam (Nippon Shinyaku Co. Ltd.), bacosides (Central Drug Research Institute), alzene (Bar-Ilan University), KA-672 (Dr. Willmar Schwabe GmbH & Co.), alaptid (VUFB), IQ-200, ALE-26015 (Allelix Pharm-Eco LP) and combinations thereof), AMPA receptor ligands (such as CX-516 & CX-691 (Cortex Pharmaceuticals Inc.) and combinations thereof), growth factors or growth factor receptor agonists (such as leteprenim), anti-inflammatory agents (such as COX2 inhibitors (such as Vioxx rofecoxib (Merck) and Celebrex celecoxib (Pfizer), cytokine inhibitors (such as thalidomide disclosed in WO95/04533 and dexamabinol), complement inhibitors, leukotriene receptor antagonists and combinations thereof, free radical scavengers (such as EGb-761 (Yuyu Industrial Co.), CPI-22, dexamabinol and combinations thereof), antioxidants, superoxide dismutase stimulators, calcium channel blockers (such as tamolarizine (Nippon Chemiphar Co., Ltd.), nimodipine (Bayer AG), PD-1 76078 (Elan Pharmaceuticals, Inc.), and combinations thereof), apoptosis inhibitors (such as acetyl-L-carnitine, CEP-1347 (Cephalon, Inc.), TCH-346 (Novartis AG) and combinations thereof), caspase inhibitors

(such as pralnacasan), monoamine oxidase inhibitors (such as moclobemide (Roche Holding AG), selegiline, rasagiline (Teva Pharmaceutical Inds. Ltd.), SL-25.1188, Ro-41-1049 (Roche Holding AG), and combinations thereof), estrogens and estrogen receptor ligands, NMDA receptor antagonists (such as memantine, ipenoxazone (Nippon Chemiphar Co. Ltd. and combinations thereof), Jun N-terminal kinase (JNK) inhibitors, copper/zinc chelators (such as clioquinol (PN Gerolymatos SA)), 5-HT_{1a} receptor agonists (such as AP-159 (Asahi Kasei Corp)), NGF stimulators (such as xaliproden (Sanofi-Synthelabo)), neuroprotective agents (such as citicholine, GS-1590 (Leo Pharmaceutical Products Ltd.) A/S, CPI-1189 (Centaur Pharmaceuticals Inc.), SR-57667 (Sanofi-Synthelabo) and combinations thereof), H₃ histamine receptor antagonists (such as GT-2016 and GT-2331 (both available from Gliatech, Inc.) and combinations thereof), calpain inhibitors, poly ADP ribose polymerase inhibitors, prolylendopeptidase inhibitors (such as ONO-1603 (Ono Pharmaceutical Co. Ltd.), Z-321 (Zeria Pharmaceutical Co. Ltd.) and combinations thereof), calcium modulators (such as neurocalc (Apollo Biopharmaceuticals Inc)), corticotropin releasing factor receptor antagonists (such as NBI-113 (Neurocrine Biosciences, Inc)), corticotropin releasing factor binding protein inhibitors, GABA modulators (such as NGD 97-1 (Neurogen Corp)), GABA-A receptor antagonists, GABA-B receptor antagonists, neuroimmunophilin ligands, sigma receptor ligands (such as igmesine (Pfizer)), galanin receptor ligands, imidazoline/alpha adrenergic receptor antagonists (such as efaroxan (Reckitt & Colman PLC)), vasoactive intestinal peptide receptor agonists (such as stearyl-NIe-VIP), benzodiazepine receptor inverse agonists (such as S-8510 (Shionogi & Co. Ltd)), cannabinoid receptor agonists (such as dronabinol (Unimed Pharmaceuticals Inc)), thyrotropin releasing hormone receptor agonists (such as taltireline (Tanabe Seiyaku Co. Ltd) and protirelin (Takeda Chemical Inds., Inc.)), protein kinase C inhibitors, 5-HT₃ receptor antagonists (such as GYKI-46903), prostaglandin receptor antagonists, topoisomerase II inhibitors (such as iododoxorubicin (Pharmacia & Upjohn AB)), steroid receptor ligand (such as GL-701 (Prestara)), nitric oxide modulators, RAGE inhibitors (such as ALT-711 (Alteon Inc)), dopamine receptor agonists (such as speramine), statine compounds disclosed in US20050090449, corticosteroid receptor antagonist (such as anticort) and combinations

thereof. Tests showing the efficacy of the therapy and the rationale for the combination therapy with agents used to treat Alzheimer's disease are described, for example, in US2003013699.

Blood Modifiers

[00179] The compounds described herein can be used in therapeutic combination with one or more blood modifiers, i.e., agents capable of altering the number of platelets per a given volume of blood, inhibiting platelet function, including but not limited to platelet adhesion, aggregation or factor release, or reducing platelet count in patients with abnormally high levels in certain hematological malignancies to levels approximating normal levels capable of impacting negatively upon the formation of blood clots, and decreasing blood viscosity. Blood modifiers useful in the present invention include but are not limited to anti-coagulants, antithrombotic agents, fibrinogen receptor antagonists, platelet inhibitors, platelet aggregation inhibitors, lipoprotein-associated coagulation inhibitor, hemorrhheologic agents, Factor VIIa inhibitors, Factor Xa inhibitors, and combinations thereof. Tests showing the efficacy of the therapy and the rationale for the combination therapy with blood modifiers are described, for example, in US20020147184.

[00180] Anti-coagulant agents are agents which inhibit the coagulation pathway by impacting negatively upon the production, deposition, cleavage and/or activation of factors essential in the formation of a blood clot. Useful anti-coagulant agents include but are not limited to argatroban (2-Piperidinecarboxylic acid, 1-[(2S)-5-[(aminoiminomethyl)amino]-1-oxo-2-[(1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-3-methyl-8-quinoliny)sulfonyl]amino]pentyl]4-methyl-, CAS RN 74863-84-6), bivalirudin (L-Leucine, D-Phenylalanyl-L-Prolyl-L- arginyl-L-Prolylglycylglycylglycylglycyl-L-asparaginyglycyl-L- α -aspartyl-L-Phenylalanyl-L- α -glutamyl-L- α -glutamyl-L-isoleucyl-L-Prolyl-L- α -glutamyl-L- α -glutamyl-L-tyrosyl-CAS RN 128270-60-0), dalteparin sodium (heparin) e.g., Fragmin® Injection (Pharmacia & Upjohn), desirudin (Hirudin (Hirudo medicinalis isoform HV1), 63-desulfo CAS RN 120993-53-5), dicumarol (2H-1-Benzopyran-2-one, 3,3'-methylenebis[4-hydroxy-CAS RN 66-76-2 e.g., Mebaral®

(Sanofi-Synthelabo)), lyapolate sodium (Ethenesulfonic acid, homopolymer, sodium salt CAS RN 25053-274), nafamostat mesylate (Benzoic acid, 4-[(aminoiminomethyl)amino]-, 6-(aminoiminomethyl)-2-naphthalenyl ester, dimethanesulfonate CAS RN 82956-11-4); phenprocoumon (2H-1-Benzopyran-2-one, 4-hydroxy-8-methoxy-3-(-1-Phenylpropyl)-CAS RN 132605-68-6), tinzaparin sodium (Heparin, sodium salt, CAS RN 9041-08-1, e.g. Innohep® Injection® (DuPont)), and warfarin sodium (3-((alpha)-acetonylbenzyl)-4-hydroxycoumarin, CAS RN 129-06-6, e.g., Coumadin for Injection (DuPont)).

[00181] Anti-thrombotic agents are agents which prevent the formation of a blood thrombus. A thrombus is an aggregation of blood factors, primarily platelets and fibrin with entrapment of cellular elements, frequently causing vascular obstruction at the point of its formation. Suitable examples of anti-thrombotic agents include, but are not limited to: melagatran; ximelagatran (Exanta®); anagrelide hydrochloride (6,7-dichloro-1,5-dihydroimid-azo[2,1-b]quinazolin-2(3H)-one monohydrochloride monohydrate) e.g. Agrylin® (Shire US)); Tinzaparin sodium as described above; cilostazol (6-[4-(1-cyclohexyl-1H-tetrazol-5-yl)butoxy]-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinolinone, CAS-73963-72-1, e.g. Pletal® (Pharmacia & Upjohn); Dalteparin sodium (as described above); danaparoid sodium, e.g., Orgaran® Injection (Organon); compounds disclosed in WO99/45913; Abciximab is the (Fab fragment of the chimeric human-murine monoclonal antibody 7E3. binds to the glycoprotein (GP) IIb/IIIa ((α)_{IIb} (β)₃) receptor of human platelets and inhibits platelet aggregation. Abciximab also binds to the vitronectin ((α)_v (β)₃) receptor found on platelets and vessel wall endothelial and smooth muscle cells, e.g. Abciximab, Reopro® (Lily)); ifetroban (Benzenepropanoic acid, 2-[[[(1S,2R,3S,4R)-3-[4-[(pentylamino)carbonyl]-2-oxazolyl]-7-oxabicyclo[2.2.1]hept-2-yl]methyl]-CAS RN 143443-90-7, disclosed in US5100889); Bivalirudin as described above; Cilostazol as described above; efegatran sulfate (L-Prolinamide, N-methyl-D-Phenylalanyl-N-[(1S)-4-[(aminoiminomethyl) amino]-1-formylbutyl]-, sulfate (1:1) CAS RN 126721-07-1); dazoxiben hydrochloride (Benzoic acid, 4-[2-(1H-imidazol-1-yl)ethoxy]-, monohydrochloride CAS RN 74226-22-5); danaparoid sodium (a low molecular weight heparinoid, a mixture of the sodium salts of heparan sulfate (approximately 84%),

dermatan sulfate (approximately 12%), and chondroitin sulfate (approximately 4%). It is derived from hog intestinal mucosa); lotrafiban hydrochloride (1H-1,4-Benzodiazepine-2-acetic acid, 7-([4,4'-bipiperidin]-1-ylcarbonyl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-4-methyl-3-oxo-, monohydrochloride, (2S)-)CAS RN 179599-82-7); ifetroban sodium (Benzenepropanoic acid, 2-[[[(1S,2R,3S,4R)-3-[4-[(pentylamino)carbonyl]-2-oxazolyl]-7-oxabicyclo[2.2.1]hept-2-yl]methyl]-, monosodium salt, CAS RN 156715-37-6); lamifiban (Acetic acid, [[1-[(2S)-2-[[4-(aminoiminomethyl)benzoyl]amino]-3-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-1-oxopropyl]-4-Piperidinyl]oxy]-, CAS RN 144412-49-7); fluretofen (1,1'-Biphenyl, 4'-ethynyl-2-fluoro-CAS RN 56917-294); enoxaparin sodium (Heparin, sodium salt, CAS RN 9041-08-1); orbofiban acetate hydrate (beta.-Alanine, N-[[[(3S)-1-[4-(aminoiminomethyl)phenyl]-2-oxo-3-Pyrrolidinyl]amino]carbonyl]-, ethyl ester, acetate, hydrate (4:4:1), CAS RN 165800-05-5); napsagatran (Glycine, N-[[[(3S)-1-(aminoiminomethyl)-3-Piperidinyl]methyl]-N2-(2-naphthalenylsulfonyl)-L-asparaginyln-cyclopropyl-, CAS RN 154397-77-0); roxifiban acetate (L-Alanine, 3-[[[(5R)-3-[4-(aminoiminomethyl)phenyl]-4,5-dihydro-5-isoxazolyl]acetyl]amino]-N-(butoxycarbonyl)-, methyl ester, monoacetate, CAS RN 176022-59-6); sibrafiban (Acetic acid, [[1-[(2S)-2-[[4-[(Z)-amino(hydroxyimino)methyl]benzoyl]amino]-1-oxopropyl]4-Piperidinyl]oxy]-, ethyl ester, CAS RN 172927-65-0); zolimomab aritox, (Immunoglobulin G1, anti-(human CD5 (antigen) heavy chain) (mouse monoclonal H65-RTA .gamma.1-chain), disulfide with mouse monoclonal H65-RTA light chain, dimer, disulfide with ricin (castor bean A-chain), CAS RN 141483-72-9); trifenagrel (Ethanamine, 2-[2-(4,5-diphenyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)phenoxy]-N,N-dimethyl-, CAS RN 84203-09-8).

[00182] Fibrinogen receptor antagonists are those agents which inhibit the common pathway of platelet aggregation. Suitable fibrinogen receptor antagonists include but are not limited to roxifiban acetate as described above; lotrafiban hydrochloride as described above, sibrafiban as described above, monoclonal antibody 7E3 (Fab fragment of the chimeric human-murine monoclonal antibody 7E3. binds to the glycoprotein (GP) IIb/IIIa ((α)_{IIb} (β)₃) receptor of human platelets and inhibits platelet aggregation); orbofiban, (beta.-Alanine, N-[[[(3S)-1-[4-(aminoiminomethyl)phenyl]-2-oxo-

3-Pyrrolidinyl]amino]carbonyl]-, ethyl ester, CAS RN 163250-90-6); xemilofiban (4-Pentynoic acid, 3-[[4-[[4-(aminoiminomethyl)phenyl]amino]-1,4-dioxobutyl]amino]-, ethyl ester, (3S)-, CAS RN 149820-74-6); fradafiban, (3-Pyrrolidineacetic acid, 5-[[[4'-(aminoiminomethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]oxy]methyl]-2-oxo-, (3S,5S)-, CAS RN 148396-36-5); tirofiban (L-Tyrosine, N-(butylsulfonyl)-O-[4-(4-Piperidinyl)butyl]-, CAS RN 144494-65-5, e.g. Aggrastat® Injection Premixed (Merck).

[00183] Platelet inhibitors are those agents that impair the ability of mature platelets to perform their normal physiological roles (i.e., their normal function). Platelets are normally involved in a number of physiological processes such as adhesion, for example, to cellular and non-cellular entities, aggregation, for example, for the purpose of forming a blood clot, and release of factors such as growth factors (e.g. platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF)) and platelet granular components. Suitable platelet inhibitors include, but are not limited to CS-747 (Eli Lilly); eptifibatide (Integrilin®); clopidogrel bisulfate, (Thieno[3,2-c]pyridine-5(4H)-acetic acid, α -(2-chlorophenyl)-6,7-dihydro-, methyl ester, (α S)-, sulfate (1:1), e.g., Plavix® (Sanofi-Synthelabo)); indomethacin, such as Indocin® I.V. (Indomethacin Sodium Trihydrate, Merck); mefenamate, (e.g., Ponstel® Kapseals (mefenamic acid) 2-((2,3-dimethylphenyl)amino-N-2,3-xylylanthranilic acid (First Horizon)); Ticlopidine hydrochloride, (Thieno[3,2-c]pyridine, 5-[(2-chlorophenyl)methyl]-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-, hydrochloride, e.g. Ticlid® (Roche Laboratories)); epoprostenol sodium, (Prosta-5,13-dien-1-oic acid, 6,9-epoxy-11,15-dihydroxy-, monosodium salt, (5Z,9 α ,11 α ,13E,15S)-CAS RN 61849-14-7, e.g., Flolan® (Glaxo Wellcome)); aspirin, Benzoic acid, 2-(acetyloxy)-CAS RN 50-78-2); epoprostenol, (Prosta-5,13-dien-1-oic acid, 6,9-epoxy-11,15-dihydroxy-, (5Z,9 α ,11 α ,13E,15S)-, CAS RN 35121-78-9); naproxen (2-Naphthaleneacetic acid, 6-methoxy- α -methyl-, (α S)-CAS RN 22204-53-1, e.g., EC-Naprosyn® Delayed-Release Tablets available from Roche Laboratories); buprofen, (Benzeneacetic acid, α -methyl-4-(2-methylpropyl)-, CAS RN 15687-27-1); droxicam, (2H,5H-1,3-Oxazino[5,6-c][1,2]benzothiazine-2,4(3H)-dione, 5-methyl-3-(2-Pyridinyl)-, 6,6-dioxide, CAS RN 90101-16-9); diclofenac, (Benzeneacetic acid, 2-[(2,6-dichlorophenyl)amino]-CAS RN 15307-86-5 e.g., Arthroteo® (Searle)); sulfinpyrazone, (3,5-Pyrazolidinedione, 1,2-

diphenyl-4-[2-(phenylsulfinyl)ethyl]-CAS Registry Number 57-96-5, e.g., Sectral® (Wyeth-Ayerst)); piroxicam, (2H-1,2-Benzothiazine-3-carboxamide, 4-hydroxy-2-methyl-N-2-Pyridinyl-, 1,1-dioxide, CAS Registry Number 36322-90-4, e.g. Feldene® (Pfizer)); dipyrindamole, (Ethanol, 2,2',2'',2'''-[(4,8-di-1-Piperidinylpyrimido[5,4-d]-pyrimidine-2,6-diyl)dinitrilo]tetrakis-CAS Registry Number 58-32-2, e.g. Aggrenox® Capsules available from Boehringer Ingelheim); lexipafant, (L-Leucine, N-methyl-N-[[4-[(2-methyl-1H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-1-yl)methyl]phenyl]sulfonyl]-, ethyl ester, CAS Registry Number 139133-26-9); apafant Morpholine, 4-[3-[4-(2-chlorophenyl)-9-methyl-6H-thieno[3,2-f][1,2,4]triazolo[4,3-a][1,4]diazepin-2-yl]-1-oxopropyl]-, CAS Registry Number 105219-56-5).

[00184] Platelet aggregation inhibitors as used herein refer to those compounds which reduce or halt the ability of platelets to associate physically with themselves or with other cellular and non-cellular components, thereby precluding the ability of a platelet to form a thrombus. Suitable platelet aggregation inhibitors include but are not limited to beraprost, (1H-Cyclopenta-[b]benzofuran-5-butanoic acid, 2,3,3a,8b-tetrahydro-2-hydroxy-1-(3-hydroxy-4-methyl-1-octen-6-ynyl)-, CAS RN 88430-50-6); acadesine, (1H-Imidazole-4-carboxamide, 5-amino-1 β -D-ribofuranosyl-, CAS RN 2627-69-2); beraprost sodium, (1H-Cyclopenta[b]benzofuran-5-butanoic acid, 2,3,3a,8b-tetrahydro-2-hydroxy-1-(3-hydroxy-4-methyl-1-octen-6-ynyl)-, monosodium salt, CAS RN 88475-69-8); ciprostone calcium, (Pentanoic acid, 5-[(3aS,5R,6R,6aR)-hexahydro-5-hydroxy-6-[(1E,3S)-3-hydroxy-1-octenyl]-3a-methyl-2(1H)-Pentalenylidene]-, calcium salt (2:1), (5Z)-CAS Registry Number 81703-55-1), Itazigrel, (Thiazole, 4,5-bis(4-methoxyphenyl)-2-(trifluoromethyl)-CAS Registry Number 70529-35-0); lifarizine (Piperazine, 1-(diphenylmethyl)-4-[[5-methyl-2-(4-methylphenyl)-1H-imidazol-4-yl]methyl]-), CAS Registry Number 119514-66-8); oxagrelate, (6-Phthalazinecarboxylic acid, 3,4-dihydro-1-(hydroxymethyl)-5,7-dimethyl-4-oxo-, ethyl ester, CAS Registry Number 56611-65-5).

[00185] Hemorrheologic agent as used herein describes those compounds which improve the flow properties of blood by decreasing its viscosity. A suitable hemorrheologic agent of the present invention is pentoxifylline (1H-Purine-2,6-dione, 3,7-dihydro-3,7-

dimethyl-1-(5-oxohexyl)-(9CI) (CA INDEX NAME) Theobromine, 1-(5-oxohexyl)-, CAS Registry Number 6493-05-6 e.g., Trentali® (Aventis)).

[00186] Pentoxifylline and its metabolites (which can be useful in the present invention) improve the flow properties of blood by decreasing its viscosity. In patients with chronic peripheral arterial disease, this increases blood flow to the affected microcirculation and enhances tissue oxygenation. The precise mode of action of pentoxifylline and the sequence of events leading to clinical improvement are still to be defined. Pentoxifylline administration has been shown to produce dose-related hemorrheologic effects, lowering blood viscosity, and improving erythrocyte flexibility. Leukocyte properties of hemorrheologic importance have been modified in animal and in vitro human studies. Pentoxifylline has been shown to increase leukocyte deformability and to inhibit neutrophil adhesion and activation. Tissue oxygen levels have been shown to be significantly increased by therapeutic doses of pentoxifylline in patients with peripheral arterial disease.

[00187] Lipoprotein-associated coagulation inhibitor (LACI) is a serum glycoprotein with a molecular weight of 38,000 Kd useful as a blood modifier of the present invention. It is also known as tissue factor inhibitor because it is a natural inhibitor of thromboplastin (tissue factor) induced coagulation (US5110730 and US5106833 described tissue factor and are hereby incorporated by reference in their entireties). LACI is a protease inhibitor and has 3 Kunitz domains, two of which are known to interact with factors VII and Xa respectively, while the function of the third domain is unknown. Many of the structural features of LACI can be deduced because of its homology with other well studied proteases. LACI is not an enzyme, so it probably inhibits its protease target in a stoichiometric manner; namely, one of the domains of LACI inhibits one protease molecule (see US606374).

[00188] Factor VIIa Inhibitors as used herein are those agents which inhibit activated Factor VIIa from acting to contribute to the formation of a fibrin clot. Suitable Factor VIIa Inhibitors include but are not limited to, 4H-31-benzoxazin-4-ones, 4H-3,1-benzoxazin-4-thiones, quinazolin-4-thiones, benzothiazin-4-ones described in

US6180625, imidazolyl-boronic acid-derived peptide analogues as described in US5639739, TFPI-derived peptides described in US6180625.

- [00189] Additional suitable Factor VIIa Inhibitors include but are not limited to Naphthalene-2-sulfonic acid {1-[3-(aminoiminomethyl)-benzyl]-2-oxo-Pyrrolidin-3-(S)-yl}amide trifluoroacetate, dibenzofuran-2-sulfoic acid {1-[3-(aminomethyl)-benzyl]-5-oxo-Pyrrolidin-3-yl}-amide, toluene-4-sulfonic acid {1-[3-(aminoiminomethyl)-benzyl]-2-oxo-Pyrrolidin-3-(S)-yl}-amide trifluoroacetate, 3,4-dihydro- 1H-isoquinoline-2-sulfonic acid {1-[3-(aminoimino-methyl)-benzyl]-2-oxo-Pyrrolin-3-(S)-yl}-amide trifluoroacetate or combinations thereof.
- [00190] Factor Xa inhibitors as used herein are those agents which inhibit activated Factor X from acting to contribute to the formation of a fibrin clot. Suitable agents for use in the present invention as Factor Xa inhibitors include but are not limited to disubstituted pyrazolines, disubstituted triazolines as described in US6191159, lipoprotein-associated coagulation inhibitor (LACI) (as described above), low molecular weight heparins described as below, heparinoids described as below, benzimidazolines, benzoxazolinones, bensopiperazinones, indanones, as described in U.S. Pat. No. 6,207,697, dibasic (amidinoaryl)propanoic acid derivatives as described in J. Med. Chem. 37:1200-1207 (1994), bis-arylsulfonylaminobenzamide derivatives as described in US5612378, amidinophenyl-Pyrrolidines, amidinophenyl-Pyrrolines, amidinophenyl-isoxazolidines as described in US6057342, amidinoindoles, amidinoazoles as described in US6043257, peptidic Factor Xa inhibitors as described below, substituted n-[(aminoiminomethyl)phenyl]propylamides, substituted n-[(aminomethyl)phenyl]propylamides as described in US6080767 or combinations thereof.
- [00191] Peptidic factor Xa inhibitors such as the leech-derived, 119-amino acid protein antistasin and the soft tick derived protein TAP (tick anticoagulant peptide) accelerate clot lysis and prevented reocclusion when given as adjuncts to thrombolysis (Melloff et al., Circulation Research 70:1152-1160 (1992); Sitko et al., Circulation 85:805-815 (1992)). U.S. Pat. No. 5,385,885 issued Jan. 31, 1995 discloses smooth muscle cell proliferation inhibitory activity of both tick anticoagulant peptide and antistasin. The

peptide ecotin is another selective, reversible, tight-binding inhibitor of factor Xa that exhibits protein anticoagulant activity (Seymour et al., Biochemistry 33:3949-3959 (1994); WO94/20535, Sep. 14, 1994). Ixodidae, argasin and ancylostomatin are other representative peptidic factor Xa inhibitors isolated from animals that feed on blood (Markwardt, Thrombosis and Hemostasis 72: 477-479 (1994)).

[00192] These non-limiting examples of peptidic Factor Xa inhibitors which may be used in the present invention are listed below with their CAS registry Number. These include Proteinase inhibitor, antistasin, CAS Registry Number 110119-38-5; tick anticoagulant peptide, (Proteinase inhibitor, TAP) CAS Registry Number 129737-17-3; ecotin, (Proteinase inhibitor, ecotin) CAS Registry Number 87928-05; argasin, CAS Registry Number 53092-89-0; ancylostomatin, CAS Registry Number 11011-09-9; Ixodidae (as described in Markwardt, 1994).

[00193] Low molecular weight heparins refer to agents derived from heparins which reduces the incidence of bleeding when compared with standard heparin. Heparins are glycosaminoglycans. MW range from 2000-10000. They may be produced from porcine intestinal mucosa and except for nadroparan, are all sodium salts. A suitable heparinoid of the present invention includes but is not limited to enoxaparin, nadroparin, dalteparin, certoparin, parnaparin, reviparin, tinzaparin and combinations thereof.

[00194] Heparinoid is a modified form of heparin which reduces the incidence of bleeding when compared with standard heparin. A suitable heparinoid of the present invention includes but is not limited to Danaparoid CAS Registry Number 308068-55-5, (e.g., Orgaran Injection Organon).

Hormone replacement agents/compositions

[00195] The compounds described herein can be used in therapeutic combination with one or more hormone replacement agents/compositions including, but not limited to androgens, estrogens, progestins, their pharmaceutically acceptable salts and derivatives thereof. Examples of androgen and estrogen combinations include but are not limited to the combination of esterified estrogens (sodium estrone sulfate and sodium equilin sulfate) and methyltestosterone (17-hydroxy-17-methyl-, (17B)-androst-4-en-3-one) available from Solvay Pharmaceuticals, Inc., Marietta, Ga., under the tradename

Estratest. Examples of estrogens and estrogen combinations include but are not limited to: (a) the blend of nine (9) synthetic estrogenic substances including sodium estrone sulfate, sodium equilin sulfate, sodium 17α -dihydroequilin sulfate, sodium 17α -estradiol sulfate, sodium 17β -dihydroequilin sulfate, sodium 17α -dihydroequilenin sulfate, sodium 17β -dihydroequilenin sulfate, sodium equilenin sulfate and sodium 17β -estradiol sulfate; available from Duramed Pharmaceuticals, Inc., Cincinnati, Ohio, under the tradename Cenestin; (b) ethinyl estradiol (19-nor- 17α -Pregna-1,3,5(10)-trien-20-yne-3,17-diol; available by Schering Plough Corporation, Kenilworth, N.J., under the tradename Estinyl; (c) esterified estrogen combinations such as sodium estrone sulfate and sodium equilin sulfate; available from Solvay under the tradename Estratab and from Monarch Pharmaceuticals, Bristol, Tenn., under the tradename Menest; (d) estropipate (piperazine estra-1,3,5(10)-trien-17-one, 3-(sulfooxy)-estrone sulfate); available from Pharmacia & Upjohn, Peapack, N.J., under the tradename Ogen and from Women First Health Care, Inc., San Diego, Calif., under the tradename Ortho-Est; and (e) conjugated estrogens (17α -dihydroequilin, 17α -estradiol, and 17β -dihydroequilin); available from Wyeth-Ayerst Pharmaceuticals, Philadelphia, Pa., under the tradename Premarin.

Examples of progestin and estrogen combinations include but are not limited to: (a) the combination of estradiol (estra-1,3,5 (10)-triene-3,17 β -diol hemihydrate) and norethindrone (17 β - acetoxy-19-nor- 17α -Pregn-4-en-20-yn-3-one); which is available from Pharmacia & Upjohn, Peapack, N.J., under the tradename Activella; (b) the combination of levonorgestrel (d(-)-13 β -ethyl- 17α -ethinyl-17 β -hydroxygon-4-en-3-one) and ethinyl estradiol; available from Wyeth-Ayerst under the tradename Alesse, from Watson Laboratories, Inc., Corona, Calif., under the tradenames Levora and Trivora, Monarch Pharmaceuticals, under the tradename Nordette, and from Wyeth-Ayerst under the tradename Triphasil; (c) the combination of ethynodiol diacetate (19-nor- 17α -Pregn-4-en-20-yne-3 β ,17-diol diacetate) and ethinyl estradiol; available from G.D. Searle & Co., Chicago, Ill., under the tradename Demulen and from Watson under the tradename Zovia; (d) the combination of desogestrel (13-ethyl-11-methylene-18,19-dinor- 17α -Pregn-4-en-20-yn-17-ol) and ethinyl estradiol; available from Organon under the tradenames Desogen and Mircette, and from Ortho-McNeil Pharmaceutical, Raritan,

N.J., under the tradename Ortho-Cept; (e) the combination of norethindrone and ethinyl estradiol; available from Parke-Davis, Morris Plains, N.J., under the tradenames Estrostep and femhrt, from Watson under the tradenames Microgestin, Necon, and Tri-Norinyl, from Ortho-McNeil under the tradenames Modicon and Ortho-Novum, and from Warner Chilcott Laboratories, Rockaway, N.J., under the tradename Ovcon; (f) the combination of norgestrel ((\pm)-13-ethyl-17-hydroxy-18,19-dinor-17 α -preg-4-en-20-yn-3-one) and ethinyl estradiol; available from Wyeth-Ayerst under the tradenames Ovral and Lo/Ovral, and from Watson under the tradenames Ogestrel and Low-Ogestrel; (g) the combination of norethindrone, ethinyl estradiol, and mestranol (3-methoxy-19-nor-17 α -Pregna-1,3,5(110)-trien-20-yn-17-ol); available from Watson under the tradenames Brevicon and Norinyl; (h) the combination of 17 β -estradiol (estra-1,3,5(10)-triene-3-,17 β -diol) and micronized norgestimate (17 α -17-(Acetyloxy)-13-ethyl-18,19-dinorpregn-4-en-20-yn-3-one-3-oxime); available from Ortho-McNeil under the tradename Ortho-Prefest; (i) the combination of norgestimate (18,19-dinor-17-Pregn-4-en-20-y-n-3-one, 17-(acetyloxy)-13-ethyl-,oxime, (17(α)-(+)-) and ethinyl estradiol; available from Ortho-McNeil under the tradenames Ortho Cyclen and Ortho Tri-Cyclen; and (j) the combination of conjugated estrogens (sodium estrone sulfate and sodium equilin sulfate) and medroxyprogesterone acetate (20-dione, 17-(acetyloxy)-6-methyl-, (6(α))-Pregn-4-ene-3); available from Wyeth-Ayerst under the tradenames Premphase and Prempro. Examples of progestins include norethindrone; available from ESI Lederle, Inc., Philadelphia, Pa., under the tradename Aygestin, from Ortho-McNeil under the tradename Micronor, and from Watson under the tradename Nor-QD; norgestrel; available from Wyeth-Ayerst under the tradename Ovrette; micronized progesterone (pregn-4-ene-3, 20-dione); available from Solvay under the tradename Prometrium; and medroxyprogesterone acetate; available from Pharmacia & Upjohn under the tradename Provera. Tests showing the efficacy of the therapy and the rationale for the combination therapy with hormone replacement agents/compositions are presented in US20030119796.

Chemotherapeutic agents

[00196] The compounds described herein can be used in therapeutic combination with one or more chemotherapeutic agents including but not limited to hydrophobic, and heterocyclic cancer chemotherapeutic agents such as adriamycin (doxorubicin), phosphates, colcemid, etoposide, paclitaxel, bisantene, vincristine, and vinblastine. Tests showing the efficacy of the therapy and the rationale for the combination therapy with chemotherapeutic agents are described, for example, in WO05/030225.

Peptides which mitigate one or more symptoms of atherosclerosis

[00197] The compounds described herein can be used in therapeutic combination with a peptide which mitigates one or more symptoms of atherosclerosis as described, for example, in US20040266671, US6664230, US20030045460, US20030171277, US20030229015, US20040254120, WO/04034977, WO/02015923, and WO/05016280. This includes the peptide described as SEQ ID NO. 5 in US6664230 whose amino acid sequence is: D-W-F-K-A-F-Y-D-K-V-A-E-K-F-K-E-A-F wherein at least one residue comprises a D-amino acid.

Anti-cancer agents

[00198] The compounds described herein can be used in therapeutic combination with an anti-cancer agent, including but not limited to: steroidal or non steroidal antiandrogens (such as finasteride (Proscar®), cyproterone acetate (CPA), flutamide (4'-nitro-3'-trifluoromethyl isobutyranilide), bicalutamide (Casodex®), and nilutamide), estrogens, diethylstilbestrol (DES), conjugated estrogens (such as Premarin®), Taxanes (such as paclitaxel (Taxol®), docetaxel (Taxotere®), 7-O-methylthio-methylpaclitaxel (disclosed in US5646176), 3'-tert-butyl-3'-N-tert-butyloxycarbonyl-4-deacetyl-3'-dephenyl-3'-N-debenzoyl-4-O-methoxycarbonyl-Paclitaxel (disclosed in U.S. Ser. No. 60/179,965, and example 17 therein), C-4 methyl carbonate paclitaxel (disclosed in WO 94/14787), and formulations containing taxanes, for examples those disclosed in US6395770, US6380405, and US6239167), epothilones (such as epothilone A, epothilone B, epothilone C, epothilone D, desoxyepothilone A, desoxyepothilone B, [1S-[1R*,3R*(E),7R*,10S*,11R*,12R*,16S*]]-7,11-dihydroxy-8,8,10,12,16-Pentamethyl-3-[1-methyl-2-(2-methyl-4-thiazolyl)ethenyl]-4-aza-17-oxabicyclo[14.1.0]hepta-decane-5,9-dione (disclosed in WO 99/02514), [1S-[1R*,3R*(E),7R*,10S*,11R*12R *,16S *]]-

3-[2-[2-(aminomethyl)-4-thiazolyl]-1-methylethenyl]-7,11-dihydroxy-8-,8,10,12,16-Pentamethyl-4,17-dioxabicyclo[14.1.0]-heptadecane-5,9-dione (disclosed in U.S. Ser. No. 09/506,481 filed on Feb. 17, 2000, and examples 7 and 8 therein), and derivatives thereof), microtubule-disruptor agents, alkylating agents, anti-metabolites, epidophyllotoxin, an antineoplastic enzyme, a topoisomerase inhibitor, procarbazine, mitoxantrone, platinum coordination complexes, biological response modifiers, growth inhibitors, hormonal/antihormonal therapeutic agents, haematopoietic growth factors, the anthracycline family of drugs, vinca drugs, mitomycins, bleomycins, cytotoxic nucleosides, discodermolide, the pteridine family of drugs, diynenes, aromatase inhibitors, podophyllotoxins, doxorubicin, carminomycin, daunorubicin, idarubicin, dactinomycin, plicamycin, vinorelbine, aminopterin, methotrexate, methopterin, dichloro-methotrexate, thioguanine, hydroxyurea, campathecins, nitrosureas, mitomycin C, porfiromycin, 5-fluorouracil, 6-mercaptopurine, gemcitabine, cytosine arabinoside, podophyllotoxin or podophyllotoxin derivatives such as etoposide, etoposide phosphate or teniposide, melphalan, vinblastine, vincristine, leurosidine, vindesine, leurosine, estramustine, cisplatin, carboplatin, cyclophosphamide, bleomycin, tamoxifen, ifosfamide, melphalan, hexamethyl melamine, thiotepa, cytarabin, idatrexate, trimetrexate, dacarbazine, L-asparaginase, camptothecin, CPT-11, topotecan, ara-C, bicalutamide, flutamide, leuprolide, pyridobenzoindole derivatives, interferons, interleukins, LHRH analogs (such as goserelin acetate (Zoladex®) and leuprolide acetate (Lupron®)), and selective estrogen receptor modulator (SERM) compounds. The term selective estrogen receptor modulator includes both estrogen agonist and estrogen antagonists and refers to compounds that bind with the estrogen receptor, inhibit bone turnover and prevent bone loss. In particular, estrogen agonists are compounds capable of binding to the estrogen receptor sites in mammalian tissue, and mimicking the actions of estrogen in one or more tissue. Estrogen antagonists are compounds capable of binding to the estrogen receptor sites in mammalian tissue, and blocking the actions of estrogen in one or more tissues.

[00199] SERMs include but are not limited to tamoxifen (and associated compounds disclosed in US4536516); 4-hydroxytamoxifen (and associated compounds disclosed in

US4623660); raloxifene (and associated compounds disclosed in US4418068, US5393763, US5457117, US5478847, and US5641790); droloxifene; idoxifene (and associated compounds disclosed in US4839155); lasofoxifene; TSE-424 (and other compounds disclosed in US5998402, US5985910, US5780497, US5880137, EP0802183A1); LY353381; LY117081; toremifene (and other compounds disclosed in US4696949 and US4996225); centchroman (and other compounds disclosed in US3822287); fulvestrant; 4-[7-(2,2-dimethyl-1-oxopropoxy-4-methyl-2-[4-[2-(1-Piperidinyloxy)ethoxy]phenyl]-2H-1-benzopyran-3-yl]-Phenyl-2,2-dimethylpropanoate; 4,4'-dihydroxybenzophenone-2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazone; SH646; 6-(4-hydroxy-Phenyl)-5-[4-(2-Piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-naphthalen-2-ol (and other compounds as disclosed in US5484795); {4-[2-(2-aza-bicyclo[2.2.1]hept-2-yl)-ethoxy]-Phenyl}-[6-hydroxy-2-(4-hydroxy-Phenyl)-benzo[b]thiophen-3-yl]-methanone; GW 5638; GW 7604; EM-652 and EM-800 (synthesis and activity described in Gauthier et al., (1997) J. Med. Chem. 40:2117-2122); those compounds disclosed in US552412 (including cis-6-(4-fluoro-Phenyl)-5-[4-(2-Piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-Phenyl]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalene-2-ol; (-)-cis-6-Phenyl-5-[4-(2-Pyrrolidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-Phenyl]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalene-2-ol; cis-6-Phenyl-5-[4-(2-Pyrrolidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-Phenyl]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalene-2-ol; cis-1-[6'-Pyrrolidinoethoxy-3'-Pyridyl]-2-Phenyl-6-hydroxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthalene; 1-(4'-Pyrrolidinoethoxyphenyl)-2-(4''-fluorophenyl)-6-hydroxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline; cis-6-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-5-[4-(2-Piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-Phenyl]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalene-2-ol; 1-(4'-Pyrrolidinoethoxy-Phenyl)-2-Phenyl-6-hydroxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline and the tartrate salt thereof (-)-cis-6-Phenyl-5-[4-(2-Pyrrolidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-Phenyl]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalene-2-ol), US20040259886, US20040162304, and WO95/10513; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and esters thereof. Tests showing the efficacy of the therapy and the rationale for the combination therapy with an anticancer agent are presented in US20040116358 and WO04/010948.

Agents used to treat bone loss and associated disorders

[00200] The compounds described herein can be used in therapeutic combination with an agent used to treat bone loss and associated disorders including but not limited to: (1) SERMs (including those described above); (2) bisphosphonates including but not limited to alendronic acid and alendronate/MK-217/(Fosamax®)/alendronate sodium/alendronate monosodium tri-hydrate including sodium, potassium, calcium, magnesium or ammonium salts thereof (alendronic acid and alendronate are disclosed in US4922007, US5019651, US5510517, and US5648491; also); Yamanouchi compound YM 175/incadronate/cimadronate (cycloheptyl-aminomethylene-1,1-bisphosphonic acid, US4970335); 1,1-dichloromethylene-1,1-diphosphonic acid (clodronic acid), and the disodium salt (clodronate, Procter and Gamble), as described in Belgium Patent 672,205 (1966) and J. Org. Chem 32, 4111 (1967)); EB-1053(1-hydroxy-3-(1-Pyrrolidinyl)-Propylidene-1,1-bisphosphonic acid); etidronic acid (1-hydroxyethane-1,1-diphosphonic acid (etidronic acid); Boehringer-Mannheim compound ibandronate/BM-210955 (1-hydroxy-3-(N-methyl-N-Pentylamino)propylidene-1,1-bisphosphonic acid; disclosed in US4927814); minodronate (1-hydroxy-2-imidazo-(1,2-a)pyridin-3-ethylidene); neridronate (6-amino-1-hydroxyhexylidene-1,1-bisphosphonic acid); olpadronate (3-(dimethylamino)-1-hydroxypropylidene-1,1-bisphosphonic acid); pamidronate (3-amino-1-hydroxypropylidene-1,1-bisphosphonic acid); piridronate (2-(2-Pyridinyl)ethylidene]-1,1-bisphosphonic acid; described in US4761406); risedronate (1-hydroxy-2-(3-Pyridinyl)-ethylidene-1,1-bisphosphonic acid); tiludronate (4-chlorophenyl)thiomethane-1,1-disphosphonic acid; described in US4876248); zoledronate (1-hydroxy-2-(1H-imidazol-1-yl)ethylidene-1,1-bisphosphonic acid); etidronate; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and esters thereof; and also including mixtures thereof; (3) estrogens and estrogen combinations (including those described above); (4) cathepsin K inhibitors (e.g. compounds which interfere with the activity of the cysteine protease cathepsin K) including those disclosed in WO00/55126 and WO01/49288; (5) androgen receptor modulators including but not limited to finasteride and other 5 α -reductase inhibitors, nilutamide, flutamide, bicalutamide, liarozole, and abiraterone acetate; (6) inhibitors of osteoclast proton ATPase including those described

in Farina et al. (1999) DDT, 4:163-172; (7) HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors (including those described above); (8) integrin receptor antagonists (including those described in US20040162304); (9) osteoblast anabolic agents (e.g. agents that build bone such as parathyroid hormone (PTH) or its amino terminal fragments (PTHrP-(1-36); Syed et al. (2001) JCEM 86:1525-1531) and analogues); (10) calcitonin; (11) vitamin D which includes, but is not limited to, vitamin D₃ (cholecalciferol), vitamin D₂ (ergocalciferol); 1 α -hydroxy vitamin D; 25-hydroxy vitamin D; 1 α ,25-dihydroxy vitamin D; and dihydroxy vitamin D; (12) synthetic vitamin D analogues (non-naturally occurring compounds that act like vitamin D); (13) compounds disclosed in US5280040; and (14) serotonin reuptake inhibitors (including those described above).

[00201] The compounds described herein can be used in therapeutic combination with other agents including but not limited to: ranitine; bosentan; a tyrosine kinase inhibitor such as disclosed in WO00/053605; a selective androgen receptor modulator (SARM) including LGD-2226 (Ligand) or those compounds disclosed in WO03/011824; coenzyme Q10 such as disclosed in US5316765, US4933165, and US4929437; an agent that upregulates type III endothelial cell nitric acid synthase such as disclosed in WO00/003746; a chondroprotective compound such as a polysulfated glycosaminoglycan (PSGAG), glucosamine, chondroitin sulfate (CS), hyaluronic acid (HA), pentosan polysulfate (PPS), doxycycline or minocycline, such as disclosed in EP970694; monocyte and macrophage inhibitors such as polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFA); thyroid hormones including throxine analogues (such as CGS-26214 (a thyroxine compound with a fluorinated ring), dextrothyroxine, eiroxate, and thyropropic acid; a 5-HT reuptake inhibitor such as disclosed in WO99/44609; and anti-infective agents such as quinolones, for example, ciprofloxacin, ofloxacin, and Tequin™ (Bristol-Myers Squibb), macrolides such as erythromycin and clarithromycin (Biaxin™ (Abbott)), and azithromycin (Zithromax (Pfizer)).

[00202] It can be useful to administer a compound described herein together with 1, 2, 3, or more of an HMG-CoA reductase inhibitor (e.g. a statin such as atorvastatin, atorvastatin calcium, rosuvastatin, rosuvastatin calcium, simvastatin), a fibrate (e.g. fenofibrate (Tricor®)), niacin (including derivatives and extended release formulations

(e.g. Niaspan®) thereof), a glitazone (e.g. rosiglitazone maleate (Avandia®), pioglitazone hydrochloride (Actos®)), a calcium channel blocker (e.g. amlodipine besylate (Norvasc®)), an angiotensin II receptor antagonist (e.g. valsartan (Diovan®, Diovan HCT® (valsartan and hydrochlorothiazide))), a biguanide (e.g. metformin (Glucophage®)), a sulfonylurea (e.g. glipizide (Glucotrol®, Glucotrol XL®), glyburide (Micronase®, Glynase Prestab®, Diabeta®), and Glucovance® (glyburide and metformin)). It can be particularly useful to combine a compound described herein together with one or more of an HMG-CoA reductase inhibitor (e.g. a statin), a fibrate, a glitazone, niacin or a derivative thereof, a calcium channel blocker, an angiotensin II receptor antagonist, a biguanide, a sulfonylurea in a single pharmaceutical composition. The precise amount of each of the two or more active ingredients in a dosage unit will depend on the desired dosage of each component. Thus, it can be useful to create a dosage unit that will, when administered according to a particular dosage schedule (e.g., a dosage schedule specifying a certain number of units and a particular timing for administration), deliver the same dosage of each component as would be administered if the patient was being treated with only a single component. In other circumstances, it might be desirable to create a dosage unit that will deliver a dosage of one or more components that is less than that which would be administered if the patient was being treated only with a single component. Finally, it might be desirable to create a dosage unit that will deliver a dosage of one or more components that is greater than that which would be administered if the patient was being treated only with a single component. The pharmaceutical composition can include additional ingredients including but not limited to the excipients described herein. In certain embodiments, one or more therapeutic agents of the dosage unit may exist in an extended or control release formulation and additional therapeutic agents may not exist in extended release formulation. For example, a compound described herein may exist in the same dosage unit with fenofibrate (an extended release fibrate agent). For example, a compound described herein may exist in the same dosage unit with one or more additional agents including a controlled release formulation of torcetrapib.

[00203] A pharmaceutical composition can include 1% to 20% by weight of a compound described herein; from 1% to 80% by weight of an HMG-CoA reductase inhibitor such as atorvastatin, atorvastatin calcium, dihydrocompactin, bervastatin, carvastatin, cerivastatin, crilvastatin, dalvastatin, fluvastatin, glenvastatin, fluindostatin, velostatin, lovastatin, mevastatin, compactin, pitavastatin, pravastatin, rivastatin, rosuvastatin, rosuvastatin calcium, simvastatin, sirrivastatin, and CI-981; and from 0.01% to 2% by weight of a stabilizing agent such as butyl-ated hydroxyanisole (BHA). It further can include from 1% to 80% by weight of microcrystalline cellulose; from 0.5% to 10% by weight of hydroxypropyl methylcellulose; from 0.1% to 4% by weight of magnesium stearate; and from 25% to 70% by weight of lactose. The composition may optionally include one or more of croscarmellose sodium, citric acid, ascorbic acid and propyl gallate. The composition can include or exclude one or more of citric acid, ascorbic acid and pre-gelatinized starch. As a practical matter, a single dosage unit such as a table or capsule should weigh from 50 mg to 1000 mg (for example, including from 100 mg to 800 mg).

[00204] A dosage unit (e.g. an oral dosage unit) can include from, for example, 1 to 500 mg, 2 mg to 500 mg, 1 to 300 mg, 1 to 100 mg, 5 mg to 100 mg, 1 to 30 mg, 1 to 40 mg, 5 mg to 20 mg, 1 mg, 2 mg, 3 mg, 4 mg, 5 mg, 6 mg, 7 mg, 8 mg, 9 mg, 10 mg, 11 mg, 12 mg, 13 mg, 14 mg, 15 mg, 16 mg, 17 mg, 18 mg, 19 mg, 20 mg, 25 mg, 30 mg, 35 mg, 40 mg, 45 mg, 50 mg, 55 mg, 60 mg, 65 mg, 70 mg, 75 mg, 80 mg, 85 mg, 90 mg, 95 mg, and 100 mg of a compound described herein; from 5 mg to 80 mg (e.g. 5 mg, 10 mg, 15 mg, 20 mg, 25 mg, 30 mg, 35 mg, 40 mg, 45 mg, 50 mg, 60 mg, 70 mg and 80 mg) of a statin (e.g., atorvastatin, atorvastatin calcium, rosuvastatin, rosuvastatin calcium, simvastatin, etc.); and from 0.002 mg to 0.004 mg of BHA per mg of statin. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 5 mg of a compound described herein and 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, or 80 mg of a statin. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 10 mg of a compound described herein and 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, or 80 mg of a statin. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 15 mg of a compound described herein and 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, or 80 mg of a statin. In certain

embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 20 mg of a compound describe herein and 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, or 80 mg of a statin. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 25 mg of a compound describe herein and 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, or 80 mg of a statin. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 30 mg of a compound describe herein and 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, or 80 mg of a statin. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 35 mg of a compound describe herein and 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, or 80 mg of a statin. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 40 mg of a compound describe herein and 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, or 80 mg of a statin. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 45 mg of a compound describe herein and 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, or 80 mg of a statin. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 50 mg of a compound describe herein and 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, or 80 mg of a statin. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 55 mg of a compound describe herein and 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, or 80 mg of a statin. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 60 mg of a compound describe herein and 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, or 80 mg of a statin. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 65 mg of a compound describe herein and 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, or 80 mg of a statin. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 70 mg of a compound describe herein and 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, or 80 mg of a statin. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 75 mg of a compound described herein and 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, or 80 mg of a statin. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 80 mg of a compound describe herein and 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, or 80 mg of a statin. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 85 mg of a compound describe herein and 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, or 80 mg of a statin. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 90 mg of a compound describe herein and 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, or 80 mg of a statin. In certain embodiments, the

dosage unit comprises 95 mg of a compound describe herein and 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, or 80 mg of a statin. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 100 mg of a compound describe herein and 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, 75, or 80 mg of a statin. A daily dose can include 5-100 mg (e.g., 10 mg, 20 mg, 30 mg, 40 mg, 50 mg, 60 mg, 70 mg, 80 mg) of a compound described herein and 5, 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70 or 80 mg of a statin. In certain embodiments the statin is selected from the group consisting of atorvastatin, atorvastatin calcium, rosuvastatin, rosuvastatin calcium and simvastatin. In certain embodiments the dosage unit and daily dose are equivalent. In various embodiments, the dosage unit is administered with food at anytime of the day, without food at anytime of the day, with food after an overnight fast (e.g. with breakfast), at bedtime after a low fat snack. In various embodiments, the dosage unit is administered once a day, twice a day, three times a day, four times a day. The dosage unit can include from 0.0005 mg to 0.001 mg of propyl gallate per mg of statin. For example, the dosage unit can include from 0.01 mg to 16 mg, and particularly from 0.02 mg to 0.16 mg of BHA, and additionally may be include from 0.001 mg to 0.05 mg, and particularly from 0.005 mg to 0.04 mg of propyl gallate. The dosage unit can additionally include from 1 mg to 640 mg, and particularly from 15 mg to 120 mg of microcrystalline cellulose; from 0.5 mg to 80 mg, and particularly from 2 mg to 16 mg of HPMC; from 0.1 mg to 32 mg, and particularly from 1.5 to 12 mg of magnesium stearate; and lactose. Croscarmellose sodium may optionally be included as a component in the composition. For example, an oral dosage unit may contain from 0 mg to 80 mg of croscarmellose sodium, and particularly from 3 mg to 24 mg of croscarmellose sodium. Citric acid may optionally be included as a component in the composition. For example, an oral dosage unit may contain from 0 mg to 80 mg, and particularly from 0.25 mg to 2 mg of citric acid. In addition, one or more of lactic acid, malic acid, succinic acid, tartaric acid and EDTA may optionally be included in the dosage unit. An inert component such as lactose can be added to bring the unit dosage form to a desired total weight. The dosage unit can optionally comprise other agents such as 1, 2, 3, or more of a fibrate, niacin (including derivatives thereof), a

glitazone, a calcium channel blocker, an angiotensin II receptor antagonist, a biguanide, and a sulfonylurea.

[00205] A dosage unit (e.g. an oral dosage unit) can include, for example, from 1 to 500 mg, 2 mg to 500 mg, 1 to 300 mg, 1 to 100 mg, 5 mg to 100 mg, 1 to 30 mg, 1 to 40 mg, 5 mg to 20 mg, 1 mg, 2 mg, 3 mg, 4mg, 5 mg, 6 mg, 7 mg, 8 mg, 9 mg, 10 mg, 11 mg, 12 mg, 13 mg, 14 mg, 15 mg, 16 mg, 17 mg, 18 mg, 19 mg, 20 mg, 25 mg, 30 mg, 35 mg, 40 mg, 45 mg, 50 mg, 55 mg, 60 mg, 65 mg, 70 mg, 75 mg, 80 mg, 85 mg, 90 mg, 95 mg, and 100 mg of a compound described herein and from 10 mg to 150 mg (e.g. 10 mg, 20 mg, 30 mg, 40 mg, 48 mg, 50 mg, 60 mg, 70 mg, 80 mg, 90 mg, 100 mg, 120 mg, 130 mg, 140 mg, 145 mg, 150 mg) of a fibrate (e.g., fenofibrate (Tricor®)). In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 5 mg of a compound describe herein and 10, 20, 30, 40, 48, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 130, 140, 145, or 150 mg of a fibrate. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 10 mg of a compound describe herein and 10, 20, 30, 40, 48, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 130, 140, 145, or 150 mg of a fibrate. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 15 mg of a compound describe herein and 10, 20, 30, 40, 48, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 130, 140, 145, or 150 mg of a fibrate. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 20 mg of a compound describe herein and 10, 20, 30, 40, 48, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 130, 140, 145, or 150 mg of a fibrate. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 25 mg of a compound describe herein and 10, 20, 30, 40, 48, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 130, 140, 145, or 150 mg of a fibrate. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 30 mg of a compound describe herein and 10, 20, 30, 40, 48, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 130, 140, 145, or 150 mg of a fibrate. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 35 mg of a compound describe herein and 10, 20, 30, 40, 48, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 130, 140, 145, or 150 mg of a fibrate. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 40 mg of a compound describe herein and 10, 20, 30, 40, 48, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 130, 140, 145, or 150 mg of a fibrate. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 45 mg of a compound describe herein and 10, 20, 30, 40, 48, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 130, 140, 145, or 150 mg of a fibrate. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 50 mg of a compound describe herein and 10, 20, 30, 40, 48, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 130, 140, 145, or 150 mg of a fibrate.

In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 55 mg of a compound describe herein and 10, 20, 30, 40, 48, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 130, 140, 145, or 150 mg of a fibrate. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 60 mg of a compound describe herein and 10, 20, 30, 40, 48, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 130, 140, 145, or 150 mg of a fibrate. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 65 mg of a compound describe herein and 10, 20, 30, 40, 48, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 130, 140, 145, or 150 mg of a fibrate. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 70 mg of a compound describe herein and 10, 20, 30, 40, 48, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 130, 140, 145, or 150 mg of a fibrate. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 75 mg of a compound describe herein and 10, 20, 30, 40, 48, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 130, 140, 145, or 150 mg of a fibrate. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 80 mg of a compound describe herein and 10, 20, 30, 40, 48, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 130, 140, 145, or 150 mg of a fibrate. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 85 mg of a compound describe herein and 10, 20, 30, 40, 48, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 130, 140, 145, or 150 mg of a fibrate. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 90 mg of a compound describe herein and 10, 20, 30, 40, 48, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 130, 140, 145, or 150 mg of a fibrate. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 95 mg of a compound describe herein and 10, 20, 30, 40, 48, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 130, 140, 145, or 150 mg of a fibrate. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 100 mg of a compound describe herein and 10, 20, 30, 40, 48, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 130, 140, 145, or 150 mg of a fibrate. A daily dose can include 5-100 mg (e.g., 10 mg, 20 mg, 30 mg, 40 mg, 50 mg, 60 mg, 70 mg, 80 mg) of a compound described herein and 10, 20, 30, 40, 48, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 130, 140, 145, or 150 mg of a fibrate. In certain embodiments, the fibrate is fenofibrate (Tricor®). In certain embodiments the dosage unit and daily dose are equivalent. In various embodiments, the dosage unit is administered with food at anytime of the day, without food at anytime of the day, with food after an overnight fast (e.g. with breakfast), at bedtime after a low fat snack. In various embodiments, the dosage unit is administered once a day, twice a day, three times a day, four times a day. The dosage unit can optionally comprise other agents such as 1, 2, 3, or more of an HMG CoA reductase inhibitor (e.g. a statin), niacin (including derivatives thereof), a glitazone,

a calcium channel blocker, an angiotensin II receptor antagonist, a biguanide, and a sulfonylurea.

[00206] A dosage unit (e.g. an oral dosage unit) can include, for example, from 1 to 500 mg, 2 mg to 500 mg, 1 to 300 mg, 1 to 100 mg, 5 mg to 100 mg, 1 to 30 mg, 1 to 40 mg, 5 mg to 20 mg, 1 mg, 2 mg, 3 mg, 4mg, 5 mg, 6 mg, 7 mg, 8 mg, 9 mg, 10 mg, 11 mg, 12 mg, 13 mg, 14 mg, 15 mg, 16 mg, 17 mg, 18 mg, 19 mg, 20 mg, 25 mg, 30 mg, 35 mg, 40 mg, 45 mg, 50 mg, 55 mg, 60 mg, 65 mg, 70 mg, 75 mg, 80 mg, 85 mg, 90 mg, 95 mg, and 100 mg of a compound described herein and from 1 mg to 60 mg (e.g. 1 mg, 2 mg, 3 mg, 4 mg, 5 mg, 6 mg, 7 mg, 8 mg, 9 mg, 10 mg, 11 mg, 12 mg, 13 mg, 14 mg, 15 mg, 20 mg, 25 mg, 30 mg, 35 mg, 40 mg, 45 mg, 50 mg, 60 mg) of a glitazone (e.g., rosiglitazone, pioglitazone). In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 5 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, or 60 mg of a glitazone. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 10 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, or 60 mg of a glitazone. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 15 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, or 60 mg of a glitazone. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 20 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, or 60 mg of a glitazone. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 25 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, or 60 mg of a glitazone. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 30 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, or 60 mg of a glitazone. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 35 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, or 60 mg of a glitazone. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 40 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, or 60 mg of a glitazone. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 45 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, or 60 mg of a

glitazone. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 50 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, or 60 mg of a glitazone. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 55 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, or 60 mg of a glitazone. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 60 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, or 60 mg of a glitazone. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 65 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, or 60 mg of a glitazone. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 70 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, or 60 mg of a glitazone. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 75 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, or 60 mg of a glitazone. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 80 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, or 60 mg of a glitazone. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 85 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, or 60 mg of a glitazone. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 90 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, or 60 mg of a glitazone. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 95 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, or 60 mg of a glitazone. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 100 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, or 60 mg of a glitazone. A daily dose can include 5-100 mg (e.g., 10 mg, 20 mg, 30 mg, 40 mg, 50 mg, 60 mg, 70 mg, 80 mg) of a compound described herein and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, or 60 mg of a glitazone. In certain embodiments the glitazone is rosiglitazone maleate (Avandia®). In certain embodiments the glitazone is pioglitazone (Actos®). In certain embodiments the dosage unit and daily dose are equivalent. In various embodiments, the dosage unit is

administered with food at anytime of the day, without food at anytime of the day, with food after an overnight fast (e.g. with breakfast), at bedtime after a low fat snack. In various embodiments, the dosage unit is administered once a day, twice a day, three times a day, four times a day. The dosage unit can optionally comprise other agents such as 1, 2, 3, or more of an HMG CoA reductase inhibitor (e.g. a statin), a fibrate, niacin (including derivatives thereof), a calcium channel blocker, an angiotensin II receptor antagonist, a biguanide, and a sulfonylurea.

[00207] A dosage unit (e.g. an oral dosage unit) can include, for example, from 1 to 500 mg, 2 mg to 500 mg, 1 to 300 mg, 1 to 100 mg, 5 mg to 100 mg, 1 to 30 mg, 1 to 40 mg, 5 mg to 20 mg, 1 mg, 2 mg, 3 mg, 4 mg, 5 mg, 6 mg, 7 mg, 8 mg, 9 mg, 10 mg, 11 mg, 12 mg, 13 mg, 14 mg, 15 mg, 16 mg, 17 mg, 18 mg, 19 mg, 20 mg, 25 mg, 30 mg, 35 mg, 40 mg, 45 mg, 50 mg, 55 mg, 60 mg, 65 mg, 70 mg, 75 mg, 80 mg, 85 mg, 90 mg, 95 mg, and 100 mg of a compound described herein and from 100 mg to 2000 mg (e.g. 100 mg, 150 mg, 200 mg, 250 mg, 300 mg, 350 mg, 400 mg, 450 mg, 500 mg, 550 mg, 600 mg, 650 mg, 700 mg, 750 mg, 800 mg, 850 mg, 900 mg, 950 mg, 1000 mg, 1100 mg, 1200 mg, 1300 mg, 1400 mg, 1500 mg, 1600 mg, 1700 mg, 1800 mg, 1900 mg, 2000 mg) of niacin or a derivative thereof. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 5 mg of a compound described herein and 100, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1100, 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800, 1900, or 2000 mg of niacin or a derivative thereof. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 10 mg of a compound described herein and 100, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1100, 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800, 1900, or 2000 mg of niacin or a derivative thereof. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 15 mg of a compound described herein and 100, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1100, 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800, 1900, or 2000 mg of niacin or a derivative thereof. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 20 mg of a compound described herein and 100, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1100, 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800, 1900, or 2000 mg of niacin or a derivative thereof. In certain embodiments, the

dosage unit comprises 25 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1100, 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800, 1900, or 2000 mg of niacin or a derivative thereof. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 30 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1100, 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800, 1900, or 2000 mg of niacin or a derivative thereof. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 35 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1100, 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800, 1900, or 2000 mg of niacin or a derivative thereof. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 40 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1100, 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800, 1900, or 2000 mg of niacin or a derivative thereof. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 45 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1100, 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800, 1900, or 2000 mg of niacin or a derivative thereof. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 50 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1100, 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800, 1900, or 2000 mg of niacin or a derivative thereof. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 55 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1100, 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800, 1900, or 2000 mg of niacin or a derivative thereof. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 60 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1100, 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800, 1900, or 2000 mg of niacin or a derivative thereof. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 65 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1100, 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800, 1900, or 2000 mg of niacin or a derivative thereof. In certain embodiments, the

dosage unit comprises 70 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1100, 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800, 1900, or 2000 mg of niacin or a derivative thereof. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 75 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1100, 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800, 1900, or 2000 mg of niacin or a derivative thereof. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 80 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1100, 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800, 1900, or 2000 mg of niacin or a derivative thereof. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 85 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1100, 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800, 1900, or 2000 mg of niacin or a derivative thereof. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 90 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1100, 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800, 1900, or 2000 mg of niacin or a derivative thereof. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 95 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1100, 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800, 1900, or 2000 mg of niacin or a derivative thereof. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 100 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1100, 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800, 1900, or 2000 mg of niacin or a derivative thereof. A daily dose can include 5-100 mg (e.g., 10 mg, 20 mg, 30 mg, 40 mg, 50 mg, 60 mg, 70 mg, 80 mg) of a compound described herein and 100, 150, 200, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1100, 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800, 1900, or 2000 mg of niacin or a derivative thereof. In certain embodiments the niacin derivative is Niaspan® (niacin extended release tablets). In certain embodiments the dosage unit and daily dose are equivalent. In various embodiments, the dosage unit is administered with food at anytime of the day, without

food at anytime of the day, with food after an overnight fast (e.g. with breakfast), at bedtime after a low fat snack. In various embodiments, the dosage unit is administered once a day, twice a day, three times a day, four times a day. The dosage unit can optionally comprise other agents such as 1, 2, 3, or more of an HMG CoA reductase inhibitor (e.g. a statin), a fibrate, a glitazone, a calcium channel blocker, an angiotensin II receptor antagonist, a biguanide, and a sulfonylurea.

[00208] A dosage unit (e.g. an oral dosage unit) can include, for example, from 1 to 500 mg, 2 mg to 500 mg, 1 to 300 mg, 1 to 100 mg, 5 mg to 100 mg, 1 to 30 mg, 1 to 40 mg, 5 mg to 20 mg, 1 mg, 2 mg, 3 mg, 4 mg, 5 mg, 6 mg, 7 mg, 8 mg, 9 mg, 10 mg, 11 mg, 12 mg, 13 mg, 14 mg, 15 mg, 16 mg, 17 mg, 18 mg, 19 mg, 20 mg, 25 mg, 30 mg, 35 mg, 40 mg, 45 mg, 50 mg, 55 mg, 60 mg, 65 mg, 70 mg, 75 mg, 80 mg, 85 mg, 90 mg, 95 mg, and 100 mg of a compound described herein and from 1 mg to 15 mg (e.g. 1 mg, 2 mg, 2.5 mg, 3 mg, 4 mg, 5 mg, 6 mg, 7 mg, 7.5 mg, 8 mg, 9 mg, 10 mg, 11 mg, 12 mg, 12.5 mg, 13 mg, 14 mg, 15 mg) of a calcium channel blocker (e.g. amlodipine). In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 5 mg of a compound described herein and 1, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 7.5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12.5, 13, 14, or 15 mg of a calcium channel blocker. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 10 mg of a compound described herein and 1, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 7.5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12.5, 13, 14, or 15 mg of a calcium channel blocker. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 15 mg of a compound described herein and 1, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 7.5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12.5, 13, 14, or 15 mg of a calcium channel blocker. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 20 mg of a compound described herein and 1, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 7.5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12.5, 13, 14, or 15 mg of a calcium channel blocker. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 25 mg of a compound described herein and 1, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 7.5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12.5, 13, 14, or 15 mg of a calcium channel blocker. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 30 mg of a compound described herein and 1, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 7.5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12.5, 13, 14, or 15 mg of a calcium channel blocker. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 35 mg of a compound described herein and 1, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 7.5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12.5, 13, 14, or 15 mg of a calcium channel blocker. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 40 mg of a compound

describe herein and 1, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 7.5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12.5, 13, 14, or 15 mg of a calcium channel blocker. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 45 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 7.5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12.5, 13, 14, or 15 mg of a calcium channel blocker. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 50 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 7.5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12.5, 13, 14, or 15 mg of a calcium channel blocker. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 55 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 7.5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12.5, 13, 14, or 15 mg of a calcium channel blocker. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 60 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 7.5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12.5, 13, 14, or 15 mg of a calcium channel blocker. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 65 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 7.5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12.5, 13, 14, or 15 mg of a calcium channel blocker. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 70 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 7.5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12.5, 13, 14, or 15 mg of a calcium channel blocker. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 75 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 7.5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12.5, 13, 14, or 15 mg of a calcium channel blocker. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 80 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 7.5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12.5, 13, 14, or 15 mg of a calcium channel blocker. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 85 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 7.5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12.5, 13, 14, or 15 mg of a calcium channel blocker. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 90 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 7.5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12.5, 13, 14, or 15 mg of a calcium channel blocker. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 95 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 7.5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12.5, 13, 14, or 15 mg of a calcium channel blocker. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 100 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 7.5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12.5, 13, 14, or 15 mg of a calcium channel blocker. A daily dose can include 5-100 mg (e.g., 10 mg, 20 mg, 30 mg, 40 mg, 50 mg, 60 mg, 70 mg, 80 mg) of a compound described herein and 1, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 7.5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12.5, 13, 14, or 15 mg of a calcium channel blocker. In

certain embodiments the calcium channel blocker is amlodipine (Norvasc®; amlodipine besylate). In certain embodiments the dosage unit and daily dose are equivalent. In various embodiments, the dosage unit is administered with food at anytime of the day, without food at anytime of the day, with food after an overnight fast (e.g. with breakfast), at bedtime after a low fat snack. In various embodiments, the dosage unit is administered once a day, twice a day, three times a day, four times a day. The dosage unit can optionally comprise other agents such as 1, 2, 3, or more of an HMG CoA reductase inhibitor (e.g. a statin), a fibrate, niacin (including derivatives thereof), a glitazone, an angiotensin II receptor antagonist, a biguanide, and a sulfonylurea.

[00209] A dosage unit (e.g. an oral dosage unit) can include, for example, from 1 to 500 mg, 2 mg to 500 mg, 1 to 300 mg, 1 to 100 mg, 5 mg to 100 mg, 1 to 30 mg, 1 to 40 mg, 5 mg to 20 mg, 1 mg, 2 mg, 3 mg, 4 mg, 5 mg, 6 mg, 7 mg, 8 mg, 9 mg, 10 mg, 11 mg, 12 mg, 13 mg, 14 mg, 15 mg, 16 mg, 17 mg, 18 mg, 19 mg, 20 mg, 25 mg, 30 mg, 35 mg, 40 mg, 45 mg, 50 mg, 55 mg, 60 mg, 65 mg, 70 mg, 75 mg, 80 mg, 85 mg, 90 mg, 95 mg, and 100 mg of a compound described herein and from 20 mg to 400 mg (e.g. 20 mg, 30 mg, 40 mg, 50 mg, 60 mg, 70 mg, 80 mg, 90 mg, 100 mg, 110 mg, 120 mg, 130 mg, 140 mg, 150 mg, 160 mg, 170 mg, 180 mg, 190 mg, 200 mg, 220 mg, 240 mg, 260 mg, 280 mg, 320 mg, 340 mg, 360 mg, 380 mg, 400 mg) of an angiotensin II receptor antagonist (e.g. valsartan). In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 5 mg of a compound described herein and 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 220, 240, 260, 280, 320, 340, 360, 380, or 400 mg of an angiotensin II receptor antagonist. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 10 mg of a compound described herein and 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 220, 240, 260, 280, 320, 340, 360, 380, or 400 mg of an angiotensin II receptor antagonist. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 15 mg of a compound described herein and 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 220, 240, 260, 280, 320, 340, 360, 380, or 400 mg of an angiotensin II receptor antagonist. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 20 mg of a compound described herein and 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 220, 240, 260, 280, 320, 340, 360, 380,

or 400 mg of an angiotensin II receptor antagonist. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 25 mg of a compound describe herein and 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 220, 240, 260, 280, 320, 340, 360, 380, or 400 mg of an angiotensin II receptor antagonist. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 30 mg of a compound describe herein and 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 220, 240, 260, 280, 320, 340, 360, 380, or 400 mg of an angiotensin II receptor antagonist. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 35 mg of a compound describe herein and 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 220, 240, 260, 280, 320, 340, 360, 380, or 400 mg of an angiotensin II receptor antagonist. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 40 mg of a compound describe herein and 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 220, 240, 260, 280, 320, 340, 360, 380, or 400 mg of an angiotensin II receptor antagonist. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 45 mg of a compound describe herein and 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 220, 240, 260, 280, 320, 340, 360, 380, or 400 mg of an angiotensin II receptor antagonist. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 50 mg of a compound describe herein and 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 220, 240, 260, 280, 320, 340, 360, 380, or 400 mg of an angiotensin II receptor antagonist. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 55 mg of a compound describe herein and 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 220, 240, 260, 280, 320, 340, 360, 380, or 400 mg of an angiotensin II receptor antagonist. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 60 mg of a compound describe herein and 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 220, 240, 260, 280, 320, 340, 360, 380, or 400 mg of an angiotensin II receptor antagonist. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 65 mg of a compound describe herein and 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 220, 240, 260, 280, 320, 340, 360, 380, or 400 mg of an angiotensin II receptor antagonist. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 70 mg of a compound describe herein and 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90,

100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 220, 240, 260, 280, 320, 340, 360, 380, or 400 mg of an angiotensin II receptor antagonist. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 75 mg of a compound describe herein and 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 220, 240, 260, 280, 320, 340, 360, 380, or 400 mg of an angiotensin II receptor antagonist. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 80 mg of a compound describe herein and 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 220, 240, 260, 280, 320, 340, 360, 380, or 400 mg of an angiotensin II receptor antagonist. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 85 mg of a compound describe herein and 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 220, 240, 260, 280, 320, 340, 360, 380, or 400 mg of an angiotensin II receptor antagonist. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 90 mg of a compound describe herein and 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 220, 240, 260, 280, 320, 340, 360, 380, or 400 mg of an angiotensin II receptor antagonist. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 95 mg of a compound describe herein and 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 220, 240, 260, 280, 320, 340, 360, 380, or 400 mg of an angiotensin II receptor antagonist. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 100 mg of a compound describe herein and 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 220, 240, 260, 280, 320, 340, 360, 380, or 400 mg of an angiotensin II receptor antagonist. A daily dose can include 5-100 mg (e.g., 10 mg, 20 mg, 30 mg, 40 mg, 50 mg, 60 mg, 70 mg, 80 mg) of a compound described herein and 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, 140, 150, 160, 170, 180, 190, 200, 220, 240, 260, 280, 320, 340, 360, 380, or 400 mg of an angiotensin II receptor antagonist. In certain embodiments the angiotensin II receptor antagonist is valsartan (Diovan®). In certain embodiments the dosage unit further comprises a diuretic (e.g. hydrocholorothiazide). In certain embodiments the dosage unit and daily dose are equivalent. In various embodiments, the dosage unit is administered with food at anytime of the day, without food at anytime of the day, with food after an overnight fast (e.g. with breakfast), at bedtime after a low fat snack. In various embodiments, the

dosage unit is administered once a day, twice a day, three times a day, four times a day.

The dosage unit can optionally comprise other agents such as 1, 2, 3, or more of an HMG CoA reductase inhibitor (e.g. a statin), a fibrate, niacin (including derivatives thereof), a glitazone, a calcium channel blocker, a biguanide, and a sulfonylurea.

[00210] A dosage unit (e.g. an oral dosage unit) can include, for example, from 1 to 500 mg, 2 mg to 500 mg, 1 to 300 mg, 1 to 100 mg, 5 mg to 100 mg, 1 to 30 mg, 1 to 40 mg, 5 mg to 20 mg, 1 mg, 2 mg, 3 mg, 4 mg, 5 mg, 6 mg, 7 mg, 8 mg, 9 mg, 10 mg, 11 mg, 12 mg, 13 mg, 14 mg, 15 mg, 16 mg, 17 mg, 18 mg, 19 mg, 20 mg, 25 mg, 30 mg, 35 mg, 40 mg, 45 mg, 50 mg, 55 mg, 60 mg, 65 mg, 70 mg, 75 mg, 80 mg, 85 mg, 90 mg, 95 mg, and 100 mg of a compound described herein and from 100 mg to 3000 mg (e.g. 100 mg, 200 mg, 250 mg, 300 mg, 400 mg, 500 mg, 550 mg, 600 mg, 650 mg, 700 mg, 750 mg, 800 mg, 850 mg, 900 mg, 950 mg, 1000 mg, 1250 mg, 1500 mg, 1750 mg, 2000 mg, 2250 mg, 2500 mg, 2750 mg, 3000 mg) of a biguanide (e.g. metformin). In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 5 mg of a compound described herein and 100, 200, 250, 300, 400, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1250, 1500, 1750, 2000, 2250, 2500, 2750, or 3000 mg of a biguanide. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 10 mg of a compound described herein and 100, 200, 250, 300, 400, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1250, 1500, 1750, 2000, 2250, 2500, 2750, or 3000 mg of a biguanide. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 15 mg of a compound described herein and 100, 200, 250, 300, 400, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1250, 1500, 1750, 2000, 2250, 2500, 2750, or 3000 mg of a biguanide. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 20 mg of a compound described herein and 100, 200, 250, 300, 400, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1250, 1500, 1750, 2000, 2250, 2500, 2750, or 3000 mg of a biguanide. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 25 mg of a compound described herein and 100, 200, 250, 300, 400, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1250, 1500, 1750, 2000, 2250, 2500, 2750, or 3000 mg of a biguanide. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 30 mg of a compound described herein and 100, 200, 250, 300, 400, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1250, 1500, 1750, 2000, 2250, 2500, 2750, or 3000 mg of a biguanide. In certain

embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 35 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 200, 250, 300, 400, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1250, 1500, 1750, 2000, 2250, 2500, 2750, or 3000 mg of a biguanide. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 40 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 200, 250, 300, 400, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1250, 1500, 1750, 2000, 2250, 2500, 2750, or 3000 mg of a biguanide. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 45 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 200, 250, 300, 400, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1250, 1500, 1750, 2000, 2250, 2500, 2750, or 3000 mg of a biguanide. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 50 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 200, 250, 300, 400, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1250, 1500, 1750, 2000, 2250, 2500, 2750, or 3000 mg of a biguanide. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 55 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 200, 250, 300, 400, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1250, 1500, 1750, 2000, 2250, 2500, 2750, or 3000 mg of a biguanide. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 60 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 200, 250, 300, 400, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1250, 1500, 1750, 2000, 2250, 2500, 2750, or 3000 mg of a biguanide. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 65 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 200, 250, 300, 400, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1250, 1500, 1750, 2000, 2250, 2500, 2750, or 3000 mg of a biguanide. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 70 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 200, 250, 300, 400, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1250, 1500, 1750, 2000, 2250, 2500, 2750, or 3000 mg of a biguanide. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 75 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 200, 250, 300, 400, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1250, 1500, 1750, 2000, 2250, 2500, 2750, or 3000 mg of a biguanide. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 80 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 200, 250, 300, 400, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1250, 1500, 1750, 2000, 2250, 2500, 2750, or 3000 mg of a biguanide. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 85 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 200, 250, 300, 400, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900,

950, 1000, 1250, 1500, 1750, 2000, 2250, 2500, 2750, or 3000 mg of a biguanide. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 90 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 200, 250, 300, 400, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1250, 1500, 1750, 2000, 2250, 2500, 2750, or 3000 mg of a biguanide. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 95 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 200, 250, 300, 400, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1250, 1500, 1750, 2000, 2250, 2500, 2750, or 3000 mg of a biguanide. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 100 mg of a compound describe herein and 100, 200, 250, 300, 400, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1250, 1500, 1750, 2000, 2250, 2500, 2750, or 3000 mg of a biguanide. A daily dose can include 5-100 mg (e.g., 10 mg, 20 mg, 30 mg, 40 mg, 50 mg, 60 mg, 70 mg, 80 mg) of a compound described herein and 100, 200, 250, 300, 400, 500, 550, 600, 650, 700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, 1000, 1250, 1500, 1750, 2000, 2250, 2500, 2750, or 3000 mg of a biguanide. In certain embodiments the biguanide is metformin (metformin hydrochloride, (Glucophage®, Glucophage® XR)). In certain embodiments the dosage unit and daily dose are equivalent. In various embodiments, the dosage unit is administered with food at anytime of the day, without food at anytime of the day, with food after an overnight fast (e.g. with breakfast), at bedtime after a low fat snack. In various embodiments, the dosage unit is administered once a day, twice a day, three times a day, four times a day. The dosage unit can optionally comprise other agents such as 1, 2, 3, or more of an HMG CoA reductase inhibitor (e.g. a statin), a fibrate, niacin (including derivatives thereof), a glitazone, a calcium channel blocker, an angiotensin II receptor antagonist, and a sulfonylurea.

[00211] A dosage unit (e.g. an oral dosage unit) can include, for example, from 1 to 500 mg, 2 mg to 500 mg, 1 to 300 mg, 1 to 100 mg, 5 mg to 100 mg, 1 to 30 mg, 1 to 40 mg, 5 mg to 20 mg, 1 mg, 2 mg, 3 mg, 4mg, 5 mg, 6 mg, 7 mg, 8 mg, 9 mg, 10 mg, 11 mg, 12 mg, 13 mg, 14 mg, 15 mg, 16 mg, 17 mg, 18 mg, 19 mg, 20 mg, 25 mg, 30 mg, 35 mg, 40 mg, 45 mg, 50 mg, 55 mg, 60 mg, 65 mg, 70 mg, 75 mg, 80 mg, 85 mg, 90 mg, 95 mg, and 100 mg of a compound described herein and from 1 to 40 mg (e.g. 1 mg, 1.25 mg, 1.5 mg, 1.75 mg, 2 mg, 2.5 mg, 3 mg, 4 mg, 5 mg, 6 mg, 7 mg, 7.5 mg, 8 mg, 9 mg,

10 mg, 12.5 mg, 15 mg, 20 mg, 25 mg, 30 mg, 35 mg, 40 g) of a sulfonylurea (e.g. glipizide, glyburide). In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 5 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 1.25, 1.5, 1.75, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40 mg of a sulfonylurea. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 10 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 1.25, 1.5, 1.75, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40 mg of a sulfonylurea. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 15 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 1.25, 1.5, 1.75, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40 mg of a sulfonylurea. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 20 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 1.25, 1.5, 1.75, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40 mg of a sulfonylurea. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 25 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 1.25, 1.5, 1.75, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40 mg of a sulfonylurea. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 30 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 1.25, 1.5, 1.75, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40 mg of a sulfonylurea. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 35 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 1.25, 1.5, 1.75, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40 mg of a sulfonylurea. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 40 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 1.25, 1.5, 1.75, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40 mg of a sulfonylurea. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 45 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 1.25, 1.5, 1.75, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40 mg of a sulfonylurea. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 50 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 1.25, 1.5, 1.75, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40 mg of a sulfonylurea. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 55 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 1.25, 1.5, 1.75, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40 mg of a sulfonylurea. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 60 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 1.25, 1.5, 1.75, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40 mg of a sulfonylurea. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 65 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 1.25, 1.5, 1.75, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40 mg of a sulfonylurea. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises

70 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 1.25, 1.5, 1.75, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40 mg of a sulfonylurea. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 75 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 1.25, 1.5, 1.75, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40 mg of a sulfonylurea. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 80 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 1.25, 1.5, 1.75, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40 mg of a sulfonylurea. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 85 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 1.25, 1.5, 1.75, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40 mg of a sulfonylurea. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 90 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 1.25, 1.5, 1.75, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40 mg of a sulfonylurea. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 95 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 1.25, 1.5, 1.75, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40 mg of a sulfonylurea. In certain embodiments, the dosage unit comprises 100 mg of a compound describe herein and 1, 1.25, 1.5, 1.75, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40 mg of a sulfonylurea. A daily dose can include 5-100 mg (e.g., 10 mg, 20 mg, 30 mg, 40 mg, 50 mg, 60 mg, 70 mg, 80 mg) of a compound described herein and 1, 1.25, 1.5, 1.75, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40 mg of a sulfonylurea. In certain embodiments the sulfonylurea is glipizide (Glucotrol® Glucotrol XL®). In certain embodiments the sulfonylurea is glyburide (Micronase®, Glynase Prestab®, Diabeta®). In certain embodiments the dosage unit and daily dose are equivalent. In various embodiments, the dosage unit is administered with food at anytime of the day, without food at anytime of the day, with food after an overnight fast (e.g. with breakfast), at bedtime after a low fat snack. In various embodiments, the dosage unit is administered once a day, twice a day, three times a day, four times a day. The dosage unit can optionally comprise other agents such as 1, 2, 3, or more of an HMG CoA reductase inhibitor (e.g. a statin), a fibrate, niacin (including derivatives thereof), a glitazone, a calcium channel blocker, an angiotensin II receptor antagonist, and a biguanide.

[00212] It can be useful to administer a compound described herein together with a sterol or stanol composition. Sterols and stanols include but are not limited to those described

herein. Plant sterols and stanols (e.g., beta-sitosterol) have been used as dietary supplements to reduce serum cholesterol levels. Plant sterol can be esterified to create stanol esters (also referred to as stanols), which are also used as food additives. Sterols are typically derived from agricultural sources, such as corn, soy-based, and pine tree mixtures. Stanols can be created through the reaction of the sterol with the suitable acid. Suitable acids include saturated, unsaturated, and polyunsaturated acids. Suitable acids include but are not limited to, stearic, butyric, lauric, palmitic, oleic, linoleic, linolenic, docohexanoic acid, and the like. Suitable methods for preparing these esters are well known in the art, see, e.g., US5502045 and US5723747. Sterols and sterol esters can be formulated a self-dispersing particles that are small enough to be effective when administered by ingestion (see, e.g., US6387411, US6376481 and US20040033202). Sterols and/or sterol esters in particle form can be combined with a compound described herein to create useful pharmaceutical compositions which can also include other agents such as 1, 2, 3, or more of an HMG-CoA reductase inhibitor (e.g. a statin such as atorvastatin, atorvastatin calcium, rosuvastatin, rosuvastatin calcium, simvastatin), a fibrate (e.g. fenofibrate(Tricor®)), niacin (including derivatives and extended release formulations (e.g. Niaspan®) thereof), a glitazone (e.g. rosiglitazone maleate (Avandia®), pioglitazone hydrochloride(Actos®)), a calcium channel blocker (e.g. amlodipine besylate (Norvasc®)), an angiotensin II receptor antagonist (e.g. valsartan (Diovan®, Diovan HCT® (valsartan and hydrochlorothiazide))), a biguanide (e.g. metformin (Glucophage®)), a sulfonylurea (e.g. glipizide (Glucotrol®, Glucotrol XL®), glyburide (Micronase®, Glynase Prestab®, Diabeta®), and Glucovance® (glyburide and metformin)). The pharmaceutical composition can include additional ingredients such as stabilizers or bulking agents. The sterol particles in the composition can have any suitable size, e.g., 10-150 microns in diameter. However, to improve absorption in the body it can be desirable to use much smaller particles, e.g., less than 2000 nm in diameter as explained in US20040033202. Thus, pharmaceutical compositions that include a compound described herein can include sterol nanoparticles, such as sitosterol and/or phytosterol nanoparticles, which have an effective average particle size of less than about 2000 nm, less than about 1900 nm, less than about 1800 nm, less than about 1700 nm,

less than about 1600 nm, less than about 1500 nm, less than about 1400 nm, less than about 1300 nm, less than about 1200 nm, less than about 1100 nm, less than about 1000 nm, less than about 900 nm, less than about 800 nm, less than about 700 nm, less than about 600 nm, less than about 500 nm, less than about 400 nm, less than about 300 nm, less than about 250 nm, less than about 200 nm, less than about 150 nm, less than about 100 nm, less than about 75 nm, or less than about 50 nm, as measured by light-scattering methods, microscopy, or other appropriate methods. The particles can be created by methods which include: milling, precipitation and homogenization. For example, homogenization methods are described in US5510118. The method includes dispersing sterol particles in a liquid dispersion medium in which the sterol is poorly soluble, followed by subjecting the dispersion to homogenization to reduce the particle size of the sterol to the desired effective average particle size. The sterol particles are preferably reduced in size in the presence of at least one surface stabilizer. Alternatively, the sterol particles can be contacted with one or more surface stabilizers either before or after attrition. Other compounds, such as a diluent, can be added to the sterol/surface stabilizer composition before, during, or after the size reduction process. Dispersions can be manufactured continuously or in a batch mode. Surface stabilizers can be used in the formulations. Suitable surface stabilizers include: cetyl pyridinium chloride, gelatin, casein, phosphatides, dextran, glycerol, gum acacia, cholesterol, tragacanth, stearic acid, benzalkonium chloride, calcium stearate, glycerol monostearate, cetostearyl alcohol, cetomacrogol emulsifying wax, sorbitan esters, polyoxyethylene alkyl ethers, polyoxyethylene castor oil derivatives, polyoxyethylene sorbitan fatty acid esters, polyethylene glycols, dodecyl trimethyl ammonium bromide, polyoxyethylene stearates, colloidal silicon dioxide, phosphates, sodium dodecylsulfate, carboxy-methylcellulose calcium, hydroxypropyl celluloses, hypromellose, carboxymethylcellulose sodium, methylcellulose, hydroxyethylcellulose, hypromellose phthalate, noncrystalline cellulose, magnesium aluminum silicate, triethanolamine, polyvinyl alcohol, polyvinylpyrrolidone, 4-(1,1,3,3-tetramethylbutyl)-Phenol polymer with ethylene oxide and formaldehyde, poloxamers; poloxamines, a charged phospholipid, dioctylsulfosuccinate, dialkylesters of sodium sulfosuccinic acid, sodium lauryl sulfate, alkyl aryl polyether sulfonates,

mixtures of sucrose stearate and sucrose distearate, p-isononylphenoxypoly-(glycidol), decanoyl-N-methylglucamide; n-decyl β -D-glucopyranoside; n-decyl β -D-maltopyranoside; n-dodecyl β -D-glucopyranoside; n-dodecyl β -D-maltoside; heptanoyl-N-methylglucamide; n-heptyl- β -D-glucopyranoside; n-heptyl β -D-thioglucoside; n-hexyl β -D-glucopyranoside; nonanoyl-N-methylglucamide; n-nonyl β -D-glucopyranoside; octanoyl-N-methylglucamide; n-octyl- β -D-glucopyranoside; octyl β -D-thioglucopyranoside; lysozyme, PEG-Phospholipid, PEG-cholesterol, PEG-cholesterol derivative, PEG-vitamin A, PEG-vitamin E, and random copolymers of vinyl acetate and vinyl pyrrolidone.

[00213] It can be useful to administer a compound described herein together with a polycosanol composition. Polycosanol compositions are complex mixtures of concentrated n-alkyl alcohols derived from, e.g., sugar cane and the wax of honey bees. Polycosanol compositions are reported to produce cholesterol lowering effects within the first 6-8 weeks of use. According to US20030232796, at a daily polycosanol dosage of 10 mg taken at night, LDL cholesterol levels typically drop by 20-25% within the first six months of use. At a dosage of 20 mg, LDL levels typically drop by 25-30%. HDL levels typically increase by 15-25% only after two months of use. The combined LDL reduction and HDL increase will produce a significant and dramatic improvement in the LDL to HDL ratio. Polycosanol can include fatty acid components including: 1-Octacosanol, 1-Triacontanol, 1-Tetracosanol, and 1-Hexacosanol. Typical usage levels range from 500-10,000 micrograms per serving/dose. Typical commercially available commercial compositions are 90% minimum fatty alcohols of (a) 1-Tetracosanol: 0-10%; (b) 1-Hexacosanol: 2-15%; (c) 1-Heptacosanol: 0-0.5%; (d) 1-Octacosanol: 55-70%; (e) 1-Nonacosanol: 0-10%; (f) 1-Triacontanol: 5-20%; (g) 1-Dotriacontanol: 0.1-10%; and (h) 1-Tetratriacontanol: 0.1-10%. Polycosanol compositions can be formulated as described above for stanols both with respect to particle size and overall formulation. In addition to the compounds described herein, the formulation can include other agents such as 1, 2, 3, or more of an HMG-CoA reductase inhibitor (e.g. a statin such as atorvastatin, atorvastatin calcium, rosuvastatin, rosuvastatin calcium, simvastatin), a fibrate (e.g. fenofibrate(Tricor®)), niacin (including derivatives and extended release formulations

(e.g. Niaspan®) thereof), a glitazone (e.g. rosi-glitazone maleate (Avandia®), pioglitazone hydrochloride (Actos®)), a calcium channel blocker (e.g. amlodipine besylate (Norvasc®)), an angiotensin II receptor antagonist (e.g. valsartan (Diovan®, Diovan HCT® (valsartan and hydrochlorothiazide))), a biguanide (e.g. metformin (Glucophage®)), a sulfonylurea (e.g. glipizide (Glucotrol®, Glucotrol XL®), glyburide (Micronase®, Glynase Prestab®, Diabeta®), and Glucovance® (glyburide and metformin)).

[00214] Combining two or more active ingredients in single dosage form results in the possibility of chemical interactions between the active drug substances. For example, acidic and basic active ingredients can react with each other and acidic active ingredients can facilitate the degradation of acid labile substances. Thus, in certain dosage forms, acidic and basic substances can be physically separated as two distinct or isolated layers in a compressed tablet, or in the core and shell of a press-coated tablet. Additional agents that are compatible with acidic as well as basic substances, have the flexibility of being placed in either layer. In certain multiple layer compositions at least one active ingredient can be enteric-coated. In certain embodiments thereof at least one active ingredient can be presented in a controlled release form. In certain embodiments where a combination of three or more active substances are used, they can be presented as physically isolated segments of a compressed multilayer tablet, which can be optionally film coated.

[00215] The therapeutic combinations described herein can be formulated as a tablet or capsule comprising a plurality of beads, granules, or pellets. All active ingredients including the vitamins of the combination are formulated into granules or beads or pellets that are further coated with a protective coat, an enteric coat, or a film coat to avoid the possible chemical interactions. Granulation and coating of granules or beads is done using techniques well known to a person skilled in the art. At least one active ingredient can present in a controlled release form. Finally these coated granules or beads are filled into hard gelatin capsules or compressed to form tablets.

[00216] The therapeutic combinations described herein can be formulated as a capsule comprising microtablets or minitables of all active ingredients. Microtablets of the

individual agents can be prepared using well known pharmaceutical procedures of tablet making like direct compression, dry granulation or wet granulation. Individual microtablets can be filled into hard gelatin capsules. A final dosage form may comprise one or more microtablets of each individual component. The microtablets may be film coated or enteric coated.

[00217] The therapeutic combinations described herein can be formulated as a capsule comprising one or more microtablets and powder, or one or more microtablets and granules or beads. In order to avoid interactions between drugs, some active ingredients of a said combination can be formulated as microtablets and the others filled into capsules as a powder, granules, or beads. The microtablets may be film coated or enteric coated. At least one active ingredient can be presented in controlled release form.

[00218] The therapeutic combinations described herein can be formulated wherein the active ingredients are distributed in the inner and outer phase of tablets. In an attempt to divide chemically incompatible components of proposed combination, few interacting components are converted in granules or beads using well known pharmaceutical procedures in prior art. The prepared granules or beads (inner phase) are then mixed with outer phase comprising the remaining active ingredients and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable excipient. The mixture thus comprising inner and outer phase is compressed into tablets or molded into tablets. The granules or beads can be controlled release or immediate release beads or granules, and can further be coated using an enteric polymer in an aqueous or non-aqueous system, using methods and materials that are known in the art.

[00219] The therapeutic combinations described herein can be formulated as single dosage unit comprising suitable buffering agent. All powdered ingredients of said combination are mixed and a suitable quantity of one or more buffering agents is added to the blend to minimize possible interactions.

[00220] The agents described herein, alone or in combination, can be combined with any pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or medium. Thus, they can be combined with materials that do not produce an adverse, allergic or otherwise unwanted reaction when administered to a patient. The carriers or mediums used can include solvents,

dispersants, coatings, absorption promoting agents, controlled release agents, and one or more inert excipients (which include starches, polyols, granulating agents, microcrystalline cellulose, diluents, lubricants, binders, disintegrating agents, and the like), etc. If desired, tablet dosages of the disclosed compositions may be coated by standard aqueous or nonaqueous techniques.

[00221] The agents can be a free acid or base, or a pharmacologically acceptable salt thereof. Solids can be dissolved or dispersed immediately prior to administration or earlier. In some circumstances the preparations include a preservative to prevent the growth of microorgan-isms. The pharmaceutical forms suitable for injection can include sterile aqueous or organic solutions or dispersions which include, e.g., water, an alcohol, an organic solvent, an oil or other solvent or dispersant (e.g., glycerol, propylene glycol, polyethylene glycol, and vegetable oils). The formulations may contain antioxidants, buffers, bacteriostats, and solutes that render the formulation isotonic with the blood of the intended recipient, and aqueous and non-aqueous sterile suspensions that can include suspending agents, solubilizers, thickening agents, stabilizers, and preservatives.

Pharmaceutical agents can be sterilized by filter sterilization or by other suitable means

[00222] Suitable pharmaceutical compositions in accordance with the invention will generally include an amount of the active compound(s) with an acceptable pharmaceutical diluent or excipient, such as a sterile aqueous solution, to give a range of final concentrations, depending on the intended use. The techniques of preparation are generally well known in the art, as exemplified by Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences, 18th Ed., Mack Publishing Company, 1995.

[00223] The agent can be in the form of a pharmaceutically acceptable salt. Such salts are prepared from pharmaceutically acceptable non-toxic bases including inorganic bases and organic bases. Examples of salts derived from inorganic bases include aluminum, ammonium, calcium, copper, ferric, ferrous, lithium, magnesium, manganic salts, manganous, potassium, sodium, zinc, and the like. In some embodiments, the salt can be an ammonium, calcium, magnesium, potassium, or sodium salt. Examples of salts derived from pharmaceutically acceptable organic non-toxic bases include salts of primary, secondary, and tertiary amines, benethamine, *N,N'*-dibenzylethylenediamine,

diethylamine, 2-diethylaminoethanol, 2-dimethylaminoethanol, diethanolamine, ethanolamine, ethylenediamine, *N*-ethylmorpholine, *N*-ethylpiperidine, epolamine, glucamine, glucosamine, histidine, hydrabamine, isopropylamine, lysine, methylglucamine, meglumine, morpholine, piperazine, piperidine, polyamine resins, procaine, purines, theobromine, triethylamine, trimethylamine, tripropylamine, and trolamine, tromethamine. Examples of other salts include tris, arecoline, arginine, barium, betaine, bismuth, chlorprocaine, choline, clemizole, deanol, imidazole, and morpholineethanol.

[00224] The agents of the invention can be administered orally, e.g., as a tablet or cachet containing a predetermined amount of the active ingredient, pellet, gel, paste, syrup, bolus, electuary, slurry, capsule; powder; granules; as a solution or a suspension in an aqueous liquid or a non-aqueous liquid; as an oil-in-water liquid emulsion or a water-in-oil liquid emulsion, via a liposomal formulation (see, e.g., EP736299) or in some other form. Orally administered compositions can include binders, lubricants, inert diluents, lubricating, surface active or dispersing agents, flavoring agents, and humectants. Orally administered formulations such as tablets may optionally be coated or scored and may be formulated so as to provide sustained, delayed or controlled release of the active ingredient therein. The agents of the invention can also be administered by captisol delivery technology, rectal suppository or parenterally.

[00225] The agents described herein can be either in their free form or as a salt can be combined with a polymer such as polylactic-glycolic acid (PLGA), poly-(I)-lactic-glycolic-tartaric acid (P(I)LGT) (WO01/12233), polyglycolic acid (US3773919), polylactic acid (US4767628), poly(M-caprolactone) and poly(alkylene oxide) (US20030068384) to create a sustained release formulation. Such formulations can be used within implants that release a compound of the invention and/or another agent over a period of a few days, a few weeks or several months depending on the polymer, the particle size of the polymer, and the size of the implant (see, e.g., US6620422 and WO05/011769). Other sustained release formulations are described in EP0467389, WO93/241150, US5612052, WO97/40085, WO03/075887, WO01/01964, US5922356, WO94/155587, WO02/074247, WO98/25642, US5968895, US6180608,

US20030171296, US20020176841, US5672659, US5893985, US5134122, US5192741, US5192741, US4668506, US4713244, US5445832 US4931279, US5980945, WO02/058672, WO9726015, WO97/04744, and US20020019446. In such sustained release formulations microparticles of compound are combined with microparticles of polymer. US6011011 and WO94/06452 describe a sustained release formulation providing either polyethylene glycols (e.g. PEG 300 and PEG 400) or triacetin. WO03/053401 describes a formulation which may both enhance bioavailability and provide controlled release of the agent within the GI tract. Additional controlled release formulations are described in WO02/38129, EP326151, US5236704, WO02/30398, WO98/13029, US20030064105, US20030138488, US20030216307, US6667060, WO01/49249, WO01/49311, WO01/49249, WO01/49311, US5877224, WO05/030179, WO05/027878, WO05/012488 and WO05/007074.

Controlled release formulations

[00226] In general, one can provide for controlled release of the agents described herein through the use of a wide variety of polymeric carriers and controlled release systems including erodible and non-erodible matrices, osmotic control devices, various reservoir devices, enteric coatings and multiparticulate control devices.

[00227] Matrix devices are a common device for controlling the release of various agents. In such devices, the agents described herein are generally present as a dispersion within the polymer matrix, and are typically formed by the compression of a polymer/drug mixture or by dissolution or melting. The dosage release properties of these devices may be dependent upon the solubility of the agent in the polymer matrix or, in the case of porous matrices, the solubility in the sink solution within the pore network, and the tortuosity of the network. In one instance, when utilizing an erodible polymeric matrix, the matrix imbibes water and forms an aqueous-swollen gel that entraps the agent. The matrix then gradually erodes, swells, disintegrates or dissolves in the GI tract, thereby controlling release of one or more of the agents described herein. In non-erodible devices, the agent is released by diffusion through an inert matrix.

[00228] Agents described herein can be incorporated into an erodible or non-erodible polymeric matrix controlled release device. By an erodible matrix is meant aqueous-

erodible or water-swellaable or aqueous-SOLuble in the sense of being either erodible or swellaable or dissolvable in pure water or requiring the presence of an acid or base to ionize the polymeric matrix sufficiently to cause erosion or dissolution. When contacted with the aqueous environment of use, the erodible polymeric matrix imbibes water and forms an aqueous-swollen gel or matrix that entraps the agent described herein. The aqueous-swollen matrix gradually erodes, swells, disintegrates or dissolves in the environment of use, thereby controlling the release of a compound described herein to the environment of use. Nonlimiting examples of such devices are disclosed in U. S. Patent Application Serial No. 09/495,059 filed January 31, 2000.

[00229] The erodible polymeric matrix into which an agent described herein can be incorporated may generally be described as a set of excipients that are mixed with the agent following its formation that, when contacted with the aqueous environment of use imbibes water and forms a water-swollen gel or matrix that entraps the drug form. Drug release may occur by a variety of mechanisms, for example, the matrix may disintegrate or dissolve from around particles or granules of the agent or the agent may dissolve in the imbibed aqueous solution and diffuse from the tablet, beads or granules of the device. One ingredient of this water-swollen matrix is the water-swellaable, erodible, or soluble polymer, which may generally be described as an osmopolymer, hydrogel or water-swellaable polymer. Such polymers may be linear, branched, or crosslinked. The polymers may be homopolymers or copolymers. In certain embodiments, they may be synthetic polymers derived from vinyl, acrylate, methacrylate, urethane, ester and oxide monomers. In other embodiments, they can be derivatives of naturally occurring polymers such as polysaccharides (e.g. chitin, chitosan, dextran and pullulan; gum agar, gum arabic, gum karaya, locust bean gum, gum tragacanth, carrageenans, gum ghatti, guar gum, xanthan gum and scleroglucan), starches (e.g. dextrin and maltodextrin), hydrophilic colloids (e.g. pectin), phosphatides (e.g. lecithin), alginates (e.g. ammonium alginate, sodium, potassium or calcium alginate, propylene glycol alginate), gelatin, collagen, and cellulotics. Cellulotics are cellulose polymer that has been modified by reaction of at least a portion of the hydroxyl groups on the saccharide repeat units with a compound to form an ester-linked or an ether-linked substituent. For example, the

cellulosic ethyl cellulose has an ether linked ethyl substituent attached to the saccharide repeat unit, while the cellulosic cellulose acetate has an ester linked acetate substituent. In certain embodiments, the cellulosics for the erodible matrix comprises aqueous-SOLuble and aqueous-erodible cellulosics can include, for example, ethyl cellulose (EC), methylethyl cellulose (MEC), carboxymethyl cellulose (CMC), CMEC, hydroxyethyl cellulose (HEC), hydroxypropyl cellulose (HPC), cellulose acetate (CA), cellulose propionate (CP), cellulose butyrate (CB), cellulose acetate butyrate (CAB), CAP, CAT, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose (HPMC), HPMCP, HPMCAS, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose acetate trimellitate (HPMCAT), and ethylhydroxy ethylcellulose (EHEC). In certain embodiments, the cellulosics comprises various grades of low viscosity (MW less than or equal to 50,000 daltons, for example, the Dow Methocel™ series E5, E15LV, E50LV and K100LY) and high viscosity (MW greater than 50,000 daltons, for example, E4MCR, E10MCR, K4M, K15M and K100M and the Methocel™ K series) HPMC. Other commercially available types of HPMC include the Shin Etsu Metolose 90SH series.

[00230] The choice of matrix material can have a large effect on the maximum drug concentration attained by the device as well as the maintenance of a high drug concentration. The matrix material can be a concentration-enhancing polymer, for example, as described in WO05/011634.

[00231] Other materials useful as the erodible matrix material include, but are not limited to, pullulan, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, polyvinyl alcohol, polyvinyl acetate, glycerol fatty acid esters, polyacrylamide, polyacrylic acid, copolymers of ethacrylic acid or methacrylic acid (EUDRAGIT, Rohm America, Inc., Piscataway, New Jersey) and other acrylic acid derivatives such as homopolymers and copolymers of butylmethacrylate, methylmethacrylate, ethylmethacrylate, ethylacrylate, (2-dimethylaminoethyl) methacrylate, and (trimethylaminoethyl) methacrylate chloride.

[00232] The erodible matrix polymer may contain a wide variety of the same types of additives and excipients known in the pharmaceutical arts, including osmopolymers, osmagens, solubility-enhancing or-retarding agents and excipients that promote stability or processing of the device.

[00233] Alternatively, the agents of the present invention may be administered by or incorporated into a non-erodible matrix device. In such devices, an agent described herein is distributed in an inert matrix. The agent is released by diffusion through the inert matrix. Examples of materials suitable for the inert matrix include insoluble plastics (e.g. methyl acrylate-methyl methacrylate copolymers, polyvinyl chloride, polyethylene), hydrophilic polymers (e.g. ethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate, crosslinked polyvinylpyrrolidone (also known as crospovidone)), and fatty compounds (e.g. carnauba wax, microcrystalline wax, and triglycerides). Such devices are described further in Remington: The Science and Practice of Pharmacy, 20th edition (2000).

[00234] Matrix controlled release devices may be prepared by blending an agent described herein and other excipients together, and then forming the blend into a tablet, caplet, pill, or other device formed by compressive forces. Such compressed devices may be formed using any of a wide variety of presses used in the fabrication of pharmaceutical devices. Examples include single-Punch presses, rotary tablet presses, and multilayer rotary tablet presses, all well known in the art. See for example, Remington: The Science and Practice of Pharmacy, 20th Edition, 2000. The compressed device may be of any shape, including round, oval, oblong, cylindrical, or triangular. The upper and lower surfaces of the compressed device may be flat, round, concave, or convex.

[00235] In certain embodiments, when formed by compression, the device has a strength of at least 5 Kiloponds (Kp)/cm² (for example, at least 7 Kp/cm²). Strength is the fracture force, also known as the tablet hardness required to fracture a tablet formed from the materials, divided by the maximum cross-sectional area of the tablet normal to that force. The fracture force may be measured using a Schleuniger Tablet Hardness Tester, Model 6D. The compression force required to achieve this strength will depend on the size of the tablet, but generally will be greater than about 5 kP/cm². Friability is a well-known measure of a device's resistance to surface abrasion that measures weight loss in percentage after subjecting the device to a standardized agitation procedure. Friability values of from 0.8 to 1.0% are regarded as constituting the upper limit of acceptability. Devices having a strength of greater than 5 kP/cm² generally are very robust, having a friability of less than 0.5%. Other methods for forming matrix controlled-release

devices are well known in the pharmaceutical arts. See for example, Remington: The Science and Practice of Pharmacy, 20th Edition, 2000.

[00236] As noted above, the agents described herein may also be incorporated into an osmotic control device. Such devices generally include a core containing one or more agents as described herein and a water permeable, non-dissolving and non-eroding coating surrounding the core which controls the influx of water into the core from an aqueous environment of use so as to cause drug release by extrusion of some or all of the core to the environment of use. In certain embodiments, the coating is polymeric, aqueous-Permeable, and has at least one delivery port. The core of the osmotic device optionally includes an osmotic agent which acts to imbibe water from the surrounding environment via such a semi-Permeable membrane. The osmotic agent contained in the core of this device may be an aqueous-swellaable hydrophilic polymer or it may be an osmogen, also known as an osmagent. Pressure is generated within the device which forces the agent(s) out of the device via an orifice (of a size designed to minimize solute diffusion while preventing the build-up of a hydrostatic pressure head). Nonlimiting examples of osmotic control devices are disclosed in U. S. Patent Application Serial No. 09/495,061.

[00237] Osmotic agents create a driving force for transport of water from the environment of use into the core of the device. Osmotic agents include but are not limited to water-swellaable hydrophilic polymers, and osmogens (or osmagens). Thus, the core may include water-swellaable hydrophilic polymers, both ionic and nonionic, often referred to as osmopolymers and hydrogels. The amount of water-swellaable hydrophilic polymers present in the core may range from about 5 to about 80 wt% (including for example, 10 to 50 wt%). Nonlimiting examples of core materials include hydrophilic vinyl and acrylic polymers, polysaccharides such as calcium alginate, polyethylene oxide (PEO), polyethylene glycol (PEG), polypropylene glycol (PPG), poly (2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate), poly (acrylic) acid, poly (methacrylic) acid, polyvinylpyrrolidone (PVP) and crosslinked PVP, polyvinyl alcohol (PVA), PVA/PVP copolymers and PVA/PVP copolymers with hydrophobic monomers such as methyl methacrylate, vinyl acetate, and the like, hydrophilic polyurethanes containing large PEO blocks, sodium croscarmellose,

carrageenan, hydroxyethyl cellulose (HEC), hydroxypropyl cellulose (HPC), hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose (HPMC), carboxymethyl cellulose (CMC) and carboxyethyl cellulose (CEC), sodium alginate, polycarbophil, gelatin, xanthan gum, and sodium starch glycolat. Other materials include hydrogels comprising interpenetrating networks of polymers that may be formed by addition or by condensation polymerization, the components of which may comprise hydrophilic and hydrophobic monomers such as those just mentioned. Water-swellaable hydrophilic polymers include but are not limited to PEO, PEG, PVP, sodium croscarmellose, HPMC, sodium starch glycolate, polyacrylic acid and crosslinked versions or mixtures thereof.

[00238] The core may also include an osmogen (or osmagent). The amount of osmogen present in the core may range from about 2 to about 70 wt% (including, for example, from 10 to 50 wt%). Typical classes of suitable osmogens are water-SOLuble organic acids, salts and sugars that are capable of imbibing water to thereby effect an osmotic pressure gradient across the barrier of the surrounding coating. Typical useful osmogens include but are not limited to magnesium sulfate, magnesium chloride, calcium chloride, sodium chloride, lithium chloride, potassium sulfate, sodium carbonate, sodium sulfite, lithium sulfate, potassium chloride, sodium sulfate, mannitol, xylitol, urea, sorbitol, inositol, raffinose, sucrose, glucose, fructose, lactose, citric acid, succinic acid, tartaric acid, and mixtures thereof. In certain embodiments, the osmogen is glucose, lactose, sucrose, mannitol, xylitol, sodium chloride, including combinations thereof.

[00239] The core may include a wide variety of additives and excipients that enhance the performance of the dosage form or that promote stability, tableting or processing. Such additives and excipients include tableting aids, surfactants, water- soluble polymers, pH modifiers, fillers, binders, pigments, disintegrants, antioxidants, lubricants and flavorants. Nonlimiting examples of additives and excipients include but are not limited to those described elsewhere herein as well as microcrystalline cellulose, metallic salts of acids (e.g. aluminum stearate, calcium stearate, magnesium stearate, sodium stearate, zinc stearate), pH control agents (e.g. buffers, organic acids, organic acid salts, organic and inorganic bases), fatty acids, hydrocarbons and fatty alcohols (e.g. stearic acid, palmitic acid, liquid paraffin, stearyl alcohol, and palmitol), fatty acid esters (e.g. glyceryl

(mono-and di-) stearates, triglycerides, glyceryl (palmiticstearic) ester, sorbitan esters (e.g. sorbitan monostearate, saccharose monostearate, saccharose monopalmitate, sodium stearyl fumarate), polyoxyethylene sorbitan esters), surfactants (e.g. alkyl sulfates (e.g. sodium lauryl sulfate, magnesium lauryl sulfate), polymers (e.g. polyethylene glycols, polyoxyethylene glycols, polyoxyethylene, polyoxypropylene ethers, including copolymers thereof), polytetrafluoroethylene), and inorganic materials (e.g. talc, calcium phosphate), cyclodextrins, sugars (e.g. lactose, xylitol), sodium starch glycolate). Nonlimiting examples of disintegrants are sodium starch glycolate (e. g., Explotab[™] CLV, (microcrystalline cellulose (e. g., Avicel[™]), microcrystalline silicified cellulose (e.g., ProSolv[™]), croscarmellose sodium (e. g., Ac-Di-SOL[™]). When the agent described herein is a solid amorphous dispersion formed by a solvent process, such additives may be added directly to the spray-drying solution when forming an agent described herein/concentration-enhancing polymer dispersion such that the additive is dissolved or suspended in the solution as a slurry, Alternatively, such additives may be added following the spray-drying process to aid in forming the final controlled release device.

[00240] A nonlimiting example of an osmotic device consists of one or more drug layers containing an agent described herein, such as a solid amorphous drug/polymer dispersion, and a sweller layer that comprises a water-swellaable polymer, with a coating surrounding the drug layer and sweller layer. Each layer may contain other excipients such as tableting aids, osmagents, surfactants, water-SOLuble polymers and water-swellaable polymers.

[00241] Such osmotic delivery devices may be fabricated in various geometries including bilayer (wherein the core comprises a drug layer and a sweller layer adjacent to each other), trilayer (wherein the core comprises a sweller layer sandwiched between two drug layers) and concentric (wherein the core comprises a central sweller agent surrounded by the drug layer). The coating of such a tablet comprises a membrane permeable to water but substantially impermeable to drug and excipients contained within. The coating contains one or more exit passageways or ports in communication with the drug-containing layer(s) for delivering the drug agent. The drug-containing layer(s) of the core contains the drug agent (including optional osmagents and hydrophilic water-SOLuble

polymers), while the sweller layer consists of an expandable hydrogel, with or without additional osmotic agents.

[00242] When placed in an aqueous medium, the tablet imbibes water through the membrane, causing the agent to form a dispensable aqueous agent, and causing the hydrogel layer to expand and push against the drug-containing agent, forcing the agent out of the exit passageway. The agent can swell, aiding in forcing the drug out of the passageway. Drug can be delivered from this type of delivery system either dissolved or dispersed in the agent that is expelled from the exit passageway.

[00243] The rate of drug delivery is controlled by such factors as the permeability and thickness of the coating, the osmotic pressure of the drug-containing layer, the degree of hydrophilicity of the hydrogel layer, and the surface area of the device. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that increasing the thickness of the coating will reduce the release rate, while any of the following will increase the release rate: increasing the permeability of the coating; increasing the hydrophilicity of the hydrogel layer; increasing the osmotic pressure of the drug-containing layer; or increasing the device's surface area.

[00244] Other materials useful in forming the drug-containing agent, in addition to the agent described herein itself, include HPMC, PEO and PVP and other pharmaceutically acceptable carriers. In addition, osmagents such as sugars or salts, including but not limited to sucrose, lactose, xylitol, mannitol, or sodium chloride, may be added. Materials which are useful for forming the hydrogel layer include sodium CMC, PEO (e.g. polymers having an average molecular weight from about 5,000,000 to about 7,500,000 daltons), poly (acrylic acid), sodium (polyacrylate), sodium croscarmellose, sodium starch glycolat, PVP, crosslinked PVP, and other high molecular weight hydrophilic materials.

[00245] In the case of a bilayer geometry, the delivery port(s) or exit passageway(s) may be located on the side of the tablet containing the drug agent or may be on both sides of the tablet or even on the edge of the tablet so as to connect both the drug layer and the sweller layer with the exterior of the device. The exit passageway(s) may be produced by mechanical means or by laser drilling, or by creating a difficult-to-coat region on the tablet by use of special tooling during tablet compression or by other means.

[00246] The osmotic device can also be made with a homogeneous core surrounded by a semipermeable membrane coating, as in US3845770. The agent described herein can be incorporated into a tablet core and a semipermeable membrane coating can be applied via conventional tablet-coating techniques such as using a pan coater. A drug delivery passageway can then be formed in this coating by drilling a hole in the coating, either by use of a laser or mechanical means. Alternatively, the passageway may be formed by rupturing a portion of the coating or by creating a region on the tablet that is difficult to coat, as described above. In one embodiment, an osmotic device comprises: (a) a single-layer compressed core comprising: (i) an agent described herein, (ii) a hydroxyethylcellulose, and (iii) an osmagent, wherein the hydroxyl-ethylcellulose is present in the core from about 2.0% to about 35% by weight and the osmagent is present from about 15% to about 70% by weight; (b) a water-Permeable layer surrounding the core; and (c) at least one passageway within the water-Permeable layer (b) for delivering the drug to a fluid environment surrounding the tablet. In certain embodiments, the device is shaped such that the surface area to volume ratio (of a water-swollen tablet) is greater than 0.6 mm^{-1} (including, for example, greater than 1.0 mm^{-1}). The passageway connecting the core with the fluid environment can be situated along the tablet band area. In certain embodiments, the shape is an oblong shape where the ratio of the tablet tooling axes, i.e., the major and minor axes which define the shape of the tablet, are between 1.3 and 3 (including, for example, between 1.5 and 2.5). In one embodiment, the combination of the agent described herein and the osmagent have an average ductility from about 100 to about 200 Mpa, an average tensile strength from about 0.8 to about 2.0 Mpa, and an average brittle fracture index less than about 0.2. The single-layer core may optionally include a disintegrant, a bioavailability enhancing additive, and/or a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient, carrier or diluent. Nonlimiting examples of such devices are disclosed, for example, in U. S. provisional Patent Application Serial No. 60/353,151.

[00247] In certain embodiments, entrainment of particles of agents described herein in the extruding fluid during operation of such osmotic device is desirable. For the particles to be well entrained, the agent drug form is dispersed in the fluid before the particles have

an opportunity to settle in the tablet core. One means of accomplishing this is by adding a disintegrant that serves to break up the compressed core into its particulate components. Nonlimiting examples of standard disintegrants include materials such as sodium starch glycolate (e. g. , Explotab[™] CLV), microcrystalline cellulose (e. g., Avicel[™]), microcrystalline silicified cellulose (e. g., ProSoIv[™]) and croscarmellose sodium (e. g., Ac-Di-SOI[™]), and other disintegrants known to those skilled in the art. Depending upon the particular formulation, some disintegrants work better than others. Several disintegrants tend to form gels as they swell with water, thus hindering drug delivery from the device. Non-gelling, non-swelling disintegrants provide a more rapid dispersion of the drug particles within the core as water enters the core. In certain embodiments, non-gelling, non-swelling disintegrants are resins, for example, ion-exchange resins. In one embodiment, the resin is Amberlite[™] IRP 88 (available from Rohm and Haas, Philadelphia, PA). When used, the disintegrant is present in amounts ranging from about 1-25% of the core agent.

[00248] Water-SOLuble polymers are added to keep particles of the agent suspended inside the device before they can be delivered through the passageway(s) (e.g., an orifice). High viscosity polymers are useful in preventing settling. However, the polymer in combination with the agent is extruded through the passageway(s) under relatively low pressures. At a given extrusion pressure, the extrusion rate typically slows with increased viscosity. Certain polymers in combination with particles of the agent described herein form high viscosity solutions with water but are still capable of being extruded from the tablets with a relatively low force. In contrast, polymers having a low weight-average, molecular weight (< about 300,000) do not form sufficiently viscous solutions inside the tablet core to allow complete delivery due to particle settling. Settling of the particles is a problem when such devices are prepared with no polymer added, which leads to poor drug delivery unless the tablet is constantly agitated to keep the particles from settling inside the core. Settling is also problematic when the particles are large and/or of high density such that the rate of settling increases.

[00249] In certain embodiments, the water-SOLuble polymers for such osmotic devices do not interact with the drug. In certain embodiments the water-SOLuble polymer is a non-

ionic polymer. A nonlimiting example of a non-ionic polymer forming solutions having a high visco-sity yet still extrudable at low pressures is Natrosol™ 250H (high molecular weight hydroxyethyl-cellulose, available from Hercules Incorporated, Aqualon Division, Wilmington, DE; MW equal to about 1 million daltons and a degree of polymerization equal to about 3,700). Natrosol 250H™ provides effective drug delivery at concentrations as low as about 3% by weight of the core when combined with an osmagent. Natrosol 250H™ NF is a high-viscosity grade nonionic cellulose ether that is soluble in hot or cold water. The viscosity of a 1% solution of Natrosol 250H using a Brookfield LVT (30 rpm) at 25°C is between about 1, 500 and about 2,500 cps.

[00250] In certain embodiments, hydroxyethylcellulose polymers for use in these monolayer osmotic tablets have a weight-average, molecular weight from about 300,000 to about 1.5 million. The hydroxyethylcellulose polymer is typically present in the core in an amount from about 2.0% to about 35% by weight.

[00251] Another example of an osmotic device is an osmotic capsule. The capsule shell or portion of the capsule shell can be semipermeable. The capsule can be filled either by a powder or liquid consisting of an agent described herein, excipients that imbibe water to provide osmotic potential, and/or a water-swellaable polymer, or optionally solubilizing excipients. The capsule core can also be made such that it has a bilayer or multilayer agent analogous to the bilayer, trilayer or concentric geometries described above.

[00252] Another class of osmotic device useful in this invention comprises coated swellaable tablets, for example, as described in EP378404. Coated swellaable tablets comprise a tablet core comprising an agent described herein and a swelling material, preferably a hydrophilic polymer, coated with a membrane, which contains holes, or pores through which, in the aqueous use environment, the hydrophilic polymer can extrude and carry out the agent. Alternatively, the membrane may contain polymeric or low molecular weight water-Soluble porosigens. Porosigens dissolve in the aqueous use environment, providing pores through which the hydrophilic polymer and agent may extrude. Examples of porosigens are water-Soluble polymers such as HPMC, PEG, and low molecular weight compounds such as glycerol, sucrose, glucose, and sodium chloride. In addition, pores may be formed in the coating by drilling holes in the coating

using a laser or other mechanical means. In this class of osmotic devices, the membrane material may comprise any film-forming polymer, including polymers which are water permeable or impermeable, providing that the membrane deposited on the tablet core is porous or contains water-SOLuble porosigens or possesses a macroscopic hole for water ingress and drug release. Embodiments of this class of sustained release devices may also be multilayered, as described, for example, in EP378404.

[00253] When an agent described herein is a liquid or oil, such as a lipid vehicle formulation, for example as described in WO05/011634, the osmotic controlled-release device may comprise a soft-gel or gelatin capsule formed with a composite wall and comprising the liquid formulation where the wall comprises a barrier layer formed over the external surface of the capsule, an expandable layer formed over the barrier layer, and a semipermeable layer formed over the expandable layer. A delivery port connects the liquid formulation with the aqueous use environment. Such devices are described, for example, in US6419952, US6342249, US5324280, US4672850, US4627850, US4203440, and US3995631.

[00254] The osmotic controlled release devices of the present invention can also comprise a coating. In certain embodiments, the osmotic controlled release device coating exhibits one or more of the following features: is water-Permeable, has at least one port for the delivery of drug, and is non-dissolving and non-eroding during release of the drug formulation, such that drug is substantially entirely delivered through the delivery port(s) or pores as opposed to delivery primarily via permeation through the coating material itself. Delivery ports include any passageway, opening or pore whether made mechanically, by laser drilling, by pore formation either during the coating process or *in situ* during use or by rupture during use. In certain embodiments, the coating is present in an amount ranging from about 5 to 30 wt% (including, for example, 10 to 20 wt%) relative to the core weight.

[00255] One form of coating is a semipermeable polymeric membrane that has the port(s) formed therein either prior to or during use. Thickness of such a polymeric membrane may vary between about 20 and 800 μm (including, for example, between about 100 to 500 μm). The diameter of the delivery port (s) may generally range in size from 0.1 to

3000 μm or greater (including, for example, from about 50 to 3000 μm in diameter). Such port(s) may be formed post-coating by mechanical or laser drilling or may be formed *in situ* by rupture of the coatings; such rupture may be controlled by intentionally incorporating a relatively small weak portion into the coating. Delivery ports may also be formed *in situ* by erosion of a plug of water-SOLuble material or by rupture of a thinner portion of the coating over an indentation in the core. In addition, delivery ports may be formed during coating, as in the case of asymmetric membrane coatings of the type disclosed in US5612059 and US5698220. The delivery port may be formed *in situ* by rupture of the coating, for example, when a collection of beads that may be of essentially identical or of a variable agent are used. Drug is primarily released from such beads following rupture of the coating and, following rupture, such release may be gradual or relatively sudden. When the collection of beads has a variable agent, the agent may be chosen such that the beads rupture at various times following administration, resulting in the overall release of drug being sustained for a desired duration.

- [00256] Coatings may be dense, microporous or asymmetric, having a dense region supported by a thick porous region such as those disclosed in US5612059 and US5698220. When the coating is dense the coating can be composed of a water-Permeable material. When the coating is porous, it may be composed of either a water-Permeable or a water-impermeable material. When the coating is composed of a porous water-impermeable material, water permeates through the pores of the coating as either a liquid or a vapor. Nonlimiting examples of osmotic devices that utilize dense coatings include US3995631 and US3845770. Such dense coatings are permeable to the external fluid such as water and may be composed of any of the materials mentioned in these patents as well as other water-Permeable polymers known in the art.
- [00257] The membranes may also be porous as disclosed, for example, in US5654005 and US5458887 or even be formed from water-resistant polymers. US5120548 describes another suitable process for forming coatings from a mixture of a water-insoluble polymer and a leachable water-SOLuble additive. The porous membranes may also be formed by the addition of pore-formers as disclosed in US4612008. In addition, vapor-Permeable coatings may even be formed from extremely hydrophobic materials

such as polyethylene or polyvinylidene difluoride that, when dense, are essentially water-impermeable, as long as such coatings are porous. Materials useful in forming the coating include but are not limited to various grades of acrylic, vinyls, ethers, polyamides, polyesters and cellulosic derivatives that are water-permeable and water-insoluble at physiologically relevant pHs, or are susceptible to being rendered water-insoluble by chemical alteration such as by crosslinking. Nonlimiting examples of suitable polymers (or crosslinked versions) useful in forming the coating include plasticized, unplasticized and reinforced cellulose acetate (CA), cellulose diacetate, cellulose triacetate, CA propionate, cellulose nitrate, cellulose acetate butyrate (CAB), CA ethyl carbamate, CAP, CA methyl carbamate, CA succinate, cellulose acetate trimellitate (CAT), CA dimethylaminoacetate, CA ethyl carbonate, CA chloroacetate, CA ethyl oxalate, CA methyl sulfonate, CA butyl sulfonate, CA p-toluene sulfonate, agar acetate, amylose triacetate, beta glucan acetate, beta glucan triacetate, acetaldehyde dimethyl acetate, triacetate of locust bean gum, hydroxylated ethylene-vinylacetate, EC, PEG, PPG, PEG/PPG copolymers, PVP, HEC, HPC, CMC, CMEC, HPMC, HPMCP, HPMCAS, HPMCAT, poly (acrylic) acids and esters and poly- (methacrylic) acids and esters and copolymers thereof, starch, dextran, dextrin, chitosan, collagen, gelatin, polyalkenes, polyethers, polysulfones, polyethersulfones, polystyrenes, polyvinyl halides, polyvinyl esters and ethers, natural waxes and synthetic waxes. In various embodiments, the coating agent comprises a cellulosic polymer, in particular cellulose ethers, cellulose esters and cellulose ester-ethers, i.e., cellulosic derivatives having a mixture of ester and ether substituents, the coating materials are made or derived from poly (acrylic) acids and esters, poly (methacrylic) acids and esters, and copolymers thereof, the coating agent comprises cellulose acetate, the coating comprises a cellulosic polymer and PEG, the coating comprises cellulose acetate and PEG.

[00258] Coating is conducted in conventional fashion, typically by dissolving or suspending the coating material in a solvent and then coating by dipping, spray coating or by pan-coating. In certain embodiments, the coating solution contains 5 to 15 wt% polymer. Typical solvents useful with the cellulosic polymers mentioned above include but are not limited to acetone, methyl acetate, ethyl acetate, isopropyl acetate, n-butyl

acetate, methyl isobutyl ketone, methyl propyl ketone, ethylene glycol monoethyl ether, ethylene glycol monoethyl acetate, methylene dichloride, ethylene dichloride, propylene dichloride, nitroethane, nitropropane, tetrachloroethane, 1,4-dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, diglyme, water, and mixtures thereof. Pore-formers and non-solvents (such as water, glycerol and ethanol) or plasticizers (such as diethyl phthalate) may also be added in any amount as long as the polymer remains soluble at the spray temperature. Pore-formers and their use in fabricating coatings are described, for example, in US5612059. Coatings may also be hydrophobic microporous layers wherein the pores are substantially filled with a gas and are not wetted by the aqueous medium but are permeable to water vapor, as disclosed, for example, in US5798119. Such hydrophobic but water-vapor permeable coatings are typically composed of hydrophobic polymers such as polyalkenes, polyacrylic acid derivatives, polyethers, polysulfones, polyethersulfones, polystyrenes, polyvinyl halides, polyvinyl esters and ethers, natural waxes and synthetic waxes. Hydrophobic microporous coating materials include but are not limited to polystyrene, polysulfones, polyethersulfones, polyethylene, polypropylene, polyvinyl chloride, polyvinylidene fluoride and polytetrafluoroethylene. Such hydrophobic coatings can be made by known phase inversion methods using any of vapor-quench, liquid quench, thermal processes, leaching soluble material from the coating or by sintering coating particles. In thermal processes, a solution of polymer in a latent solvent is brought to liquid-liquid phase separation in a cooling step. When evaporation of the solvent is not prevented, the resulting membrane will typically be porous. Such coating processes may be conducted by the processes disclosed, for example, in US4247498, US4490431 and US4744906. Osmotic controlled-release devices may be prepared using procedures known in the pharmaceutical arts. See for example, Remington: The Science and Practice of Pharmacy, 20th Edition, 2000.

[00259] As further noted above, the agents described herein may be provided in the form of microparticulates, generally ranging in size from about 10 μ m to about 2mm (including, for example, from about 100 μ m to 1mm in diameter). Such multiparticulates may be packaged, for example, in a capsule such as a gelatin capsule or a capsule formed from an aqueous-Soluble polymer such as HPMCAS, HPMC or starch; dosed as a

suspension or slurry in a liquid ; or they may be formed into a tablet, caplet, or pill by compression or other processes known in the art. Such multiparticulates may be made by any known process, such as wet- and dry-granulation processes, extrusion/spheronization, roller-compaction, melt-congealing, or by spray-coating seed cores. For example, in wet-and dry- granulation processes, the agent described herein and optional excipients may be granulated to form multiparticulates of the desired size. Other excipients, such as a binder (e. g., microcrystalline cellulose), may be blended with the agent to aid in processing and forming the multiparticulates. In the case of wet granulation, a binder such as microcrystalline cellulose may be included in the granulation fluid to aid in forming a suitable multiparticulate. See, for example, Remington : The Science and Practice of Pharmacy, 20th Edition, 2000. In any case, the resulting particles may themselves constitute the therapeutic composition or they may be coated by various film-forming materials such as enteric polymers or water-swellaable or water-SOLuble polymers, or they may be combined with other excipients or vehicles to aid in dosing to patients.

[00260] In certain embodiments, it may be desirable to provide for the immediate release of one or more of the agents described herein, and the controlled release of one or more other agents. For example, in one embodiment, a compound described herein can be provided in an immediate release formulation together with a fibrate (e.g. Tricor) or a CETP inhibitor (e.g. torcetrapib) in a controlled release format. In another embodiment, a compound described herein can be provided together with an HMG CoA reductase inhibitor in an immediate release formulation. For example, a compound described herein can be coformulated with an HMG CoA reductase inhibitor in the immediate release formulation described in WO05/011634 (page 29, line 31 to page 33 (entire page)). In other embodiments, a compound described herein is provided in a controlled release format together with another agent (e.g. an HMG CoA reductase inhibitor) in an immediate release formulation. In other embodiments, one or more agents described herein (for example, a compound described herein and an HMG CoA reductase inhibitor) can be provided in an immediate release formulation together with one or more other agents (for example, a fibrate and/or torcetrapib) in a controlled release format.

[00261] The agents can be administered, e.g., by intravenous injection, intramuscular injection, subcutaneous injection, intraperitoneal injection, topical, sublingual, intraarticular (in the joints), intradermal, buccal, ophthalmic (including intraocular), intranasal (including using a cannula), or by other routes. The agents can be administered orally, e.g., as a tablet or cachet containing a predetermined amount of the active ingredient, gel, pellet, paste, syrup, bolus, electuary, slurry, capsule, powder, granules, as a solution or a suspension in an aqueous liquid or a non-aqueous liquid, as an oil-in-water liquid emulsion or a water-in-oil liquid emulsion, via a micellar formulation (see, e.g. WO 97/11682) via a liposomal formulation (see, e.g., EP 736299, WO 99/59550 and WO 97/13500), via formulations described in WO 03/094886 or in some other form. Orally administered compositions can include binders, lubricants, inert diluents, lubricating, surface active or dispersing agents, flavoring agents, and humectants. Orally administered formulations such as tablets may optionally be coated or scored and may be formulated so as to provide sustained, delayed or controlled release of the active ingredient therein. The agents can also be administered transdermally (i.e. via reservoir-type or matrix-type patches, microneedles, thermal poration, hypodermic needles, iontophoresis, electroporation, ultrasound or other forms of sonophoresis, jet injection, or a combination of any of the preceding methods (Prausnitz et al. 2004, Nature Reviews Drug Discovery 3:115)). The agents can be administered locally, for example, at the site of injury to an injured blood vessel. The agents can be coated on a stent. The agents can be administered using high-velocity transdermal particle injection techniques using the hydrogel particle formulation described in U.S. 20020061336. Additional particle formulations are described in WO 00/45792, WO 00/53160, and WO 02/19989. An example of a transdermal formulation containing plaster and the absorption promoter dimethylisobutylate can be found in WO 89/04179. WO 96/11705 provides formulations suitable for transdermal administration. The agents can be administered in the form a suppository or by other vaginal or rectal means. The agents can be administered in a transmembrane formulation as described in WO 90/07923. The agents can be administered non-invasively via the dehydrated particles described in U.S. 6,485,706. The agent can be administered in an enteric-coated drug formulation as

described in WO 02/49621. The agents can be administered intranasally using the formulation described in U.S. 5,179,079. Formulations suitable for parenteral injection are described in WO 00/62759. The agents can be administered using the casein formulation described in U. S. 20030206939 and WO 00/06108. The agents can be administered using the particulate formulations described in U.S. 20020034536.

[00262] The agents, alone or in combination with other suitable components, can be administered by pulmonary route utilizing several techniques including but not limited to intratracheal instillation (delivery of solution into the lungs by syringe), intratracheal delivery of liposomes, insufflation (administration of powder formulation by syringe or any other similar device into the lungs) and aerosol inhalation. Aerosols (e.g., jet or ultrasonic nebulizers, metered-dose inhalers (MDIs), and dry-Powder inhalers (DPIs)) can also be used in intranasal applications. Aerosol formulations are stable dispersions or suspensions of solid material and liquid droplets in a gaseous medium and can be placed into pressurized acceptable propellants, such as hydrofluoroalkanes (HFAs, i.e. HFA-134a and HFA-227, or a mixture thereof), dichlorodifluoromethane (or other chlorofluorocarbon propellants such as a mixture of Propellants 11, 12, and/or 114), propane, nitrogen, and the like. Pulmonary formulations may include permeation enhancers such as fatty acids, and saccharides, chelating agents, enzyme inhibitors (e.g., protease inhibitors), adjuvants (e.g., glycocholate, surfactin, span 85, and nafamostat), preservatives (e.g., benzalkonium chloride or chlorobutanol), and ethanol (normally up to 5% but possibly up to 20%, by weight). Ethanol is commonly included in aerosol compositions as it can improve the function of the metering valve and in some cases also improve the stability of the dispersion. Pulmonary formulations may also include surfactants which include but are not limited to bile salts and those described in U.S. 6,524,557 and references therein. The surfactants described in U.S. 6,524,557, e.g., a C8-C16 fatty acid salt, a bile salt, a phospholipid, or alkyl saccharide are advantageous in that some of them also reportedly enhance absorption of the compound in the formulation. Also suitable in the invention are dry powder formulations comprising a therapeutically effective amount of active compound blended with an appropriate carrier and adapted for use in connection with a dry-Powder inhaler. Absorption enhancers

which can be added to dry powder formulations of the present invention include those described in U.S. 6,632,456. WO 02/080884 describes new methods for the surface modification of powders. Aerosol formulations may include U.S. 5,230,884, U.S. 5,292,499, WO 01/78694, WO 01/78696, U.S. 2003019437, U. S. 20030165436, and WO 96/40089 (which includes vegetable oil). Sustained release formulations suitable for inhalation are described in U.S. 20010036481A1, 20030232019A1, and U.S. 20040018243A1 as well as in WO 01/13891, WO 02/067902, WO 03/072080, and WO 03/079885. Pulmonary formulations containing microparticles are described in WO 03/015750, U.S. 20030008013, and WO 00/00176. Pulmonary formulations containing stable glassy state powder are described in U.S. 20020141945 and U.S. 6,309,671. Other aerosol formulations are described in EP 1338272A1 WO 90/09781, U. S. 5,348,730, U.S. 6,436,367, WO 91/04011, and U.S. 6,294,153 and U.S. 6,290,987 describes a liposomal based formulation that can be administered via aerosol or other means. Powder formulations for inhalation are described in U.S. 20030053960 and WO 01/60341. The agents can be administered intranasally as described in U.S. 20010038824.

[00263] Solutions of medicament in buffered saline and similar vehicles are commonly employed to generate an aerosol in a nebulizer. Simple nebulizers operate on Bernoulli's principle and employ a stream of air or oxygen to generate the spray particles. More complex nebulizers employ ultrasound to create the spray particles. Both types are well known in the art and are described in standard textbooks of pharmacy such as Sprowls' American Pharmacy and Remington's The Science and Practice of Pharmacy. Other devices for generating aerosols employ compressed gases, usually hydrofluorocarbons and chlorofluorocarbons, which are mixed with the medicament and any necessary excipients in a pressurized container, these devices are likewise described in standard textbooks such as Sprowls and Remington.

[00264] The agent can be incorporated into a liposome to improve half-life. The agent can also be conjugated to polyethylene glycol (PEG) chains. Methods for pegylation and additional formulations containing PEG-conjugates (i.e. PEG-based hydrogels, PEG modified liposomes) can be found in Harris and Chess, Nature Reviews Drug Discovery

2: 214-221 and the references therein. The agent can be administered via a nanocochleate or cochleate delivery vehicle (BioDelivery Sciences International). The agents can be delivered transmucosally (i.e. across a mucosal surface such as the vagina, eye or nose) using formulations such as that described in U.S. 5,204,108. The agents can be formulated in microcapsules as described in WO 88/01165. The agent can be administered intra-orally using the formulations described in U.S. 20020055496, WO 00/47203, and U.S. 6,495,120. The agent can be delivered using nanoemulsion formulations described in WO 01/91728A2.

Administration and formulation of combitherapy protein/peptide agents

[00265] Some of the agents used in combitherapy with compounds described herein are proteins (e.g. nitric oxide synthase isoforms, HDL associated proteins such as ApoA-I or Apo A-I Milano) or peptides (e.g. peptides which mitigates one or more symptoms of atherosclerosis, peptides and peptide analogues that mimic the structural and pharmacological properties of human ApoA-I, Exenatide®). In some embodiments, the recombinant or purified protein is administered together with a compound described herein. In alternative embodiments, genes encoding the protein or peptide to be delivered may be administered, rather than the protein. Gene transfer can be obtained using direct transfer of genetic material, in a plasmid or viral vector, or via transfer of genetic material in cells or carriers such as cationic liposomes. Such methods are well known in the art and readily adaptable for use in the therapies described herein. For example, studies by Wolff et al., *Biotechniques* 11:474-85 (1991), demonstrate injection of naked DNA into muscle allows long term and low expression levels of proteins coded for within the DNA sequence. Administration of naked DNA to smooth muscle layers can be achieved by use of an intramural device, such as an INFILTRATOR™ and allow expression of the proteins or their alpha helical domains to treat the injured vessel. Transfer vectors can be any nucleotide construction used to deliver genes into cells (e.g., a plasmid), or as part of a general strategy to deliver genes, e.g., as part of recombinant retrovirus or adenovirus (Ram et al. *Cancer Res.* 53:83-88, (1993)). Appropriate means for transfection, including viral vectors, chemical transfectants, or physico-mechanical methods such as electroporation and direct diffusion of DNA, are described by, for

example, Wolff, J. A., et al., Science, 247, 1465-1468, (1990); and Wolff, J. A. Nature, 352, 815-818, (1991). Plasmid or viral vectors are agents that transport the gene into a cell without degradation and may include a promoter yielding expression of the gene in the cell into which it is delivered. In certain embodiments vectors are derived from either a virus or a retrovirus. Viral vectors include but are not limited to those derived from Adenovirus, Adeno-associated virus, Herpes virus, Vaccinia virus, Polio virus, AIDS virus, neuronal trophic virus, Sindbis and other RNA viruses, including these viruses with the HIV backbone. Vectors from other viral families which share the properties of these viruses may make them suitable for use as vectors. Retroviral vectors include but are not limited to those derived from include Murine Moloney Leukemia virus, MMLV, and retroviruses that express the desirable properties of MMLV as a vector. In certain embodiments where non-Proliferating cells are involved, retroviral vectors are not used. Retroviral vectors, in general, are described by Verma, I. M., Retroviral vectors for gene transfer. In MICROBIOLOGY-1985, American Society for Microbiology, pp. 229-232, Washington, (1985). Examples of methods for using retroviral vectors for gene therapy are described in US4868116, US4980286, WO90/02806, WO 89/07136 and Mulligan, (Science 260:926-932 (1993)).

[00266] Adenovirus vectors are relatively stable and easy to work with, have high titers, and can be delivered in aerosol formulation, and can transfect non-dividing cells. The construction of replication-defective adenoviruses has been described (Berkner et al., J. Virology 61:1213-1220 (1987); Massie et al., Mol. Cell. Biol. 6:2872-2883 (1986); Haj-Ahmad et al., J. Virology 57:267-274 (1986); Davidson et al., J. Virology 61:1226-1239 (1987); Zhang "Generation and identification of recombinant adenovirus by liposome-mediated transfection and PCR analysis" BioTechniques 15:868-872 (1993)). Adenoviral derived vectors are limited in the extent to which they can spread to other cell types, since they can replicate within an initial infected cell, but are unable to form new infectious viral particles. Recombinant adenoviruses have been shown to achieve high efficiency gene transfer after direct, in vivo delivery to airway epithelium, hepatocytes, vascular endothelium, CNS parenchyma and a number of other tissue sites (Morsy, J. Clin. Invest. 92:1580-1586 (1993); Kirshenbaum, J. Clin. Invest. 92:381-387 (1993);

Roessler, J. Clin. Invest. 92:1085-1092 (1993); Moullier, Nature Genetics 4:154-159 (1993); La Salle, Science 259:988-990 (1993); Gomez-Foix, J. Biol. Chem. 267:25129-25134 (1992); Rich, Human Gene Therapy 4:461-476 (1993); Zabner, Nature Genetics 6:75-83 (1994); Guzman, Circulation Research 73:1201-1207 (1993); Bout, Human Gene Therapy 5:3-10 (1994); Zabner, Cell 75:207-216 (1993); Caillaud, Eur. J. Neuroscience 5:1287-1291 (1993); and Ragot, J. Gen. Virology 74:501-507 (1993)).

Pox viral vectors can be used in the gene transfer techniques described herein. In certain embodiment the viral/retroviral vector used in the gene transfer techniques described herein have been engineered so as to suppress the immune response of the host organism, elicited by the viral antigens. In certain embodiments, these vectors carry coding regions for Interleukin 8 or 10. In certain embodiments, the viral/retroviral vectors described herein have one or more of the early genes removed and a gene or gene/promotor cassette inserted into the viral genome in place of the removed viral DNA.

[00267] The inserted genes in viral/retroviral vectors usually contain promoters, and/or enhancers to help control the expression of the desired gene product. A promoter is generally a sequence or sequences of DNA that function when in a relatively fixed location in regard to the transcription start site. A promoter contains core elements required for basic interaction of RNA polymerase and transcription factors, and may contain upstream elements and response elements. Promoters controlling transcription from vectors in mammalian host cells may be obtained from various sources, for example, the genomes of viruses such as: polyoma, Simian Virus 40 (SV40), adenovirus, retroviruses, hepatitis-B virus and most preferably cytomegalovirus, or from heterologous mammalian promoters, e.g. beta actin promoter. The early and late promoters of the SV40 virus are conveniently obtained as an SV40 restriction fragment which also contains the SV40 viral origin of replication (Fiers et al., Nature, 273:113 (1978)). The immediate early promoter of the human cytomegalovirus is conveniently obtained as a HindIII E restriction fragment (Greenway, P. J. et al., Gene 18:355-360 (1982)). Promoters from the host cell (to which the viral vector is being transferred) or related species also are useful herein. \

[00268] Enhancer generally refers to a sequence of DNA that functions at no fixed distance from the transcription start site and can be either 5' (Laimins, L. et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 78:993 (1981)) or 3' (Lusky, M. L., et al., Mol. Cell Bio. 3:1108 (1983)) to the transcription unit. Furthermore, enhancers can be within an intron (Banerji, J. L. et al., Cell 33:729 (1983)) as well as within the coding sequence itself (Osborne, T. F., et al., Mol. Cell Bio. 4:1293 (1984)). They are usually between 10 and 300 bp in length, and they function in cis. Enhancers function to increase transcription from nearby promoters. Enhancers also often contain response elements that mediate the regulation of transcription. Promoters can also contain response elements that mediate the regulation of transcription. Enhancers often determine the regulation of expression of a gene. While many enhancer sequences are now known from mammalian genes (globin, elastase, albumin, α -fetoprotein and insulin), typically one will use an enhancer from a eukaryotic cell virus. Enhancers include but are not limited to the SV 40 enhancer on the late side of the replication origin (bp 100-270), the cytomegalovirus early promoter enhancer, the polyoma enhancer on the late side of the replication origin, and adenovirus enhancers.

[00269] The promotor and/or enhancer may be specifically activated either by light or specific chemical events which trigger their function. Systems can be regulated by reagents such as tetracycline and dexamethasone. There are also ways to enhance viral vector gene expression by exposure to irradiation, such as gamma irradiation, or alkylating chemotherapy drugs.

[00270] In certain embodiments, the promoter and/or enhancer region act as a constitutive promoter and/or enhancer to maximize expression of the region of the transcription unit to be transcribed. In certain embodiments the promoter and/or enhancer region is active in all eukaryotic cell types. Promoters include but are not limited to the CMV promoter (650 bases), SV40 promoters, cytomegalovirus (full length promoter), and retroviral vector LTF.

[00271] Expression vectors used in eukaryotic host cells may also contain sequences necessary for the termination of transcription which may affect mRNA expression. These regions are transcribed as polyadenylated segments in the untranslated portion of the mRNA encoding tissue factor protein. The 3' untranslated regions also include

transcription termination sites. In certain embodiments, the transcription unit also contains a polyadenylation region (e.g. that derived from the SV40 early polyadenylation signal consisting of about 400 bases). One benefit of this region is that it increases the likelihood that the transcribed unit will be processed and transported like mRNA. The identification and use of polyadenylation signals in expression constructs is well established. In certain embodiments, homologous polyadenylation signals are used in the transgene constructs. In certain embodiments, the transcribed units contain other standard sequences alone or in combination with the above sequences improve expression from, or stability of, the construct.

[00272] The viral/retroviral vectors can include nucleic acid sequence encoding a marker product. This marker product is used to determine if the gene has been delivered to the cell and once delivered is being expressed. Examples of suitable selectable markers for mammalian cells are dihydrofolate reductase (DHFR), thymidine kinase, neomycin, neomycin analog G418, hydro-mycin, and puromycin. When such selectable markers are successfully transferred into a mammalian host cell, the transformed mammalian host cell can survive if placed under selective pressure.

Kits

[00273] The compounds and pharmaceutical formulations described herein may be contained in a kit. The kit may include single or multiple doses of two or more agents, each packaged or formulated individually, or single or multiple doses of two or more agents packaged or formulated in combination. Thus, one or more agents can be present in first container, and the kit can optionally include one or more agents in a second container. The container or containers are placed within a package, and the package can optionally include administration or dosage instructions. A kit can include additional components such as syringes or other means for administering the agents as well as diluents or other means for formulation. Thus, the kits can comprise: a) a pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound described herein and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, vehicle or diluent; and b) a container or packaging. The kits may optionally comprise instructions describing a method of using the pharmaceutical compositions in one or more of the methods described herein (e.g. preventing or treating vascular

diseases/disorders and conditions (including but not limited to arteriosclerosis, atherosclerosis, cardiovascular disease, cerebrovascular disease, renovascular disease, mesenteric vascular disease, pulmonary vascular disease, ocular vascular disease and peripheral vascular disease), hyperlipidemia (including but not limited to hypercholesterolemia, hypertriglyceridemia, sitosterolemia), hypertension, angina, cardiac arrhythmias, congestive heart failure, and stroke). The kit may optionally comprise a second pharmaceutical composition comprising one or more additional agents chosen from (1) a dyslipidemic agent, (2) an anti-diabetic agent, (3) an anti-hypertensive agent, (4) an anti-obesity agent, (5) an agent used to treat autoimmune disorders, (6) an agent used to treat demyelination and its associated disorders, (7) an agent used to treat Alzheimer's disease, (8) a blood modifier, (9) a hormone replacement agent/composition, (10) a chemotherapeutic agent, (11) a peptide which mitigates one or more symptoms of atherosclerosis, (12) an anti-cancer agent, and (13) an agent used to treat bone loss and associated disorders and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, vehicle or diluent. The pharmaceutical composition comprising the compound described herein and the second pharmaceutical composition contained in the kit may be optionally combined in the same pharmaceutical composition.

[00274] A kit includes a container or packaging for containing the pharmaceutical compositions and may also include divided containers such as a divided bottle or a divided foil packet. The container can be, for example a paper or cardboard box, a glass or plastic bottle or jar, a re-sealable bag (for example, to hold a "refill" of tablets for placement into a different container), or a blister pack with individual doses for pressing out of the pack according to a therapeutic schedule. It is feasible that more than one container can be used together in a single package to market a single dosage form. For example, tablets may be contained in a bottle which is in turn contained within a box.

[00275] An example of a kit is a so-called blister pack. Blister packs are well known in the packaging industry and are being widely used for the packaging of pharmaceutical unit dosage forms (tablets, capsules, and the like). Blister packs generally consist of a sheet of relatively stiff material covered with a foil of a preferably transparent plastic material. During the packaging process, recesses are formed in the plastic foil. The

recesses have the size and shape of individual tablets or capsules to be packed or may have the size and shape to accommodate multiple tablets and/or capsules to be packed. Next, the tablets or capsules are placed in the recesses accordingly and the sheet of relatively stiff material is sealed against the plastic foil at the face of the foil which is opposite from the direction in which the recesses were formed. As a result, the tablets or capsules are individually sealed or collectively sealed, as desired, in the recesses between the plastic foil and the sheet. Preferably the strength of the sheet is such that the tablets or capsules can be removed from the blister pack by manually applying pressure on the recesses whereby an opening is formed in the sheet at the place of the recess. The tablet or capsule can then be removed via said opening.

[00276] It may be desirable to provide a written memory aid containing information and/or instructions for the physician, pharmacist or subject regarding when the medication is to be taken. A "daily dose" can be a single tablet or capsule or several tablets or capsules to be taken on a given day. When the kit contains separate compositions, a daily dose of one or more compositions of the kit can consist of one tablet or capsule while a daily dose of another one or more compositions of the kit can consist of several tablets or capsules. A kit can take the form of a dispenser designed to dispense the daily doses one at a time in the order of their intended use. The dispenser can be equipped with a memory-aid, so as to further facilitate compliance with the regimen. An example of such a memory-aid is a mechanical counter which indicates the number of daily doses that have been dispensed. Another example of such a memory-aid is a battery-Powered micro-chip memory coupled with a liquid crystal readout, or audible reminder signal which, for example, reads out the date that the last daily dose has been taken and/or reminds one when the next dose is to be taken.

In Vivo Animal Models

[00277] In Vivo Assay of Hypolipidemic Agents using the Rat Cholesterol Absorption Model. This model is based on models described by Burnett et al (2002), Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett. 2002 Feb 11;12(3):315-8 and J. Lipid Res. 1999 Oct;40(10):1747-57. Female Sprague-Dawley rats weighing 150-250g are separated into groups of 3 and fasted overnight. The animals (4-6/group) are dosed perorally with 300 μ L test

compounds in olive oil or suitable vehicle. Thirty minutes later, 3-5 microCuries ^3H -cholesterol per rat are delivered perorally in 300 μL olive oil. After three hours, 200 μL serum is collected, vortexed with scintillation fluid, and measured for radioactivity in a scintillation counter. Percent inhibition is defined as $100 \times (1 - C_{\text{test}}/C_{\text{ctrl}})$, where C_{test} and C_{ctrl} refer to ^3H levels in serum for the test compound and for the vehicle only control, respectively. Percent inhibition values are reported for a fixed dose. The ED_{50} is the dose at which the half-maximal effect on serum ^3H levels is observed for a given test compound.

[00278] In Vivo Assay of Hypolipidemic Agents using the Mouse Cholesterol Absorption Model. Female CD-1 mice weighing 20-30g are separated into groups of 3-8 and fasted overnight. The animals (3-8/group) are dosed perorally with 200 μL test compound in olive oil or suitable vehicle. Thirty minutes later, 3-5 microCuries ^3H -cholesterol per mouse are delivered perorally in 200 μL olive oil. After three hours, 100 μL serum is collected, vortexed with scintillation fluid, and measured for radioactivity in a scintillation counter. Percent inhibition and ED_{50} are defined as in the Rat Cholesterol Absorption Model above.

[00279] In Vivo Assay of Hypolipidemic Agents Using the Hyperlipidemic Hamster: Hamsters are separated into groups of six and given a controlled cholesterol diet (Purina Chow #5001 containing 0.5% cholesterol) for seven days. Diet consumption is monitored to determine dietary cholesterol exposure in the face of test compounds. The animals are dosed with the test compound once daily beginning with the initiation of diet. Dosing is by oral gavage of 0.2 mL of corn oil alone (control group) or solution (or suspension) of test compound in corn oil. All animals moribund or in poor physical condition are euthanized. After seven days, the animals are anesthetized by intramuscular (IM) injection of ketamine and sacrificed by decapitation. Blood is collected into vacutainer tubes containing EDTA for plasma lipid analysis and the liver excised for tissue lipid analysis. Lipid analysis is conducted as per published procedures [Schnitzer-Polokoff, R., et al, Comp. Biochem. Physiol., 99A, 4, 665-670 (1991)] and data are reported as percent reduction of lipid versus control

[00280] In Vivo Assay of Hypolipidemic Agents using the Hamster Acute Cholesterol Absorption Model. Male Syrian Hamsters weighing 120g are separated into groups of 3-6 and fasted overnight. The animals (3-6/group) are dosed perorally with 200 μ L test compound in olive oil or suitable vehicle. Thirty minutes later, 3-5 microCuries ^3H -cholesterol per hamster are delivered perorally in 200 μ L olive oil. After three hours, 100-200 μ L serum is collected, vortexed with scintillation fluid, and measured for radioactivity in a scintillation counter. Percent inhibition and ED_{50} are defined as in the Rat Cholesterol Absorption Model above.

[00281] The bioabsorption of the compounds herein described may be examined using the Caco-2 cell monolayer model of Hilgers et al. [Pharm. Res. 7, 902 (1990)].

Pharmacokinetics

[00282] To study the pharmacokinetics of compounds, bioavailability studies are carried out in various test animals. Compounds are prepared in suitable formulations for oral and intravenous administration. Compounds are administered via intravenous injection (tail vein (rat), femoral vein (hamster), peripheral vein (monkey), cephalic vein (dog)) and orally (via a capsule (dogs) or gavage (all others)) to independent groups of test animals which are either fasted overnight or non-fasted. Serum or plasma is collected at various time points and assayed for the presence of compounds using an LC/MS/MS detection method. Experiment samples are either diluted 15-fold in 30% acetonitrile in water, injected onto an in-line sample extraction cartridge (Waters Oasis HLB Direct Connect) and loaded onto a reverse phase HPLC column fitted with a appropriate guard column or prepared using a protein crash, dried under nitrogen, resuspended in 30% acetonitrile in water and loaded onto a reverse phase HPLC column fitted with a appropriate guard column. Samples are eluted from the reverse phase HPLC column with a gradient. A Micromass Quattro Micro (Waters Corporation, Milford, MA) triple quadrupole mass spectrometer operated in MRM mode is used for detection.

Concentrations are calculated based on a standard concentration curve of compound or standard curves generated using peak area ratio of compound to internal standard vs. concentration. MassLynx software (Waters, Corporation, Milford, MA) is used to calculate the absolute concentration of test compound in each serum or plasma sample.

A concentration versus time plot is generated from the data in Microsoft Excel, Summit Software PK Solutions 2.0, GraphPad Prism (GraphPad Software, Inc., San Diego, CA) or WinNonlin Professional Version 4.1 (Pharsight Corporation, Mountain View, CA) to generate pharmacokinetic curves. An area under the curve (AUC_n , n = length of experiment in minutes or hours) is calculated from the concentration vs. time data by software using the linear trapezoid method for both the orally and intravenously dosed animals. Oral Bioavailability (F) over the length of the experiment is calculated using the equation::

$$F = (AUC_{\text{oral}} * Dose_{\text{i.v.}}) / (AUC_{\text{i.v.}} * Dose_{\text{oral}}).$$

Determination of Acyl Coenzyme A: Cholesterol Acyltransferase (ACAT)

Inhibition Activity

[00283] The ability of compounds of the invention to inhibit acyl-coenzyme A: cholesterol acyltransferase (ACAT) activity is assayed by measuring cholesterol esterification in human HepG2 and Caco2 cells. ACAT activity is measured by following the conversion of ^{14}C -oleic acid to ^{14}C -cholesteryl oleate in an assay based on Junquero, et al. 2001 Biochem Pharmacol 61:97-108 and Sugiyama, et al. Atherosclerosis 118:145-53. Cells are propagated in Eagle's Minimum Essential Medium (EMEM) supplemented with fetal bovine serum (10% for HepG2 cells; 20% for Caco2 cells) and 2 mM L-glutamine. All incubations are performed at 37 °C in air with 5% CO_2 . In preparation for each experiment, cells are seeded in 6-well plates and allowed to grow to 90-95% confluency. All treatments are performed in duplicate. Inhibitors are pre-incubated with cells for 4 h. The assay is initiated by adding ^{14}C -oleate/bovine serum albumin solution to each assay well and incubating an additional 2 h at 37 °C. Cell monolayers are extracted with 2 mL 3:2 hexane:isopropanol at room temperature for 30 min. Extracts are dried down under nitrogen and dissolved in 75 μL chloroform. Formation of ^{14}C -cholesteryl oleate is determined by separation of the ACAT assay reaction products by thin-layer chromatography (TLC) and visualization by phosphorimaging. Percent inhibition is calculated for each compound dose, and IC_{50} values are determined using GraphPad Prism by regression analysis of percent inhibition plotted as a function of the logarithmic value of the sample concentration. Figure 2 is a

table of the ACAT activity of several compounds of the invention assayed one or more times. Values for the known ACAT inhibitor, N-[4-(2-chlorophenyl)-6,7-dimethyl-3-quinolyl]-N'-(2, 4-difluorophenyl) urea (TMP-153) and the known cholesterol absorption inhibitor molecule, (3R,4S)-1-(4-fluorophenyl)-3-[(3S)-3-(4-fluorophenyl)-3-hydroxypropyl]-4-(4-hydroxyphenyl)azetidin-2-one can also be determined.

Competitive binding assays

[00284] The ability of compounds of the invention to bind and compete for specific binding to a receptor in the hamster small intestine is tested. Competition binding to hamster small intestine is determined by using an in vivo assay based on Hernandez et al. 2000 (Biochim Biophys Acta 1486:232-242) in which radiolabeled compound is administered to hamsters in the presence and absence of unlabeled, test, competitor compounds. In this experiment, a compound of the invention, can be tritiated and used as a radioligand. Corresponding unlabeled compound in 1200-fold excess is used to demonstrate that the observed binding is specific. Other compounds of the invention and a known cholesterol absorption inhibitor, (3R,4S)-1-(4-fluorophenyl)-3-[(3S)-3-(4-fluorophenyl)-3-hydroxypropyl]-4-(4-hydroxyphenyl)azetidin-2-one, are evaluated for their ability to compete for binding of the tritiated radioligand when administered in 1200-fold excess. Golden Syrian hamsters are fasted overnight prior to dosing. Animals are dosed by oral gavage with 0.5 ml of either vehicle or vehicle containing 0.35 mg/kg test compound. One hour later, animals are dosed by oral gavage with 5 μ Ci tritiated radioligand with vehicle or vehicle containing 0.35 mg/kg test compound as above. Three hours after administration of the tritiated radioligand, animals are euthanized by CO₂ overdose, the small intestine dissected, flushed with cold saline, and placed into an empty tube on ice. The small intestine is cut into ~6 cm segments. The intestinal epithelial mucosa is extruded from each segment, homogenized in PBS, and the radioactivity in the homogenate is counted by liquid scintillation counting. Results are normalized for protein content of the homogenates. Tritiated radioligand binding to the hamster small intestine in the presence and absence of test compound is determined by calculating the average bound radioactivity per mg of protein (DPM/mg) for each

treatment group. Percent tritiated radioligand binding is calculated for each compound using the formulas:

Bound Radioactivity (DPM/mg) = Radioactivity (DPM)/Total Protein (mg)

Percent ^3H Binding vs Vehicle Control =

$$100\% * ((\text{Bound Radioactivity})_{\text{competitor}}/(\text{Bound Radioactivity})_{\text{vehicle}})$$

Statistical analysis is performed using an unpaired, two-tailed, Student's t-test (GraphPad Prism).

[00285] A particularly desirable medicament would inhibit cholesterol absorption without affecting the acute absorption of other important molecules of dietary origin. Such a cholesterol absorption inhibitor would not interfere with the absorption of triglyceride, progesterone, ethinyl estradiol, vitamin A, vitamin D, or taurocholic acid. For example, cholestyramine, which is in clinical use to lower serum cholesterol, sequesters bile acids in the intestine, ultimately leading to a decrease in plasma cholesterol by upregulating the synthesis of bile acids from cholesterol in the liver. Two side effects of cholestyramine are gastrointestinal discomfort and the sequestration of fat-SOLuble vitamins. On the other hand, ezetimibe, a known cholesterol absorption inhibitor, does not appear to affect fat-SOLuble vitamin absorption in humans. In addition, ezetimibe does not inhibit the absorption of taurocholic acid, suggesting that certain cholesterol absorption inhibitors can lower serum cholesterol without inhibiting the ileal Na^+ /bile acid cotransporter.

Retinol, taurocholic acid, progesterone, sitostanol, and cholesterol absorption assays

[00286] The effects of acute oral administration of several compounds of the invention on retinol, taurocholic acid, and progesterone absorption are studied in female Sprague Dawley rats. Groups of 5 rats received 10 mg/kg of test compound or vehicle (olive oil) via oral gavage. Test compounds are administered 30 minutes prior to oral administration of ^{14}C -cholesterol (5 μCi) in addition to either ^3H -retinol (3 μCi), ^3H -taurocholic acid (3 μCi), ^3H -Progesterone (3 μCi), or ^3H -sitostanol (3 μCi) constituted in olive oil (300 μL). Blood is sampled from all animals via the retro-orbital sinus under isoflurane anesthesia three hours after the administration of the radiolabeled cocktail and

again at 24 hours. Serum radioactivity (DPM) is measured and the percent absorption (% absorption) is calculated as:

$$\text{average dpm treated group} / \text{average dpm control group} \times 100.$$

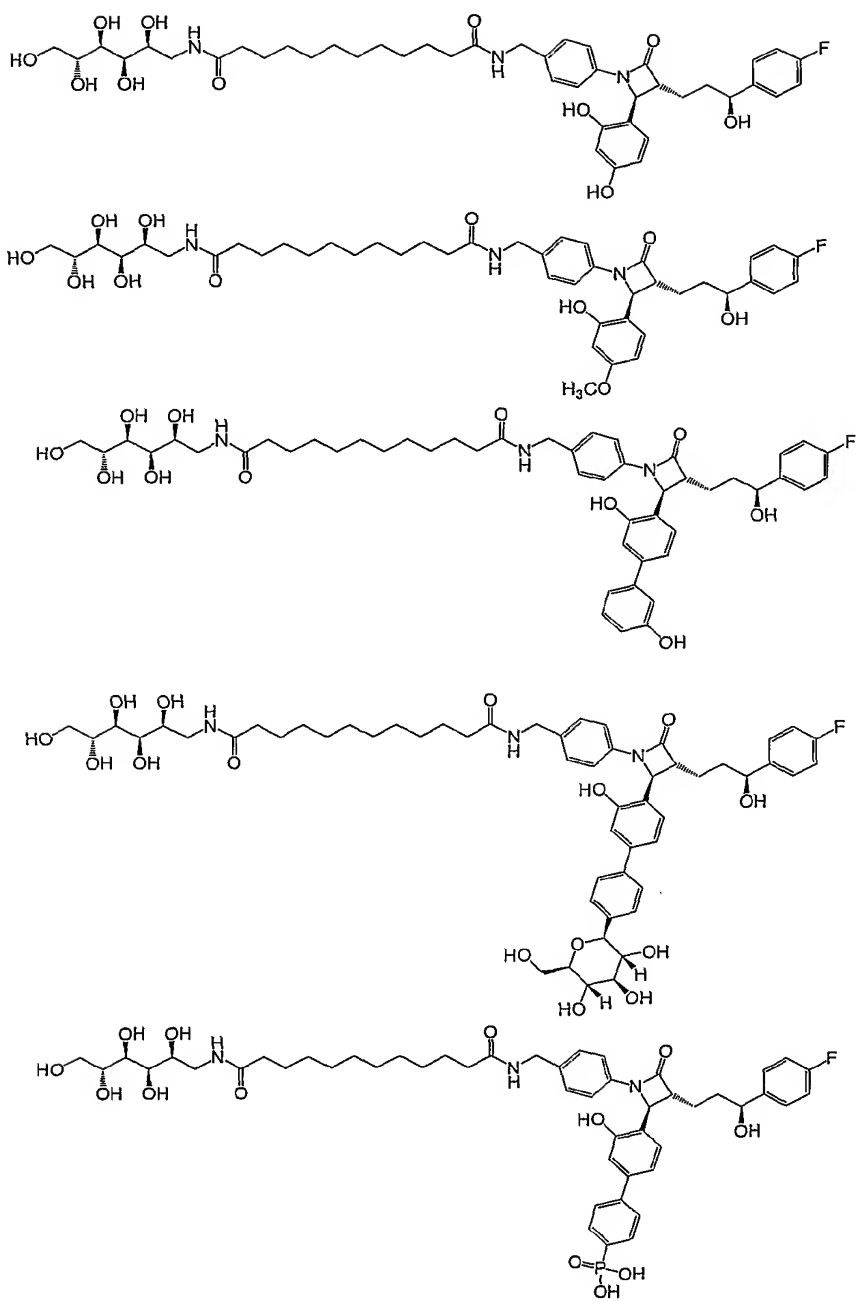
Assays can also be performed using the known cholesterol absorption inhibitor molecule, (3R,4S)-1-(4-fluorophenyl)-3-[(3S)-3-(4-fluorophenyl)-3-hydroxypropyl]-4-(4-hydroxyphenyl)azetidin-2-one is for comparison.

Additivity Assay

[00287] The effects of compounds of the invention either alone and in combination with the known cholesterol absorption inhibitor, (3R,4S)-1-(4-fluorophenyl)-3-[(3S)-3-(4-fluorophenyl)-3-hydroxypropyl]-4-(4-hydroxyphenyl)azetidin-2-one can be studied in one or more of the in vivo animal models above. For example, in the case of the rat cholesterol absorption model, groups of five rats receive each of the compounds of the invention alone (1 mg/kg) or in combination with (3R,4S)-1-(4-fluorophenyl)-3-[(3S)-3-(4-fluorophenyl)-3-hydroxypropyl]-4-(4-hydroxyphenyl)azetidin-2-one (each at 1mg/kg) or vehicle (olive oil) via oral gavage. Serum radioactivity (DPM) is measured and the average values are plotted.

[00288] Representative compounds of the invention are shown below in Tables 1A to 6A.

Table 1A



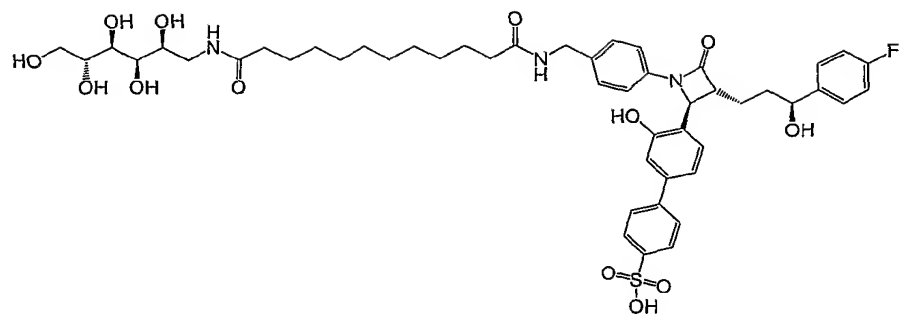


Table 2A

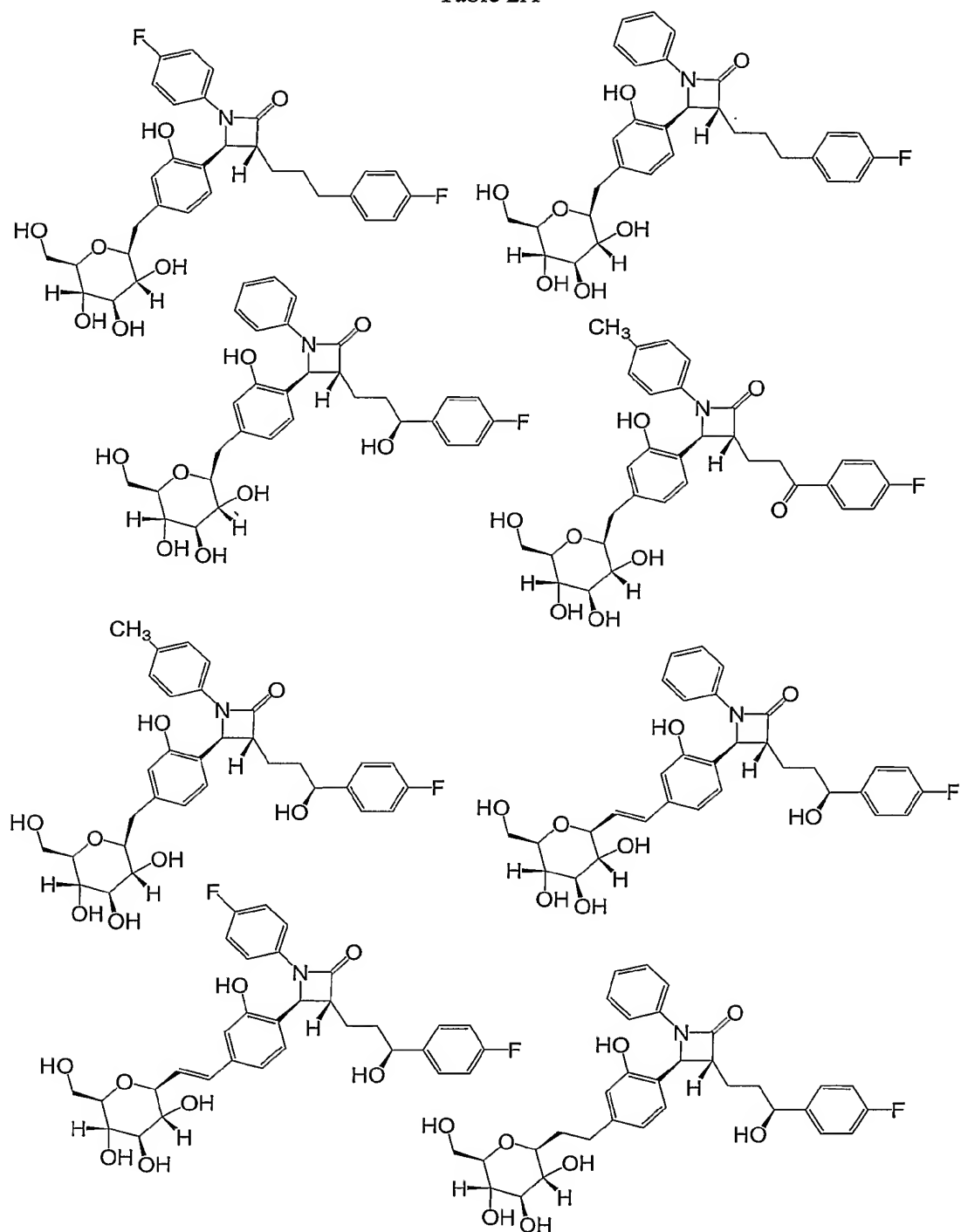


Table 2A (continued)

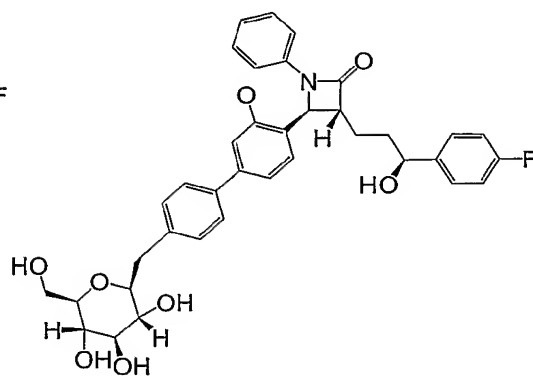
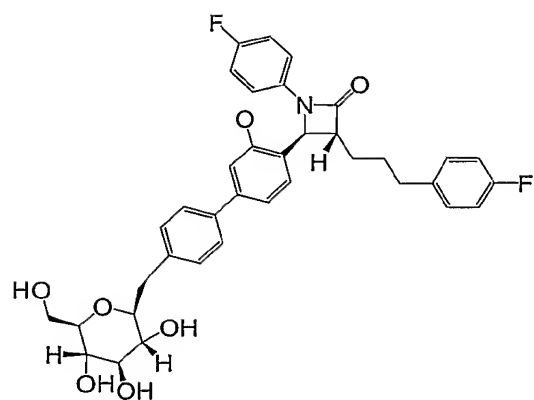
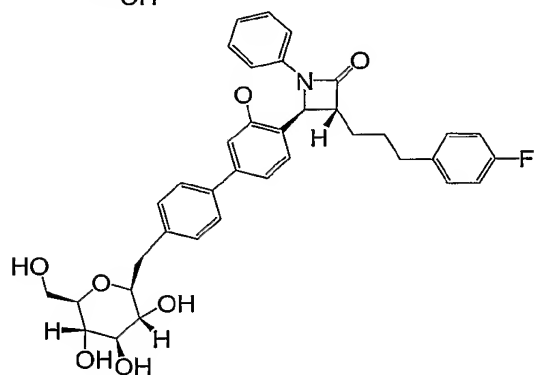
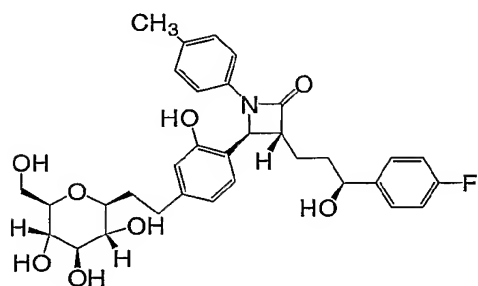
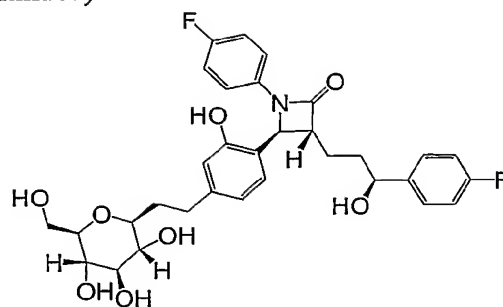
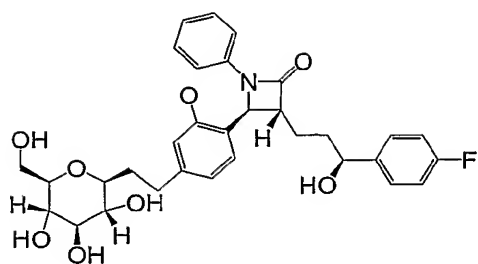


Table 2A (continued)

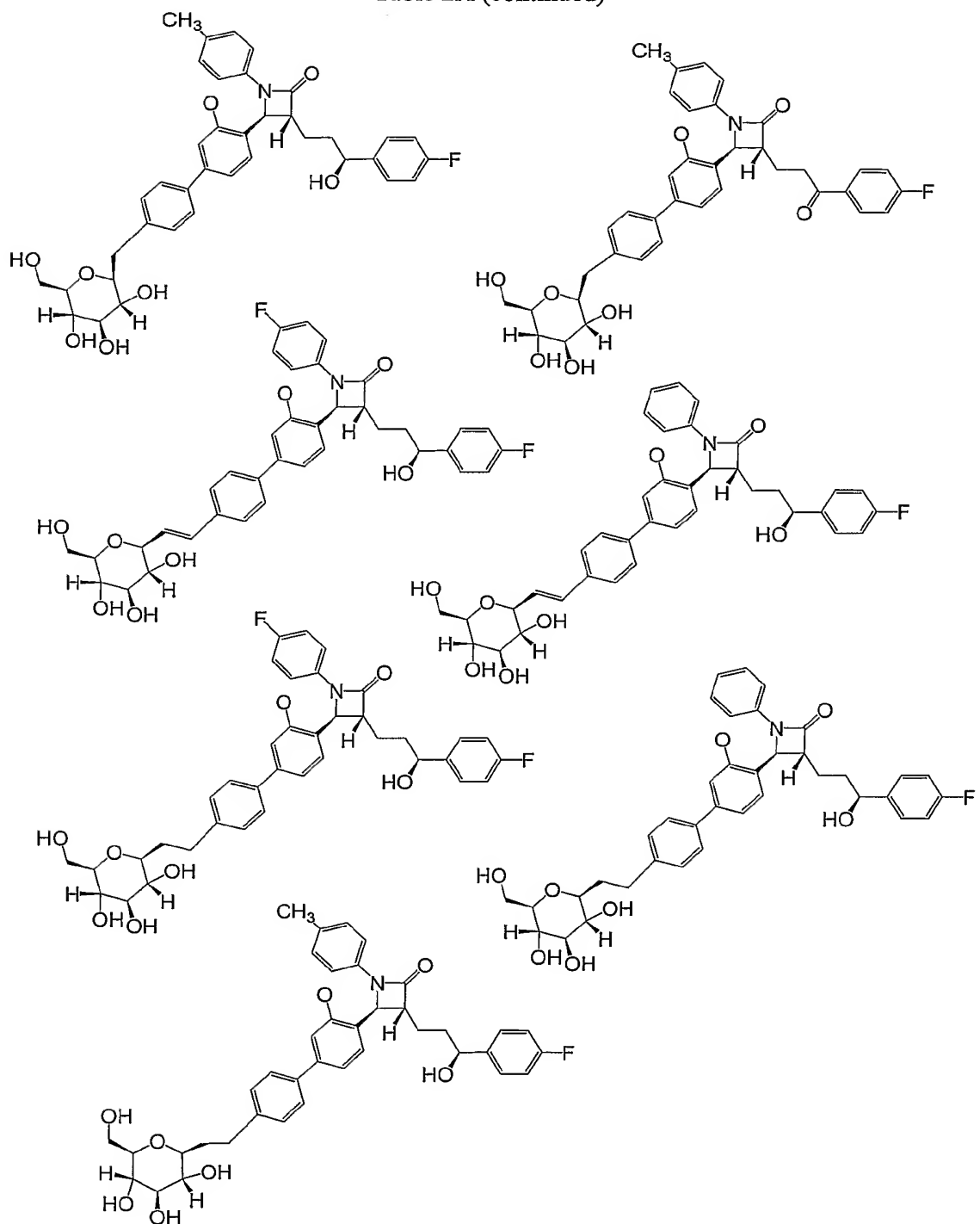


Table 3A (continued)

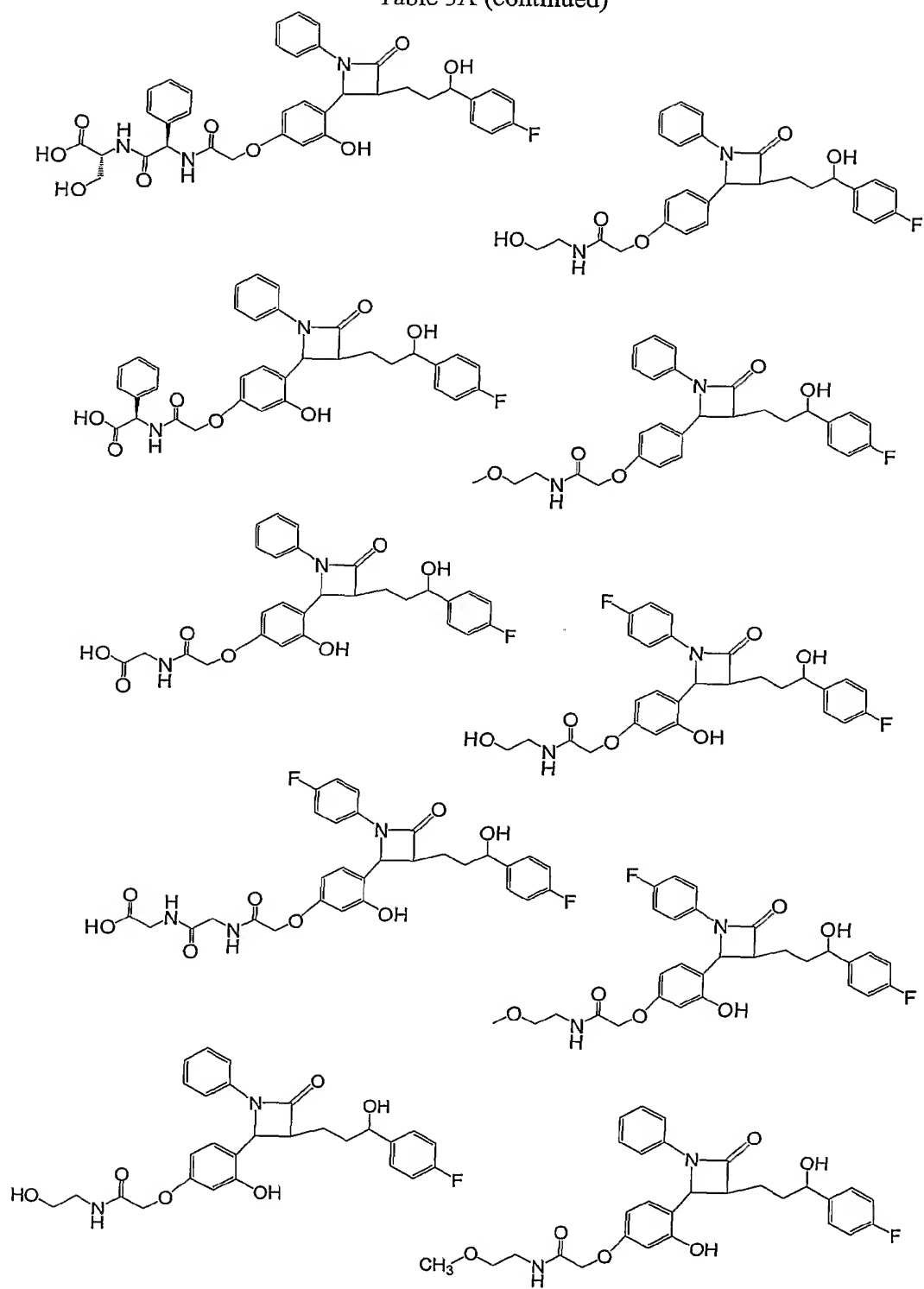


Table 4A

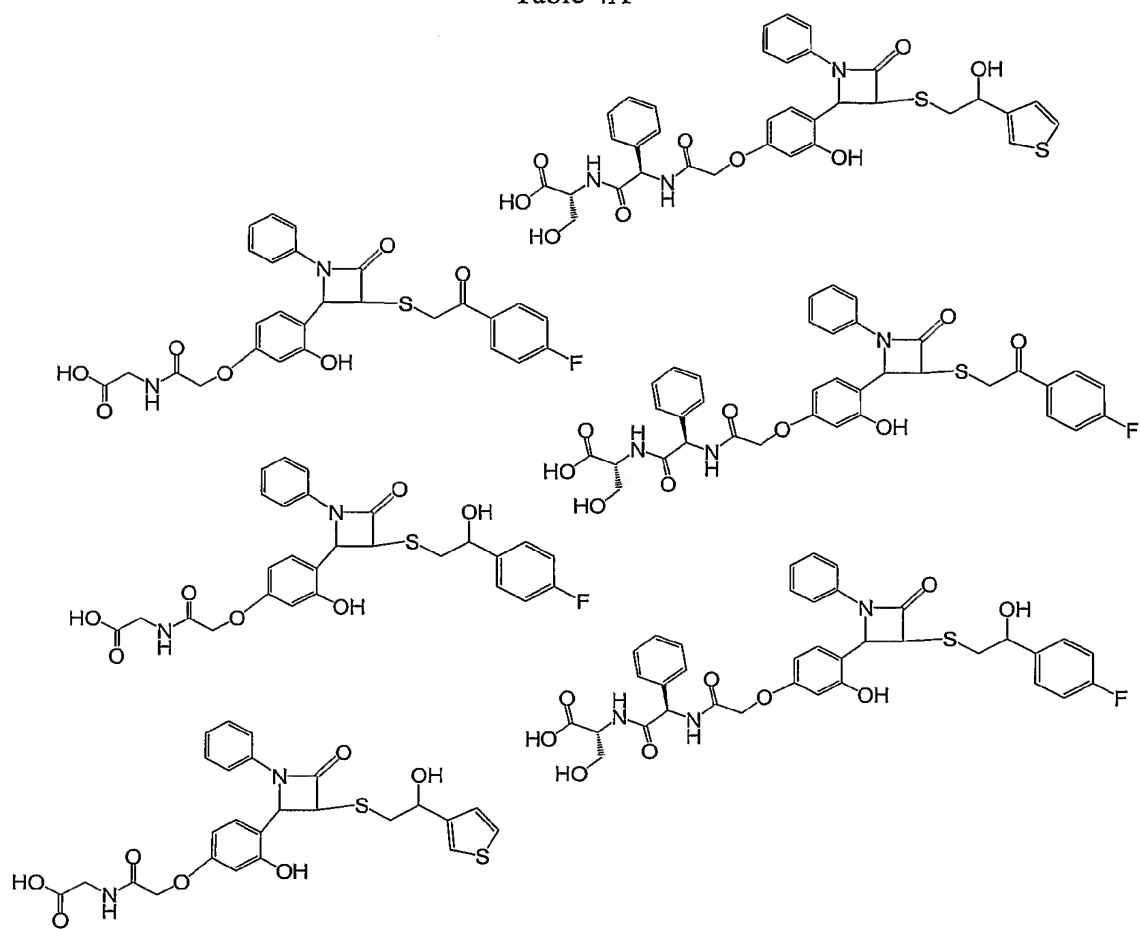


Table 5A

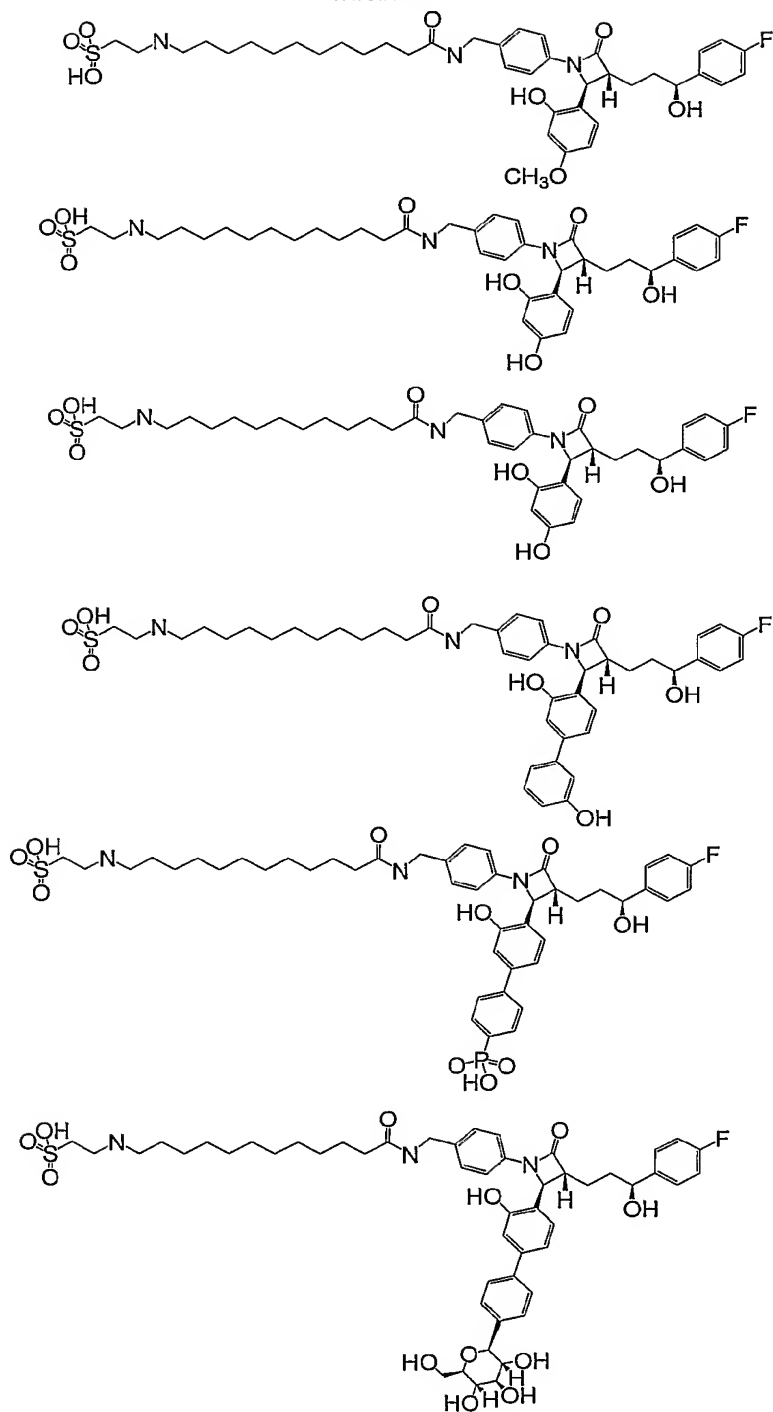
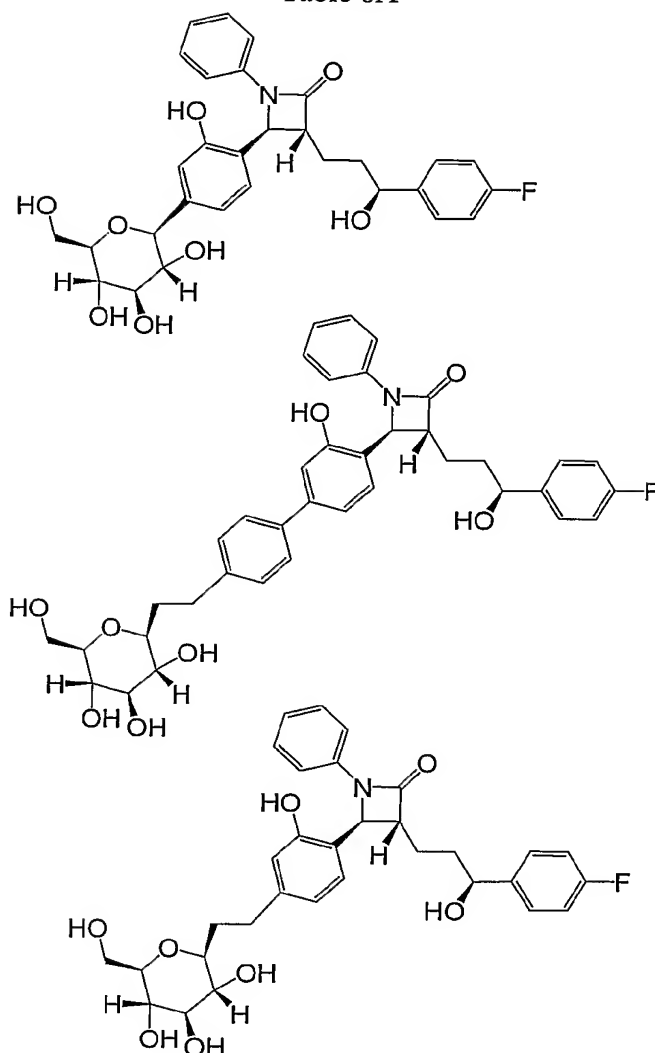


Table 6A



[00289] In general, the compounds of the present invention may be prepared by the methods illustrated in the general reaction schemes as, for example, described below, or by modifications thereof, using readily available starting materials, reagents and conventional synthesis procedures. In these reactions, it is also possible to make use of variants that are in themselves known, but are not mentioned here.

[00290] The starting materials, in the case of suitably substituted azetidinones, may be obtained by the methods described in US published applications 2004/0067913, 2004/0082561 and 2004/0198700, in PCT applications WO 02/50027, WO 97/16424,

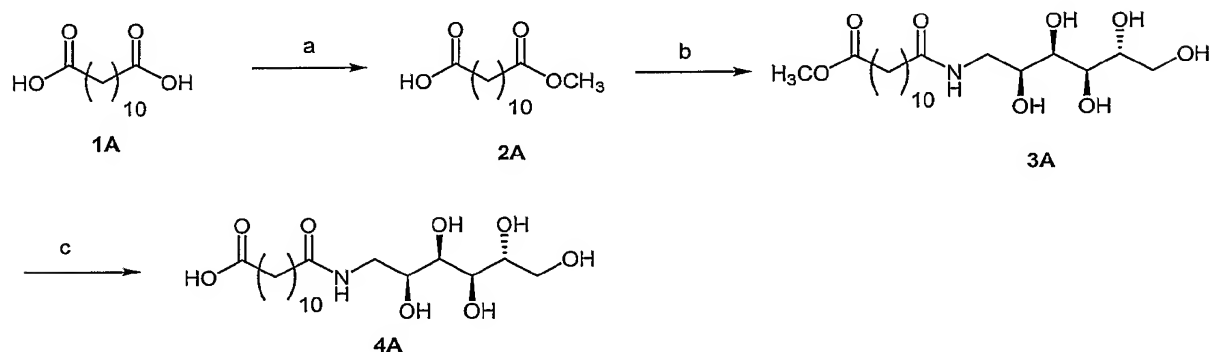
WO 95/26334, WO 95/08532, WO 93/02048, WO02/50027, WO2004/005247, WO2004/087655 and in European application EP 1 362 855, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

[00291] Processes for obtaining the compounds of the invention are presented below.

Other compounds of the invention may be prepared in analogous fashion to those whose synthesis is exemplified herein. The procedures below illustrate such methods.

Furthermore, although the syntheses found herein result in the preparation of enantiomers having a particular stereochemistry, the present invention includes compounds of formulae **IA-XXIIA**, **IB**, **IIB**, **IC** and **IIC** in any stereoisomeric form, and preparation thereof would be obvious to one of ordinary skill in the chemical arts based on the procedures presented herein.

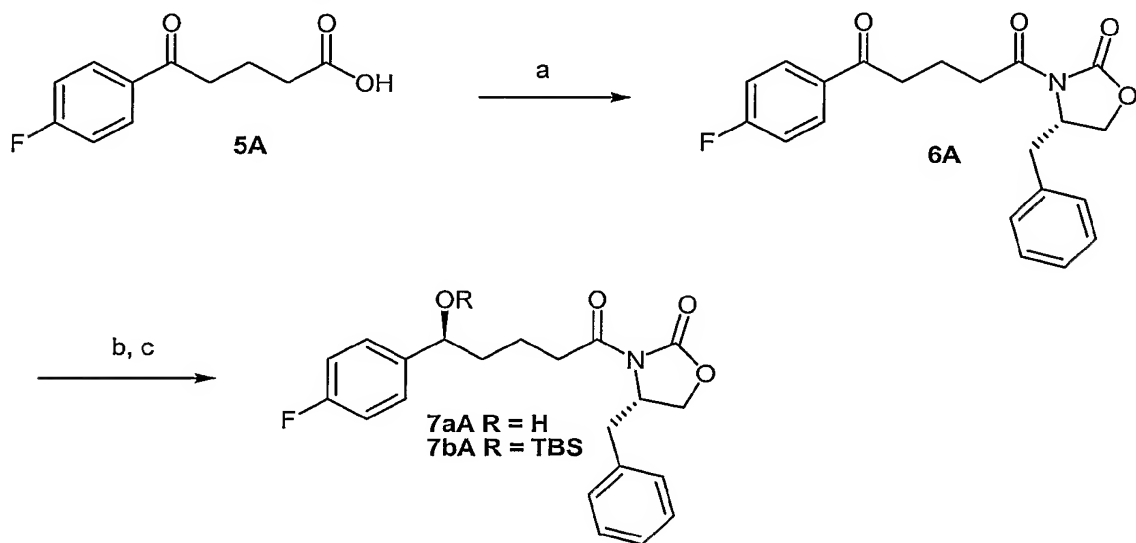
[00292] Illustrated in the scheme shown below is a general method for the preparation of compounds of the present invention. The sequence begins with the conversion of dodecanedioic acid (**1A**) to the corresponding mono-methyl ester (**2A**) by reaction with a mixture of thionyl chloride in methanol. In the second step, a mixture of monomethyl dodecanedioate and glucamine are dissolved in DMF and treated with HOBt and EDCI to effect coupling to the amide (**3A**). Finally, saponification of **3A** in aqueous methanol with potassium hydroxide and acidification provides the acid **4A**.



(a) CH_3OH , SOCl_2 , (b) glucamine, HOBt, EDC (c) KOH , H_2O , MeOH

[00293] Commercially available 4-(4-fluorobenzoyl)butyric acid (**5A**) is converted to the corresponding mixed anhydride by treatment with pivaloyl chloride and DMAP in DMF

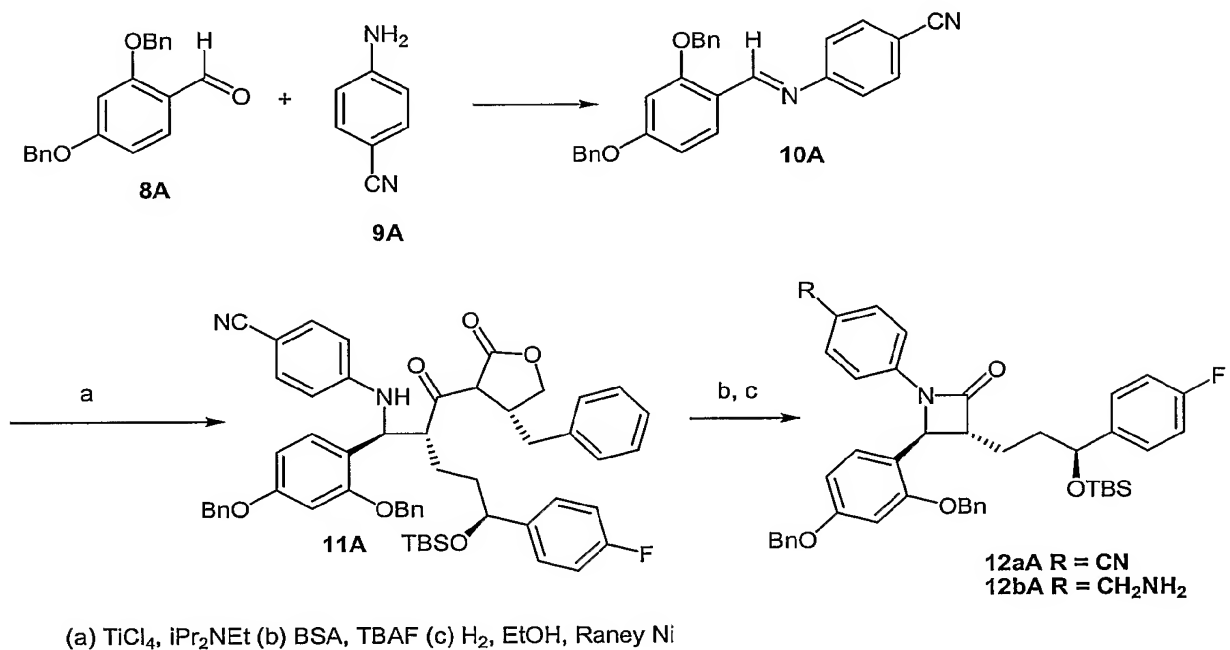
and then coupled to (*S*)-4-benzyl-2-oxazolidinone to afford the imide (**6A**). Treatment of **6A** with borane dimethylsulfide complex in the presence of a catalytic amount of (*R*)-1-methyl-3,3-diphenyltetrahydro-3*H*-Pyrrolo[1,2-*c*][1,3,2]oxazaborole produces the desired (4*S*)-4-benzyl-3-[(5*S*)-5-(4-fluorophenyl)-5-hydroxypentanoyl]-1,3-oxazolidin-2-one (**7aA**) in good yield. Protection of the benzylic alcohol as the TBS ether is effected by reaction with tert-butyldimethylsilyl chloride in the presence of imidazole as a base to provide **7bA** in good yield.



(a) pivaloyl chloride, (*S*)-4-benzyl-2-oxazolidinone, Et₃N⁺
 (b) (*R*)-CBS, BH₃.SMe₂ (c) TBDMSCl, imidazole

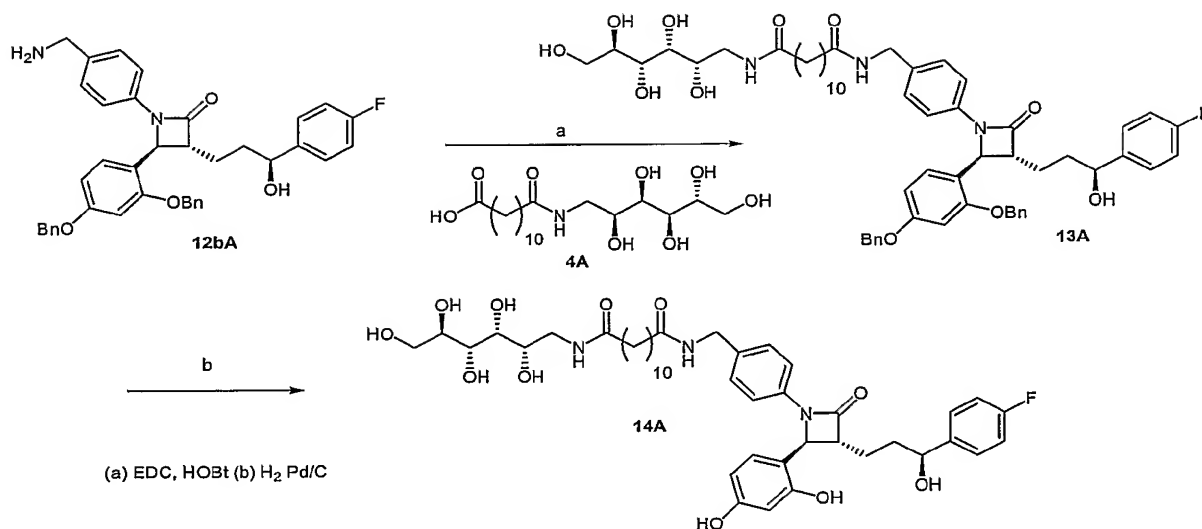
[00294] In the following scheme, 2,4-dihydroxybenzaldehyde is converted to the corresponding dibenzyl ether (**8A**) upon treatment with benzyl bromide and potassium carbonate in methyl ethyl ketone. Treatment of **8A** with 4-cyanoaniline (**9A**) results in the formation of imine **10A** in good yield. In the next step, **7bA** is treated with titanium tetrachloride and *N*-ethyl-diisopropylamine followed by treatment with **10A** to effect enantiospecific condensation to provide **11A**. Treatment of **11A** with excess *N,O*-bistrimethylsilyl-acetamide followed by a catalytic amount of tetrabutylammonium fluoride hydrate results in ring closure to the desired beta-lactam (**12aA**) while maintaining the TBS protecting group on the benzylic alcohol. Reduction of the nitrile is

then accomplished by treatment with hydrogen in ethanol catalyzed by raney nickel to provide **12bA**.

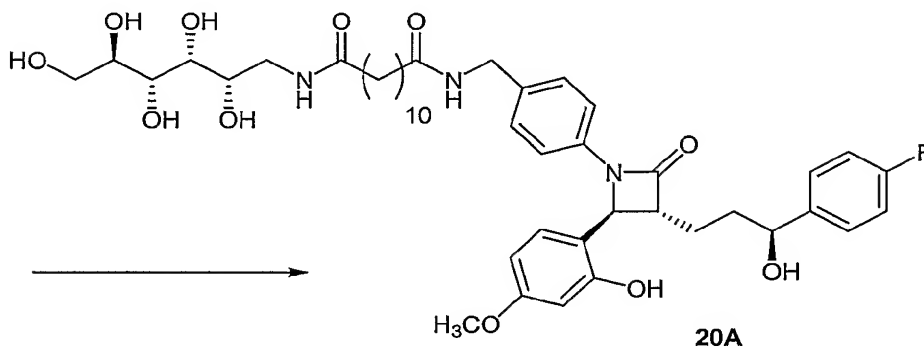
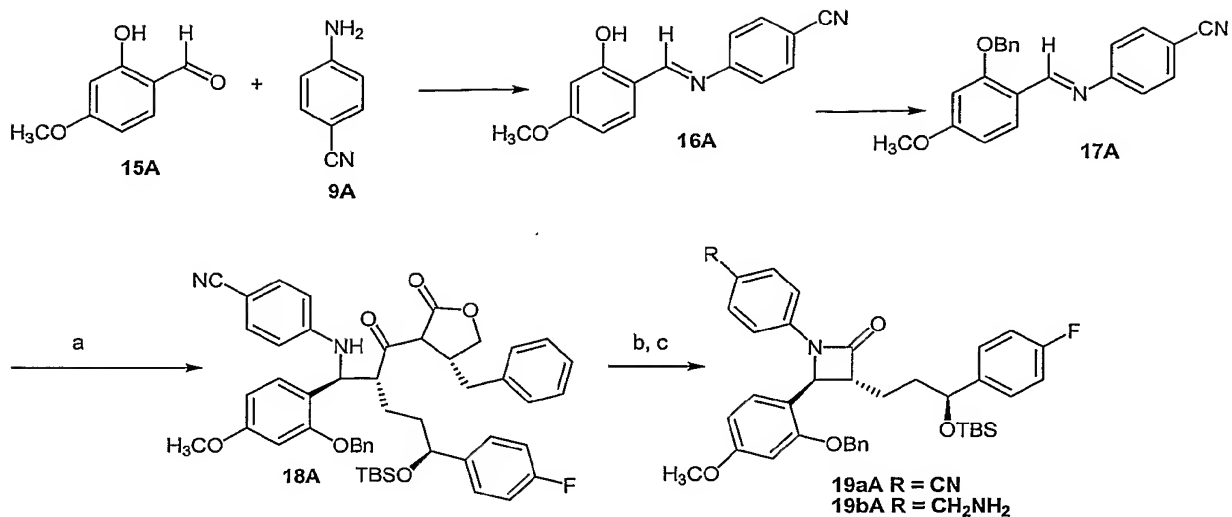


[00295] The primary amine **12bA** is then coupled to carboxylic acid **4A** in the presence of EDCI and HOBt to provide the desired product **13A** that is subsequently treated with hydrogen over palladium on carbon to remove the benzyl groups and treatment with aqueous HF affording **14A**.

- 248 -

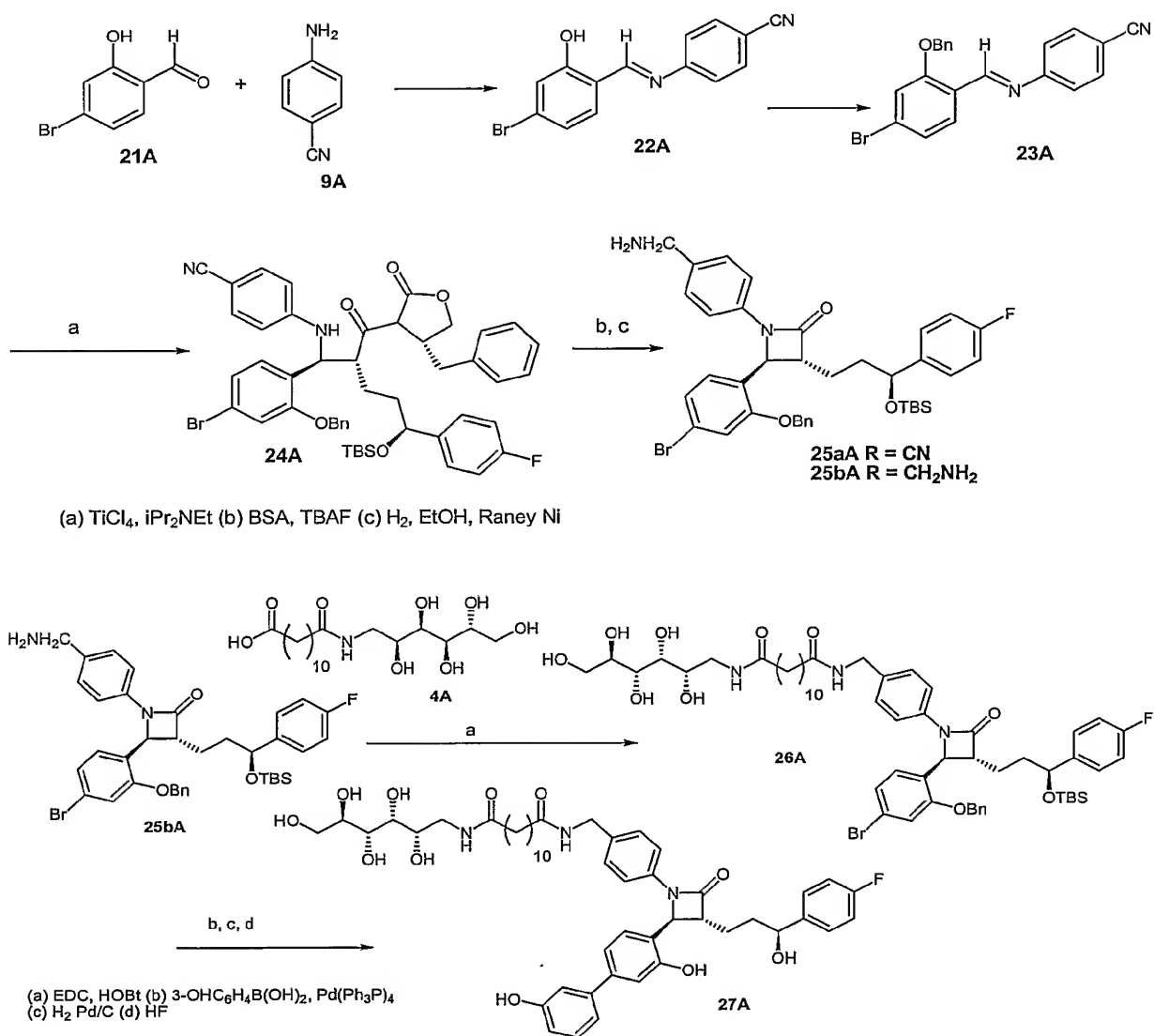


[00296] The preparation of the mono-methoxy analogue 20A starts by the condensation of commercially available 2-hydroxy-4-methoxybenzaldehyde (15A) with 4-cyanoaniline (9A) to produce imine 16A. Protection of the hydroxyl moiety of 16A is accomplished by treatment with benzyl bromide and potassium carbonate in DMF to provide 17A. Condensation of 17A with 7bA as described above gives the desired adduct 18A. Ring closure to the beta-lactam 19aA is accomplished as described above and then to the corresponding amine 19bA by reduction over raney nickel. Coupling of amine 19bA with acid 4A as described above provides the desired amide that is deprotected by hydrogenolysis over palladium on carbon and treatment with aqueous HF to afford compound 20A.



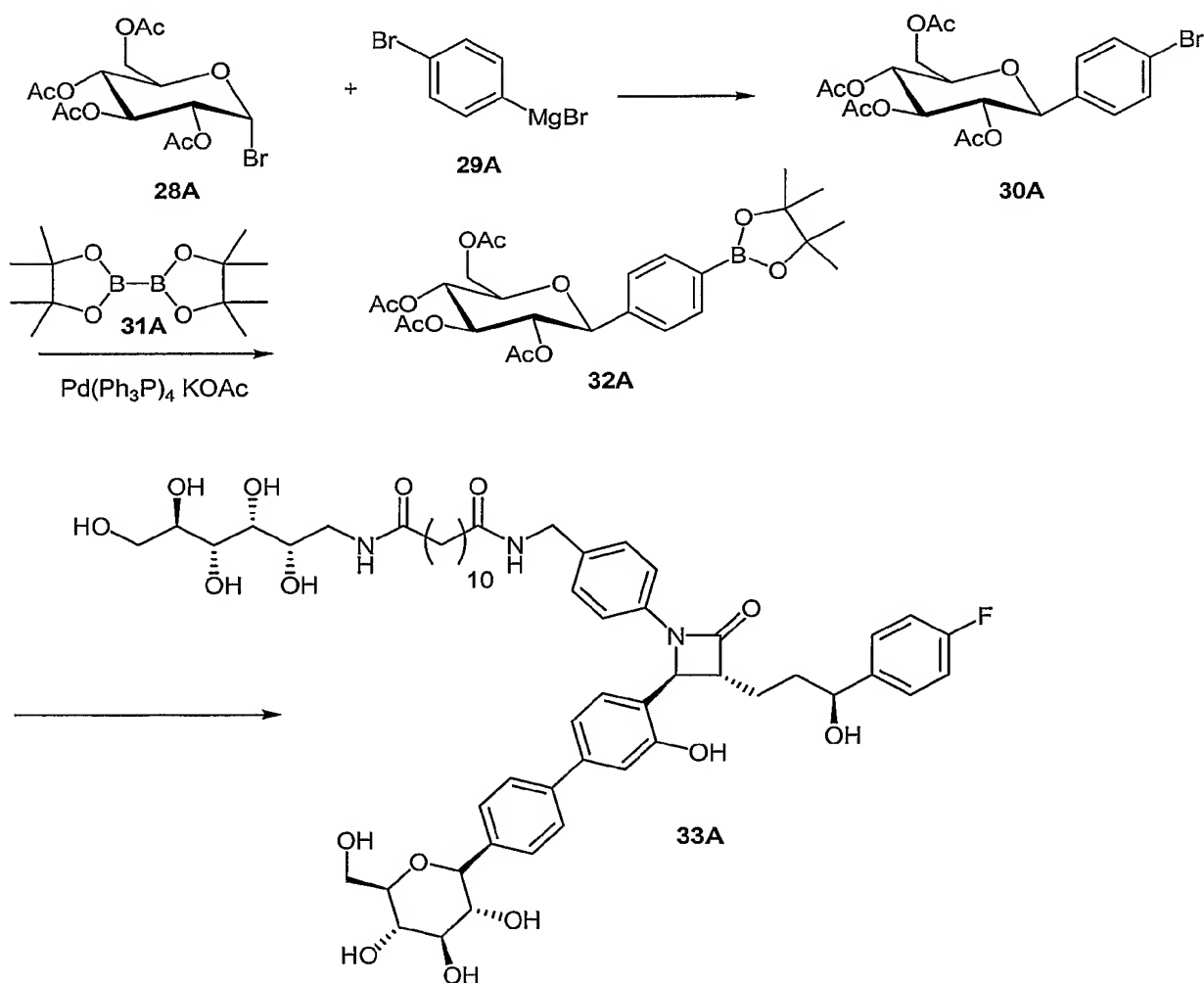
[00297] In the following scheme 2-hydroxy-4-bromobenzaldehyde **21A** is prepared by reaction of 3-bromophenol with paraformaldehyde in the presence of magnesium chloride and excess triethylamine in acetonitrile. Condensation of **21A** with 4-cyanoaniline (**9A**) gives the desired imine **22A** that is converted to the benzyl protected derivative **23A** upon treatment with benzyl bromide and potassium carbonate in DMF. Condensation of **23A** with **7bA** as described above gives the desired product **24A**. Cyclization of **24A** as described above gives the desired beta-lactam **25aA** that is converted to the primary amine **25bA** upon reduction over raney nickel. Condensation of **25bA** with acid **4A** as described above gives the desired amide **26A**. Suzuki coupling of **26A** with 3-hydroxyphenylboronic acid gives the desired biphenyl derivative that is then

deprotected by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon and treatment with aqueous HF to give compound 27A.

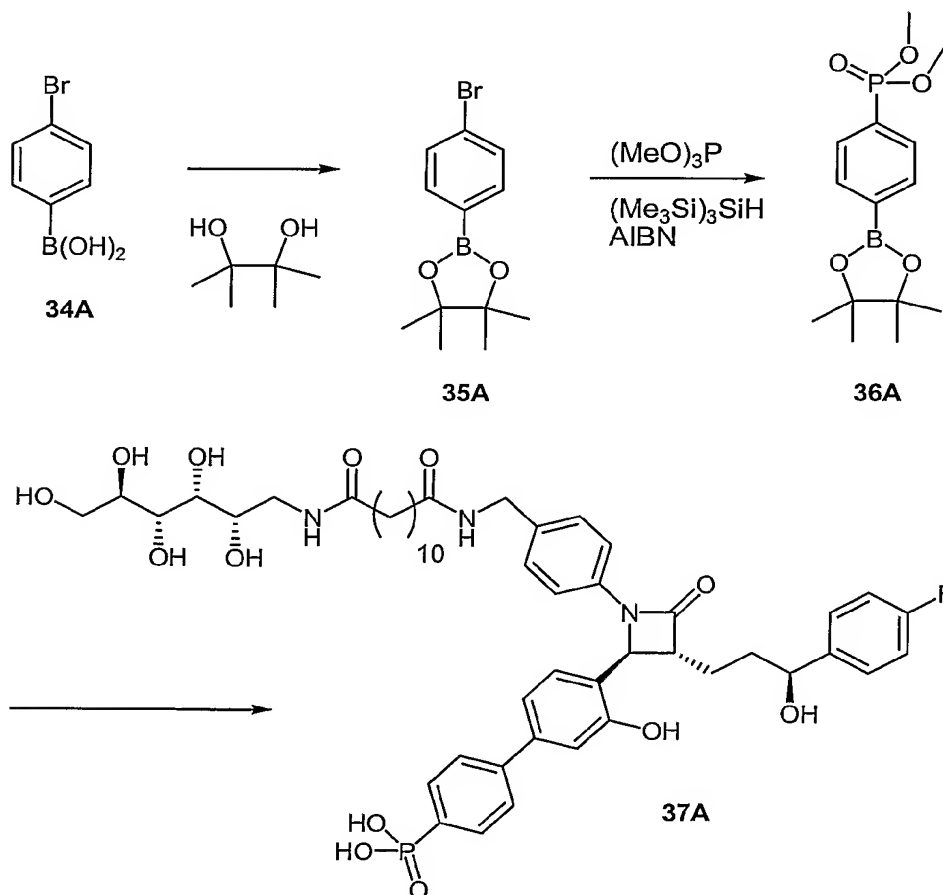


[00298] In the scheme shown below, a C-glycosyl compound is described. The sequence commences with the reaction of peracetyl D-glucose with 33% HBr in acetic acid to produce the anomeric bromide **28A**. Treatment of **28A** with excess Grignard reagent

29A, generated from 1,4-dibromobenzene and magnesium, followed by treatment of the crude product with acetic anhydride in pyridine provides the desired bromophenyl derivative **30A**. Conversion of **30A** to the corresponding pinacol boronate ester **32A** is accomplished by reaction with *bis*(pinicolato)diboron (**31A**) under the influence of palladium catalysis. Suzuki coupling of **31A** with **26A** gives the expected biphenyl derivative that is deprotected by first hydrolysis in aqueous methanol and triethylamine, hydrogenolysis over palladium on carbon and finally treatment with aqueous HF to give the desired product **33A**.

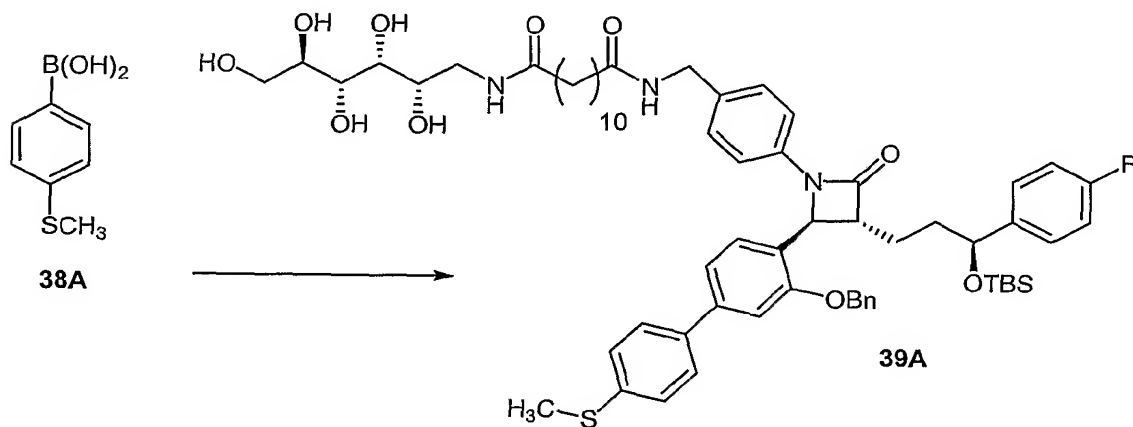


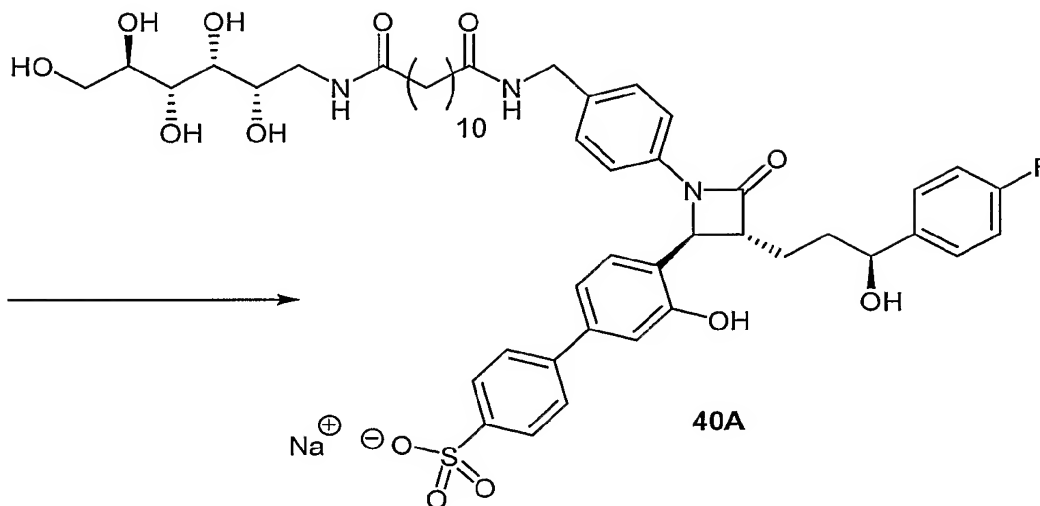
[00299] In the scheme shown below is the description of a phosphonic acid containing compound. The sequence begins with the conversion of commercially available 4-bromophenylboronic acid (**34A**) to the corresponding pinacol ester **35A** upon stirring with pinacol in toluene. Treatment of **35A** with a mixture of trimethylphosphite, AIBN, and tris(trimethylsilyl)silane produces the dimethylphosphonate derivative **36A** in good yield. Suzuki coupling of **36A** with **26A** gives the expected biphenyl derivative that is deprotected by first hydrolysis in aqueous methanol and triethylamine, hydrogenolysis over palladium on carbon and finally treatment with bromotrimethylsilane to give the desired product **37A**.



[00300] In the scheme shown below is the description of a sulfonic acid containing compound. The sequence begins with the Suzuki coupling of commercially available 4-

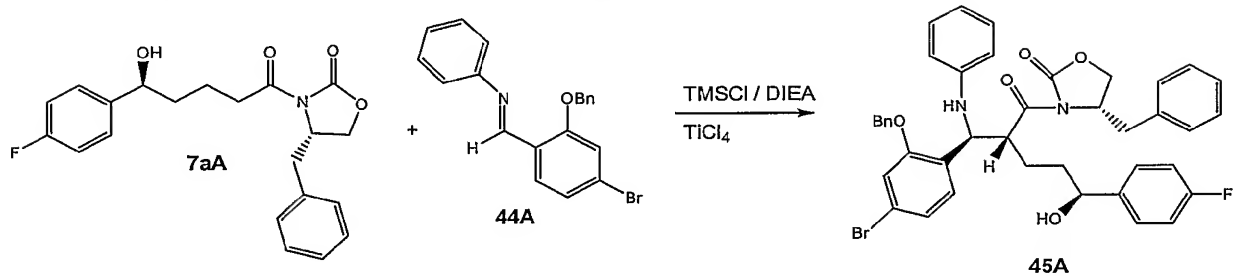
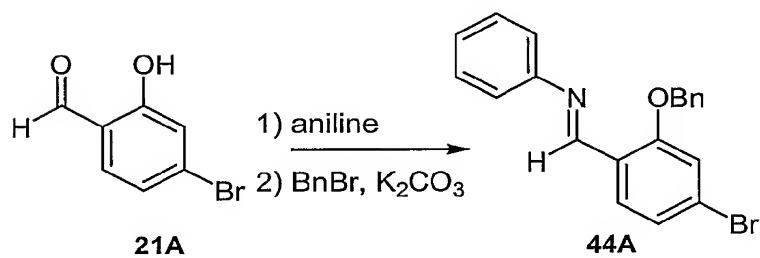
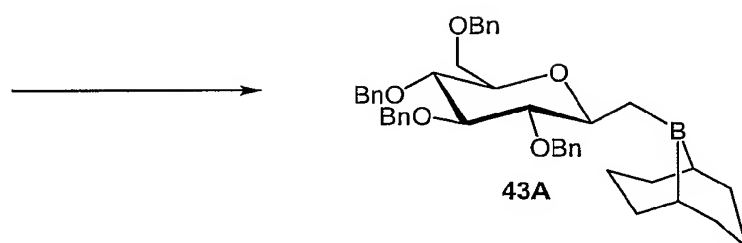
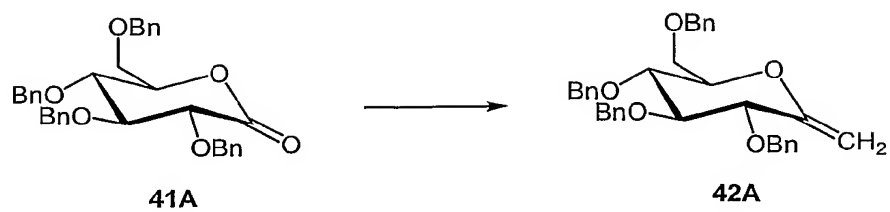
methylthiophenylboronic acid (**38A**) with **26A** to provide the expected biphenyl derivative **39A**. The methylthio group is elaborated to the corresponding sulfonic acid by the following sequence: 1. Conversion to the sulfoxide with *meta*-chloroperbenzoic acid, 2. Pummerer rearrangement with trifluoroacetic anhydride, 3. Hydrolysis of the trifluoroacetoxymethylthio ether with aqueous methanol in the presence of triethylamine, and finally 4. Oxidation of the thiol to the corresponding sulfonic acid with *meta*-chloroperbenzoic acid. After conversion of the sulfonic acid to the corresponding sodium salt by ion exchange, the compound is deprotected by first hydrogenolysis over palladium on carbon. Treatment with aqueous HF and finally ion exchange to give the desired product **40A**.

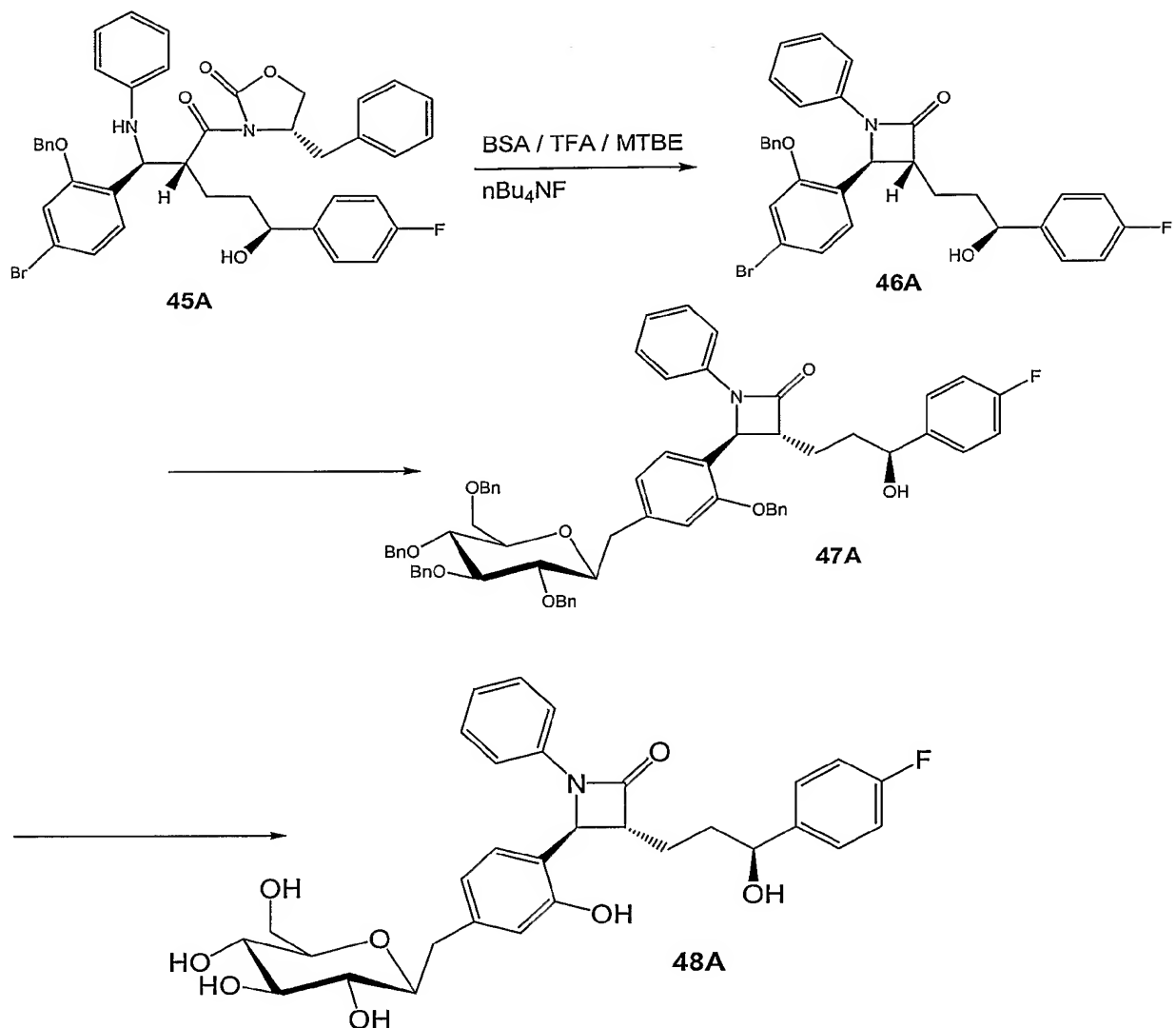




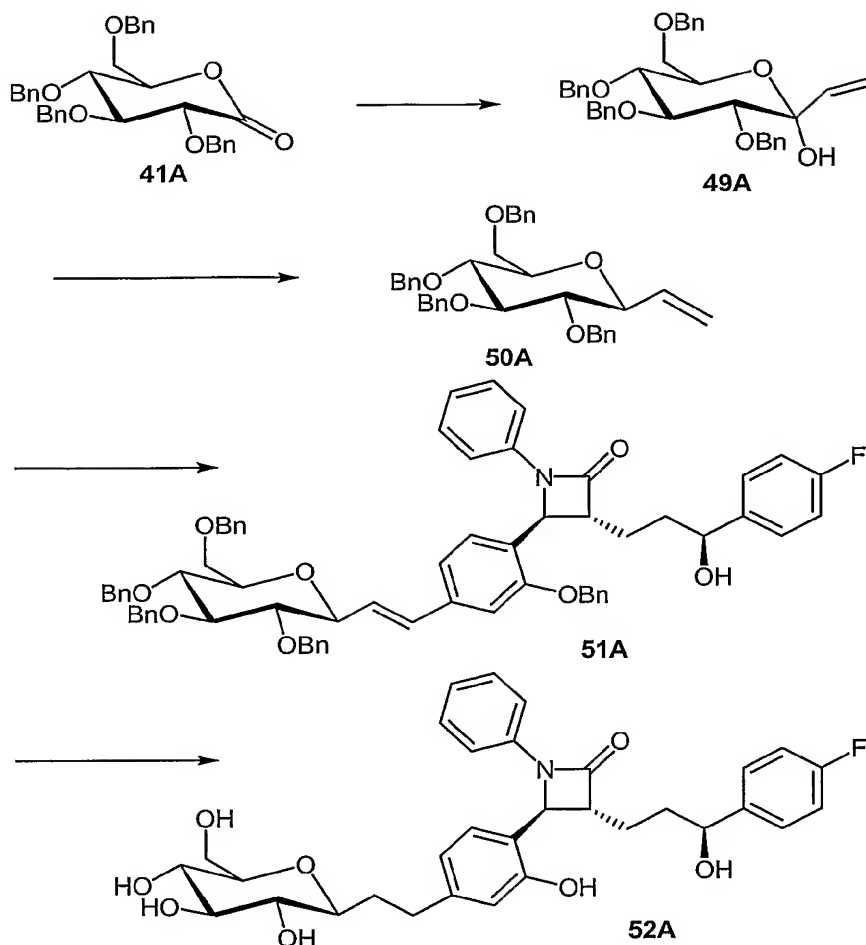
[00301] In the scheme shown below, a C-glycosyl compound is described. The sequence commences with the reaction of 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-benzyl-D-glucolactone (41A) with Tebbe's reagent to give the methylene derivative 42A. Reaction of 42A with 9-BBN gives the corresponding trialkylborane 43A in good yield with the stereochemistry as shown. Suzuki coupling of 31A with 26A gives the expected biphenyl derivative that is deprotected by first hydrolysis in aqueous methanol and triethylamine, hydrogenolysis over palladium on carbon and finally treatment with aqueous HF to give the desired product 33A. In a separate operation, phenol 21A, prepared as described above, is condensed with aniline to afford the corresponding imine and then protected as its benzyl ether by treatment with benzyl bromide and potassium carbonate in DMF to give 44A. Condensation of 44A with 7aA as described above gives the amine derivative 45A, that is cyclized to beta-lactam 46A as described previously. Suzuki coupling of 46A with 43A gives the desired C-glycosyl derivative 47A. Deprotection of 47A by hydrogenolysis over palladium on carbon catalyst gives compound 48A.

- 255 -



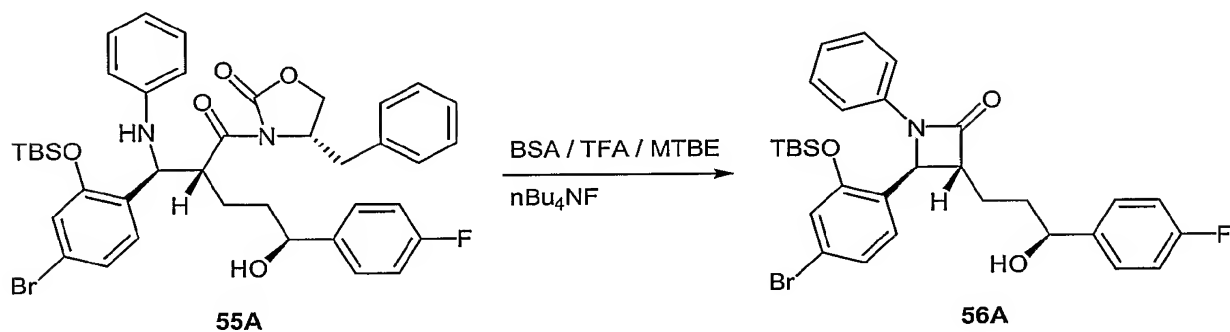
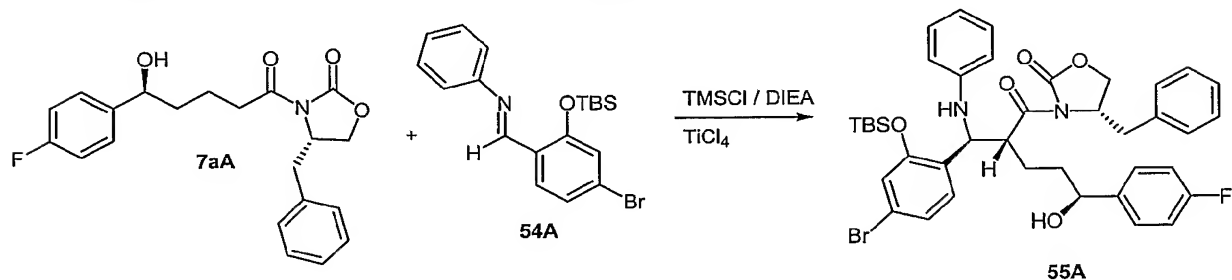
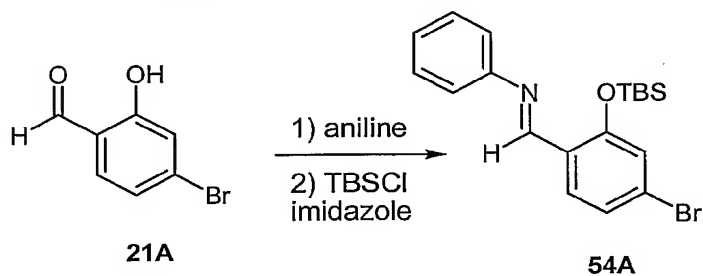
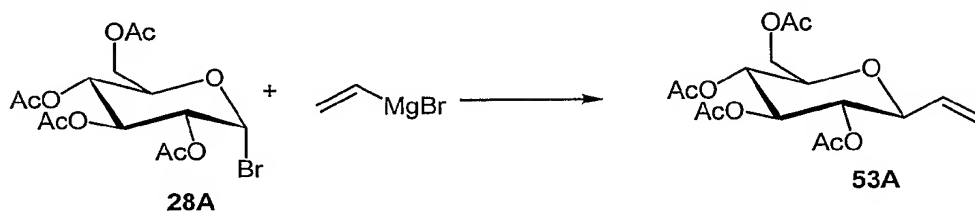


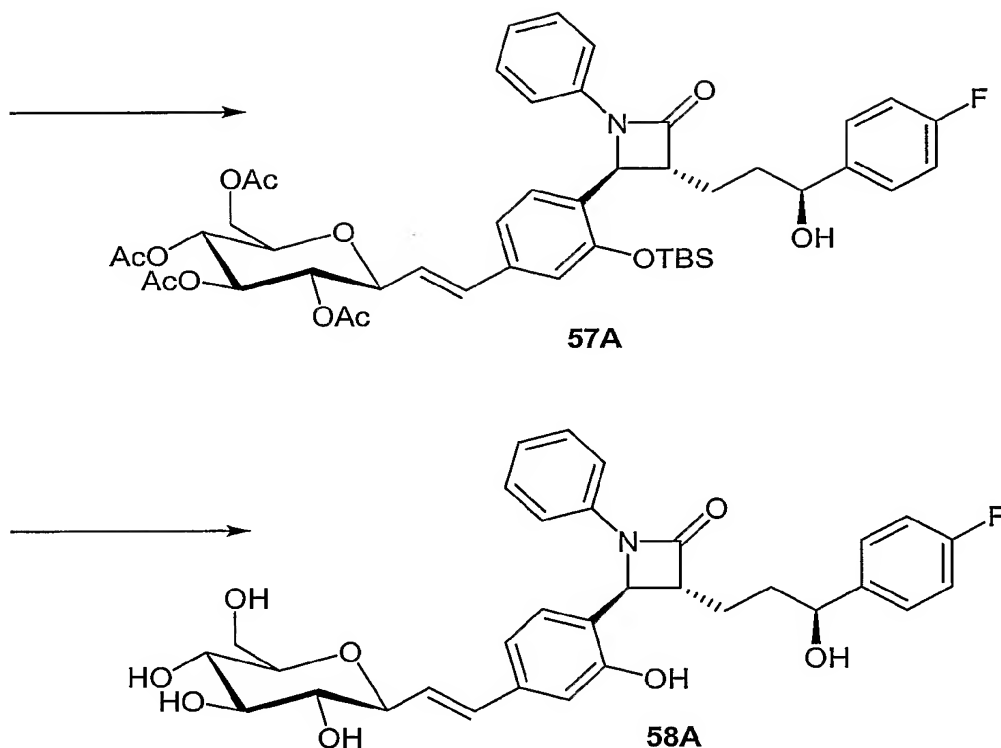
[00302] In the scheme shown below, a C-glycosyl compound is described. The sequence commences with the reaction of 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-benzyl-D-glucolactone (**41A**) with vinyl Grignard Tebbe to give the alcohol **49A**. Reduction of **49A** with triisopropyl silane and borontrifluoride etherate gives the desired olefin **50A** in good yield. Heck coupling of **50A** with **46A** gives the desired C-glycosyl derivative **51A**. Deprotection of **51A** by hydrogenolysis over palladium on carbon catalyst gives compound **52A**.



[00303] In the scheme shown below, a C-glycosyl compound is described. The sequence commences with the reaction of peracetyl D-glucose with 33% HBr in acetic acid to produce the anomeric bromide **28A**. Treatment of **28A** with excess vinyl Grignard, followed by acetylation of the crude product with acetic anhydride in pyridine gives the desired olefin **53A**. In a separate operation, phenol **21A**, prepared as described above, is condensed with aniline to afford the corresponding imine and then protected as its TBS ether by treatment with tert-butyldimethylsilyl chloride and imidazole to give **54A**. Condensation of **54A** with **7aA** as described above gives the amine derivative **55A**, that is cyclized to beta-lactam **56A** as described previously. Heck coupling of **56A** with **53A** gives the desired C-glycosyl derivative **57A**. Deprotection of **57A** is accomplished by

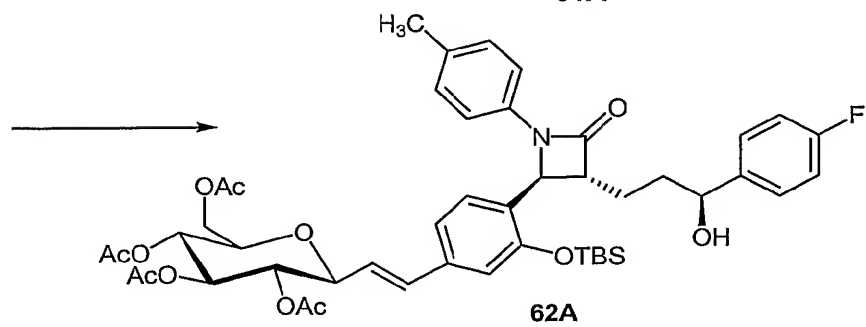
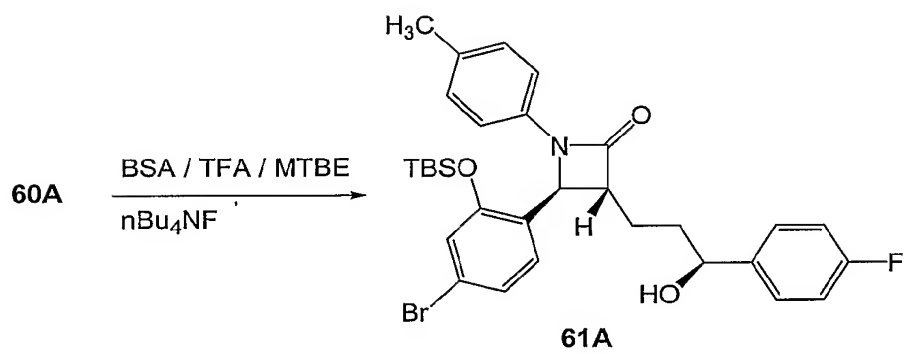
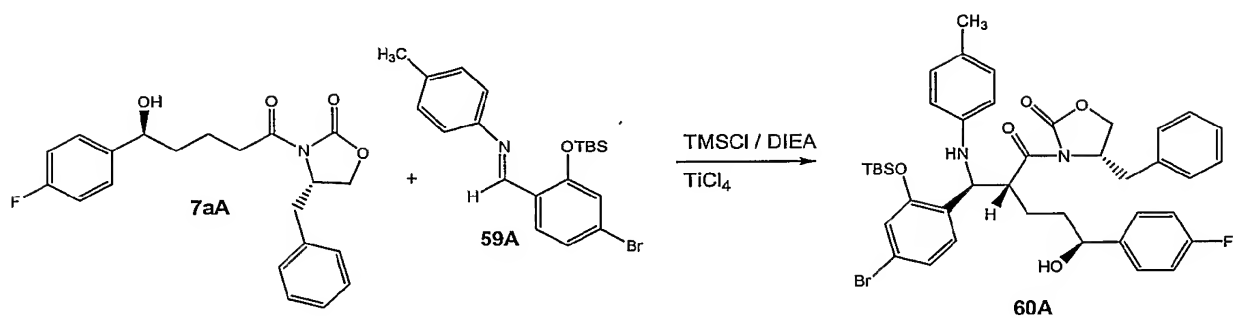
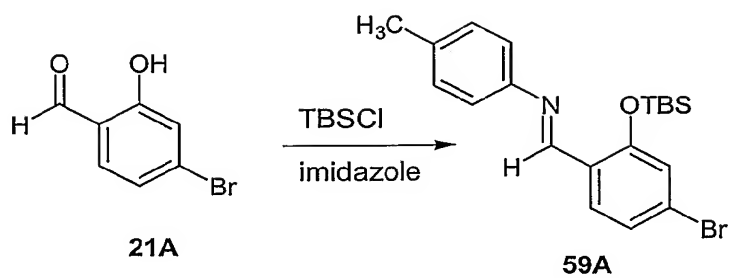
first hydrolysis in aqueous methanol and triethylamine, and then treatment with aqueous HF to produce the desired product **58A**.

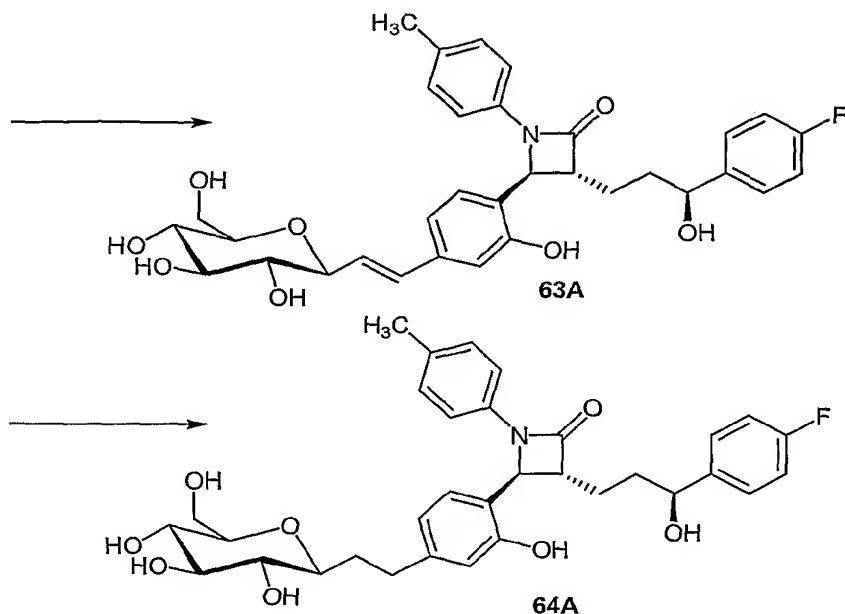




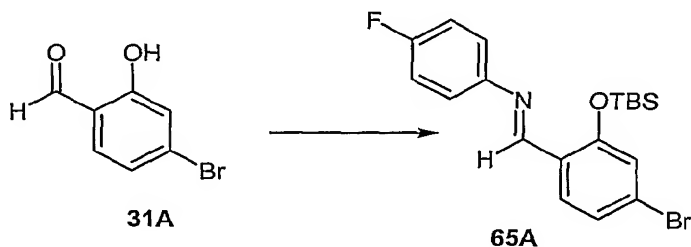
[00304] In the scheme shown below, a C-glycosyl compound is described. The sequence commences with the reaction of phenol **21A**, prepared as described above, with aniline to afford the corresponding imine and protection as its TBS ether by treatment with tert-butyldimethylsilyl chloride and imidazole to give **59A**. Condensation of **59A** with **7aA** as described above gives the amine derivative **60A**, that is cyclized to beta-lactam **61A** as described previously. Heck coupling of **61A** with **53A** gives the desired C-glycosyl derivative **62A**. Deprotection of **62A** is accomplished by first hydrolysis in aqueous methanol and triethylamine, and then treatment with aqueous HF to produce the desired product **63A**. Catalytic hydrogenation of **63A** over palladium on carbon gives the saturated analog **64A**.

- 260 -

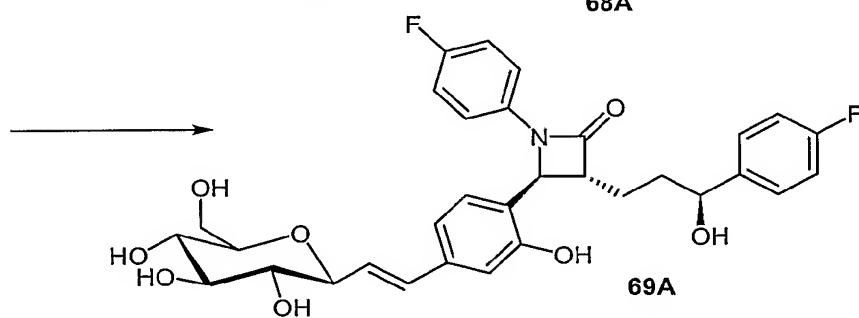
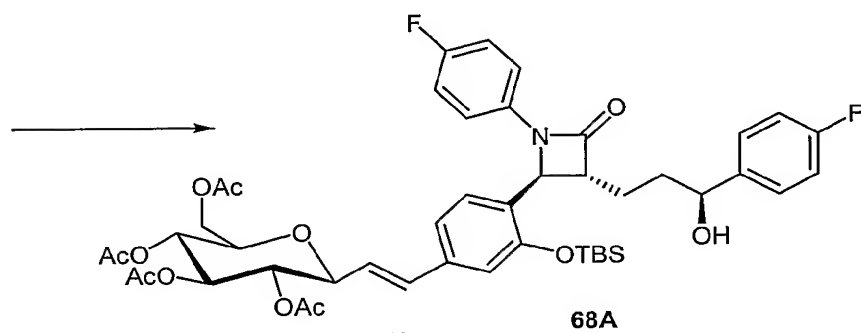
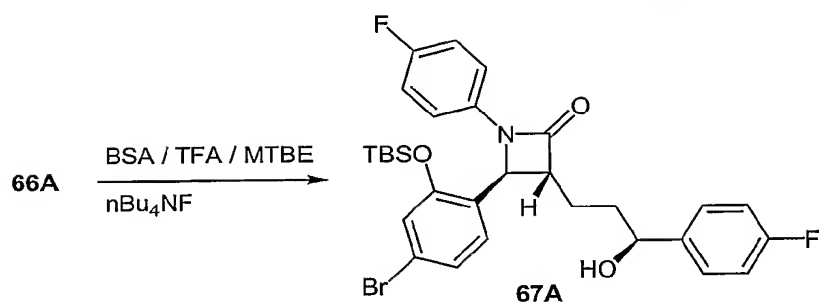
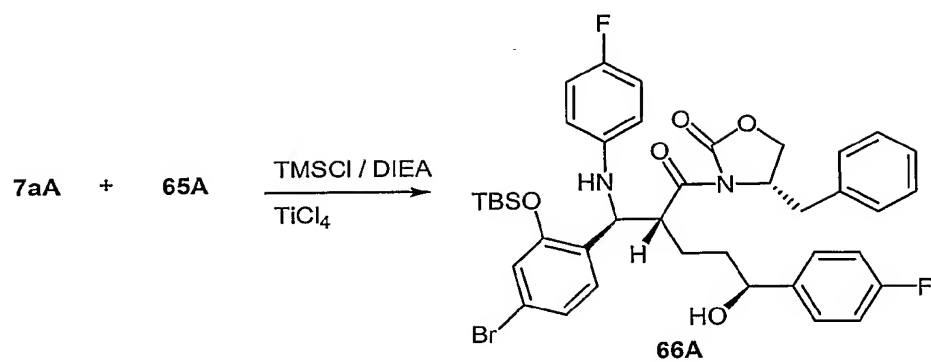


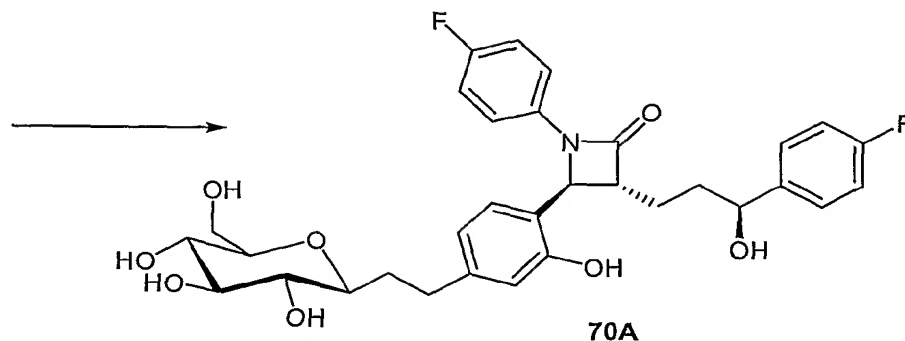


[00305] In the scheme shown below, a C-glycosyl compound is described. The sequence commences with the reaction of phenol **21C**, prepared as described above, with aniline to afford the corresponding imine and protection as its TBS ether by treatment with tert-butyldimethylsilyl chloride and imidazole to give **65C**. Condensation of **65C** with **7aC** as described above gives the amine derivative **66C**, that is cyclized to beta-lactam **67C** as described previously. Heck coupling of **67C** with **53C** gives the desired C-glycosyl derivative **68C**. Deprotection of **68C** is accomplished by first hydrolysis in aqueous methanol and triethylamine, and then treatment with aqueous HF to produce the desired product **69C**. Catalytic hydrogenation of **69C** over palladium on carbon gives the saturated analog **70C**.

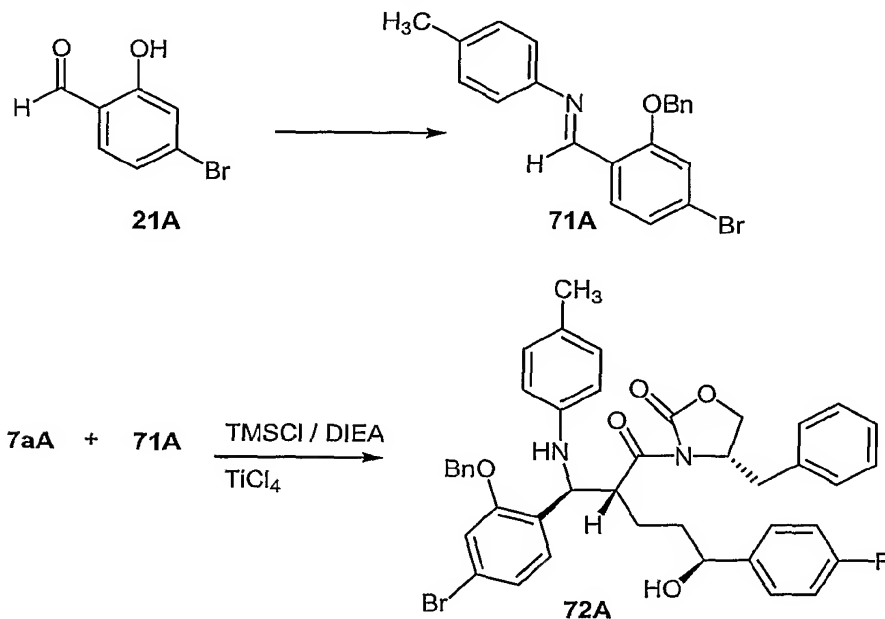


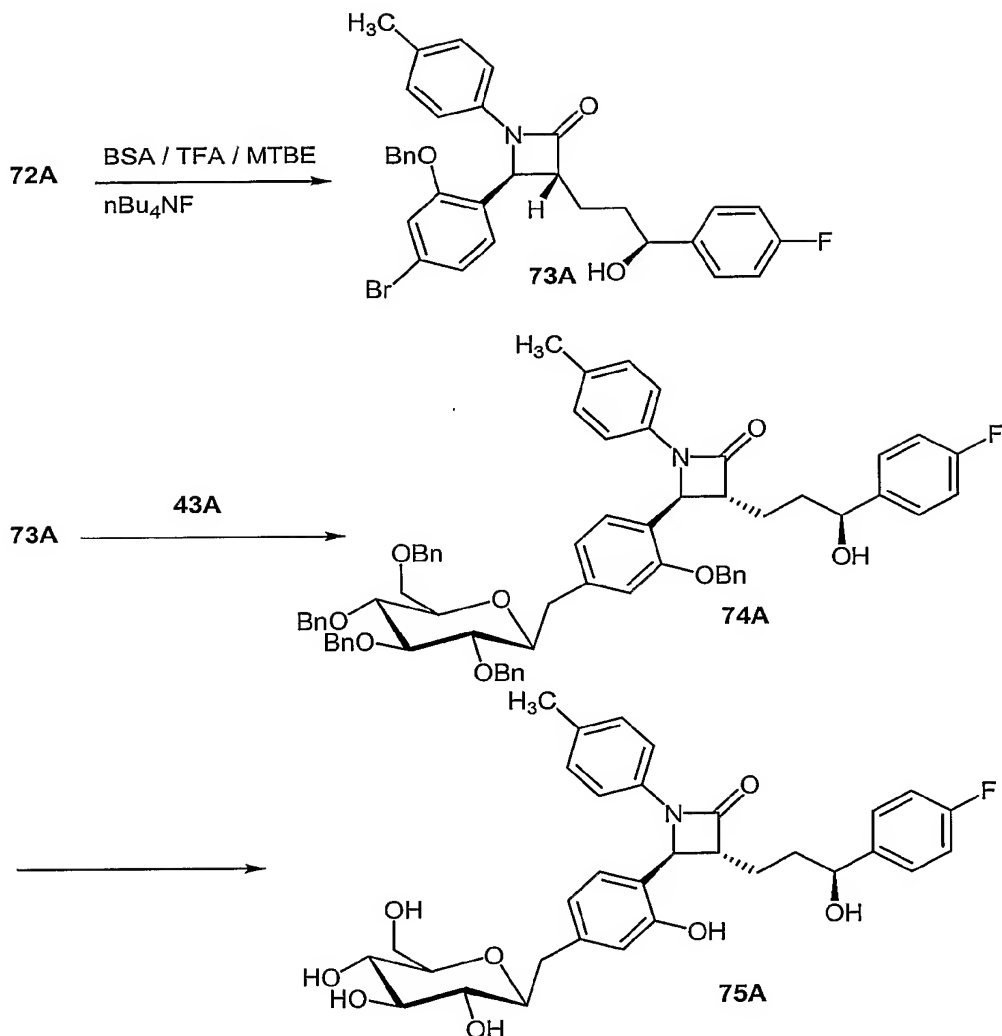
- 262 -





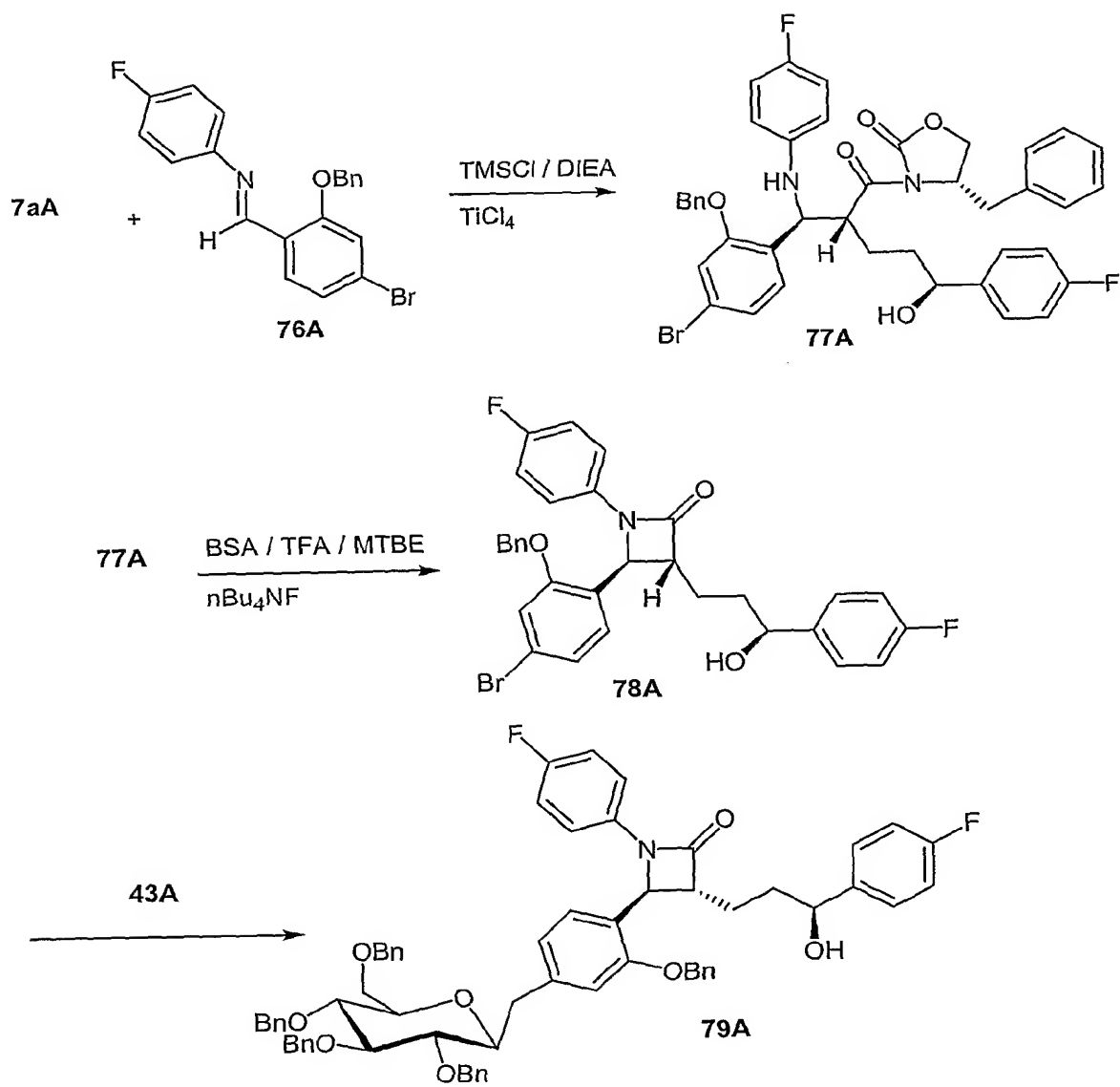
[00306] In the scheme shown below, a C-glycosyl compound is described. The sequence commences with the reaction phenol **21A**, prepared as described above, 4-methylaniline to afford the corresponding imine and then protection as its benzyl ether by treatment with benzyl bromide and potassium carbonate in DMF to give **71A**. Condensation of **71A** with **7aA** as described above gives the amine derivative **72A**, that is cyclized to beta-lactam **73A** as described previously. Suzuki coupling of **73A** with **43A** gives the desired C-glycosyl derivative **74A**. Deprotection of **74A** by hydrogenolysis over palladium on carbon catalyst gives compound **75A**.

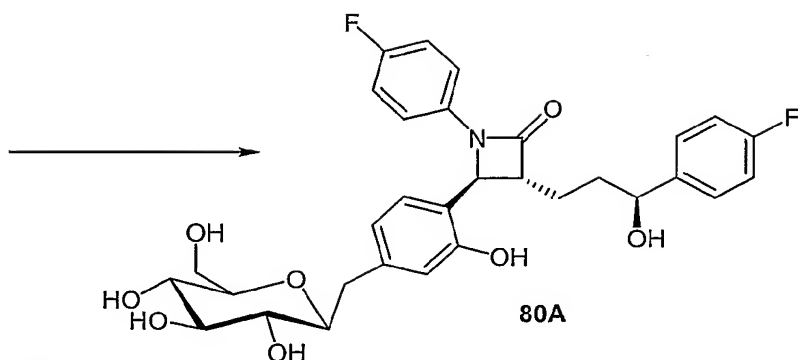




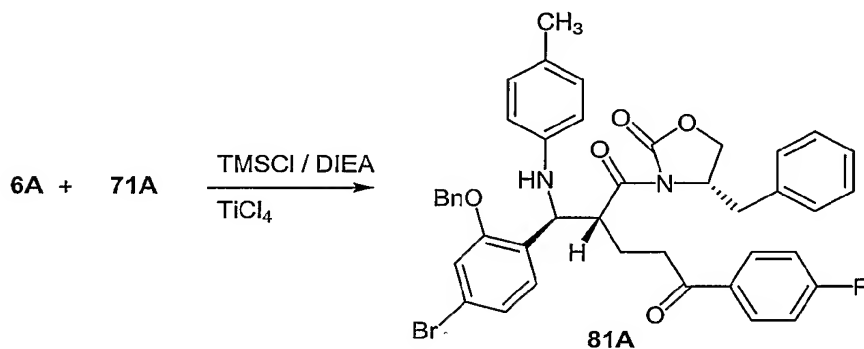
[00307] In the scheme shown below, a C-glycosyl compound is described. The sequence commences with the reaction phenol **21A**, prepared as described above, 4-fluoroaniline to afford the corresponding imine and then protection as its benzyl ether by treatment with benzyl bromide and potassium carbonate in DMF to give **76A**. Condensation of **76A** with **7aA** as described above gives the amine derivative **77A**, that is cyclized to beta-lactam **78A** as described previously. Suzuki coupling of **78A** with **43A** gives the desired C-glycosyl derivative **79A**. Deprotection of **79A** by hydrogenolysis over palladium on carbon catalyst gives compound **80A**.

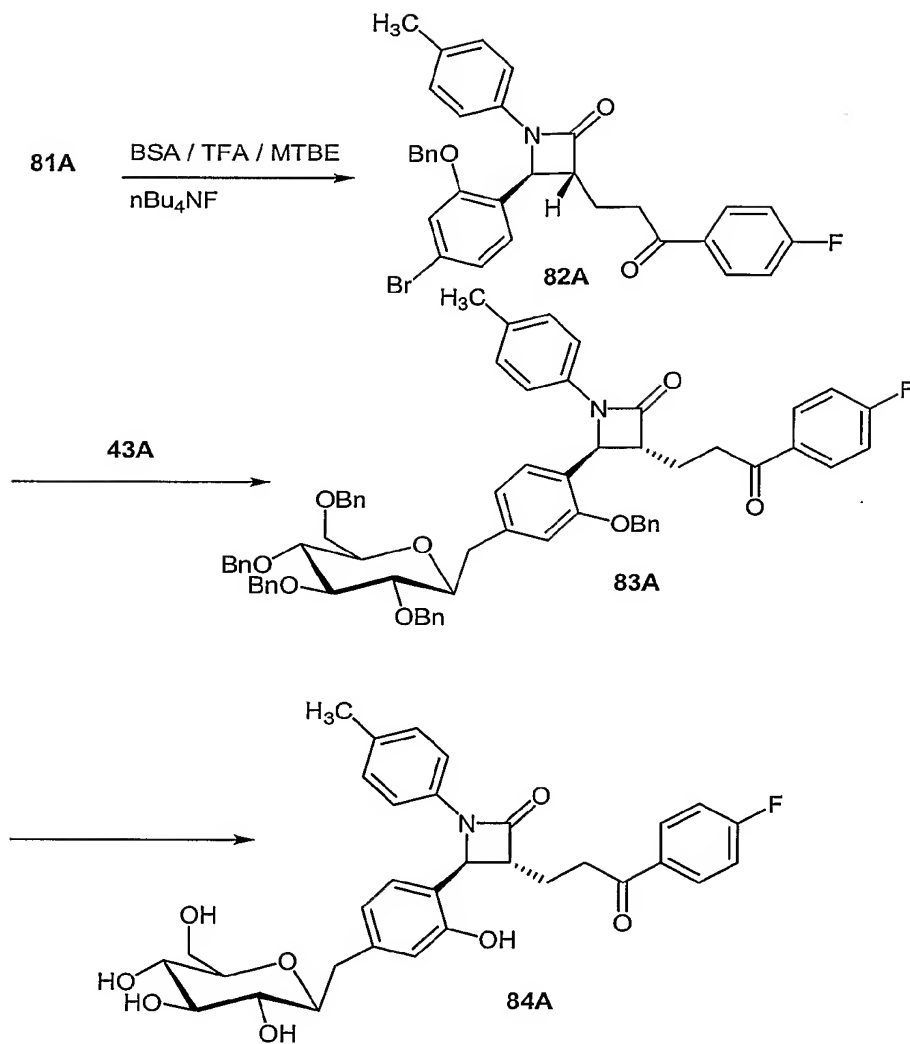
- 265 -





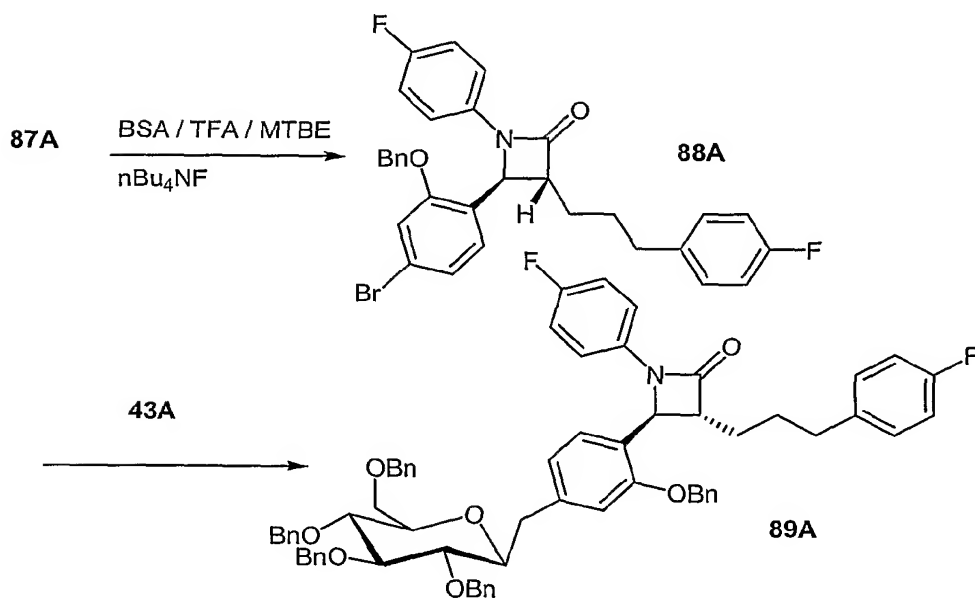
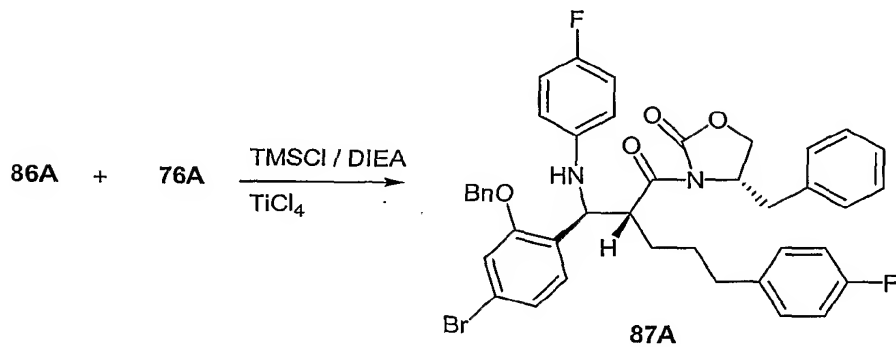
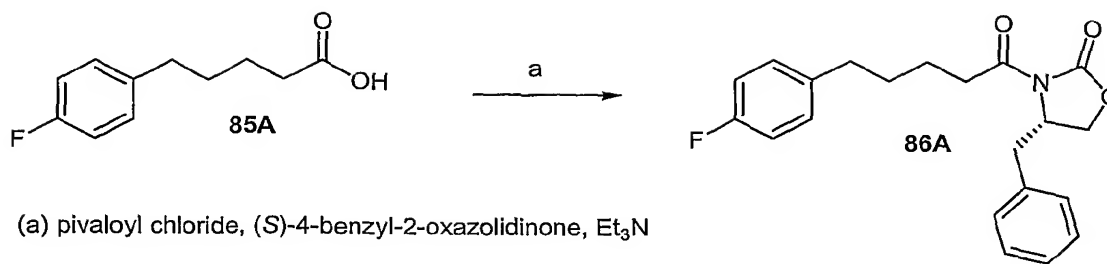
[00308] In the scheme shown below, a C-glycosyl compound is described. Condensation of **71A** with **6A** as described above gives the amine derivative **81A**, that is cyclized to beta-lactam **82A** as described previously. Suzuki coupling of **82A** with **43A** gives the desired C-glycosyl derivative **83A**. Deprotection of **83A** by hydrogenolysis over palladium on carbon catalyst gives compound **84A**.



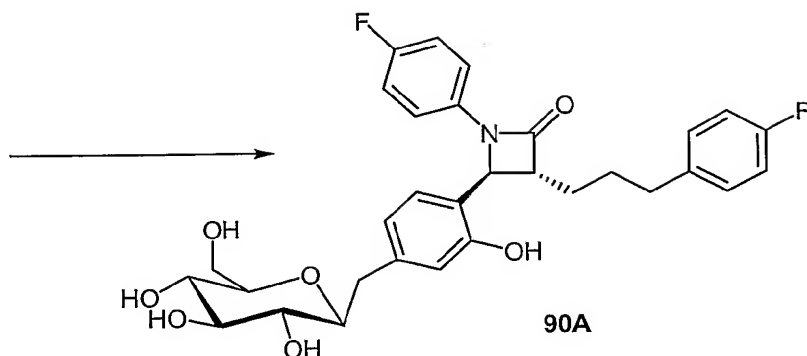


[00309] In the scheme shown below, a C-glycosyl compound is described. Commercially available 4-(4-fluorophenyl)butyric acid (**85A**) is converted to the corresponding mixed anhydride by treatment with pivaloyl chloride and DMAP in DMF and then coupled to (*S*)-4-benzyl-2-oxazolidinone to afford the imide (**86A**). Condensation of **86A** with **76A** as described above gives the amine derivative **87A**, that is cyclized to beta-lactam **88A** as described previously. Suzuki coupling of **88A** with **43A** gives the desired C-glycosyl derivative **89A**. Deprotection of **89A** by hydrogenolysis over palladium on carbon catalyst gives compound **90A**.

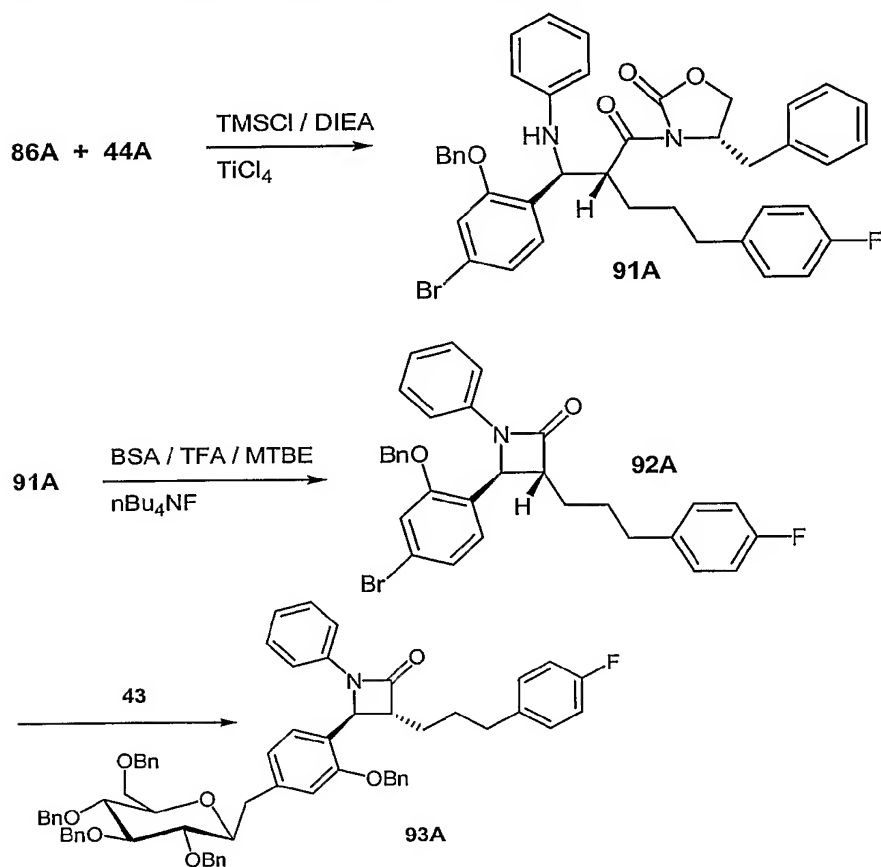
- 268 -

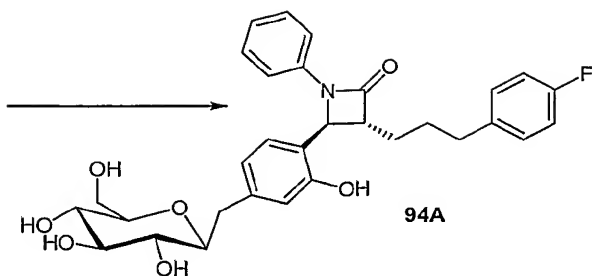


- 269 -

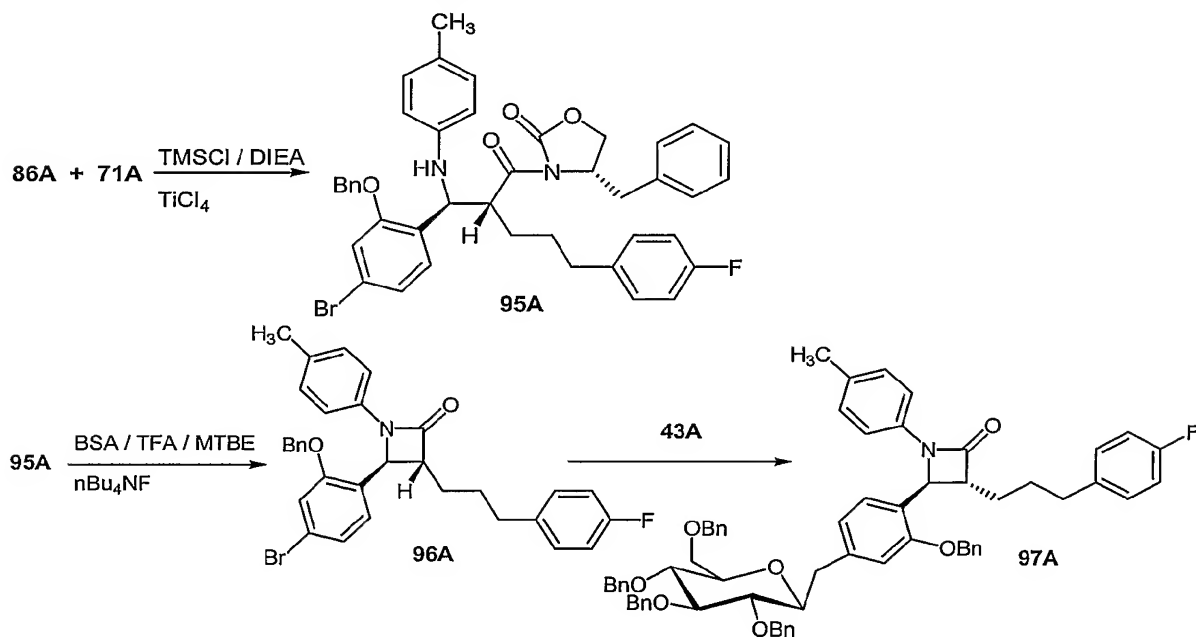


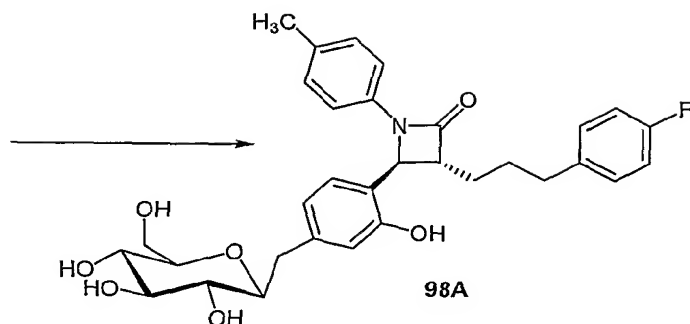
[00310] In the scheme shown below, a C-glycosyl compound is described. Condensation of **86A** with **44A** as described above gives the amine derivative **91A**, that is cyclized to beta-lactam **92A** as described previously. Suzuki coupling of **92A** with **43A** gives the desired C-glycosyl derivative **93A**. Deprotection of **93A** by hydrogenolysis over palladium on carbon catalyst gives compound **94A**.





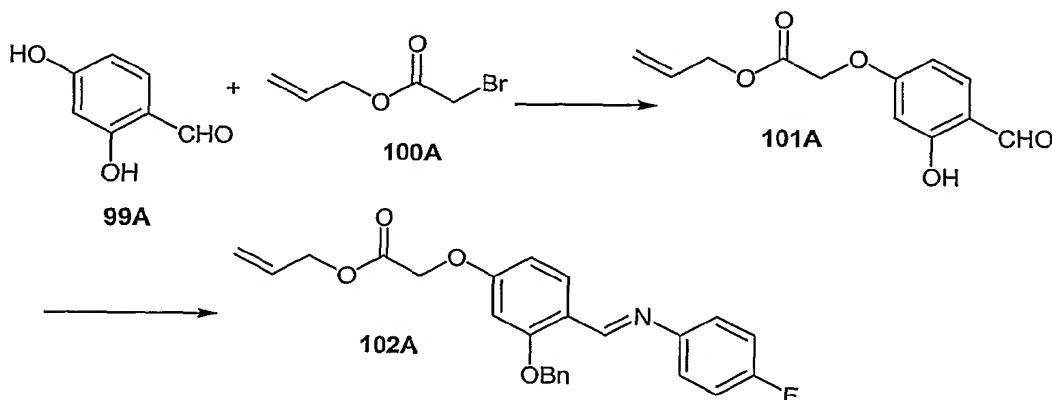
[00311] In the scheme shown below, a C-glycosyl compound is described. Condensation of **86A** with **71A** as described above gives the amine derivative **95A**, that is cyclized to beta-lactam **96A** as described previously. Suzuki coupling of **96A** with **43A** gives the desired C-glycosyl derivative **97A**. Deprotection of **97A** by hydrogenolysis over palladium on carbon catalyst gives compound **98A**.



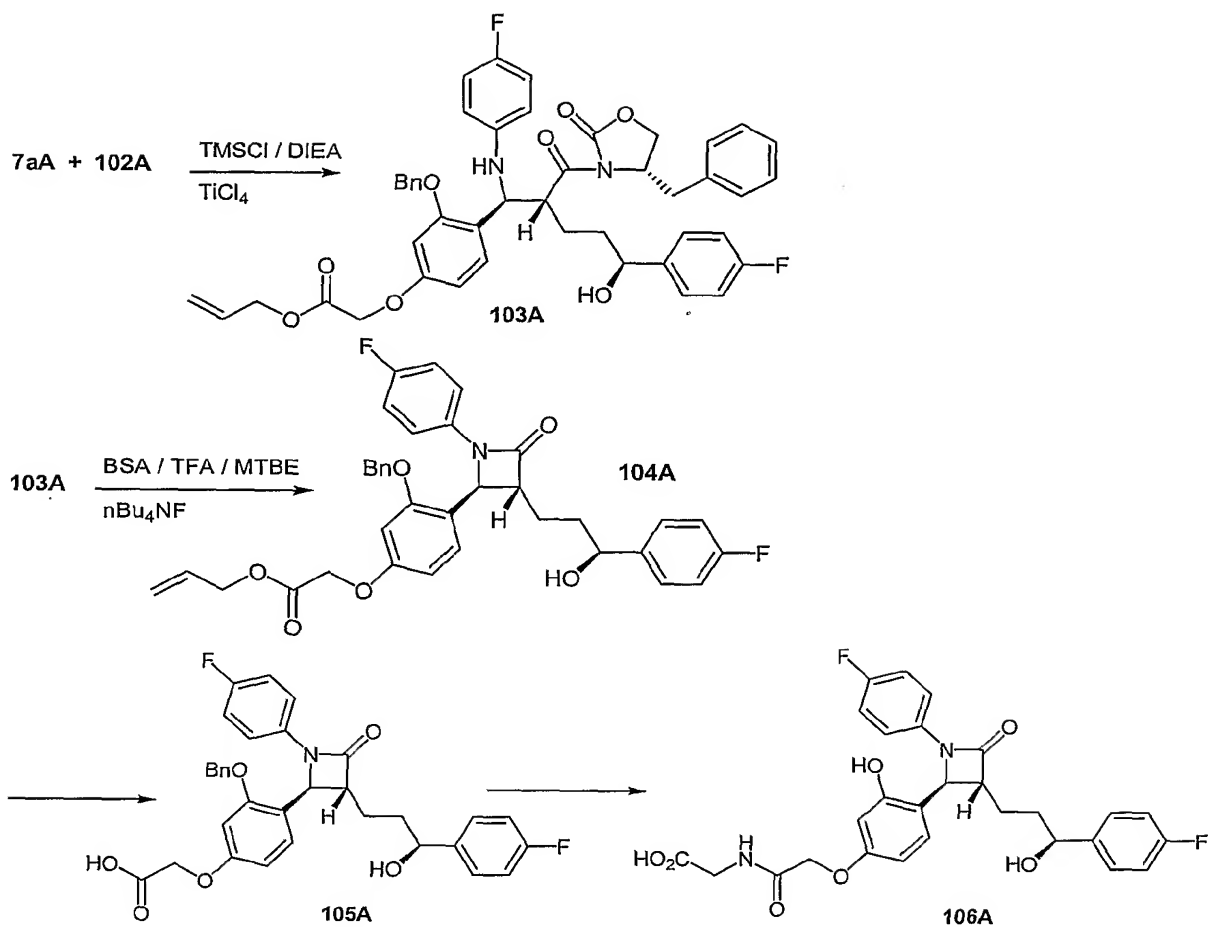


[00312] In the scheme shown below an amino acid containing compound is described.

The sequence commences with the regioselective alkylation of 2,4-dihydroxybenzaldehyde **99A** with the allyl ester of bromoacetic acid (**100A**) to give **101A**. Treatment of **101A** with 4-fluoroaniline gives the desired imine that is protected as its benzyl ether upon treatment with benzyl bromide and potassium carbonate in dry DMF to give **102A**. Condensation of **102A** with **7aA** under conditions previously described gives the amine adduct **103A**, that is cyclized to beta-lactam **104A** as described previously. The allyl ester is removed by treatment morpholine in the presence of a catalytic amount of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) to give the acid **105A**. Coupling of **105A** with benzyl glycinate tosylate in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI to provide the corresponding amide that is deprotected by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to give the desired product **106A**.

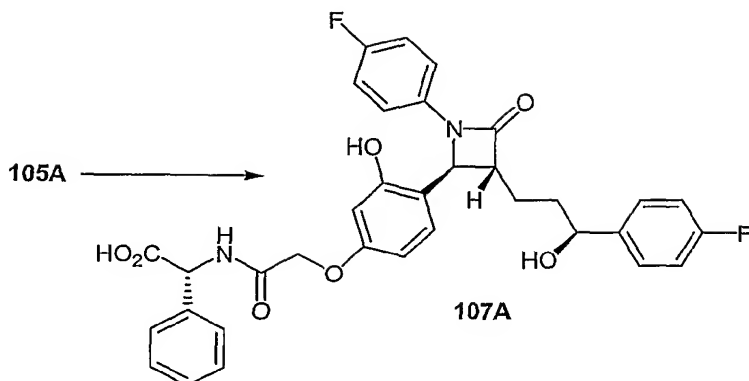


- 272 -



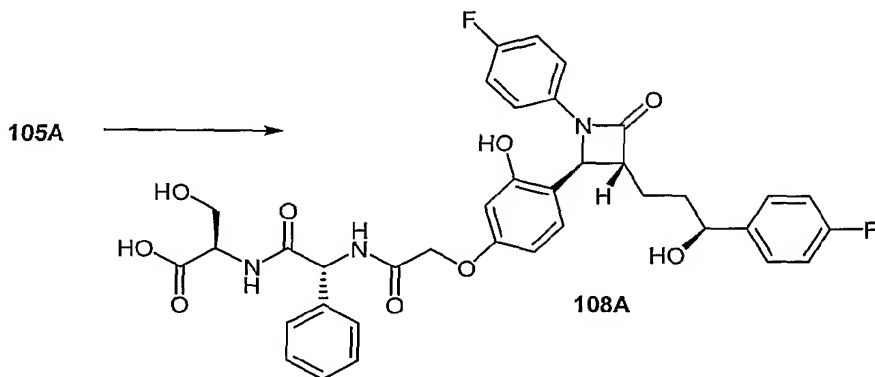
[00313] In the scheme shown below an amino acid containing compound is described.

Coupling of **105A** with benzyl phenylglycinate tosylate in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI to provide the corresponding amide that is deprotected by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to give the desired product **107A**.



[00314] In the scheme shown below an amino acid containing compound is described.

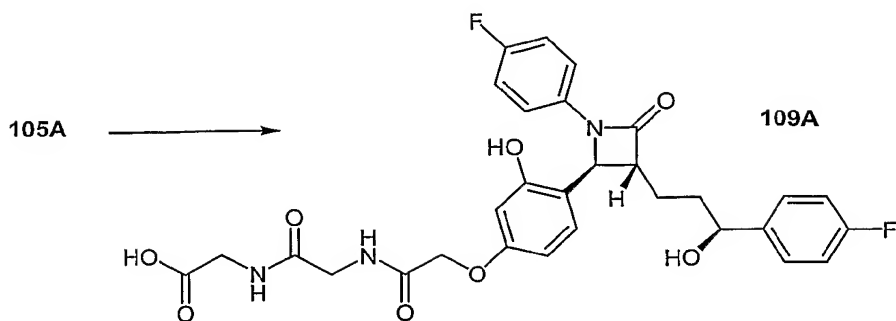
Coupling of **105A** with O,O-bis-dibenzyl seryl phenylglycinate tosylate in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI to provide the corresponding amide that is deprotected by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to give the desired product **108A**.



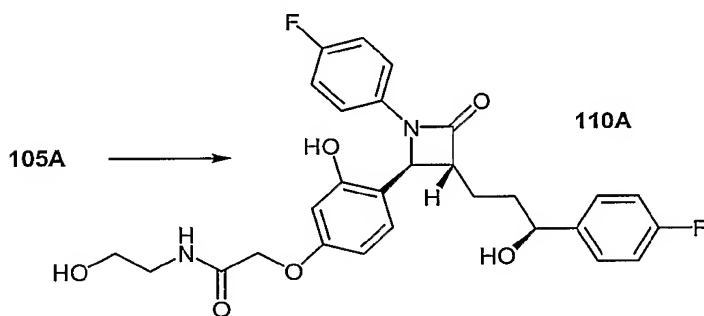
[00315] In the scheme shown below an amino acid containing compound is described.

Coupling of **105A** with benzyl glycyl glycinate tosylate in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI to provide the corresponding amide that is deprotected by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to give the desired product **109A**.

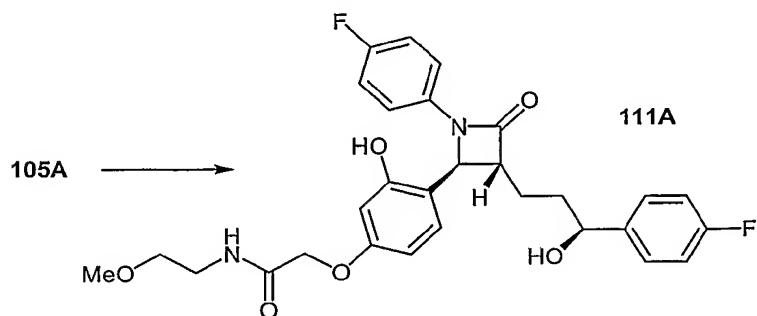
- 274 -



[00316] In the scheme shown below an amino alcohol containing compound is described. Coupling of **105A** with ethanolamine in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI to provide the corresponding amide that is deprotected by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to give the desired product **110A**.

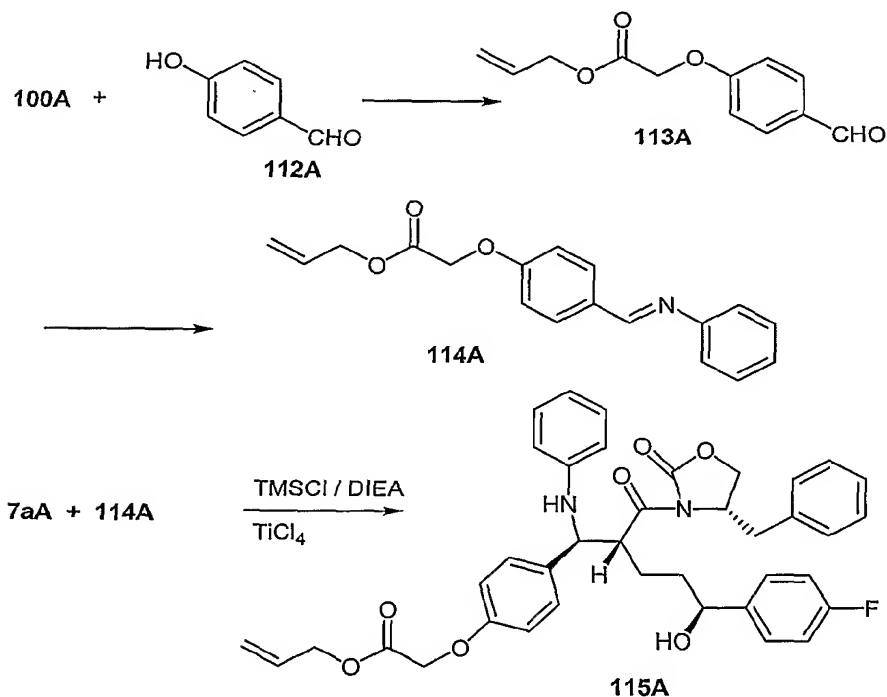


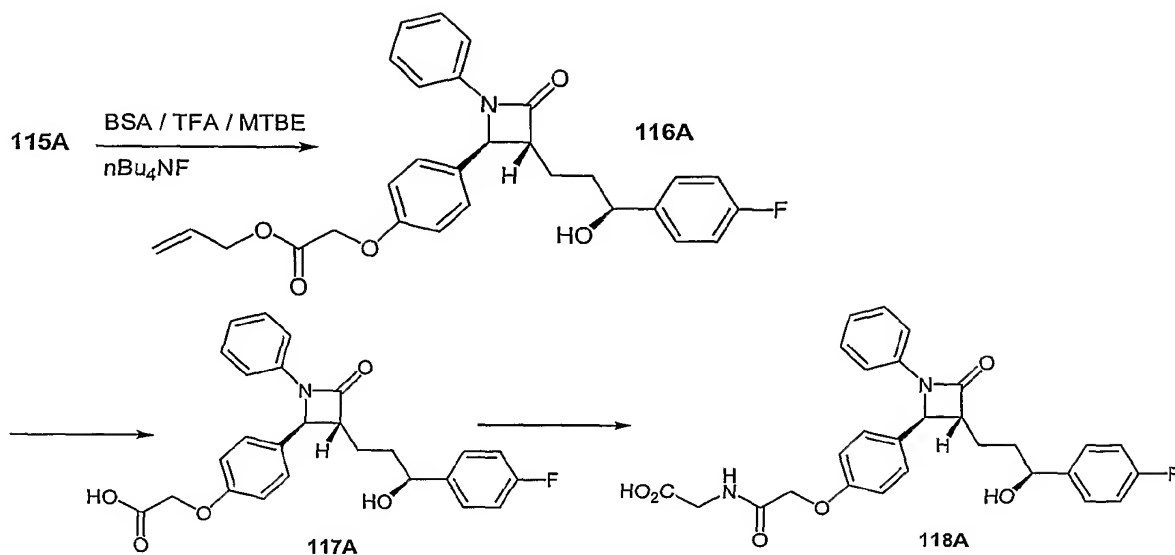
[00317] In the scheme shown below a 2-methoxyethyl amide containing compound is described. Coupling of **105A** with 2-methoxyethylamine in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI to provide the corresponding amide that is deprotected by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to give the desired product **111A**.



[00318] In the scheme shown below an amino acid containing compound is described.

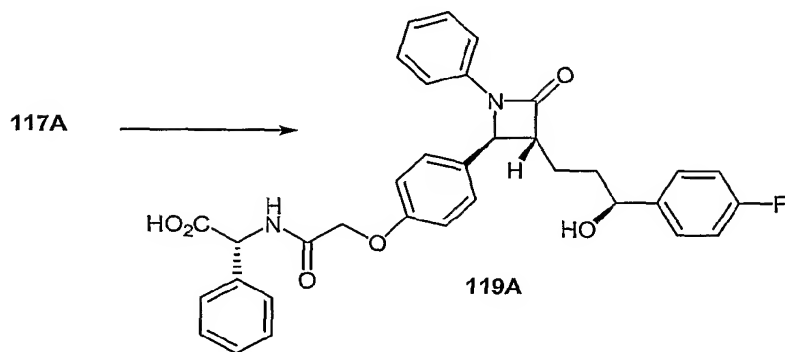
The sequence commences with the regioselective alkylation of 4-hydroxybenzaldehyde **112A** with the allyl ester of bromoacetic acid (**100A**) to give **113A**. Treatment of **113A** with aniline gives the desired imine **114A**. Condensation of **114A** with **7aA** under conditions previously described gives the amine adduct **115A**, that is cyclized to beta-lactam **116A** as described previously. The allyl ester is removed by treatment morpholine in the presence of a catalytic amount of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) to give the acid **117A**. Coupling of **117A** with benzyl glycinate tosylate in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI to provide the corresponding amide that is deprotected by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to give the desired product **118A**.





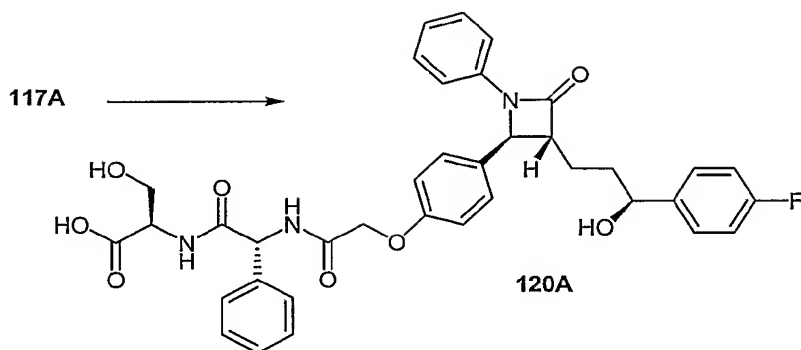
[00319] In the scheme shown below an amino acid containing compound is described.

Coupling of **117A** with benzyl phenylglycinate tosylate in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI gives the corresponding amide that is deprotected by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to give the desired product **119A**.



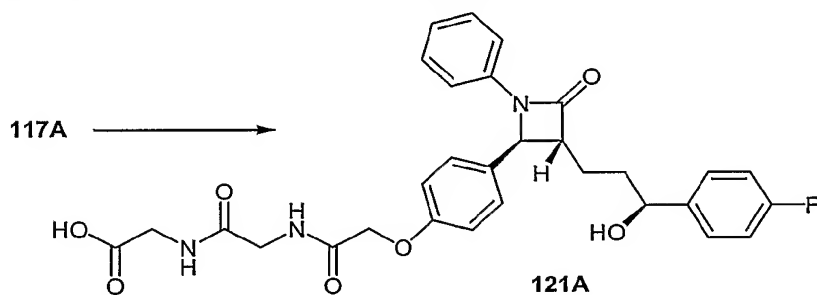
[00320] Coupling of **117A** with O,O-bis-dibenzyl seryl phenylglycinate tosylate in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI to provide the corresponding amide that is deprotected by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to give the desired product **120A**.

- 277 -



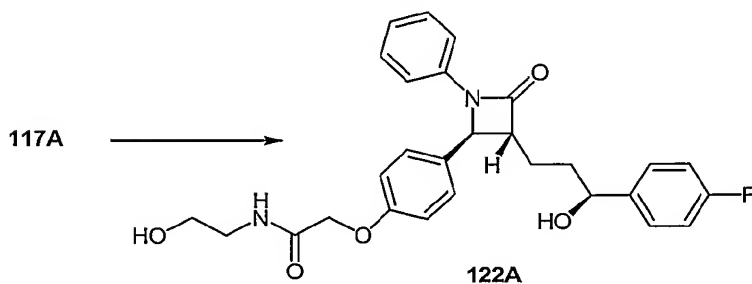
[00321] In the scheme shown below an amino acid containing compound is described.

Coupling of **117A** with benzyl glycyl glycinate tosylate in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI to provide the corresponding amide that is deprotected by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to give the desired product **121A**.



[00322] In the scheme shown below an amino alcohol containing compound is described.

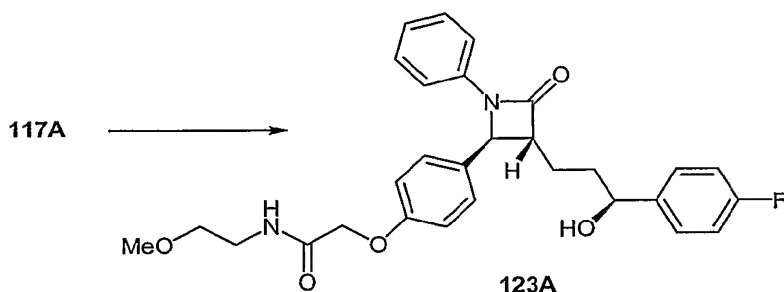
Coupling of **117A** with ethanolamine in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI to provide the corresponding amide that is deprotected by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to give the desired product **122A**.



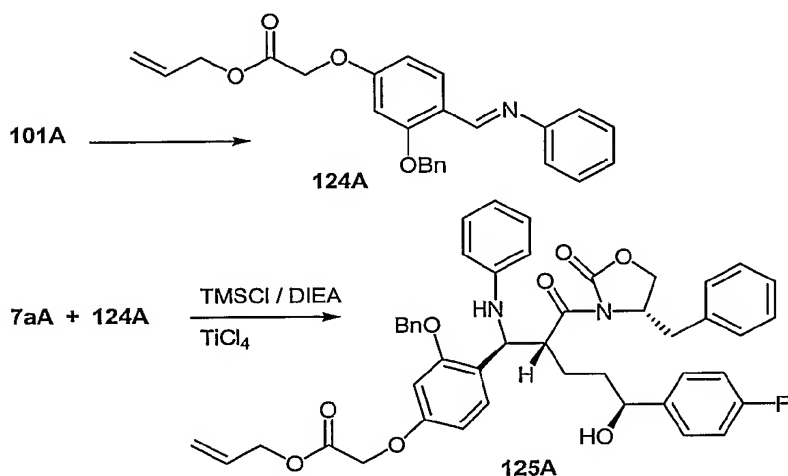
[00323] In the scheme shown below an amino alcohol containing compound is described.

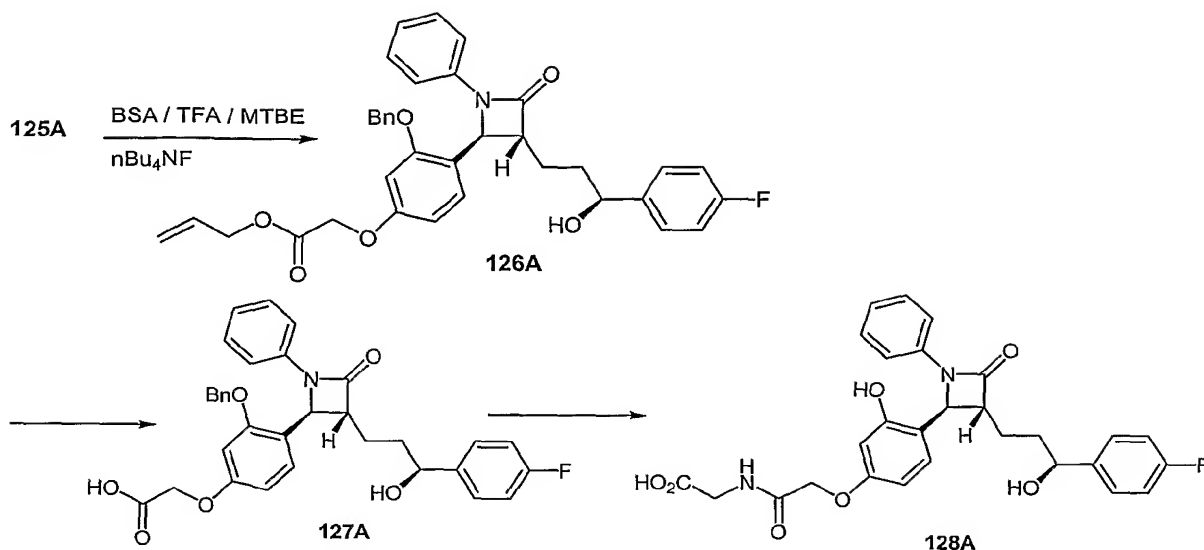
Coupling of **117A** with 2-methoxyethylamine in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI

to provide the corresponding amide that is deprotected by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to give the desired product **123A**.



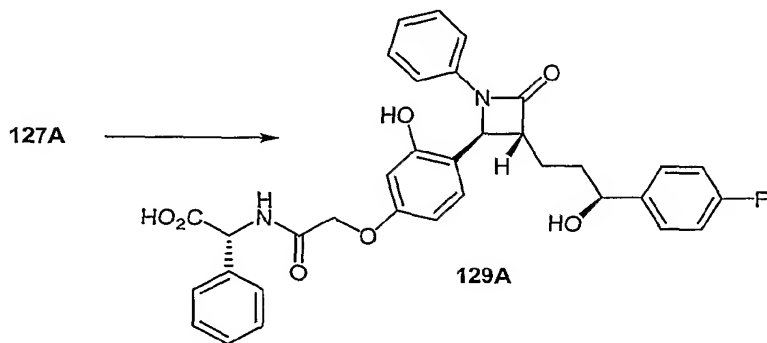
[00324] In the scheme shown below an amino acid containing compound is described. Treatment of **101A** with aniline gives the desired imine that is protected as its benzyl ether upon treatment with benzyl bromide and potassium carbonate in dry DMF to give **124A**. Condensation of **124A** with **7aA** under conditions previously described gives the amine adduct **125A**, that is cyclized to beta-lactam **126A** as described previously. The allyl ester is removed by treatment morpholine in the presence of a catalytic amount of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) to give the acid **127A**. Coupling of **127A** with benzyl glycinate tosylate in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI to provide the corresponding amide that is deprotected by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to give the desired product **128A**.





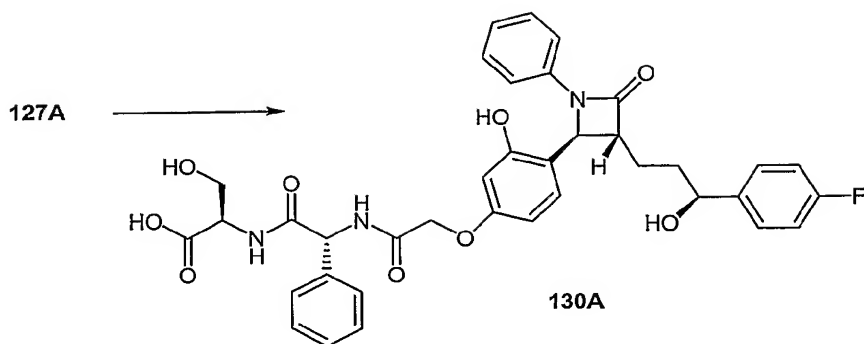
[00325] In the scheme shown below an amino acid containing compound is described.

Coupling of 127A with benzyl phenylglycinate tosylate in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI gives the corresponding amide that is deprotected by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to give the desired product 129A.



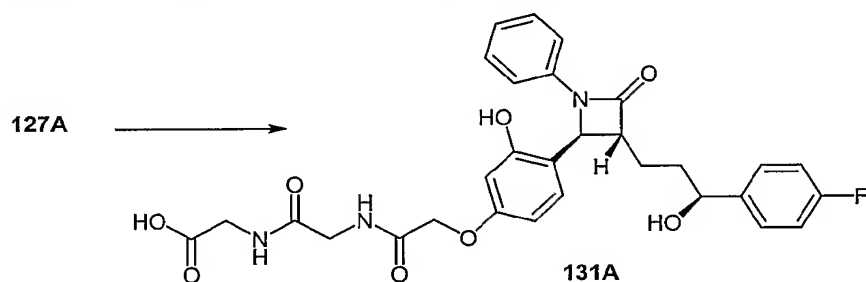
[00326] Coupling of 127A with O,O-bis-dibenzyl seryl phenylglycinate tosylate in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI to provide the corresponding amide that is deprotected by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to give the desired product 130A.

- 280 -



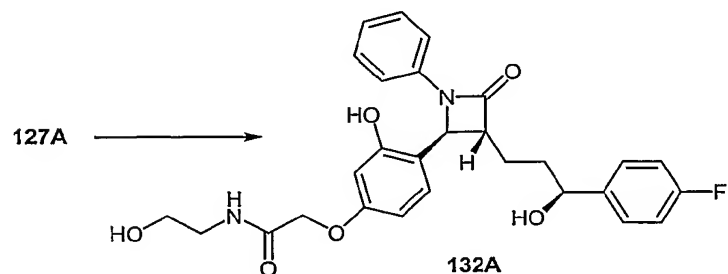
[00327] In the scheme shown below an amino acid containing compound is described.

Coupling of **127A** with benzyl glycyl glycinate tosylate in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI to provide the corresponding amide that is deprotected by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to give the desired product **131A**.

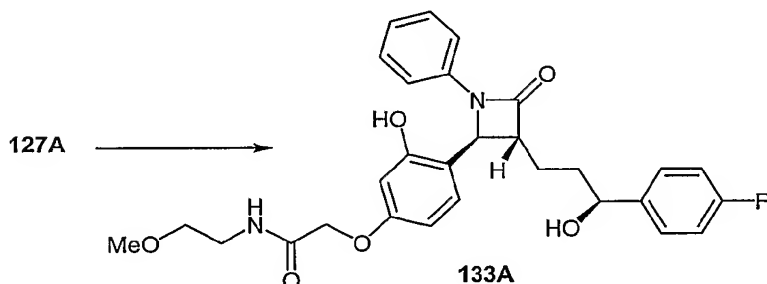


[00328] In the scheme shown below an amino alcohol containing compound is described.

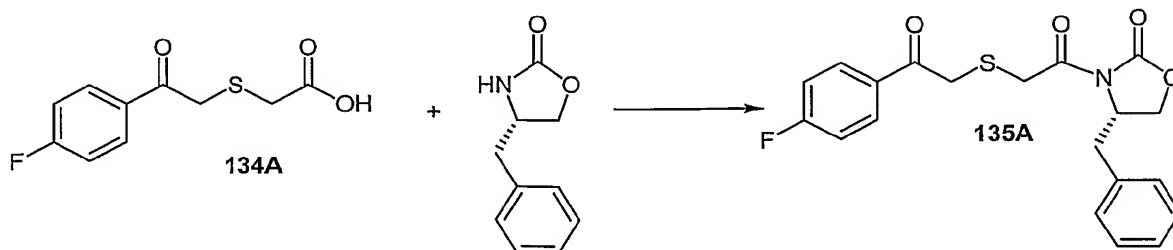
Coupling of **127A** with ethanolamine in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI to provide the corresponding amide that is deprotected by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to give the desired product **132A**.



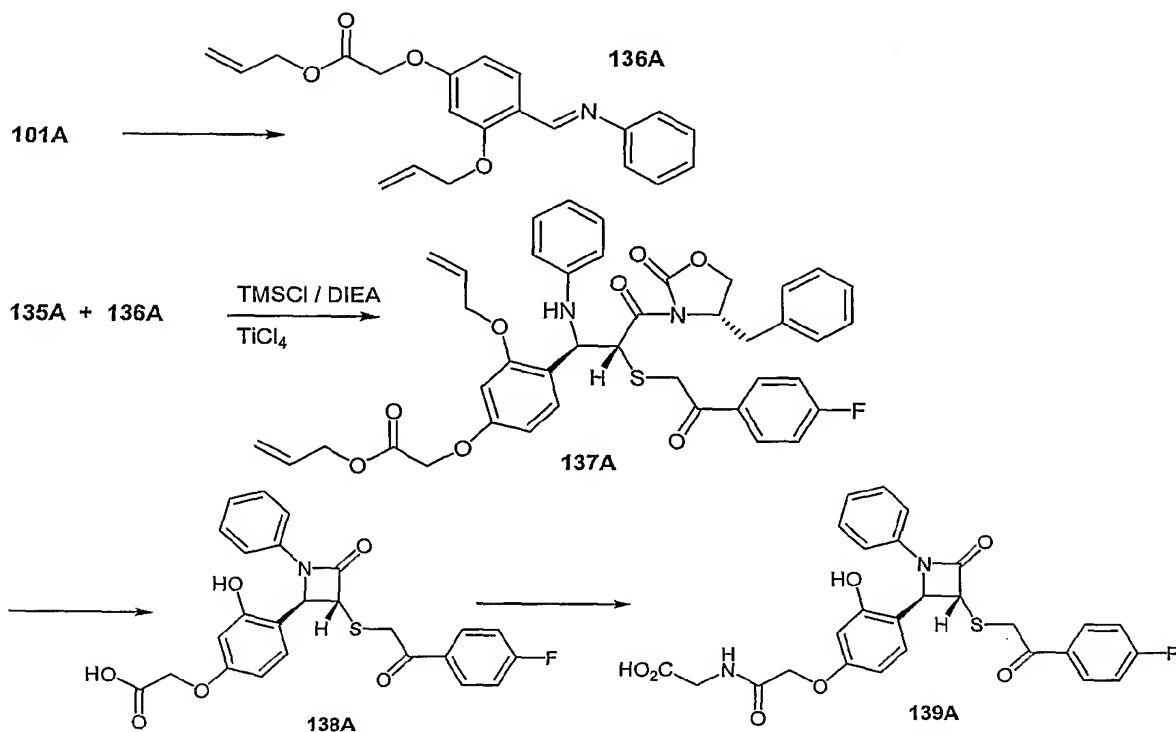
[00329] In the scheme shown below an amino alcohol containing compound is described. Coupling of **127A** with 2-methoxyethylamine in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI to provide the corresponding amide that is deprotected by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to give the desired product **133A**.



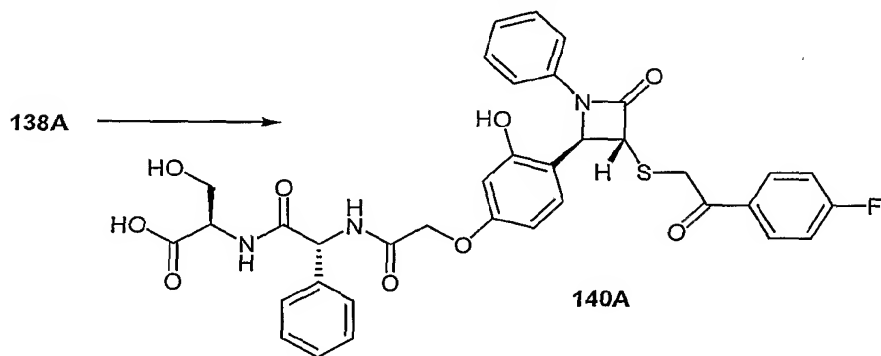
[00330] {[2-(4-fluorophenyl)-2-oxoethyl]thio}acetic acid (**134A**) is converted to the corresponding mixed anhydride by treatment with pivaloyl chloride and DMAP in DMF and then coupled to (*S*)-4-benzyl-2-oxazolidinone to afford the imide (**135A**). In a separate operation, compound **101A** is treated with allyl bromide in the presence of potassium carbonate in DMF to produce the allyl ether **136A**. Condensation of **136A** with **7aA** under conditions previously described gives the amine adduct **137A**, that is cyclized to beta-lactam as described previously. The allyl ester and the allyl ether are removed by treatment morpholine in the presence of a catalytic amount of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) to give the acid **138A**. Coupling of **138A** with allyl glycinate tosylate in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI to provide the corresponding amide that is deprotected by treatment with morpholine in the presence of a catalytic amount of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) to give the desired product **139A**.



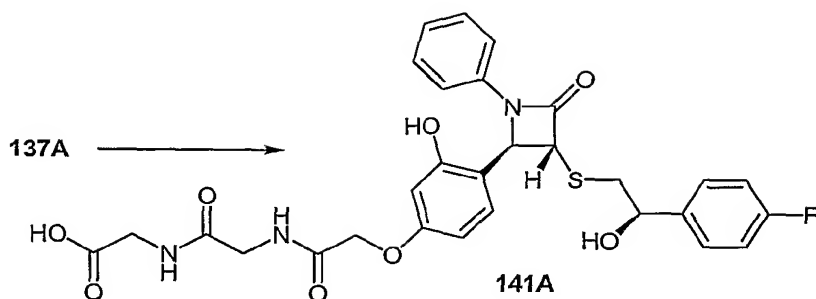
- 282 -



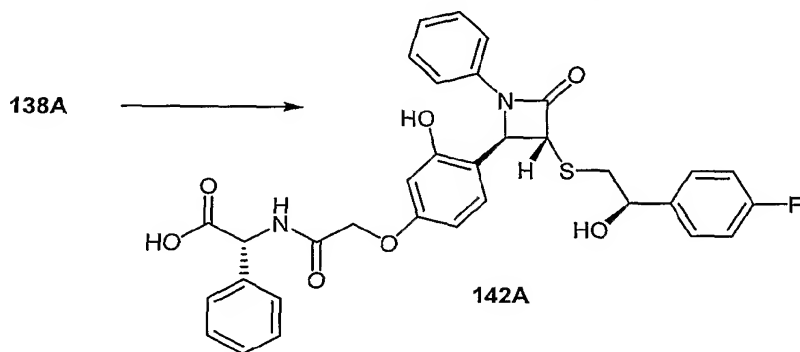
Coupling of **138A** with O,O-bis-tert-butyldimethylsilyl seryl phenylglycinate in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI to provide the corresponding amide that is deprotected by treatment with aqueous HF to give the desired product **140A**.



[00331] Coupling of **138A** with tert-butyldimethylsilyl glycylglycinate in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI to provide the corresponding amide that is deprotected by treatment with aqueous HF to give the desired product **141A**.



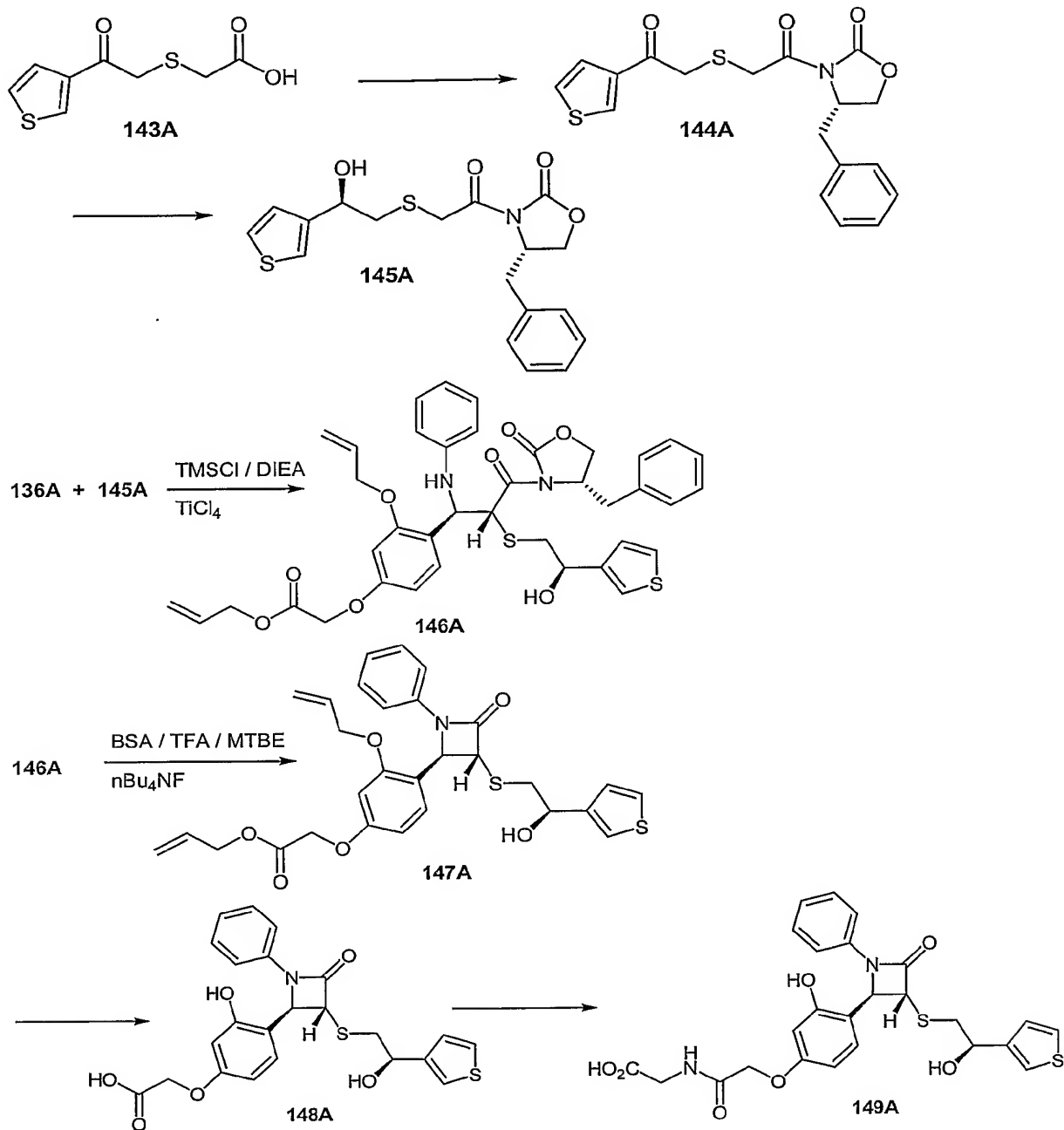
[00332] Coupling of **138A** with tert-butyldimethylsilyl phenylglycinate in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI to provide the corresponding amide that is deprotected by treatment with aqueous HF to give the desired product **142A**.



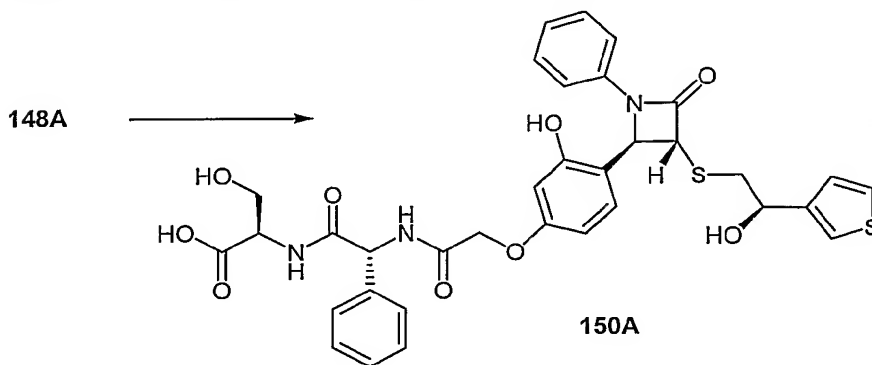
[00333] [(2-Oxo-2-thien-3-ylethyl)thio]acetic acid (**143A**) is converted to the corresponding mixed anhydride by treatment with pivaloyl chloride and DMAP in DMF and then coupled to (*S*)-4-benzyl-2-oxazolidinone to afford the imide (**144A**). Treatment of **144A** with borane di-methylsulfide complex in the presence of a catalytic amount of (*R*)-1-methyl-3,3-diphenyltetra-hydro-3*H*-Pyrrolo[1,2-*c*][1,3,2]oxazaborole produces the desired {[(2*R*)-2-hydroxy-2-thien-3-ylethyl]thio}acetic acid (**145A**) in good yield. Condensation of **145A** with **136A** under conditions previously described gives the amine adduct **146A**, that is cyclized to beta-lactam as described previously to produce **147A**. The allyl ester and the allyl ether are removed by treatment morpholine in the presence of a catalytic amount of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)pal-ladium(0) to give the acid **148A**. Coupling of **148A** with tert-butyldimethylsilyl glycinate in the presence of

- 284 -

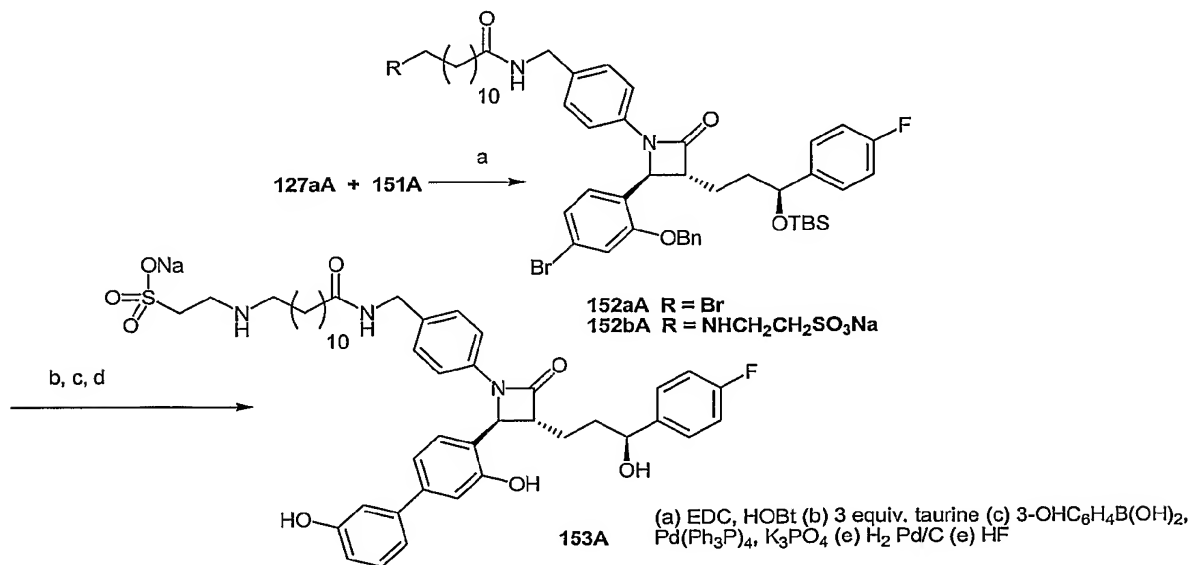
triethylamine and EDCI gives the corresponding amide that is deprotected by treatment with aqueous HF to give the desired product **149A**.



[00334] Coupling of **148A** with O,O-bis-tert-butyldimethylsilyl seryl phenylglycinate in the presence of triethylamine and EDCI to provide the corresponding amide that is deprotected by treatment with aqueous HF to give the desired product **150A**.

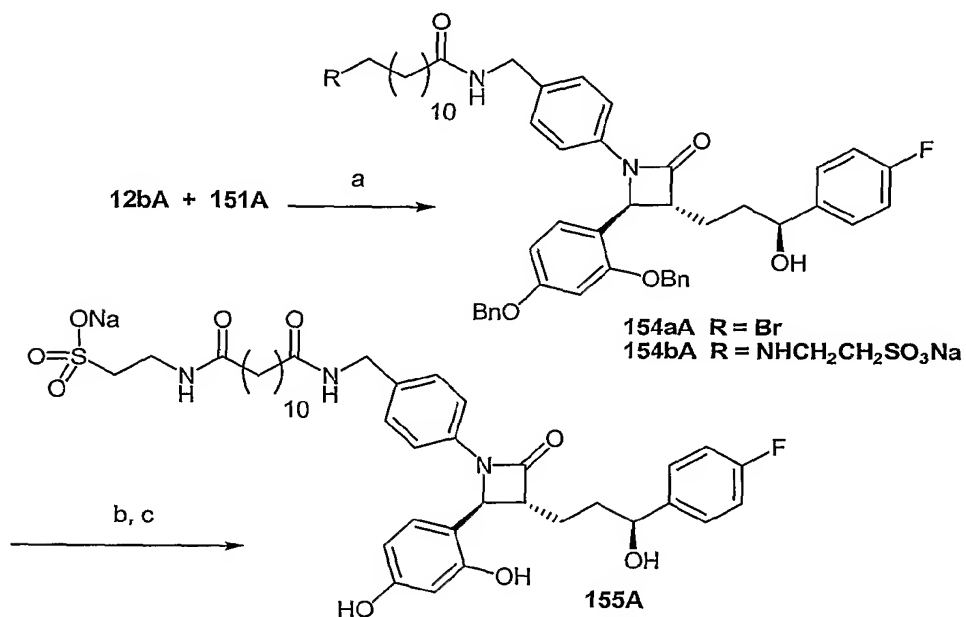


[00335] Acylation of **25bA** with 12-bromododecanoic acid (**151A**) in the presence of EDCI and HOBt gives the corresponding amide **152aA** that is treated with 3 equivalents of the sodium salt of taurine to produce **152bA**. Suzuki coupling of **152bA** with 3-hydroxyphenylboronic acid gives the desired biphenyl that is deprotected by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to provide compound **153A**.



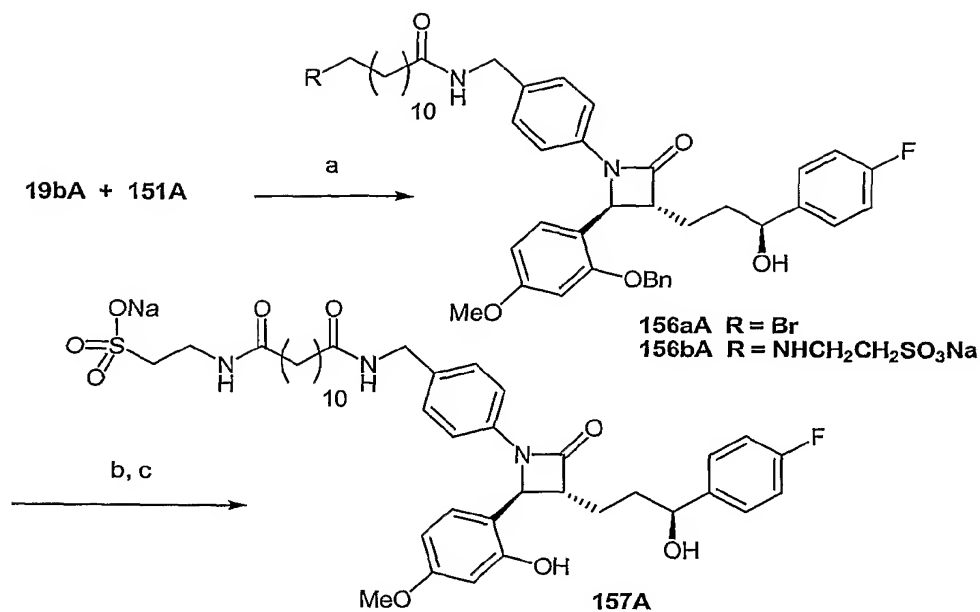
[00336] Acylation of **12bA** with **151A** in the presence of EDCI and HOBt gives the corresponding amide **154aA** that is treated with 3 equivalents of the sodium salt of

taurine to produce **154bA**. Deprotection of **154bA** is accomplished by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to provide compound **155A**.



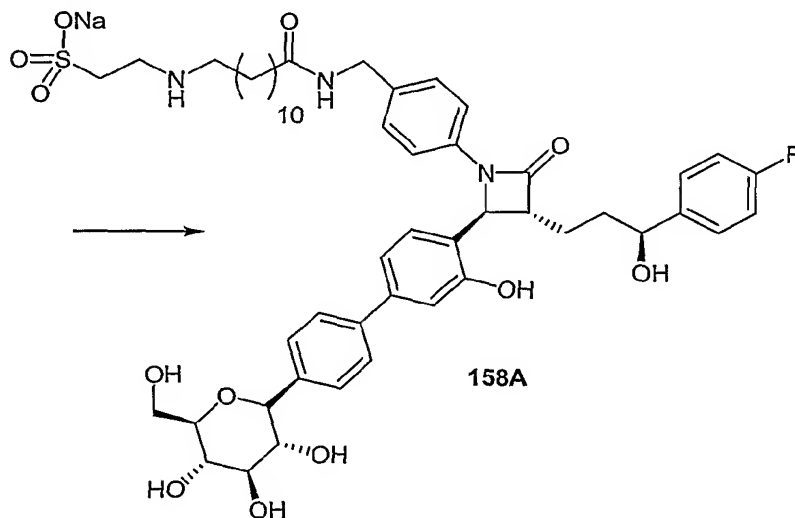
(a) EDC, HOBT (b) 3 equiv. taurine (c) H_2 Pd/C

[00337] Acylation of **19bA** with **151A** in the presence of EDCI and HOBT gives the corresponding amide **156aA** that is treated with 3 equivalents of the sodium salt of taurine to produce **156bA**. Deprotection of **156bA** is accomplished by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to provide compound **157A**.

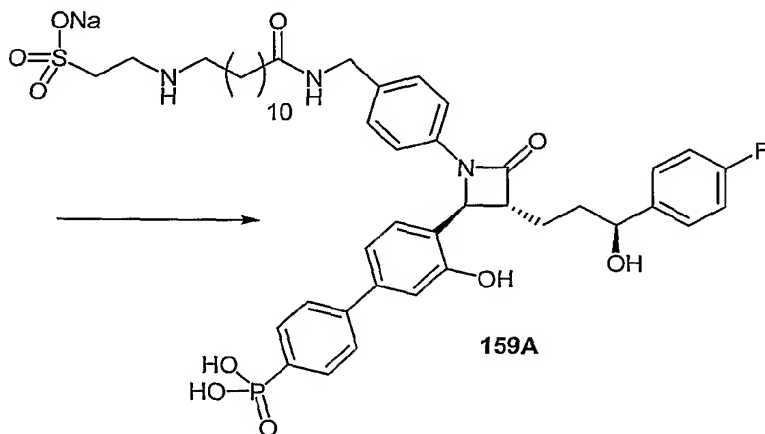


(a) EDC, HOBt (b) 3 equiv. taurine (c) H₂ Pd/C

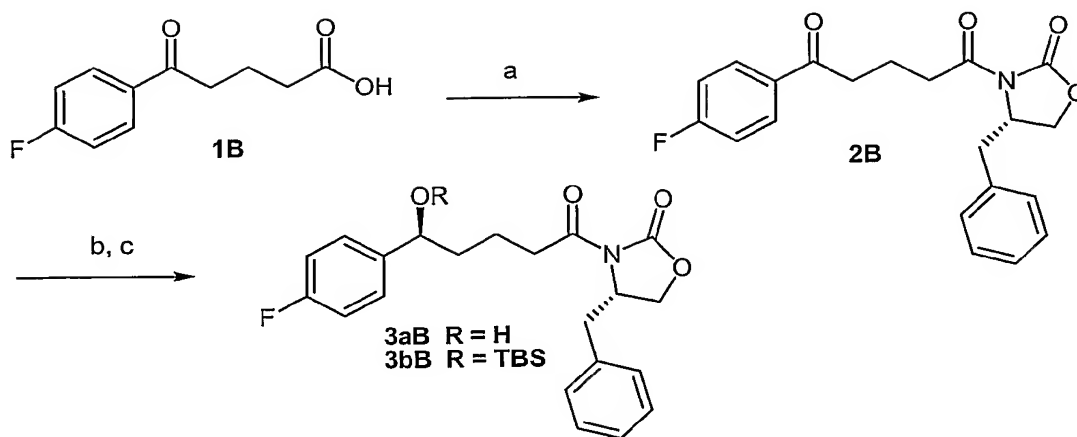
[00338] Acylation of **25bA** with **151A** in the presence of EDCI and HOBt gives the corresponding amide **152aA** that is treated with 3 equivalents of the sodium salt of taurine to produce **152bA**. Suzuki coupling of **152bA** with **32A** gives the desired biphenyl that is deprotected first by treatment with aqueous methanol and triethylamine and then by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to provide compound **158A**.



[00339] Acylation of **25bA** with **151A** in the presence of EDCI and HOBT gives the corresponding amide **152aA** that is treated with 3 equivalents of the sodium salt of taurine to produce **152bA**. Suzuki coupling of **152bA** with **36A** gives the desired biphenyl that is deprotected first by treatment with bromotrimethylsilane and then by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon to provide compound **159A**.

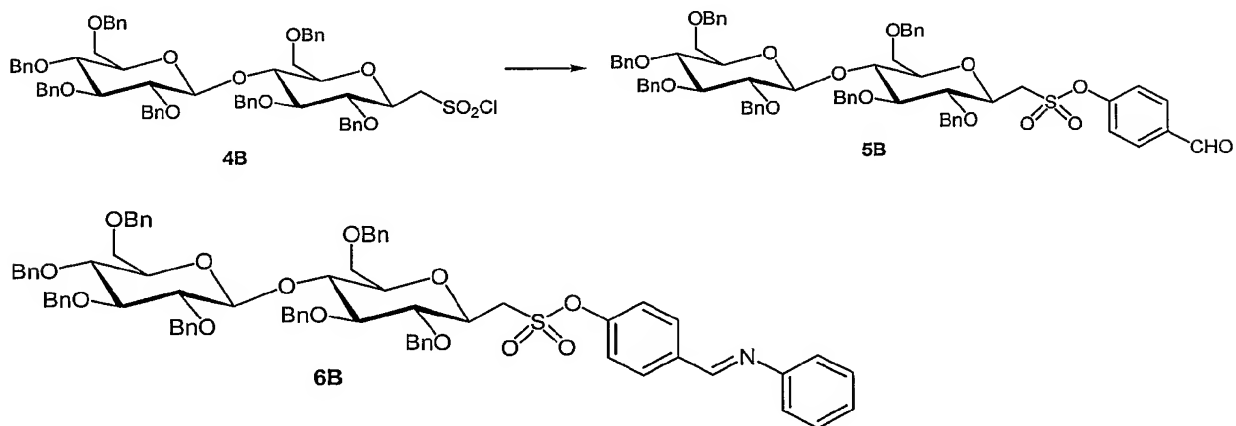


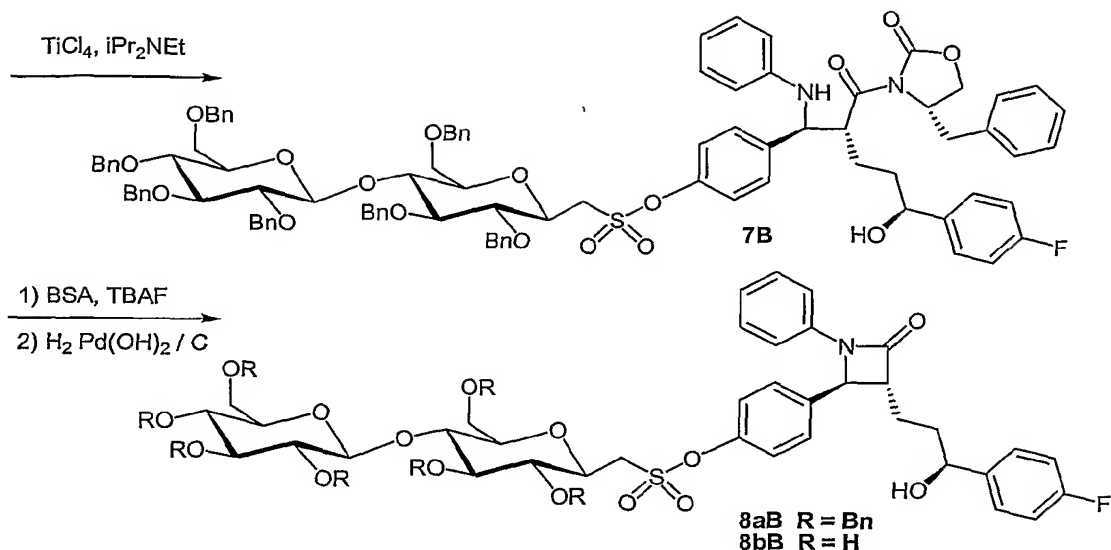
[00340] Preparation of Intermediates **3aB** and **3bB** (protected): Commercially available 4-(4-fluorobenzoyl)butyric acid (**1B**) was converted to the corresponding mixed anhydride by treatment with pivaloyl chloride and DMAP in DMF and then coupled to (*S*)-4-benzyl-2-oxazolidinone to afford the imide (**2B**). Treatment of **2B** with borane dimethylsulfide complex in the presence of a catalytic amount of (*R*)-1-methyl-3,3-diphenyltetrahydro-3*H*-Pyrrolo[1,2-*c*][1,3,2]oxazaborole produced the desired (4*S*)-4-benzyl-3-[(*5S*)-5-(4-fluorophenyl)-5-hydroxypentanoyl]-1,3-oxazolidin-2-one (**3aB**) in good yield. Protection of the benzylic alcohol as the TBS ether was effected by reaction with tert-butyldimethylsilyl chloride in the presence of imidazole as a base to provide **3bB** in good yield.



(a) pivaloyl chloride, (S)-4-benzyl-2-oxazolidinone, Et₃N
 (b) (R)-CBS, BH₃·SMe₂ (c) TBDMSCl, imidazole

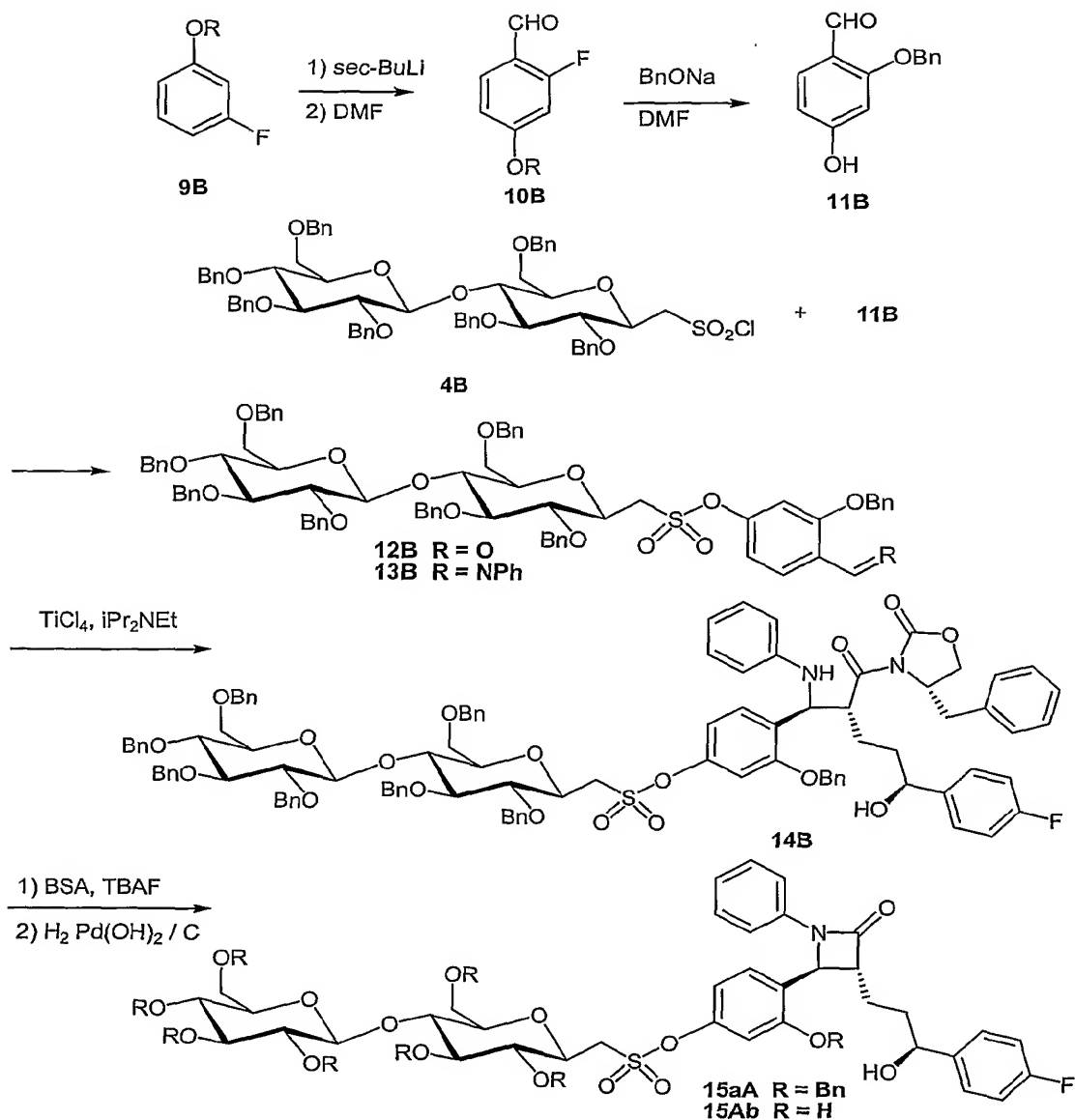
[00341] **EXAMPLE 1B:** Coupling of 4-hydroxybenzaldehyde with sulfonyl chloride **4B** (prepared according to the method of Kværnø *et al.* Org. Lett. 2005, 4, 1145-1148 in the presence of triethylamine gives the desired product **5B**. Condensation of **5B** with aniline gives the imine **6B**. In the next step, **3aB** was treated with titanium tetrachloride and *N*-ethyldiisopropylamine followed by treatment with **6B** to effect enantiospecific condensation to provide **7B**. Treatment of **7B** with excess *N,O*-bistrimethylsilyl-acetamide followed by a catalytic amount of tetrabutyl-ammonium fluoride hydrate results in ring closure to the desired beta-lactam (**8aB**). Finally, catalytic hydrogenation of **8aB** over Pearlman's catalyst gives the deprotected derivative **8bB**.





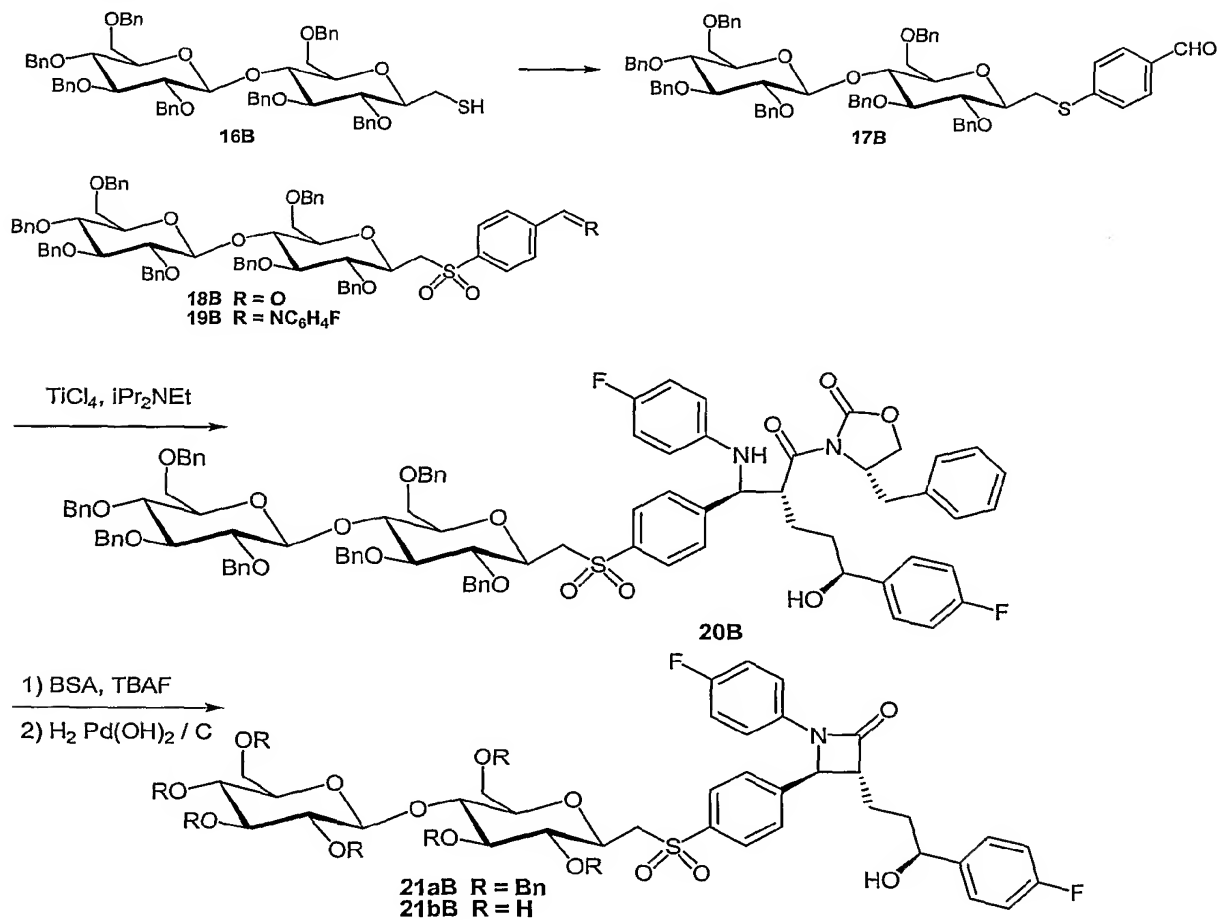
[00342] **EXAMPLE 2B:** Treatment of 3-fluorophenol (**9B** R = H) with tert-butyldimethylsilyl chloride in the presence of imidazole gives the TBS ether (**9B**, R = TBS). Deprotonation with sec-butyllithium followed by quenching with dimethylformamide (DMF) gives benzaldehyde **10B** (R = TBS, Furlano, D. C.; Calderon, S. N.; Chen, G.; Kirk, K. L. *J. Org. Chem.* **1988**, *53*, 3145-3147). Displacement of the fluorine with sodium benzyloxide in DMF followed by treatment with aqueous HF gives phenol **11B**. Condensation of **11B** with sulfonyl chloride **4B** (prepared according to the method of Kværnø et al. *Org. Lett.* 2005, *4*, 1145-1148) in the presence of triethylamine gives the desired product **12B**. Condensation of **12B** with aniline gives the imine **13B**. In the next step, **3aB** was treated with titanium tetrachloride and *N*-ethyldiisopropylamine followed by treatment with **13B** to effect enantiospecific condensation to provide **14B**. Treatment of **14B** with excess *N,O*-bistrimethylsilylacetamide followed by a catalytic amount of tetrabutylammonium fluoride hydrate results in ring closure to the desired beta-lactam (**15aB**). Finally, catalytic hydrogenation of **15aB** over Pearlman's catalyst gives the deprotected derivative **15bB**.

- 291 -

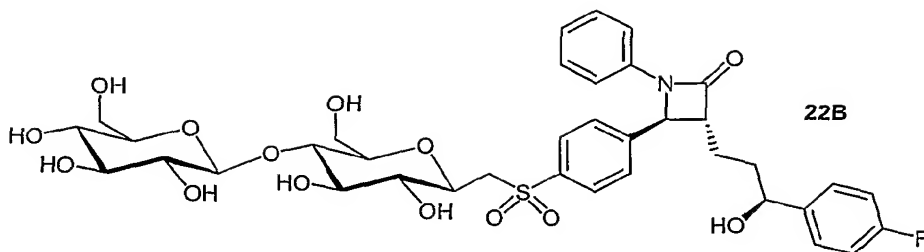


[00343] **EXAMPLE 3B:** Condensation of 4-fluorobenzaldehyde with thiol **16B** (prepared by treating the thioacetyl sugar derivative formed using the method of Kværnø et al. Org. Lett. 2005, 4, 1145-1148 with ammonia) in the presence of potassium carbonate in DMF gives the desired product **17B**. Oxidation of **17B** with oxone produces sulfone **18B**. Condensation of **18B** with 4-fluoroaniline gives the imine **19B**. In the next step, **3aB** was treated with titanium tetrachloride and *N*-ethyl-diisopropylamine followed by

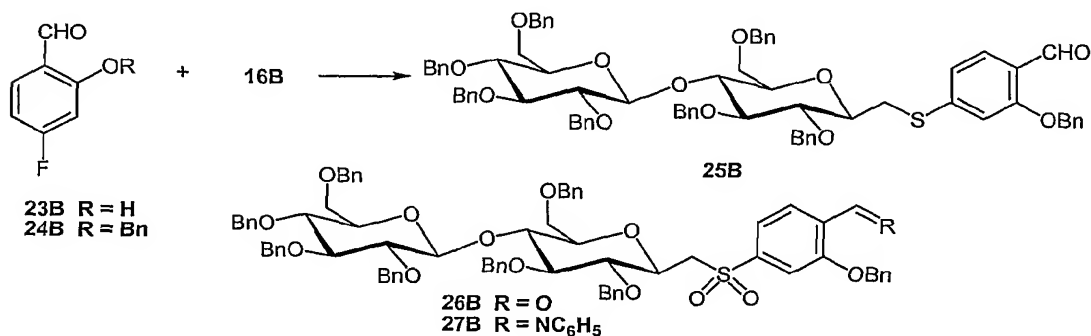
treatment with **19B** to effect enantiospecific condensation to provide **20B**. Treatment of **20B** with excess *N,O*-bistrimethylsilyl-acetamide followed by a catalytic amount of tetrabutylammonium fluoride hydrate results in ring closure to the desired beta-lactam (**21aB**). Finally, catalytic hydrogenation of **21aB** over Pearlman's catalyst gives the deprotected derivative **21bB**.

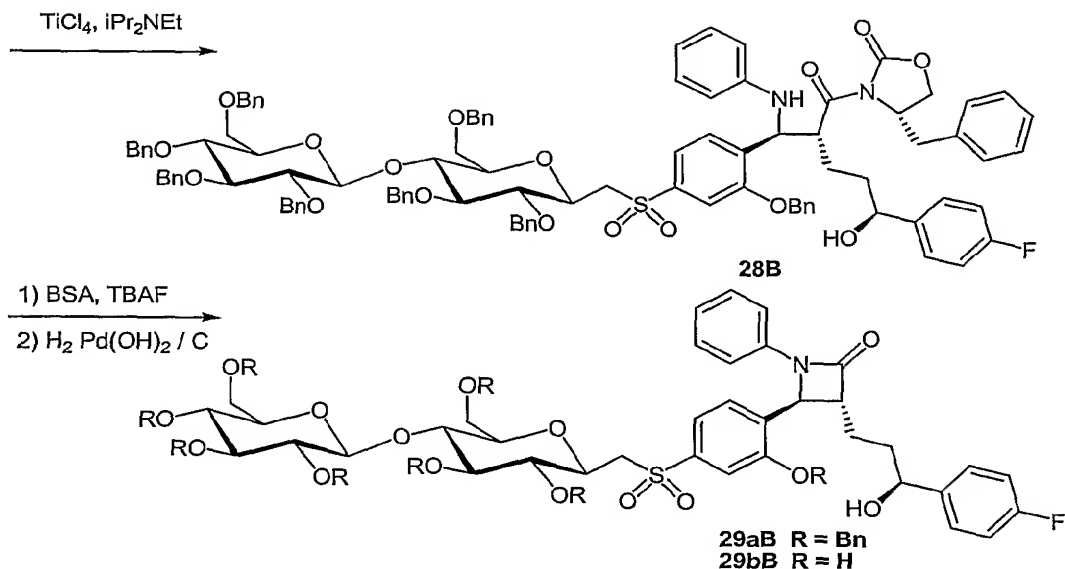


[00344] **EXAMPLE 4B:** In a similar manner, **22B** can be prepared by substituting aniline for 4-fluoroaniline in the above sequence of Example 3B.

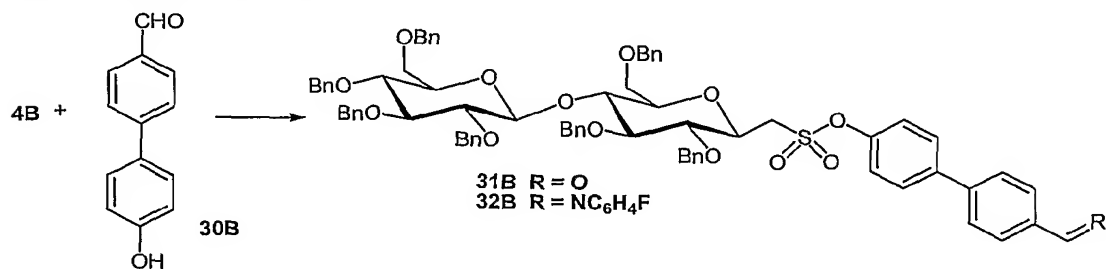


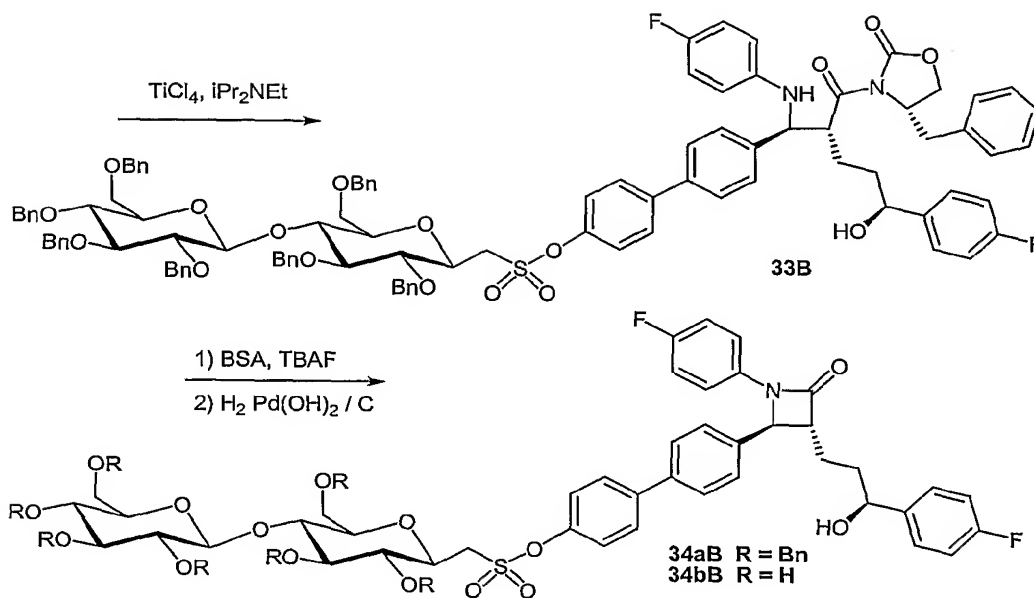
[00345] **EXAMPLE 5B:** In this scheme commercially available 4-fluoro-2-hydroxybenzaldehyde **23B** is protected as the benzyl ether by treatment with benzyl bromide and potassium carbonate in DMF to give **24B**. Condensation of **24B** with thiol **16B** (prepared by treating the thioacetyl sugar derivative formed using the method of Kværnø *et al.* Org. Lett. 2005, 4, 1145-1148 with ammonia) in the presence of potassium carbonate in DMF gives the desired product **25B**. Oxidation of **25B** with oxone produces sulfone **26B**. Condensation of **26B** with aniline gives the imine **27B**. In the next step, **3aB** was treated with titanium tetrachloride and *N*-ethyldiisopropylamine followed by treatment with **27B** to effect enantiospecific condensation to provide **28B**. Treatment of **28B** with excess *N,O*-bistrimethylsilyl-acetamide followed by a catalytic amount of tetrabutylammonium fluoride hydrate results in ring closure to the desired beta-lactam (**29aB**). Finally, catalytic hydrogenation of **29aB** over Pearlman's catalyst gives the deprotected derivative **29bB**.



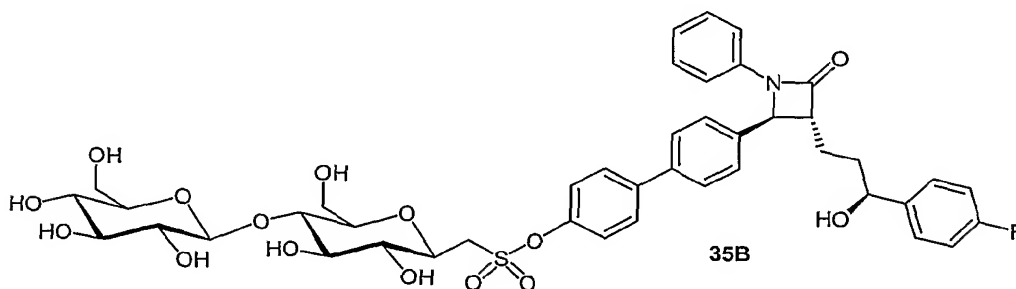


[00346] **EXAMPLE 6B:** Coupling of commercially available 4'-hydroxy-biphenyl-4-carbaldehyde with sulfonyl chloride **4B** (prepared according to the method of Kværnø *et al.*, *Org. Lett.* 2005, 4, 1145-1148) in the presence of triethylamine gives the desired product **31B**. Condensation of **31B** with 4-fluoroaniline gives the imine **32B**. In the next step, **3aB** was treated with titanium tetrachloride and *N*-ethyl-diisopropylamine followed by treatment with **32B** to effect enantiospecific condensation to provide **33B**. Treatment of **33B** with excess *N,O*-bistrimethylsilyl-acetamide followed by a catalytic amount of tetrabutylammonium fluoride hydrate results in ring closure to the desired beta-lactam (**34aB**). Finally, catalytic hydrogenation of **34aB** over Pearlman's catalyst gives the deprotected derivative **34bB**.





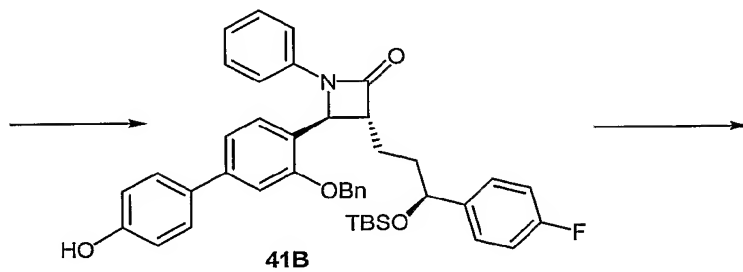
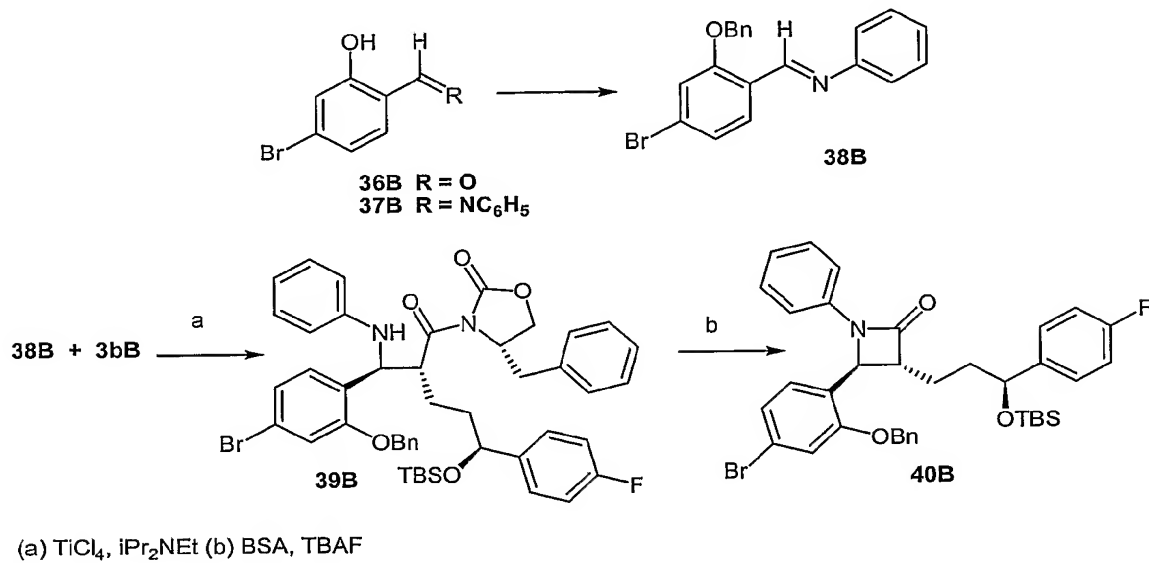
[00347] **EXAMPLE 7B:** In a similar manner **35B** can be prepared by substituting aniline for 4-fluoroaniline in the above sequence of Example 6B.

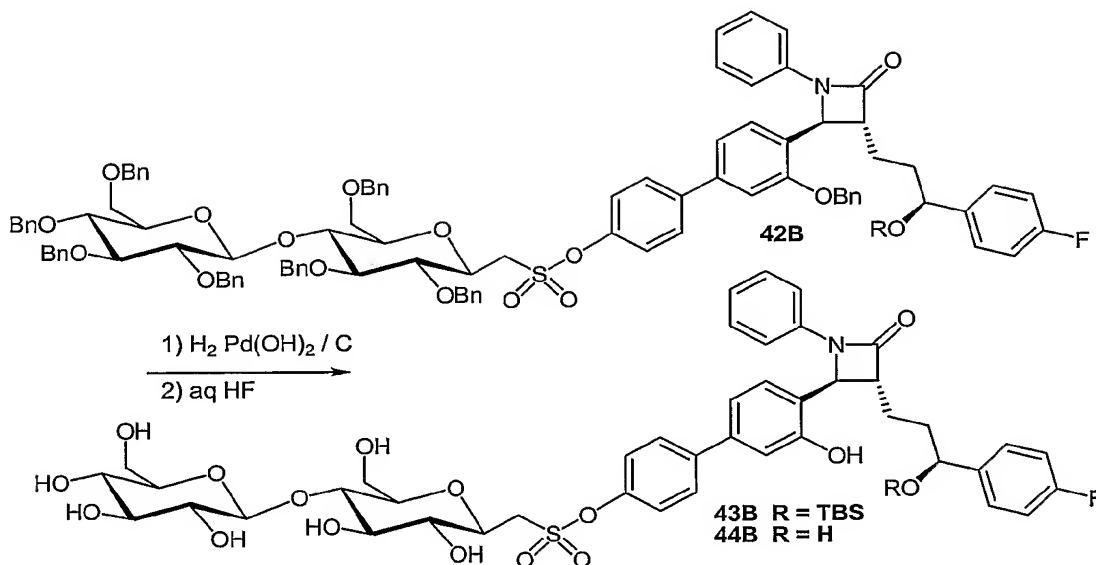


[00348] **EXAMPLE 8B:** In the following scheme 2-hydroxy-4-bromobenzaldehyde **36B** was prepared by reaction of 3-bromophenol with paraformaldehyde in the presence of magnesium chloride and excess triethylamine in acetonitrile. Condensation of **36B** with aniline gives the desired imine **37B** that is converted to the benzyl protected derivative **38B** upon treatment with benzyl bromide and potassium carbonate in DMF. Condensation of **38B** with **3bB** as described above gives the desired product **39B**. Cyclization of **39B** as described above provides *beta*-lactam **40B**. Suzuki coupling of **40B** with 4-hydroxyphenylboronic acid produces the desired biphenyl derivative **41B** that is condensed with sulfonyl chloride **4B** to give compound **42B**. Catalytic hydrogenation

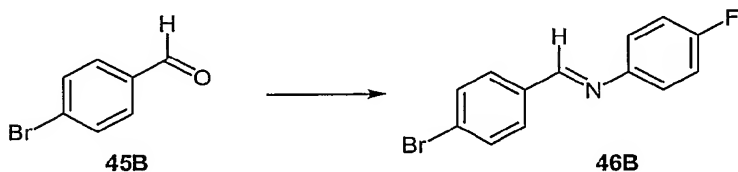
of **42B** over Pearlman's catalyst gives the partially deprotected derivative **43B**.

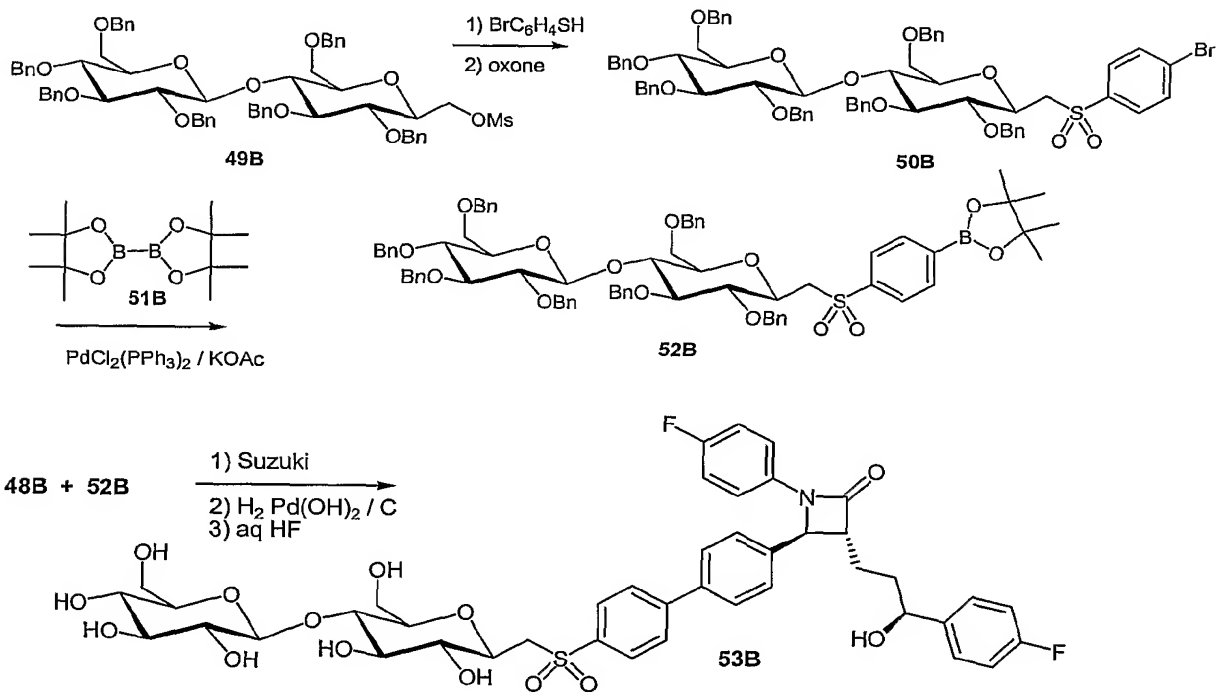
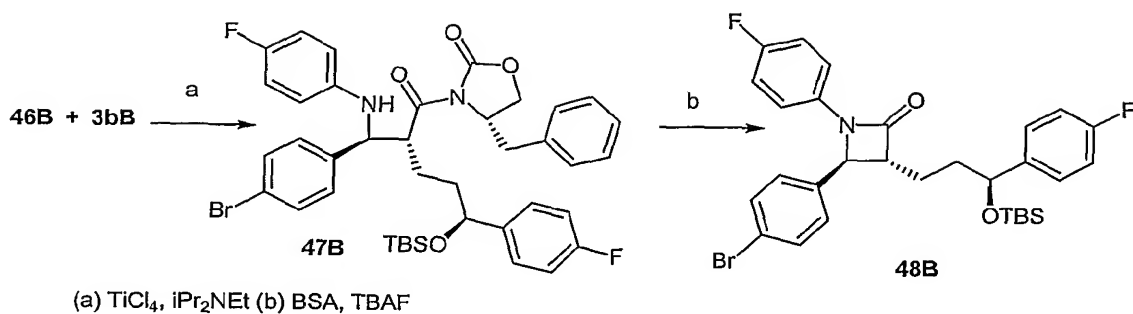
Treatment of **43B** with aqueous HF gives the final compound **44B**.



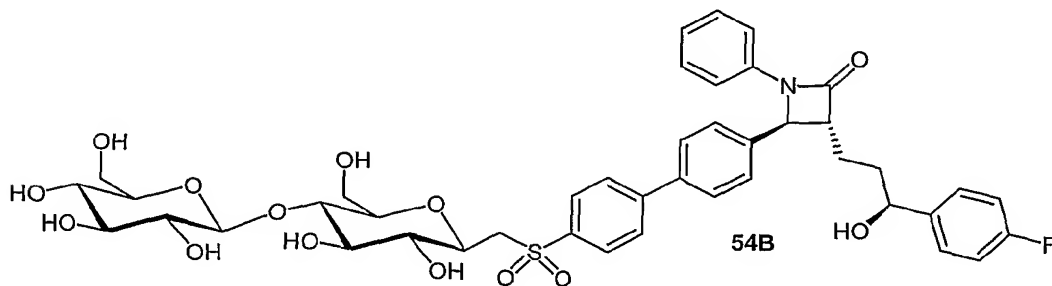


[00349] **EXAMPLE 9B:** In the following scheme 4-bromobenzaldehyde **45B** is condensed with 4-fluoroaniline to give the desired imine **46B**. Condensation of **46B** with **3bB** as described above gives the desired product **47B**. Cyclization of **47B** as described above provides *beta*-lactam **48B**. In a separate operation, the known mesylate **49B**, (prepared according to the method of Kværnø *et al.* Org. Lett. 2005, 4, 1145-1148), is reacted with 4-bromothiophenol in the pre-sence of potassium carbonate in DMF, followed by oxidation with oxone to produce sulfone **50B**. Conversion of **50B** to the corresponding pinacol boronate ester **52B** is accomplished by reaction with *bis*(pinicolato)diboron (**51B**) under the influence of palladium catalysis. Suzuki coupling of **52B** with **48B** produces the desired biphenyl derivative that is deprotected by catalytic hydrogenation over Pearlman's and treatment with aqueous HF to give the final compound **53B**.

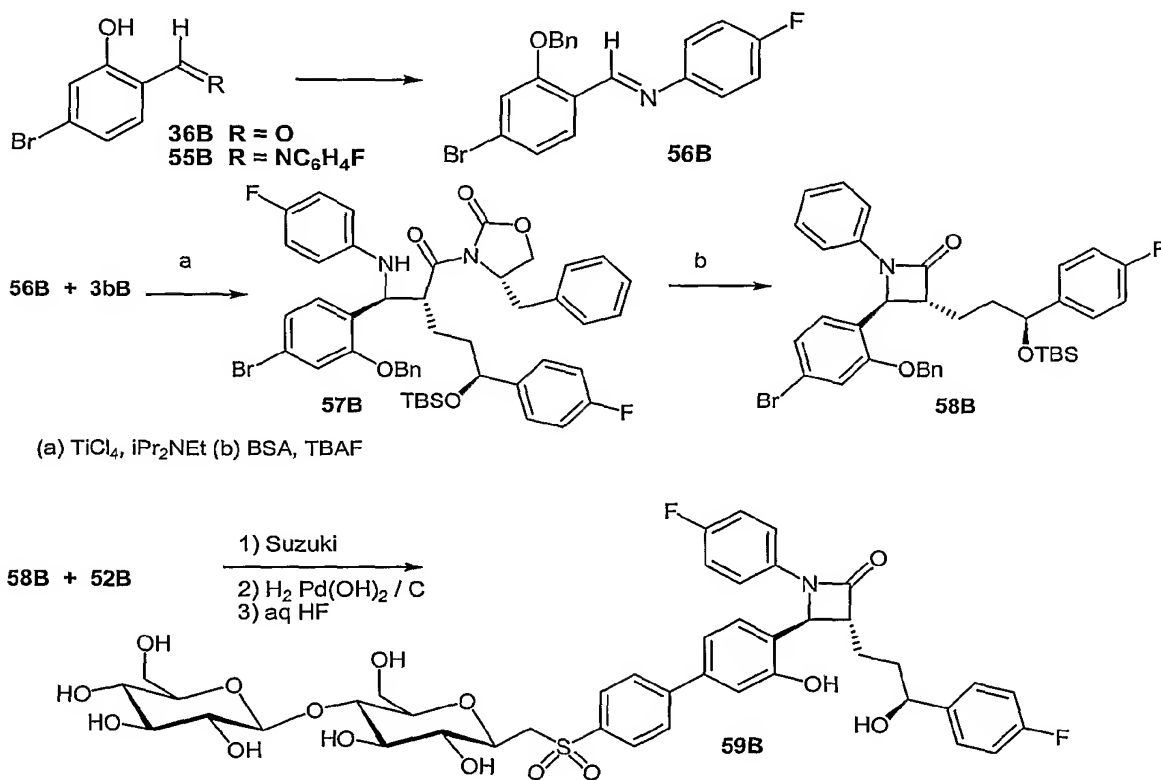




[00350] **EXAMPLE 10B:** In a similar manner **54B** can be prepared by substituting aniline for 4-fluoroaniline in the above sequence of Example 9B.

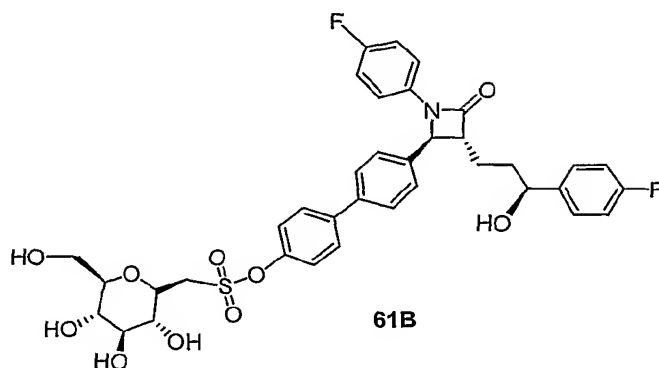
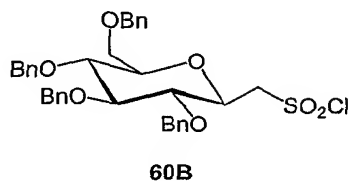


[00351] **EXAMPLE 11B:** In the following scheme 2-hydroxy-4-bromobenzaldehyde **36B** was prepared by reaction of 3-bromophenol with paraformaldehyde in the presence of magnesium chloride and excess triethylamine in acetonitrile. Condensation of **36B** with 4-fluoroaniline gives the desired imine **55B** that is converted to the benzyl protected derivative **56B** upon treatment with benzyl bromide and potassium carbonate in DMF. Condensation of **56B** with **3bB** as described above gives the desired product **57B**. Cyclization of **57B** as described above provides *beta*-lactam **58B**. Suzuki coupling of **58B** with **52B** produces the desired biphenyl derivative that upon hydrogenation over Pearlman's catalyst followed by treatment with aqueous HF gives the final compound **59B**.

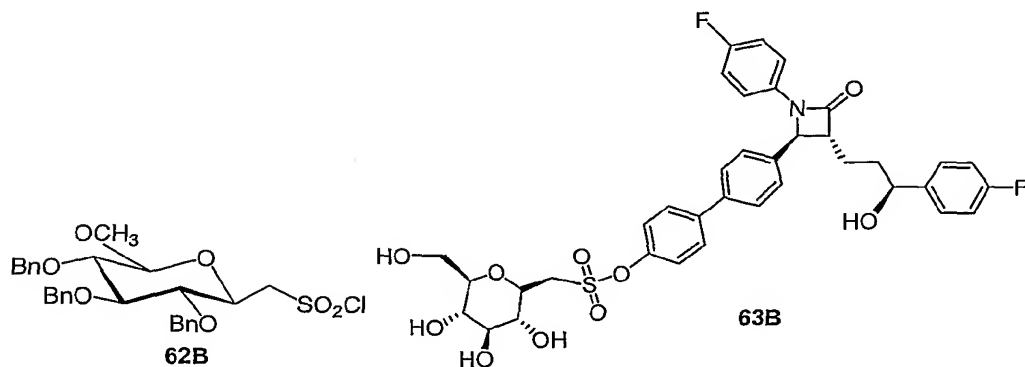


[00352] **EXAMPLE 12B:** In a similar manner to that of Example 6B, **61B** can be prepared by substituting sulfonyl chloride **60B** (prepared according to the method of

Kværnø *et al.*, Org. Lett. 2005, 4, 1145-1148) for sulfonyl chloride **4B** in the above sequence of Example 6B.

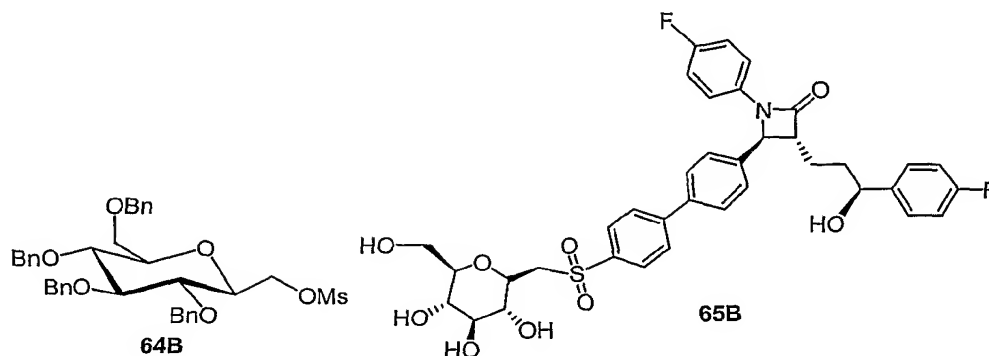


[00353] **EXAMPLE 13B:** In a similar manner to that of Example 6B, **63B** can be prepared by substituting sulfonyl chloride **62B** (prepared according to the method of Kværnø *et al.*, Org. Lett. 2005, 4, 1145-1148) for sulfonyl chloride **4B** in the above sequence of Example 6B.

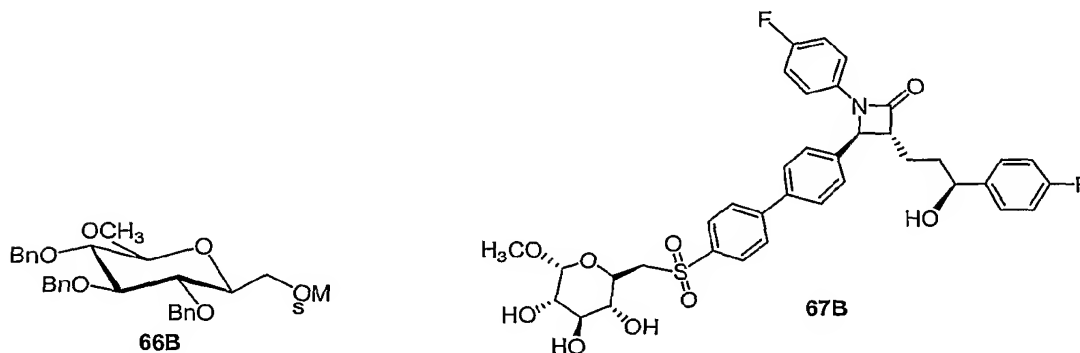


[00354] **EXAMPLE 14B:** In a similar manner to that of Example 9B, **65B** can be prepared by substituting mesylate **64B** (prepared according to the method of Kværnø *et*

al., Org. Lett. 2005, 4, 1145-1148) for mesylate **49B** in the above sequence of Example 9B.

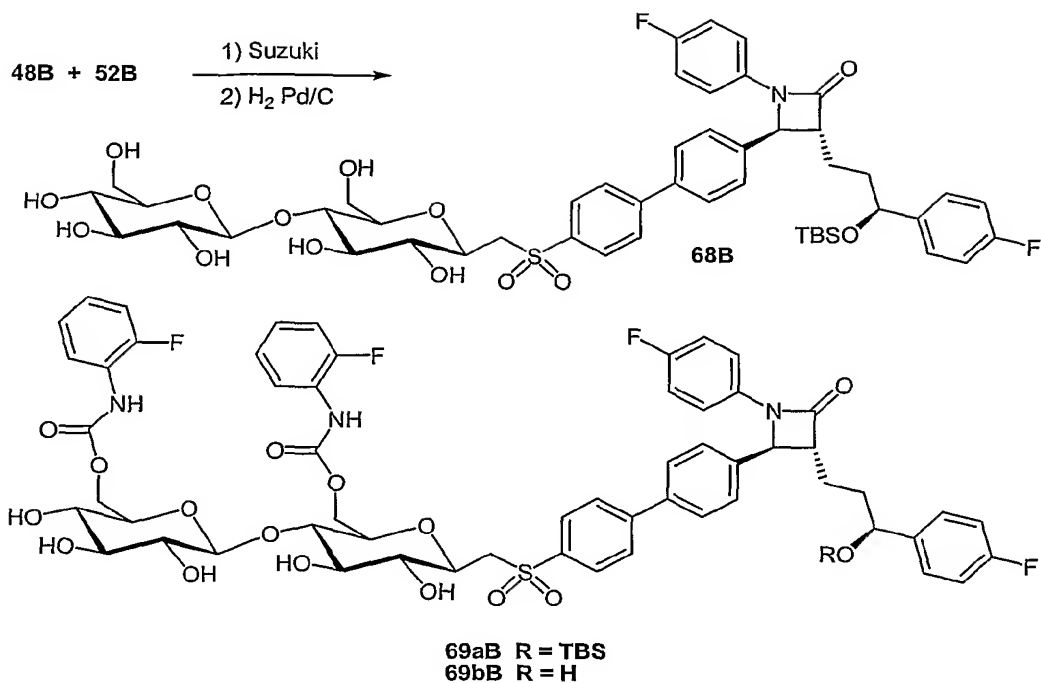


[00355] **EXAMPLE 15B:** In a similar manner to that of Example 9B, **67B** can be prepared by substituting mesylate **66B** (prepared according to the method of Kværnø *et al.*, Org. Lett. 2005, 4, 1145-1148) for mesylate **49B** in the above sequence of Example 9B.

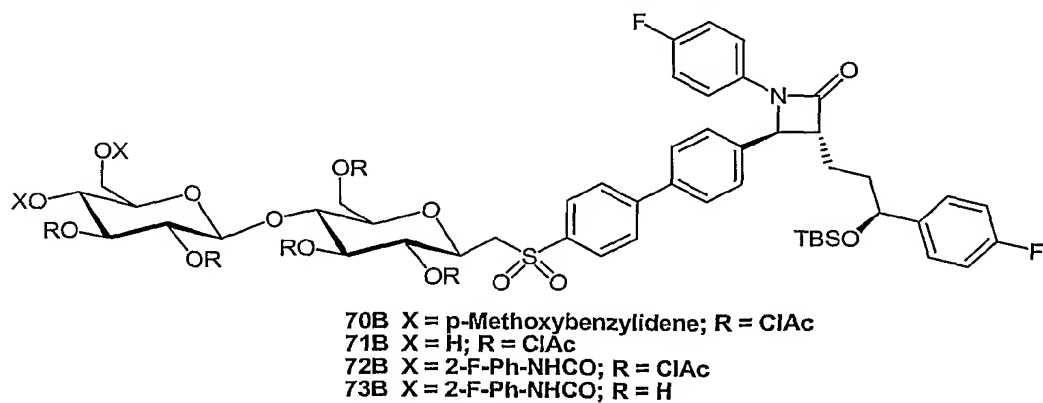


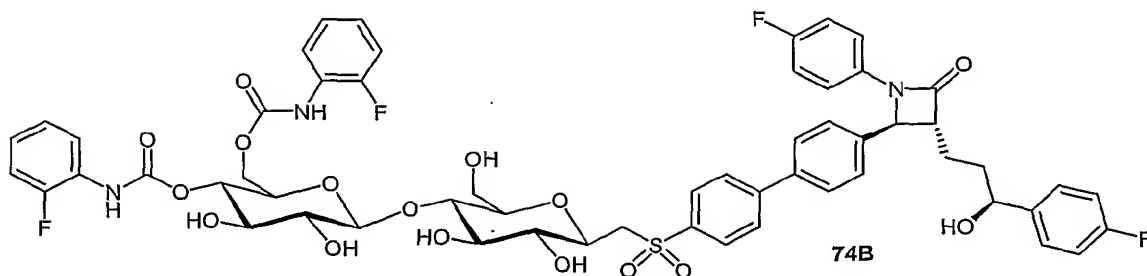
[00356] **EXAMPLE 16B:** The scheme shown below illustrates the synthesis of a sugar carbamate-containing compound. Suzuki coupling of **48B** and **52B** as described in Example 9B gives the biphenyl which is deprotected by hydrogenation over palladium on carbon giving **68B**. Chemoselective reaction of the primary hydroxyl groups of **64B** with 2-fluorophenyl isocyanate gives carbamate **69aB**. Treatment of **69aB** with aqueous HF gives compound **69bB**.

- 302 -



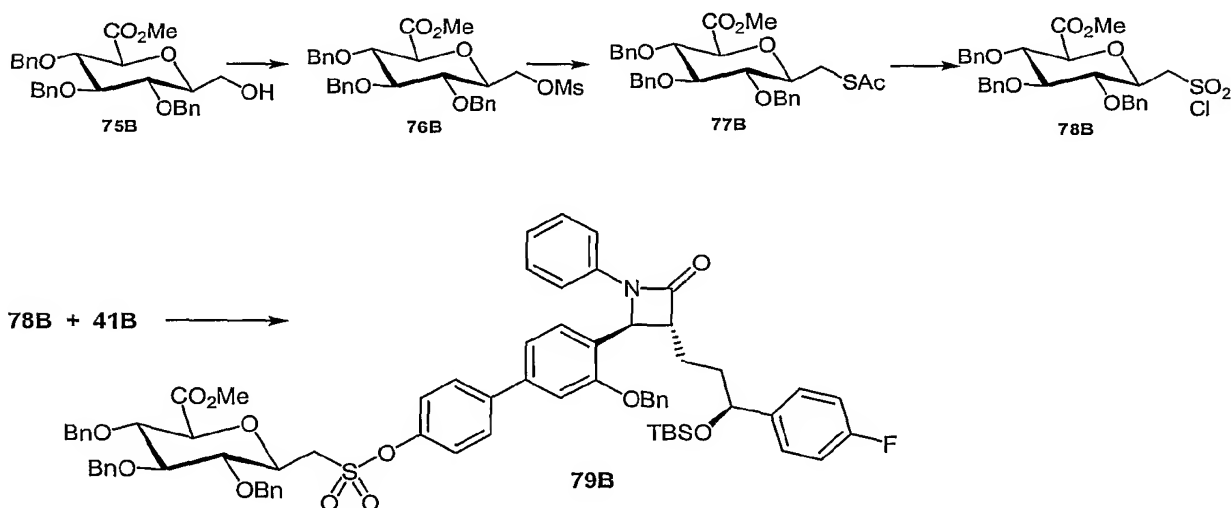
[00357] **EXAMPLE 17B:** Shown below is a scheme for the preparation of isomeric sugar carbamate derivatives. The synthesis starts by first protecting the 4'',6''-hydroxyls of **68B** as a *p*-methoxybenzylidene followed by exhaustive acylation with chloroacetic anhydride to give the fully protected derivative **70B**. The benzylidene is then cleaved with acid to give diol **71B**. The diol **71B** is then reacted with 2-fluorophenyl isocyanate with copper (I) catalysis to give **72B**. The chloroacetates are removed by treatment with sodium methoxide in methanol to give **73B** which is treated with aqueous HF to provide **74B**.

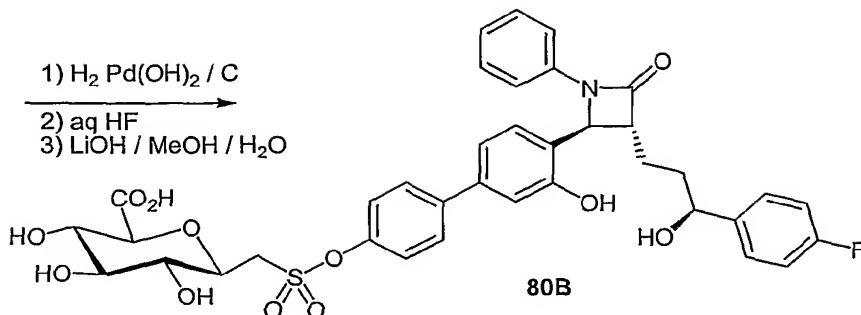




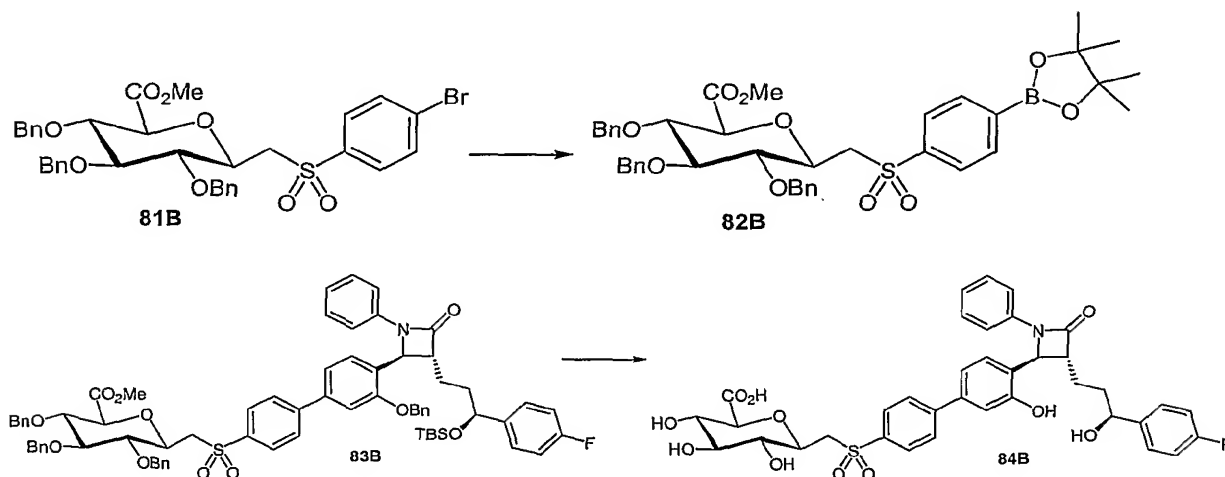
[00358] **EXAMPLE 18B:** D-Glycero-D-gulo-heptonic acid, 2,6-anhydro-3,4,5-tris-O-(phenylmethyl)-, methyl ester, (**71B**) is available by the published procedure; Durrat, F.; Xie, J.; Valery, J. M. *Tet. Lett.* **2004**, *45*, 1477-1479. In a sequence modeled after the method of Kvernø *et al.* *Org. Lett.* **2005**, *4*, 1145-1148), treatment of **75B** with methanesulfonyl chloride in the presence of triethylamine gives mesylate **76B**.

Displacement of the mesylate with potassium thioacetate gives **77B** that upon treatment with chlorine in acetic acid gives sulfonyl chloride **78B**. Treatment of **78B** with **41B** in the presence of triethylamine gives the desired product **79B**. Catalytic hydrogenation of **79B** over Pearlman's catalyst removes the benzyl protecting groups. Treatment with aqueous HF removes the TBS group and finally careful saponification of the methyl ester with lithium hydroxide in aqueous methanol gives compound **80B**.





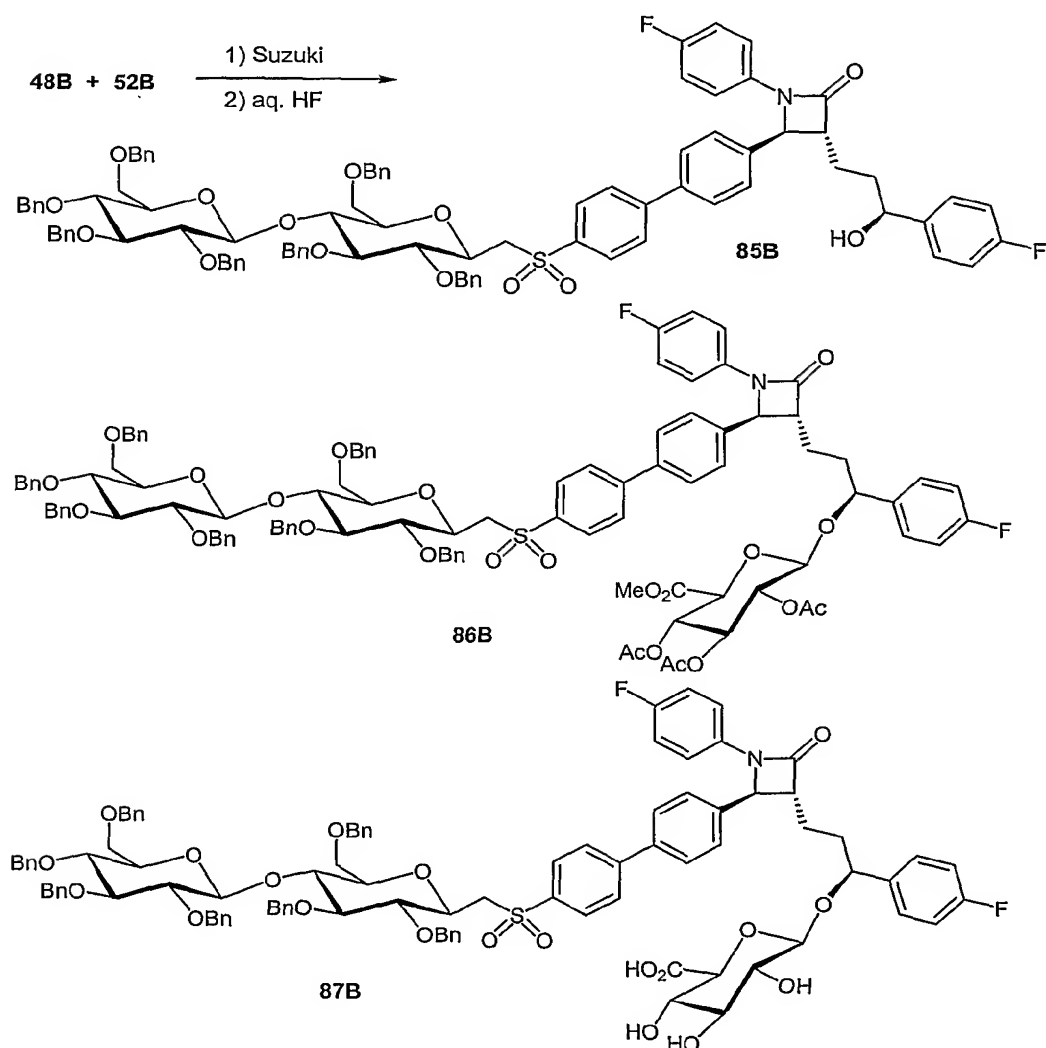
[00359] **EXAMPLE 19B:** Compound **68B** from Example 17B is reacted with 4-bromothiophenol in the presence of potassium carbonate in DMF, followed by oxidation with oxone to produce sulfone **81B**. Conversion of **81B** to the corresponding pinacol boronate ester **82B** is accomplished by reaction with *bis*(pinicolato)diboron (**51B**) under the influence of palladium catalysis. Suzuki coupling of **82B** with **58B** produces the desired biphenyl derivative **83B**. Deprotection of **83B** by catalytic hydrogenation over Pearlman's catalyst removes the benzyl groups, treatment with aqueous HF removes the TBS group, and finally careful saponification with lithium hydroxide in aqueous methanol gives compound **84B**.

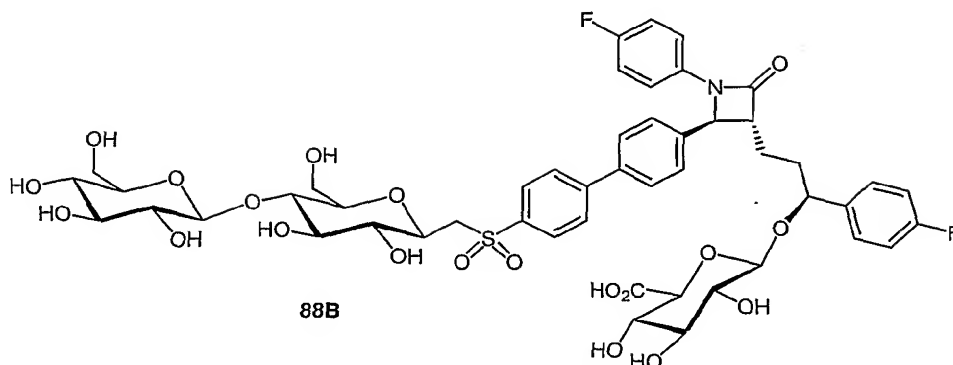


[00360] **EXAMPLE 20B:** In the following scheme the synthesis of a glucuronide derivative is illustrated. Suzuki coupling of **48B** and **52B** as described in Example 9B gives the biphenyl which is deprotected by treatment with aqueous HF giving **85B**.

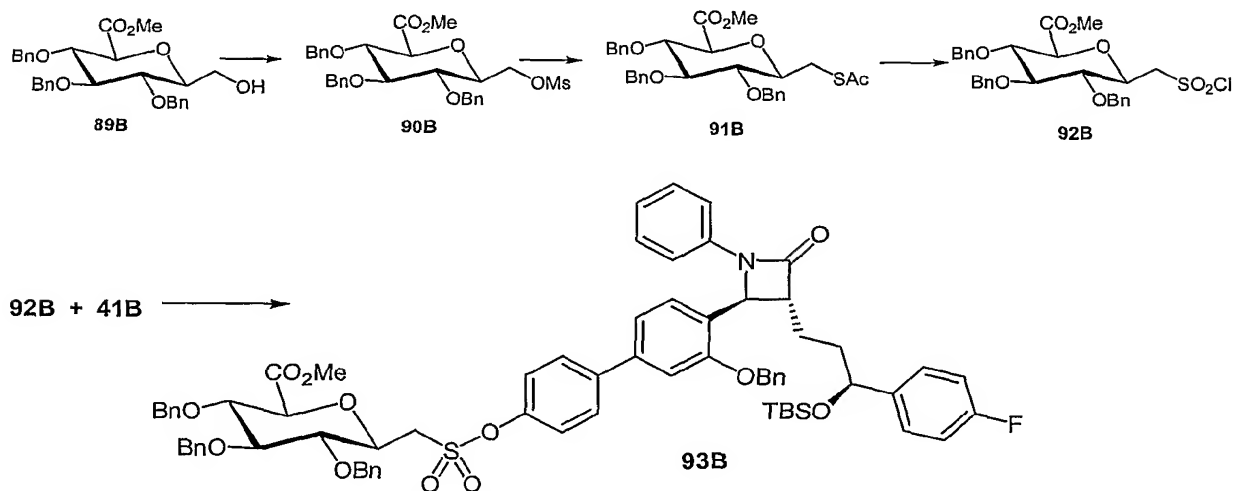
Compound **85B** is reacted with trichloroacetimidate donor methyl 2,3,4-tri-O-acetyl-1-O-(2,2,2-trichloroethanimidoyl)- β -D-glucopyranuronate, (prepared according to Urban, F.; Moore, B.; Breitenbach, R. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **1990**, *31*, 4221), in methylene chloride at -25°C with boron trifluoride etherate as an activator for the coupling giving **86B**.

Hydrolysis of the ester groups of **86B** is accomplished by addition of TEA:MeOH:H₂O (1:1:3.5, 0.01M) to afford desired glucuronic acid **87B**. Finally, compound **87B** is deprotected by hydrogenolysis of the benzyl groups over palladium on carbon giving **88B**.

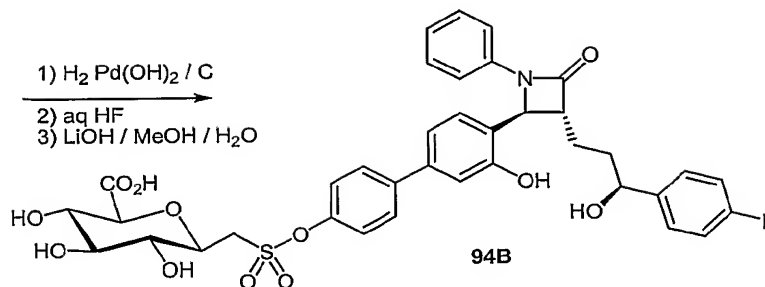




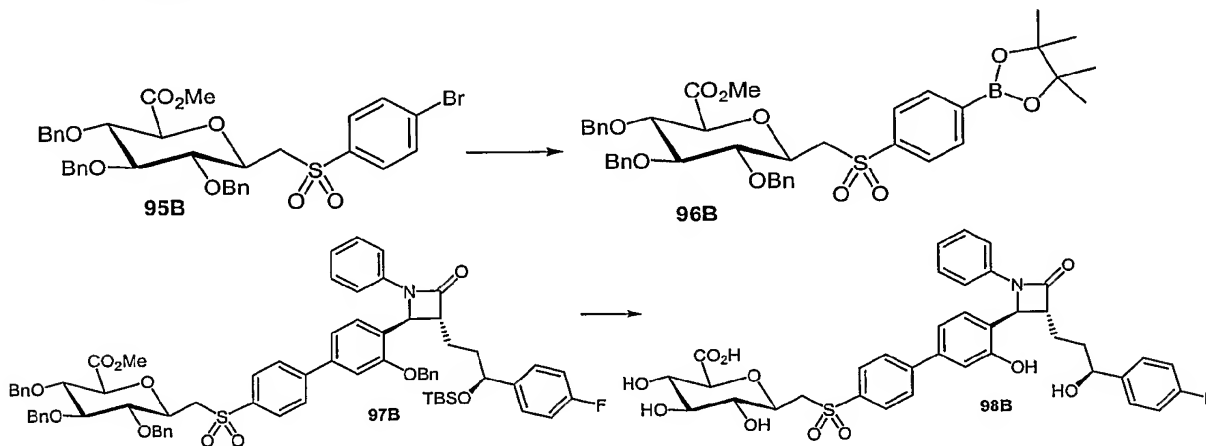
[00361] **EXAMPLE 21B:** D-Glycero-D-gulo-heptonic acid, 2,6-anhydro-3,4,5-tris-O-(phenylmethyl)-methyl ester, (**89B**) is available by the published procedure; Durrat, F.; Xie, J.; Valery, J. M. *Tet. Lett.* **2004**, *45*, 1477-1479. Treatment of **89B** with methanesulfonyl chloride in the presence of triethylamine gives mesylate **90B**. Displacement of the mesylate with potassium thioacetate gives **91B** that upon treatment with chlorine in acetic acid gives sulfonyl chloride **92B**. Treatment of **92B** with **41B** in the presence of triethylamine gives the desired product **93B**. Catalytic hydrogenation of **93B** over Pearlman's catalyst removes the benzyl protecting groups. Treatment with aqueous HF removes the TBS group and finally careful saponification of the methyl ester with lithium hydroxide in aqueous methanol gives compound **94B**.



- 307 -



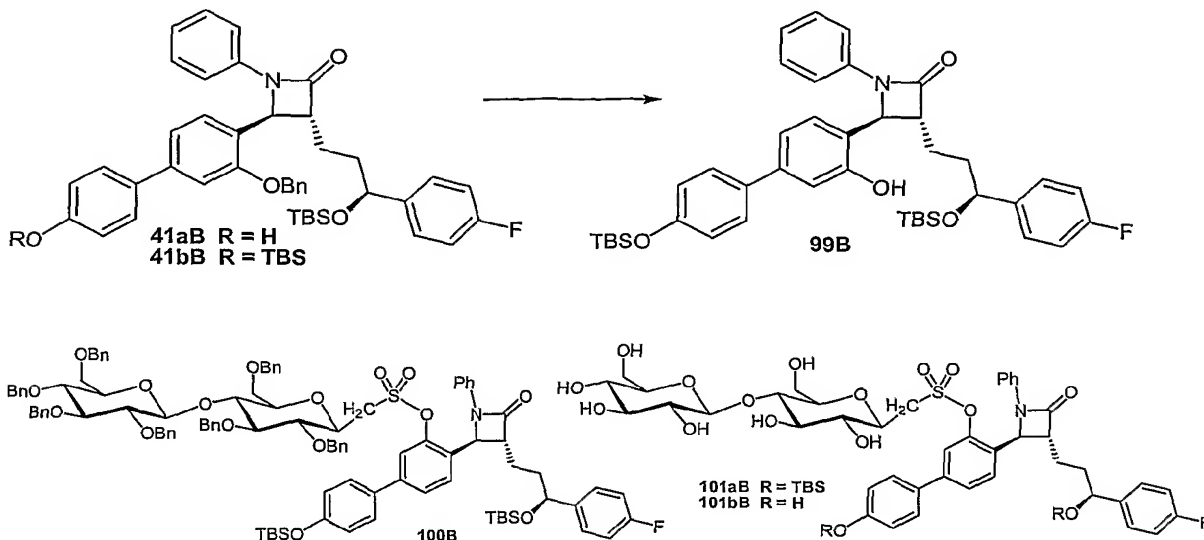
[00362] **EXAMPLE 22B:** Compound **90B** is reacted with 4-bromothiophenol in the presence of potassium carbonate in DMF, followed by oxidation with oxone to produce sulfone **95B**. Conversion of **95B** to the corresponding pinacol boronate ester **96B** is accomplished by reaction with *bis*(pinicolato)diboron (**51B**) under the influence of palladium catalysis. Suzuki coupling of **96B** with **40B** produces the desired biphenyl derivative **97B**. Deprotection of **97B** by catalytic hydrogenation over Pearlman's catalyst removes the benzyl groups, treatment with aqueous HF removes the TBS group, and finally careful saponification with lithium hydroxide in aqueous methanol gives compound **98B**.



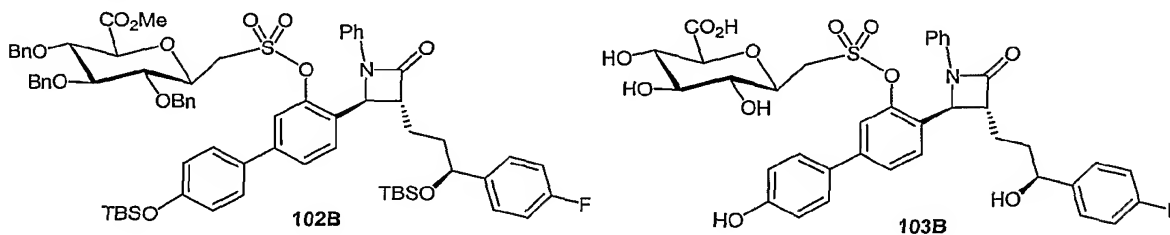
[00363] **EXAMPLE 23B:** Treatment of **41aB** with tert-butyldimethylsilyl chloride and imidazole gives the bis-TBS ether **41bB**. Catalytic hydrogenation of **41bB** over Pearlman's catalyst produces phenol **99B**. Condensation of **99B** with **4B** in the presence of triethylamine gives **100B** that is deprotected by hydrogenolysis of the benzyl moieties

- 308 -

over Pearlman's catalyst to give **101aB** and treatment with aqueous HF to provide **101bB**.



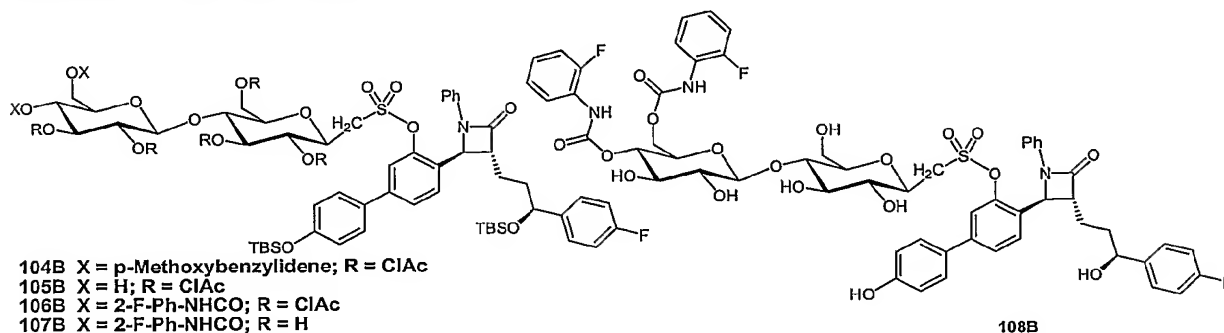
[00364] **EXAMPLE 24B:** Treatment of **99B** with **92B** in the presence of triethylamine gives **102B**. Deprotection of **102B** by catalytic hydrogenation over Pearlman's catalyst removes the benzyl groups, treatment with aqueous HF removes the TBS groups, and finally careful saponification with lithium hydroxide in aqueous methanol gives compound **103B**.



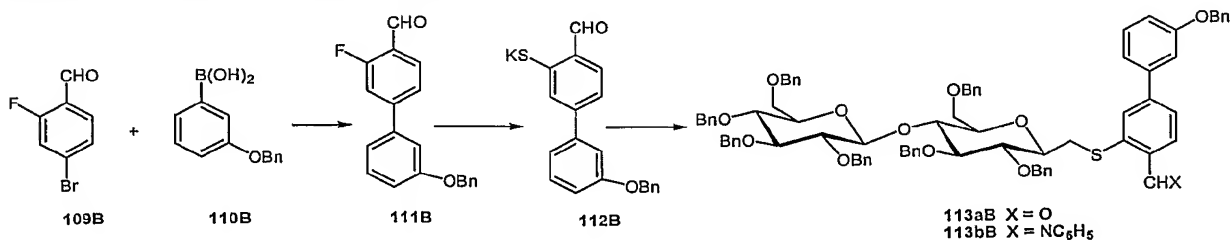
[00365] **EXAMPLE 25B:** Shown below is a scheme for the preparation of isomeric sugar carbamate derivatives. The synthesis starts by first protecting the 4'',6''-hydroxyls of **101aB** as a *p*-methoxybenzylidene followed by exhaustive acylation with chloroacetic anhydride to give the fully protected derivative **104B**. The benzylidene is then cleaved with acid to give diol **105B**. The diol **105B** is then reacted with 2-fluorophenyl

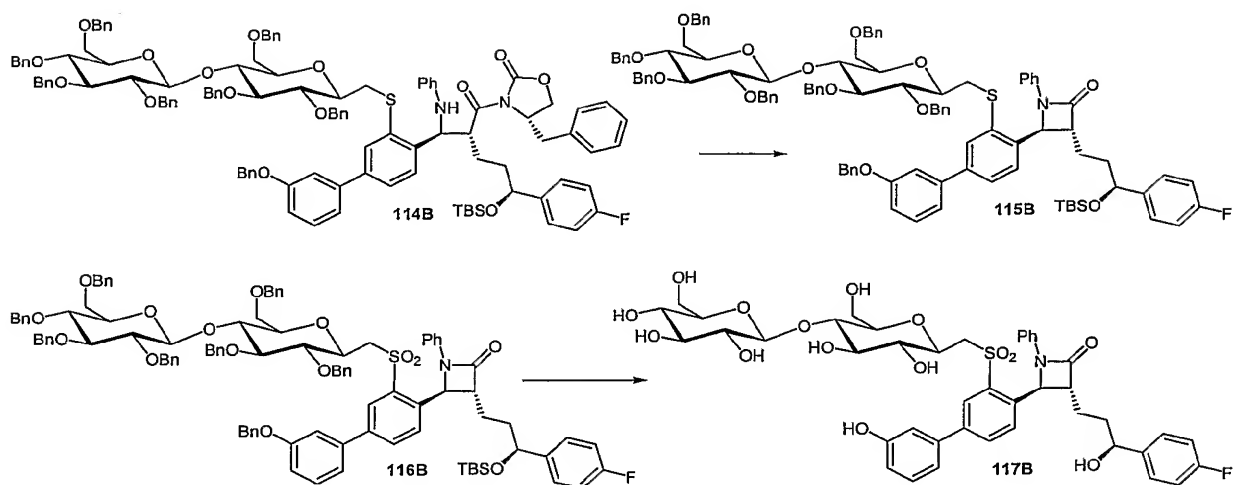
- 309 -

isocyanate with copper (I) catalysis to give **106B**. The chloroacetates are removed by treatment with sodium methoxide in methanol to give **107B**, which is treated with aqueous HF to provide **108B**.

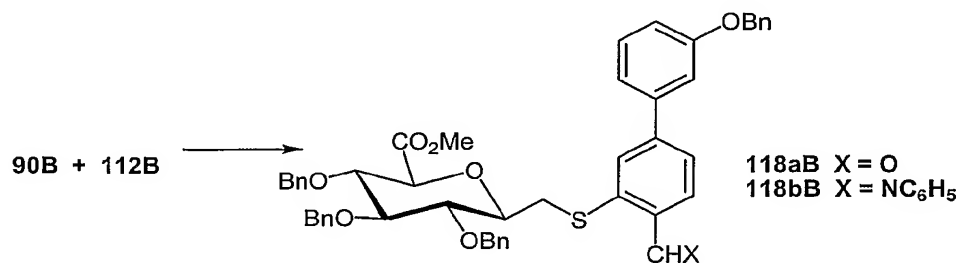


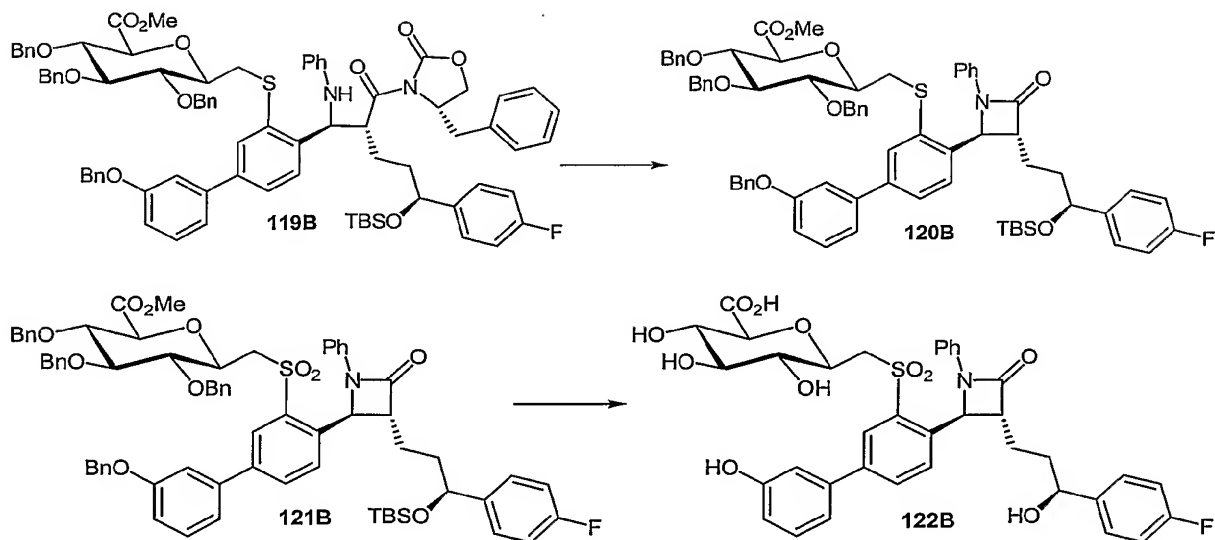
[00366] **EXAMPLE 26B:** Suzuki coupling of commercially available 4-bromo-2-fluorobenzaldehyde (**109B**) with commercially available 3-benzyloxyphenylboronic acid (**110B**) gives 3'-(benzyloxy)-3-fluoro-1,1'-biphenyl-4-carbaldehyde (**111B**). Treatment of **111B** with 2-(trimethylsilyl) ethanethiol in the presence of potassium carbonate in dimethylformamide produces a solution of thiophenol derivative **112B** that is treated directly with **49B** to produce **113aB**. Condensation of **113aB** with aniline gives the corresponding imine **113bB**. In the next step, **3bB** was treated with titanium tetrachloride and *N*-ethyl-diisopropylamine followed by treatment with **113bB** to effect enantiospecific condensation to provide **114B**. Treatment of **114B** with excess *N,O*-bistrimethylsilyl-acetamide followed by a catalytic amount of tetrabutylammonium fluoride hydrate results in ring closure to the desired beta-lactam (**115B**). Oxidation of **115B** with oxone results in the formation of sulfone **116B**. Deprotection of **116B** by hydrogenolysis of the benzyl groups over Pearlman's catalyst and then treatment with aqueous HF gives compound **117B**.





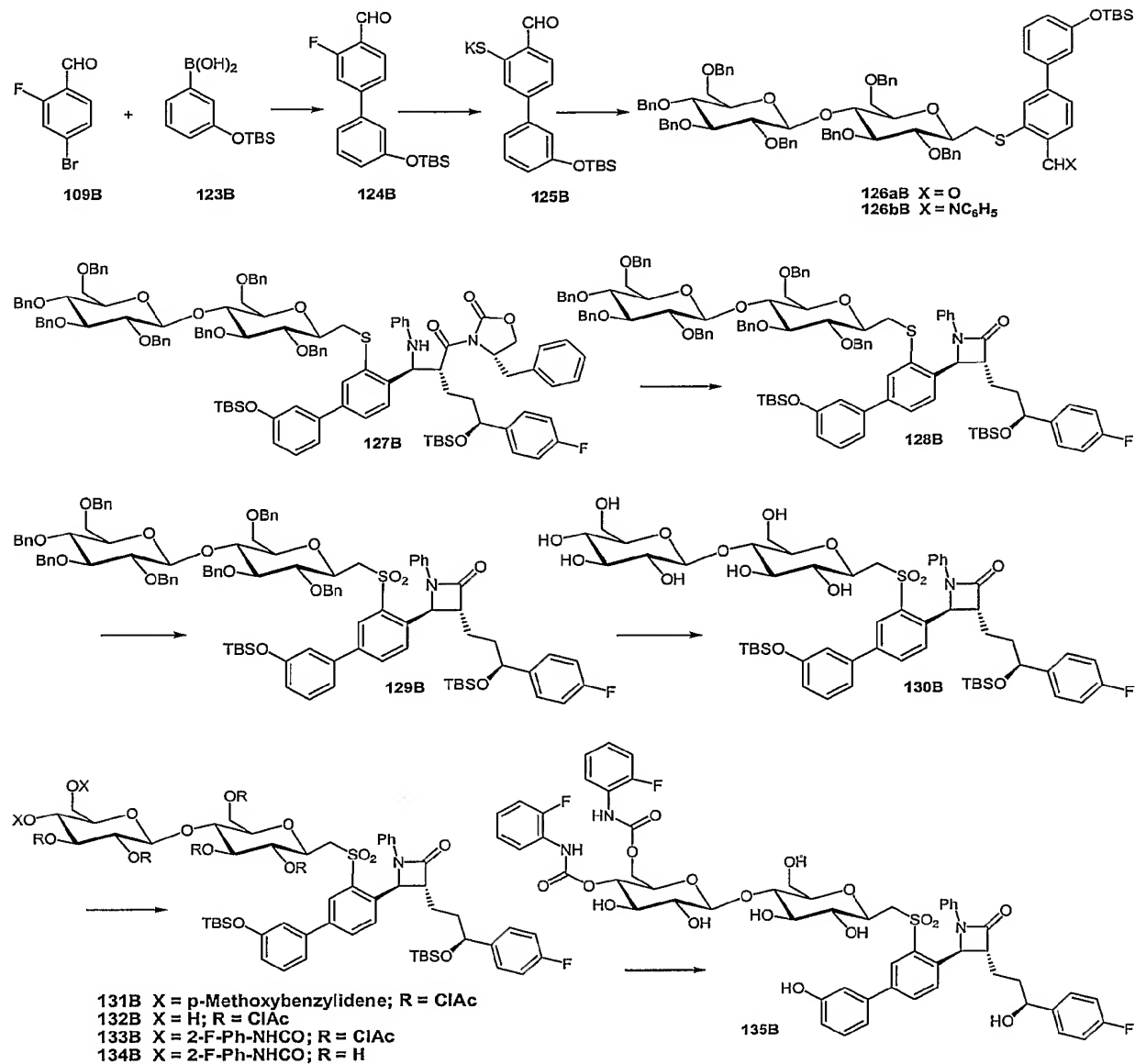
[00367] **EXAMPLE 27B:** Reaction of **90B** with **112B** gives the desired thioether derivative **118aB**, which was converted to imine **118bB** upon treatment with aniline. In the next step, **3bB** was treated with titanium tetrachloride and *N*-ethyl-diisopropylamine followed by treatment with **118bB** to effect enantiospecific condensation to provide **119B**. Treatment of **119B** with excess *N,O*-bistrimethylsilyl-acetamide followed by a catalytic amount of tetrabutylammonium fluoride hydrate results in ring closure to the desired beta-lactam (**120B**). Oxidation of **120B** with oxone results in the formation of sulfone **121B**. Deprotection of **121B** by catalytic hydrogenation over Pearlman's catalyst removes the benzyl groups, treatment with aqueous HF removes the TBS group, and finally careful saponification with lithium hydroxide in aqueous methanol gives compound **122B**.





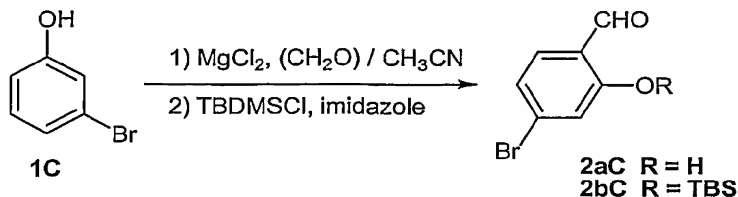
[00368] **EXAMPLE 28B:** Suzuki coupling of commercially available 4-bromo-2-fluorobenzaldehyde (**109B**) with commercially available 3-(tert-butyltrimethylsilyloxy)phenylboronic acid (**123B**) gives 3'-(tert-butyltrimethylsilyloxy)-3-fluoro-1,1'-biphenyl-4-carbaldehyde (**124B**). Treatment of **124B** with 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethanethiol in the presence of potassium carbonate in dimethylformamide produces a solution of thiophenol derivative **125B** that is treated directly with **49B** to produce **126aB**. Condensation of **126aB** with aniline gives the corresponding imine **126bB**. In the next step, **3bB** was treated with titanium tetrachloride and *N*-ethyl-diisopropylamine followed by treatment with **126bB** to effect enantiospecific condensation to provide **127B**. Treatment of **127B** with excess *N,O*-bistrimethylsilyl-acetamide followed by a catalytic amount of tetrabutylammonium fluoride hydrate results in ring closure to the desired beta-lactam (**128B**). Oxidation of **128B** with oxone results in the formation of sulfone **129B**. Removal of the benzyl groups is done by hydrogenolysis of **129B** over Pearlman's catalyst to give **130B**. Protection of the 4'',6''-hydroxyls of **130B** as a *p*-methoxybenzylidene followed by exhaustive acylation with chloroacetic anhydride to give the fully protected derivative **131B**. The benzylidene is then cleaved with acid to give diol **132B**. The diol **132B** is then reacted with 2-fluorophenyl isocyanate with copper (I) catalysis to give **133B**. The chloroacetates are removed by treatment with

sodium methoxide in methanol to give **134B**, which is treated with aqueous HF to provide **135B**.

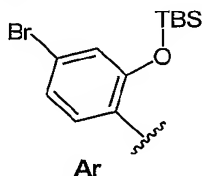


[00369] **EXAMPLE 1C:** 2-Hydroxy-4-bromobenzaldehyde (**2aC**) is prepared by reaction of 3-bromophenol (**1C**) with paraformaldehyde in the presence of magnesium chloride and excess triethylamine in acetonitrile. Treatment of 2-hydroxy-4-bromobenzaldehyde

with *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl chloride (TBSCl) in the presence of imidazole gives the desired benzaldehyde derivative **2bC**.

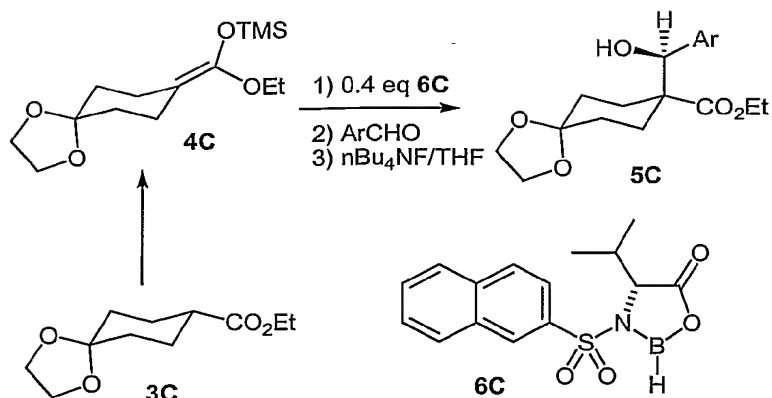


[00370] In the following scheme, the group Ar represents 2-*tert*-butyldimethylsiloxy-4-bromophenyl, which has the following formula:

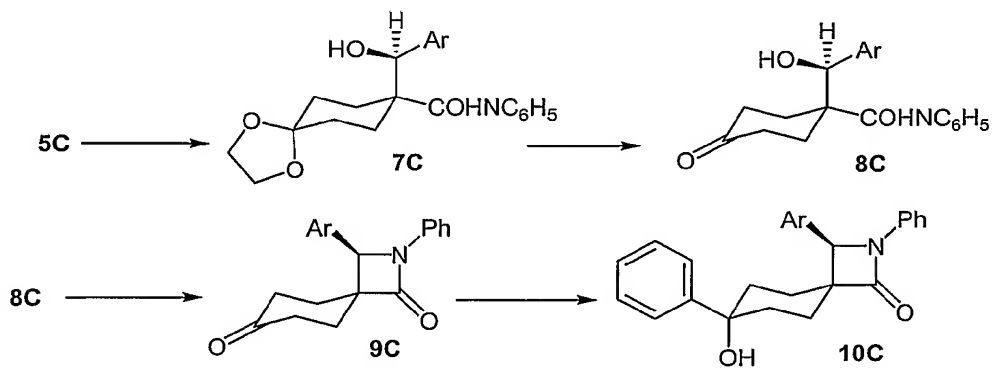


The wavy line indicates the point of attachment, and TBS represents the *tert*-butyldimethylsiloxy protecting group.

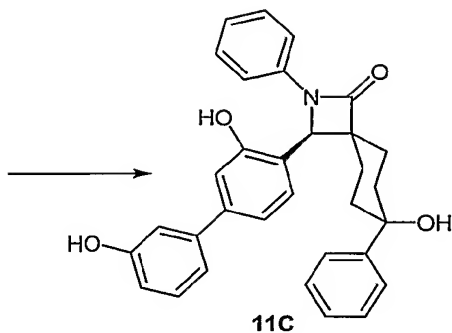
[00371] The preparation of (3*R*)-3-(3,3'-dihydroxybiphenyl-4-yl)-7-hydroxy-2,7-diphenyl-2-azaspiro[3.5]nonan-1-one **11C** commences with the reaction of ethyl 1,4-dioxaspiro[4.5]decane-8-carboxylate **3C**, prepared from ethyl 4-oxocyclohexanecarboxylate with ethylene glycol in the presence of a catalytic amount of *para*-toluenesulfonic acid, with lithium diisopropylamide (LDA) followed by quenching with chlorotrimethylsilane to give **4C**. The chiral alcohol **5C**, (1*S*)-8-[2-(*tert*-butyldimethylsiloxy)-4-(bromo)phenyl]-1-(hydroxymethyl)-1-carbethoxy-1,3-dioxazpiro[1.5]decane, is prepared by treatment with **4C** with **2bC** in the presence of chiral catalyst **6C** (Kiyooka, S.; Kaneko, Y.; Komura, M.; Matsuo, H.; Nakano, M. *J. Org. Chem.* **1991**, *56*, 2276-2278), followed by careful deprotection with tetrabutylammonium fluoride in THF, to selectively remove the TMS group while retaining the TBS group.



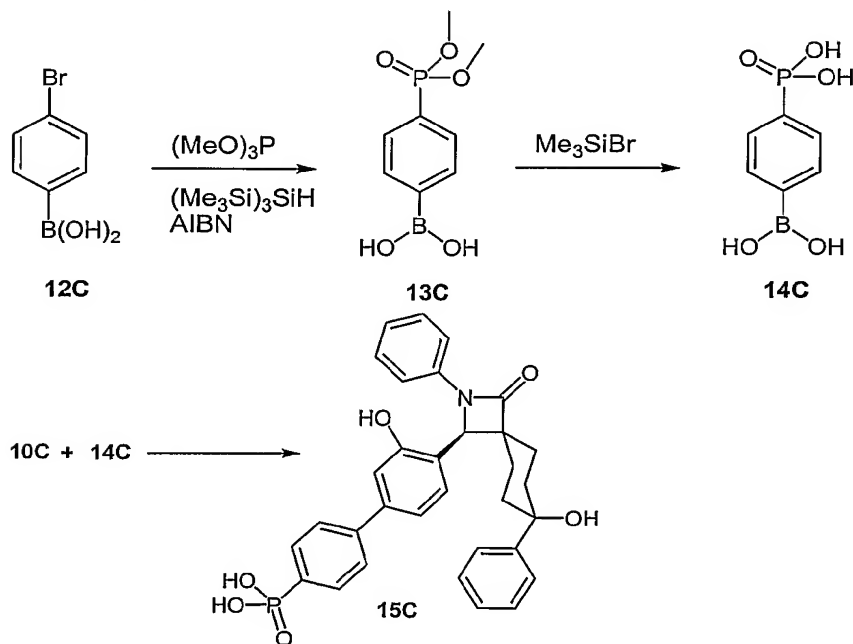
[00372] In the next step, 5C is converted into the corresponding anilide 7C by reaction with aniline in the presence of trimethylaluminum in toluene. Hydrolysis of 7C in aqueous hydrochloric acid gives the ketone 8C. Treatment of a dichloromethane solution of 8C with diethylphosphoryl chloride, $(\text{EtO})_2\text{POCl}$ and sodium hydroxide in the presence of a phase transfer catalyst (BnNEt_3Cl) gives the *beta*-lactam 9C. Reaction of 9C with phenylmagnesium bromide gives two diastereomers of which the major isomer is 10C.



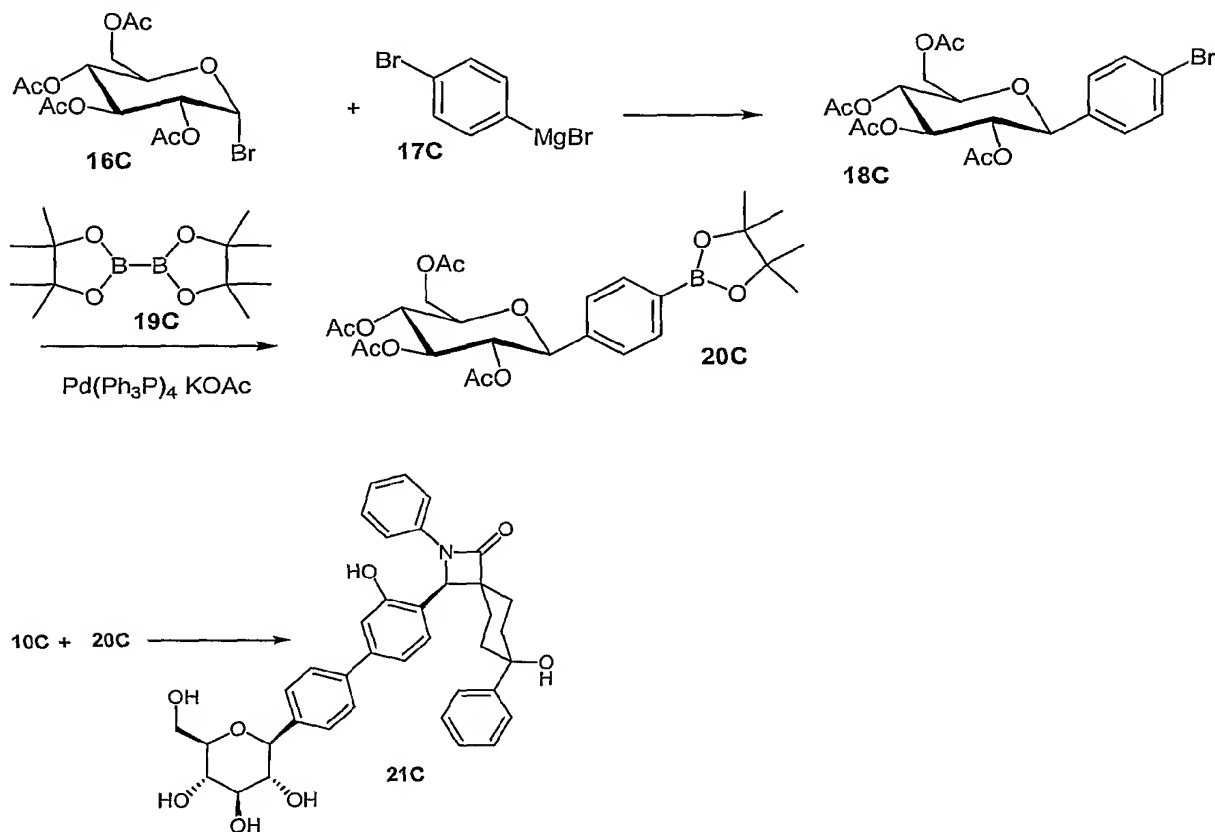
[00373] Suzuki coupling of 10C with 3-hydroxyphenylboronic acid gives the expected biphenyl derivative that is deprotected by hydrolysis with aqueous HF to give the desired product 11C.



[00374] **EXAMPLE 2C:** The preparation of {3'-hydroxy-4'-[(1*R*)-7-hydroxy-3-oxo-2,7-diphenyl-2-azaspiro[3.5]non-1-yl]biphenyl-4-yl}phosphonic acid **15C** begins with reaction of commercially available 4-bromophenylboronic acid **12C** with a mixture of trimethylphosphite, AIBN, and tris(trimethylsilyl)silane to give dimethylphosphonate derivative **13C**. Treatment of **13C** with bromotrimethylsilate followed by aqueous work up gives the phosphonic acid **14C**. Suzuki coupling of **10C** with **14C** gives the expected biphenyl derivative that is deprotected by hydrolysis with aqueous HF to give the desired product **15C**.

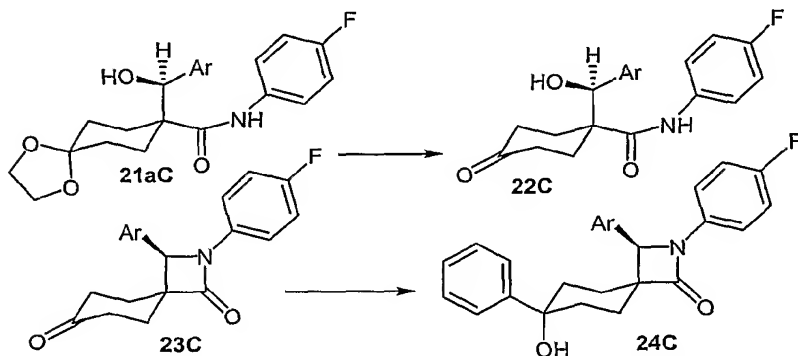


[00375] **EXAMPLE 3C:** The preparation of (1*S*)-1,5-anhydro-1-{3'-hydroxy-4'-[(1*R*)-7-hydroxy-3-oxo-2,7-diphenyl-2-azaspiro[3.5]non-1-yl]biphenyl-4-yl}-D-glucitol **21C** commences with the reaction of peracetyl D-glucose with 33% HBr in acetic acid to produce the *alpha*-ano-meric bromide **16C**. Treatment of **16C** with excess Grignard reagent **17C**, generated from 1,4-dibromobenzene and magnesium, followed by treatment of the crude product with acetic anhydride in pyridine provides the desired bromophenyl derivative **18C**. Conversion of **18C** to the corresponding pinacol boronate ester **20C** is accomplished by reaction with *bis*(pinicolato)di-boron **19C** under the influence of palladium catalysis. Suzuki coupling of **10C** with **20C** gives the expected biphenyl derivative that is deprotected by first hydrolysis in aqueous methanol and triethylamine and then treatment with aqueous HF to give the desired C-glycosyl compound **21C**.

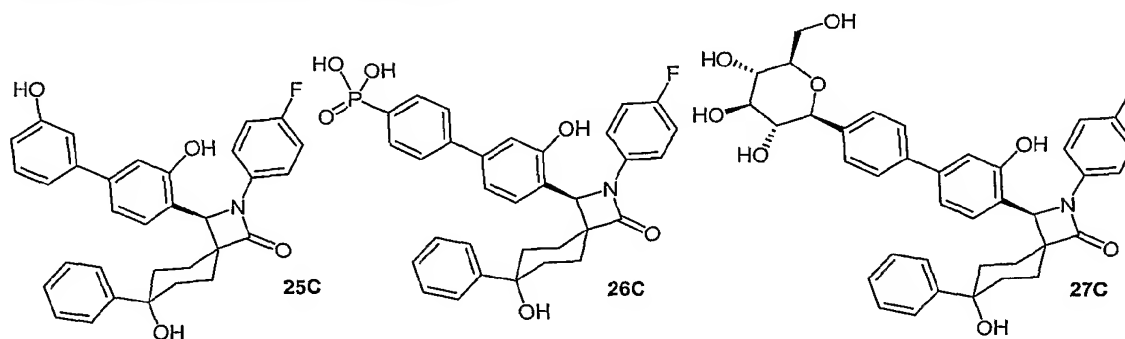


[00376] **EXAMPLES 4C-6C:** Reaction of **5C** from Example 1C with 4-fluoroaniline in the presence of trimethylaluminum in toluene gives anilide compound **21aC**; see scheme

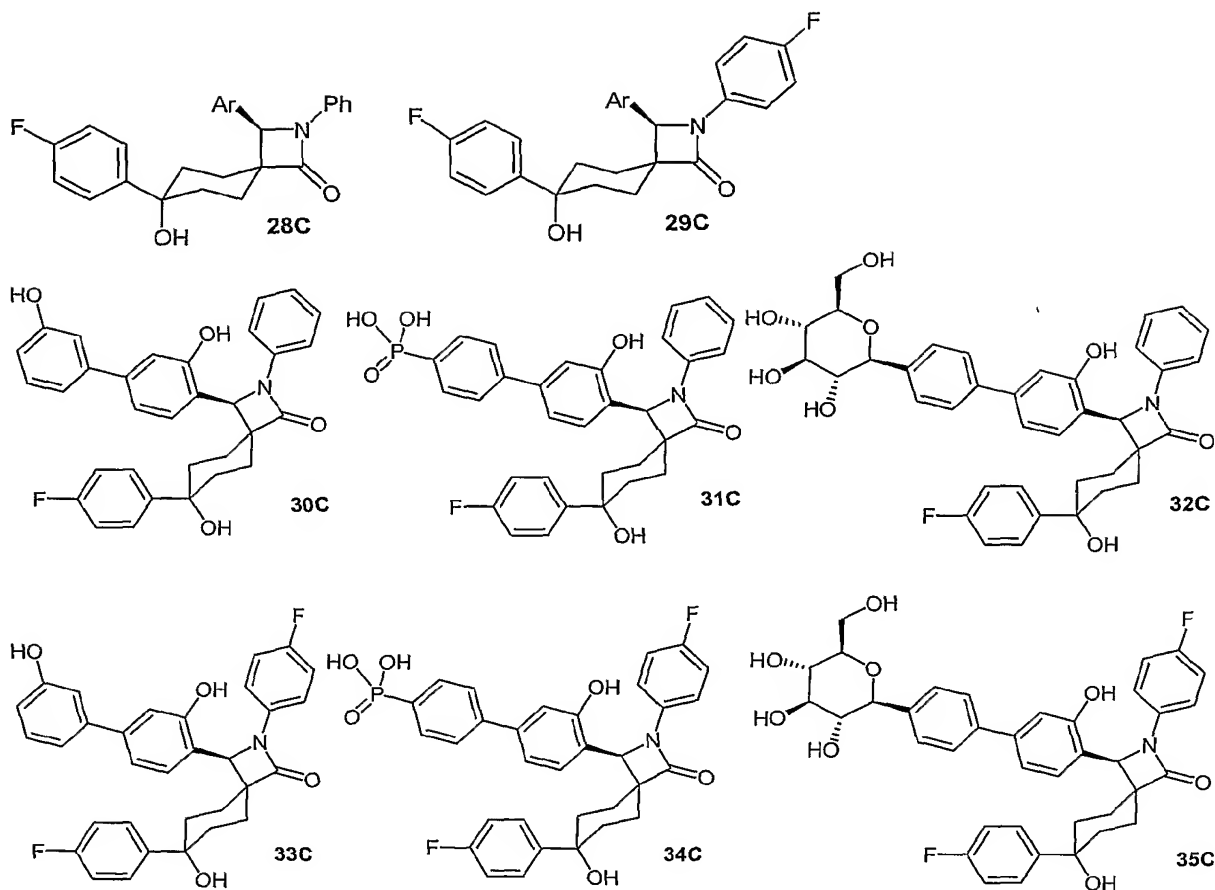
below. Hydrolysis of **21aC** in aqueous hydrochloric acid gives the ketone **22C**. Treatment of a dichloro-methane solution of **22C** with diethylphosphoryl chloride, $(\text{EtO})_2\text{POCl}$ and sodium hydroxide in the presence of a phase transfer catalyst (BnNEt_3Cl) gives the *beta*-lactam **23C**. Reaction of **23C** with phenylmagnesium bromide gives two diastereomers of which the major isomer is **24C**.



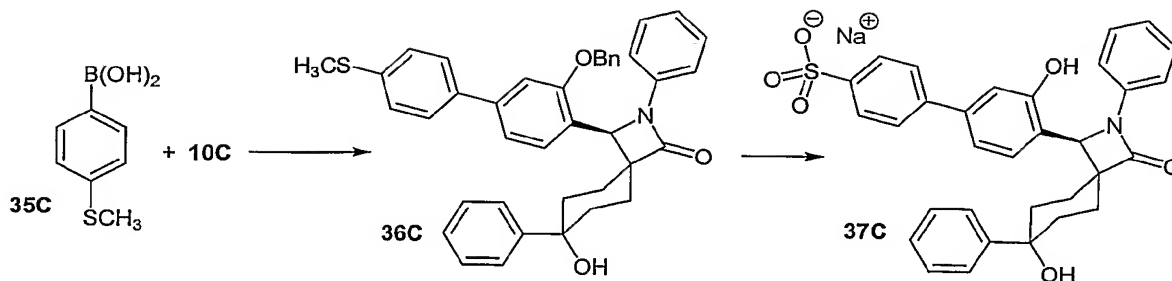
[00377] Using key intermediate **24C** and the synthesis methods described above the following compounds can be prepared:



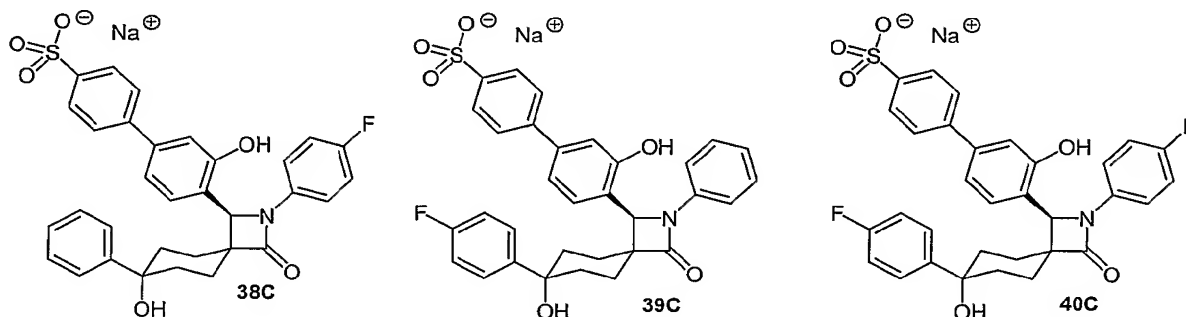
[00378] EXAMPLES 7C-12C: Analogues in which the aromatic ring attached to the cyclohexane ring is substituted are readily prepared from compound **9C** from Example 1C by employing a substituted Grignard reagent. Thus, compound **28C** is prepared by the reaction of **9C** with 4-fluorophenylmagnesium bromide. Similarly, compound **29C** can be prepared from ketone **23C** with 4-fluorophenylmagnesium bromide. From key intermediates **28C** and **29C** analogues such as **30C-32C** and **33C-35C** respectively, can be prepared.



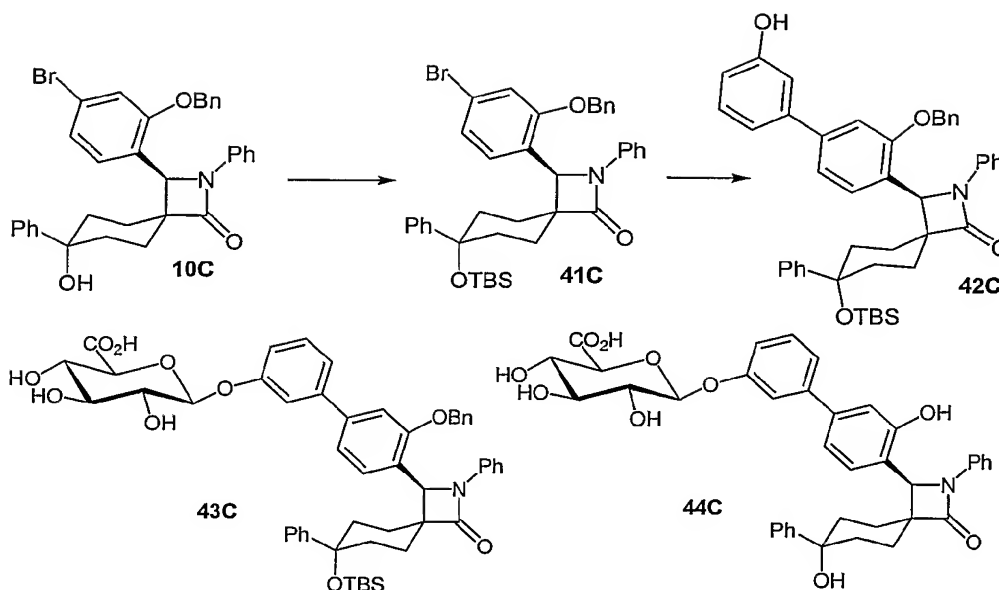
[00379] **EXAMPLE 13C:** In the scheme shown below is the description of a sulfonic acid containing compound. The sequence begins with the Suzuki coupling of commercially available 4-methylthiophenylboronic acid (35C) with 10C to provide the expected biphenyl derivative 36C. The methylthio group was elaborated to the corresponding sulfonic acid by the following sequence: 1) conversion to the sulfoxide with *meta*-chloroperbenzoic acid; 2). Pummerer rearrangement with trifluoroacetic anhydride; 3) hydrolysis of the trifluoroacetoxymethylthio ether with aqueous methanol in the presence of triethylamine, and 4) oxidation of the thiol to the corresponding sulfonic acid with *meta*-chloroperbenzoic acid. After conversion of the sulfonic acid to the corresponding sodium salt by ion exchange, the compound was deprotected by hydrogenolysis over palladium on carbon to give 37C.



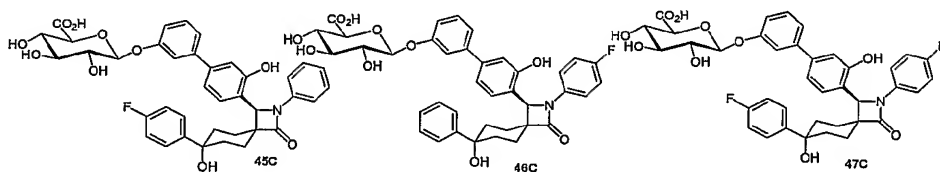
[00380] EXAMPLES 14C-16C: Using the sequence of Example 13C, key intermediates 24C, 28C and 29C can be used to prepare 38C, 39C and 40C, respectively.



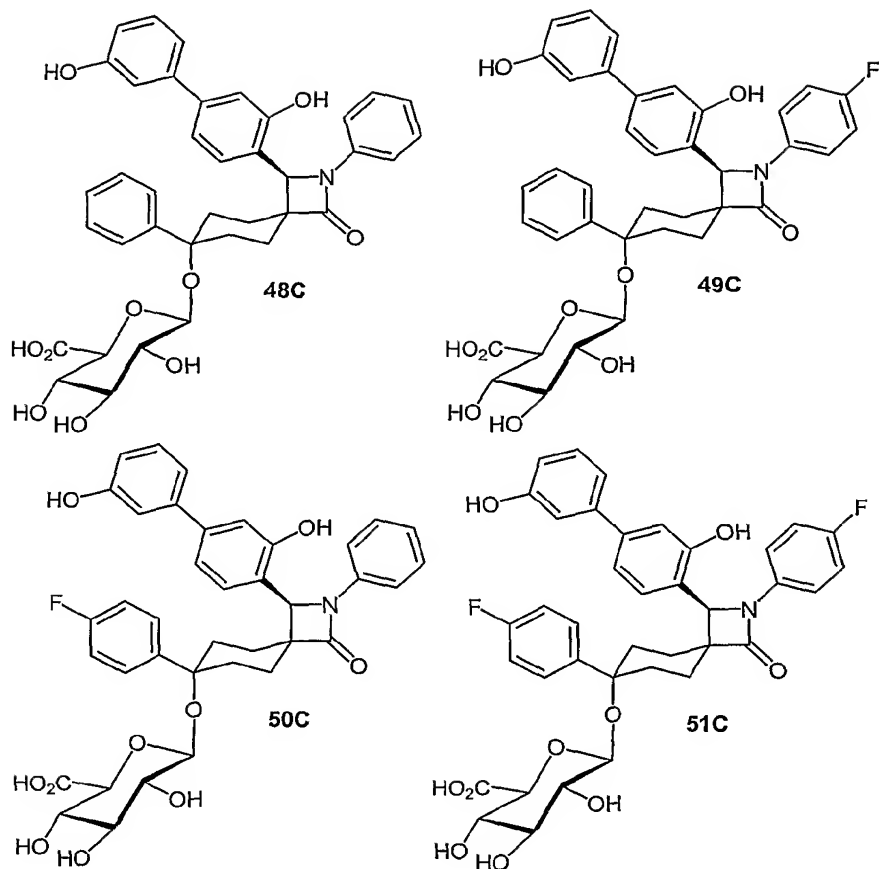
[00381] EXAMPLE 17C: In the following scheme, the synthesis of a selected glucuronide derivatives is described. The sequence commences by protection of key intermediate 10C as its tert-butyldimethylsilyl ether (tert-butyldimethylsilyl chloride and imidazole) giving compound 41C. Suzuki coupling of 41C with 3-hydroxyphenylboronic acid produces biphenyl 42C. Compound 42C is reacted with trichloroacetimidate donor methyl 2,3,4-tri-O-acetyl-1-O-(2,2,2-trichloroethanimidoyl)-β-D-glucopyranuronate (prepared according to Urban, F.; Moore, B.; Breitenbach, R. *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1990,31, 4221) in methylene chloride at -25°C with boron trifluoride etherate as an activator for the coupling. After glycosylation, hydrolysis of the ester groups is accomplished by addition of TEA:MeOH:H₂O (1:1:3.5, 0.01M) to afford desired glucuronic acid derivative 43C. Finally, compound 44C is obtained by hydrogenolysis of the benzyl groups over palladium on carbon and treatment with aqueous HF.



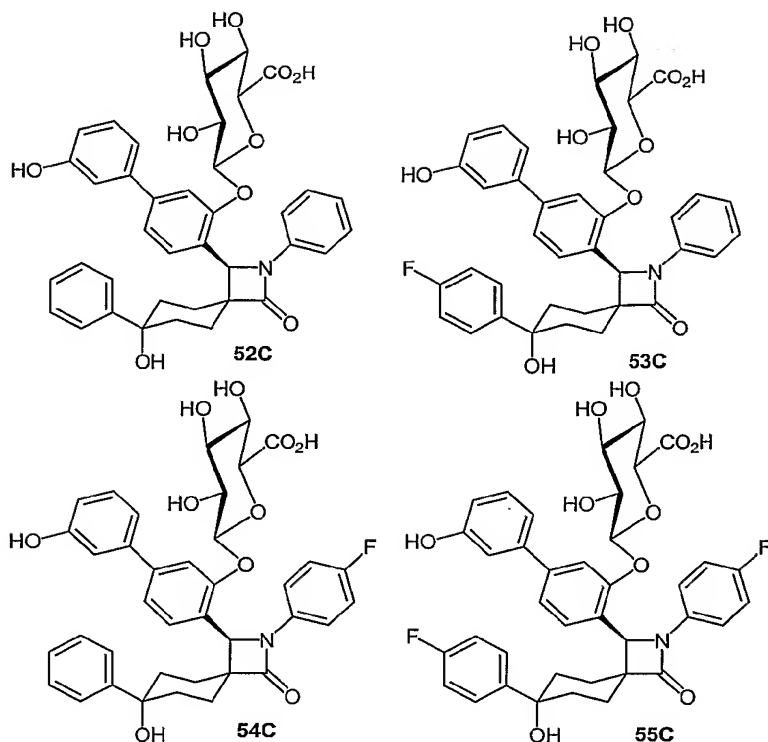
[00382] EXAMPLES 18C-20C: Following the procedures outlined in the above examples, the following glucuronide derivatives can be prepared:



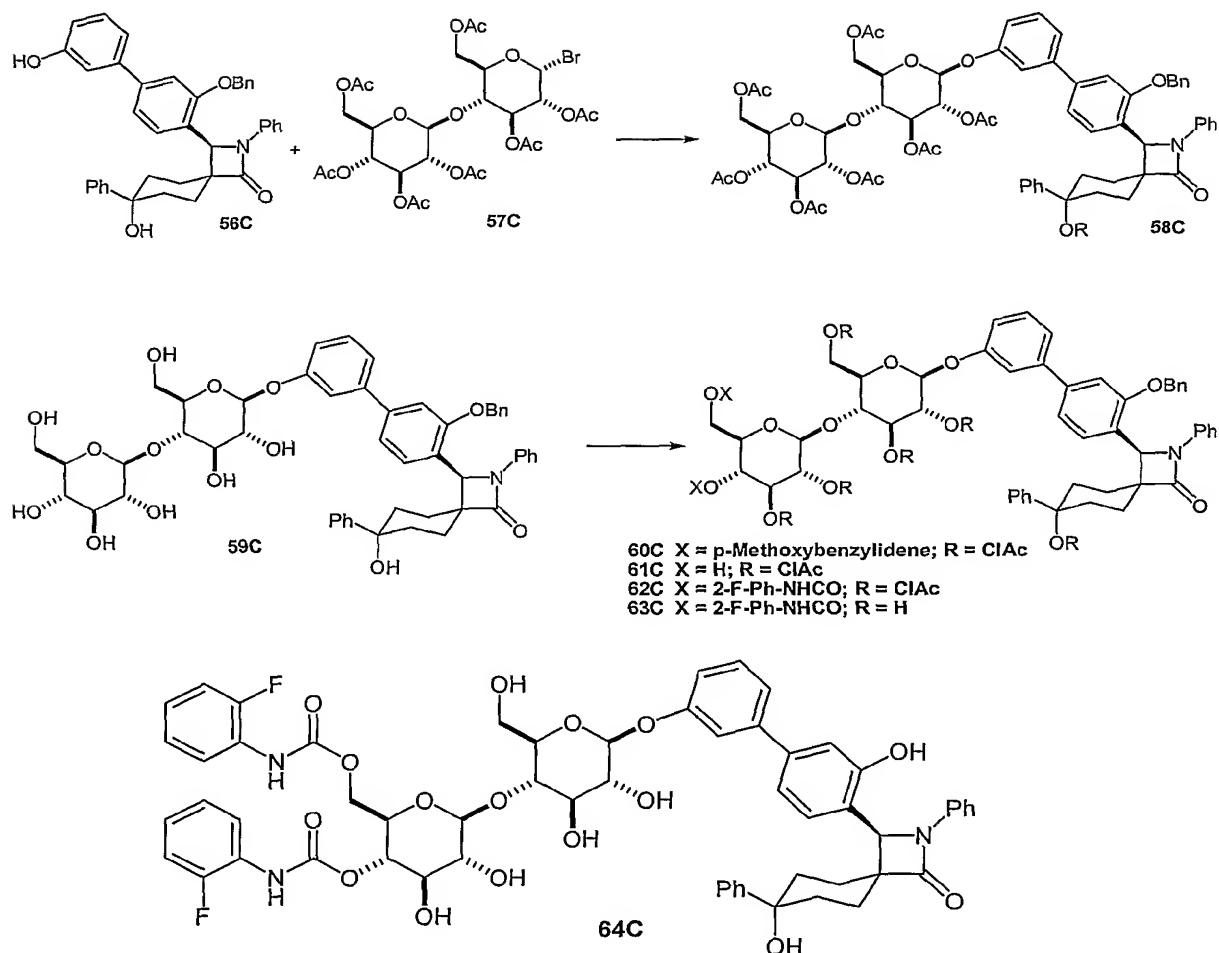
[00383] EXAMPLES 21C-24C: Glucuronides **48C-51C** can be prepared from the appropriate starting materials by changing the protecting group scheme. For example, treatment of **42C** with acetic anhydride protects the phenol. selective removal of the TBS group with aqueous HF liberates the benzylic alcohol that can be glucuronidated as described above. After removal of the protecting groups, glucuronide **48C** is obtained. The additional compounds **49C-51C** are obtained from the appropriate starting materials, as would be obvious to one of ordinary skill in chemical arts.



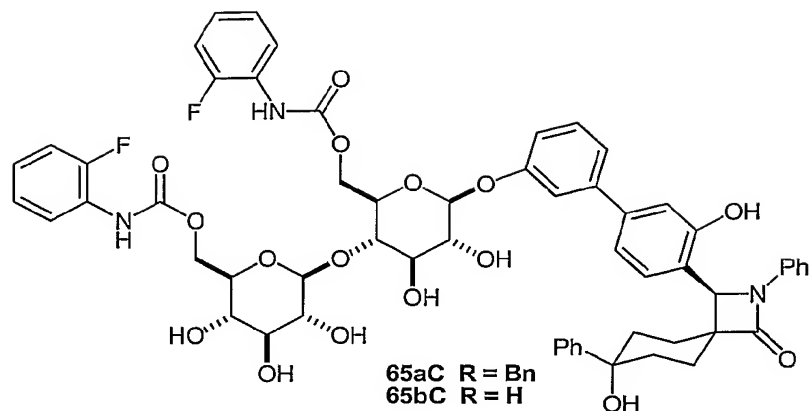
[00384] EXAMPLES 25C-28C: Glucuronides **52C-55C** can also be prepared from the appropriate starting materials by a change in the order in which the protecting groups are manipulated. For example, treatment of **42C** with acetic anhydride protects the phenol. Selective removal of the benzyl moiety by hydrogenolysis over palladium on carbon unmasks the phenol. Glucuronidation of the phenol is accomplished as described above. After removal of the protecting groups, glucuronide **52C** is obtained. The additional compounds **53C-55C** are obtained from the appropriate starting materials, as would be obvious to one of ordinary skill.



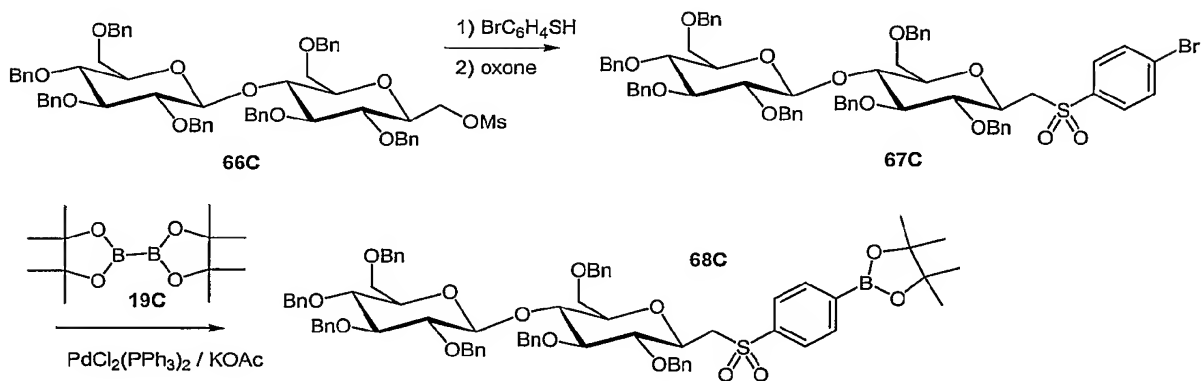
[00385] **EXAMPLE 29C:** The scheme shown below illustrates the synthesis of a sugar carbamate-containing compound. Suzuki coupling of **10C** with 3-hydroxyphenylboronic acid gives **56C**. Compound **56C** is reacted with heptaacetyl-beta-D-cellobiosyl bromide (**57C**) in acetonitrile in the presence of anhydrous zinc fluoride to give **58C**. The ester groups of **58C** are removed by addition to a solution of TEA:MeOH:H₂O (1:1:3.5, 0.01M) to afford **59C**. The sugar carbamate is prepared by first protecting the 4'',6''-hydroxyls of **59C** as a *p*-methoxybenzylidene followed by exhaustive acylation with chloroacetic anhydride to give the fully protected derivative **60C**. The benzylidene is then cleaved with acid to give diol **61C**. The diol **61C** is then reacted with 2-fluorophenyl isocyanate with copper (I) catalysis to give **62C**. The chloroacetates are removed by treatment with sodium methoxide in methanol to give **63C** which is hydrogenated over palladium on carbon to provide **64C**.

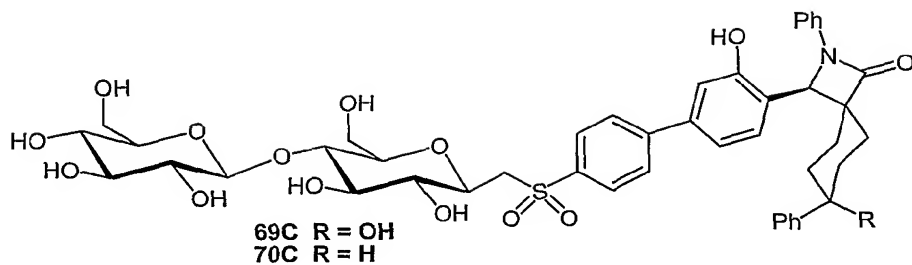


[00386] **EXAMPLE 30C:** The scheme shown below illustrates the synthesis of a sugar carbamate-containing compound. Chemoselective reaction of the primary hydroxyl groups of **59C** with 2-fluorophenyl isocyanate gives *bis*-carbamate **65aC**. Hydrogenolysis of **65aC** over palladium on carbon gives compound **65bC**.

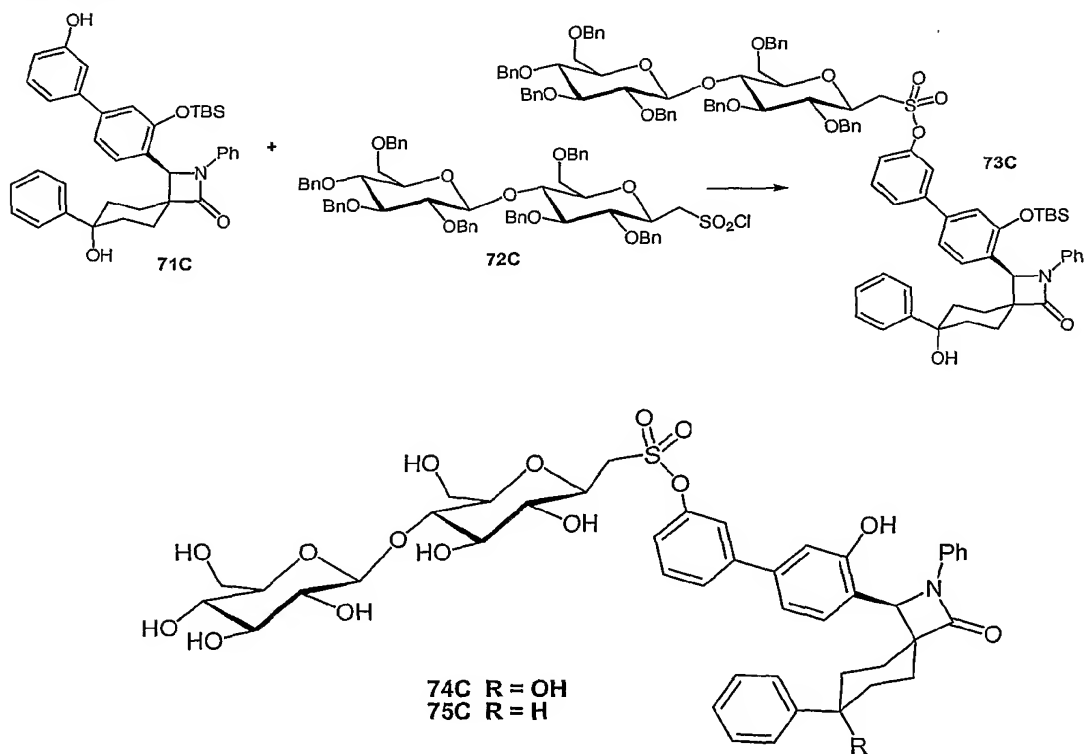


[00387] EXAMPLES 31C-32C: The known mesylate **66C**, (prepared according to the method of Kaverno, L.; Werder, M.; Hauser, H.; Carreira, E. M. *Org. Lett.* **2005**, *4*, 1145-1148), is reacted with 4-bromothiophenol in the presence of potassium carbonate in DMF, followed by oxidation with oxone to produce sulfone **67C**. Conversion of **67C** to the corresponding pinacol boronate ester **68C** is accomplished by reaction with *bis*(pinacolato)diboron (**19C**) under the influence of palladium catalysis. Suzuki coupling of **68C** with **10C** produces the desired biphenyl derivative that is deprotected by catalytic hydrogenation over Pearlman's catalyst and treatment with aqueous HF giving compound **69C** along with compound **70C**.

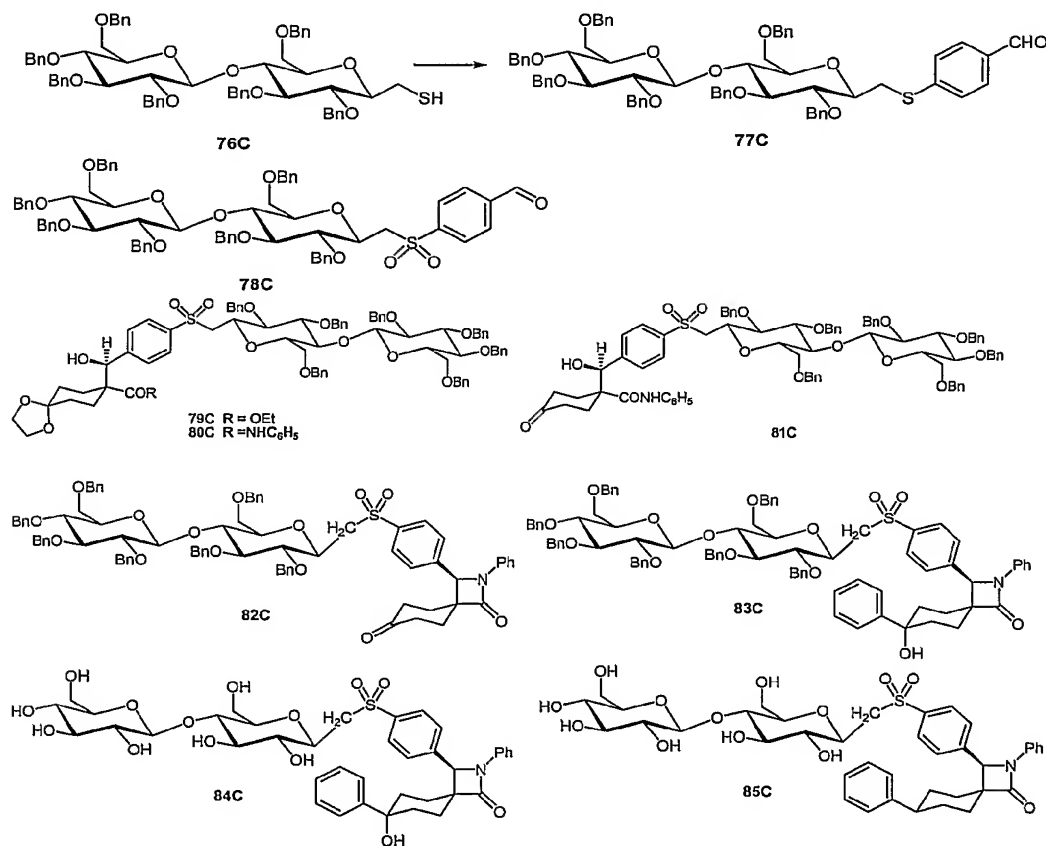




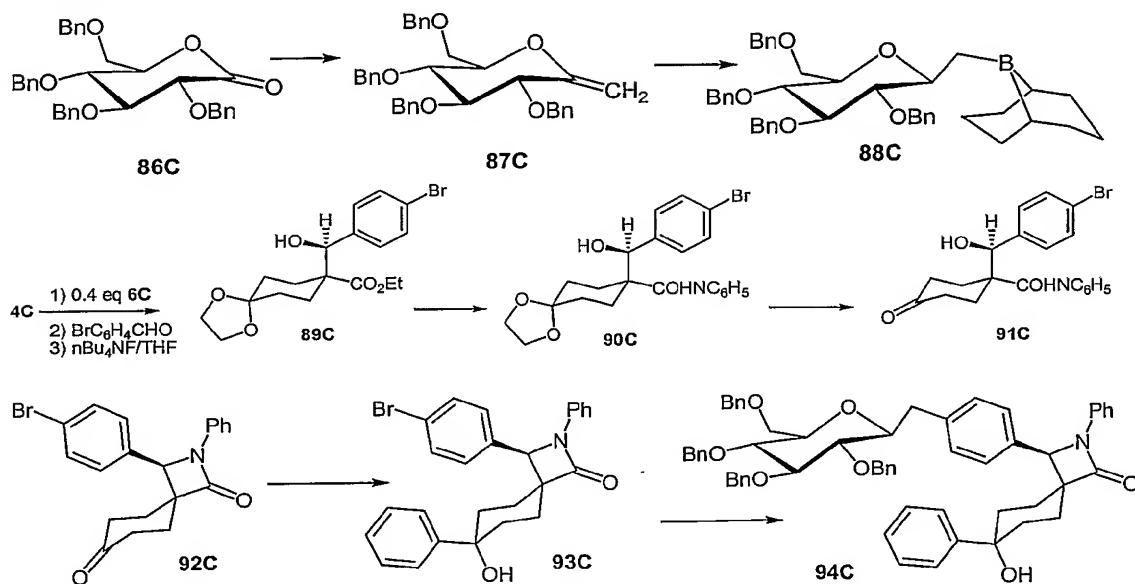
[00388] EXAMPLES 33C-34C: Suzuki coupling of **10C** with 3-hydroxyphenylboronic acid gives the expected biphenyl derivative that is deprotected by hydrolysis with aqueous HF to give the desired product **71C**. Reaction of **71C** with the known sulfonyl chloride **72C** (prepared according to the method of Kaverno, L.; Werder, M.; Hauser, H.; Carreira, E. M. *Org. Lett.* **2005**, *4*, 1145-1148) in the presence of triethylamine gives the desired product **73C**. Deprotection of **73C** by catalytic hydrogenation over Pearlman's catalyst and treatment with aqueous HF gives compound **74C** along with compound **75C**.

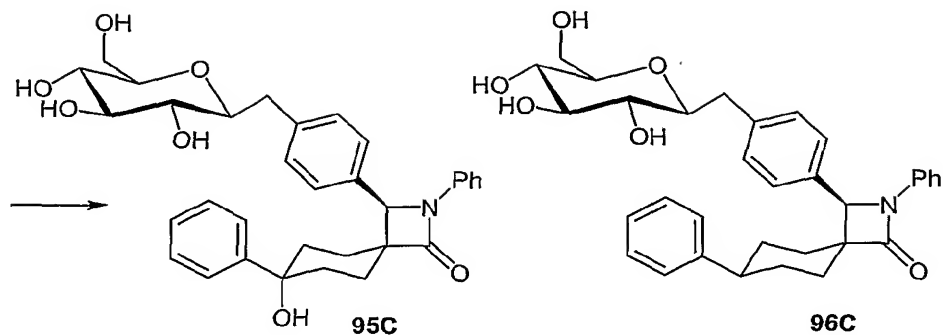


[00389] EXAMPLES 35C-36C: Condensation of 4-fluorobenzaldehyde with thiol **76C** (prepared according to the method of Kaverno, L.; Werder, M.; Hauser, H.; Carreira, E. M. *Org. Lett.* **2005**, *4*, 1145-1148) in the presence of potassium carbonate in DMF gives the desired product **77C**. Oxidation of **77C** with oxone produces sulfone **78C**. The chiral alcohol **79C** is prepared by reaction of **4C** with **78C** in the presence of chiral catalysts **6C** as described above. In the next step, **79C** is converted into the corresponding anilide **80C** by reaction with aniline in the presence of trimethylaluminum in toluene. Hydrolysis of **80C** in aqueous hydrochloric acid gives the ketone **81C**. Treatment of a dichloromethane solution of **81C** with diethylphosphoryl chloride, (EtO)₂POCl and sodium hydroxide in the presence of a phase transfer catalyst (BnNEt₃Cl) gives the *beta*-lactam **82C**. Reaction of **82C** with phenylmagnesium bromide gives two diastereomers of which the major isomer is **83C**. Hydrogenation of **83C** over Pearlman's catalyst gives compounds **84C** and **85C**.



[00390] **EXAMPLES 37C-38C:** In the scheme shown below, the synthesis of a C-glycosyl compound is described. The sequence commences with the reaction of 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-benzyl-D-glucolactone (**86C**) with Tebbe's reagent to give the methylene derivative **87C**. Reaction of **87C** with 9-BBN gave the corresponding trialkylborane **88C** in good yield with the stereochemistry as shown. The chiral alcohol **89C** is prepared by reaction of **4C** with 4-bromobenzaldehyde in the presence of chiral catalyst **6C** as described above. In the next step, **89C** is converted into the corresponding anilide **90C** by reaction with aniline in the presence of trimethylaluminum in toluene. Hydrolysis of **90C** in aqueous hydrochloric acid gives ketone **91C**. Treatment of a dichloromethane solution of **91C** with diethylphosphoryl chloride, $(\text{EtO})_2\text{POCl}$ and sodium hydroxide in the presence of a phase transfer catalyst (BnNEt_3Cl) gives the *beta*-lactam **92C**. Reaction of **92C** with phenylmagnesium bromide gives two diastereomers of which the major isomer is **93C**. Suzuki coupling of **93C** with **88C** gives the expected crosscoupled product **94C**. Hydrogenolysis of **94C** over Pearlman's catalyst gives compounds **95C** and **96C**.



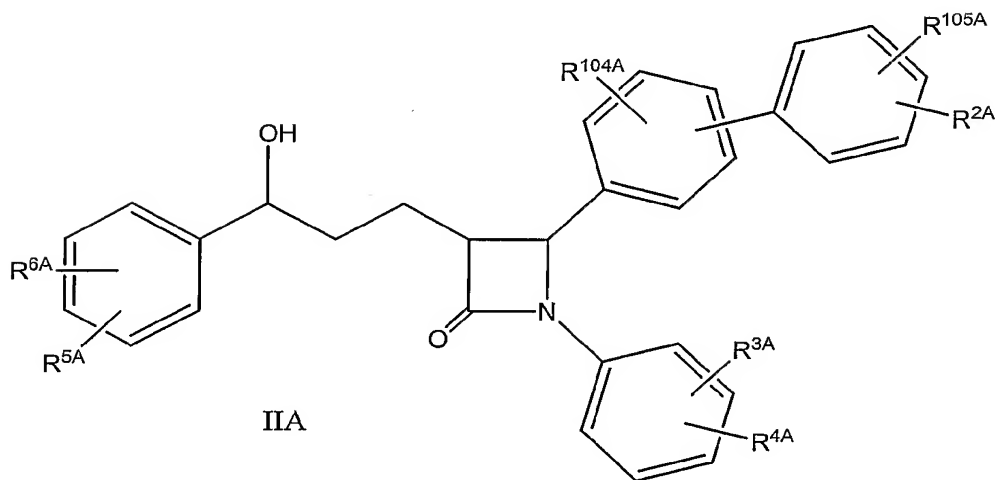
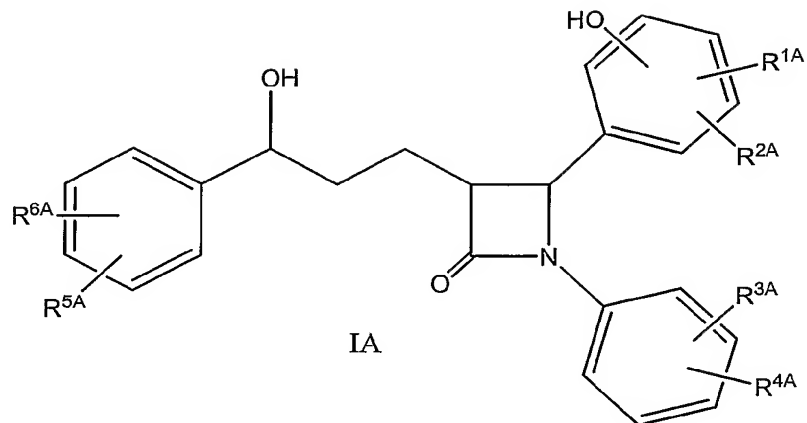


[00391] The present invention is not limited to the compounds found in the above examples, and many other compounds falling within the scope of the invention may also be prepared using the procedures set forth in the above synthetic schemes. The preparation of additional compounds having formulae **IA-XXIIA**, **IB**, **IIB**, **IC** or **IIC** using these methods would be obvious to one of ordinary skill in the chemical arts.

[00392] The invention has been described in detail with particular reference to preferred embodiments thereof, but it will be understood by those skilled in the art that variations and modifications can be effected within the spirit and scope of the invention.

Claims:

1. A compound of formula IA or IIA



wherein

R^{1A} , R^{2A} , R^{3A} , R^{4A} , R^{5A} , and R^{6A} , independently of one another are chosen from:

(a) (C_1-C_{30}) -alkylene-(LAG)_{qa},

wherein at least one carbon atom of the alkylene radical is replaced by:

aryl or heteroaryl radicals, which are unsubstituted or substituted one, two, or three times by R^{7A} or by (C_3-C_{10}) -cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl

radicals, which are unsubstituted or substituted one, two, three or four times by R^{7A} , and

wherein one or more carbon atoms of the alkylene radical is optionally replaced by a radical chosen from: $-S(O)_{ma}-$ (where $ma=0-2$), $-O-$, $-(C=O)-$, $-(C=S)-$, $-CH=CH-$, $-C\equiv C-$, $-N[(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}]$ -, $-N(\text{phenyl})$ -, $-N[(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl-Phenyl}]$ -, $-N(CO-(CH_2)_{1-10}-COOH)-$ and $-NH-$; or

(b) H, F, Cl, Br, I, CF_3 , NO_2 , N_3 , CN, COOH, $COO(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, $CONH_2$, $CONH(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, $CON[(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}]_2$, $(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, $(C_2-C_6)\text{-alkenyl}$, $(C_2-C_6)\text{-alkynyl}$, or $O-(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, wherein the alkyl radical is unsubstituted or at least one hydrogen in the alkyl radical is replaced by fluorine; or

(c) SO_2NH_2 , $SO_2NH(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, $SO_2N[(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}]_2$, $S-(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, $S-(CH_2)_{na}\text{-Phenyl}$, $SO-(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, $SO-(CH_2)_{na}\text{phenyl}$, $SO_2-(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, or $SO_2-(CH_2)_{na}\text{-Phenyl}$; wherein $na=0-6$, and wherein the phenyl radical is unsubstituted or substituted one or two times, each substituent chosen independently from: F, Cl, Br, OH, CF_3 , NO_2 , CN, OCF_3 , $O-(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, $(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, and NH_2 ; or

(d) NH_2 , $NH-(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, $N[(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}]_2$, $NH(C_1-C_7)\text{-acyl}$, phenyl, or $O-(CH_2)_{na}\text{-Phenyl}$, wherein $na=0-6$, and wherein the phenyl ring is unsubstituted or substituted one, two, or three times, each substituent chosen independently from: F, Cl, Br, I, OH, CF_3 , NO_2 , CN, OCF_3 , $O-(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, $(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, NH_2 , $NH-(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, $N[(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}]_2$, SO_2CH_3 , COOH, $COO-(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, and $CONH_2$;

R^{7A} represents

(a) F, Cl, Br, I, OH, CF_3 , NO_2 , N_3 , CN, COOH, $COO(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, $CONH_2$, $CONH(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, $CON[(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}]_2$, $(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, $(C_2-C_6)\text{-alkenyl}$, $(C_2-C_6)\text{-alkynyl}$, or $O-(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$;

alkynyl, or O-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, wherein the alkyl radical is unsubstituted or at least one hydrogen in the alkyl radical may be replaced by fluorine; or

(b) PO₃H₂, SO₃H, SO₂NH₂, SO₂NH(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, SO₂N[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl]₂, S-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, S-(CH₂)_{na}-Phenyl, SO-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, SO-(CH₂)_{na}-Phenyl, SO₂-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, or SO₂-(CH₂)_{na}-Phenyl, wherein na=0-6, and wherein the phenyl radical is unsubstituted or substituted one or two times each substituent chosen independently from: F, Cl, Br, OH, CF₃, NO₂, CN, OCF₃, O-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, (C₁-C₆)-alkyl, and NH₂; or

(c) C(NH)(NH₂), NH₂, NH-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, N[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl]₂, NH(C₁-C₇)-acyl, phenyl, or O-(CH₂)_{na}-Phenyl, wherein na=0-6, and wherein the phenyl ring is unsubstituted or substituted one, two, or three times, each substituent chosen independently from: F, Cl, Br, I, OH, CF₃, NO₂, CN, OCF₃, O-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, (C₁-C₆)-alkyl, NH₂, NH(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, N[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl]₂, SO₂CH₃, COOH, COO-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, and CONH₂;

(LAG) is a sugar residue, disugar residue, trisugar residue, tetrasugar residue; a sugar acid, an amino sugar; or

an amino acid residue, or an oligopeptide residue comprising 2 to 9 amino acids; or an acyclic, mono-, di- or tricyclic trialkylammonium radical, an acyclic mono-, di- or tricyclic trialkylammoniumalkyl radical, -O(SO₂)OH; -(CH₂)₀₋₁₀-SO₃H, -(CH₂)₀₋₁₀-P(O)(OH)₂, -(CH₂)₀₋₁₀-O-P(O)(OH)₂, -(CH₂)₀₋₁₀-COOH, -(CH₂)₀₋₁₀-C(=NH)(NH₂), -(CH₂)₀₋₁₀-C(=NH)(NHOH), or -NR^{8A}-C(=NR^{9A})(NR^{10A}R^{11A});

wherein qa=1-5 and wherein R^{8A}, R^{9A}, R^{10A} and R^{11A}, independently of one another, are chosen from: H, (C₁-C₆)-alkyl, phenyl, (C₁-C₆)-alkyl-Phenyl, and (C₃-C₈)-cycloalkyl,

and wherein at least one of the radicals R^{1A} to R^{6A} must have the meaning:

(C₁-C₃₀)-alkylene-(LAG)_{qa},

wherein at least one carbon atom of the alkylene radical is replaced by:

aryl or heteroaryl radicals, which are unsubstituted or substituted one, two, or three times by R^{7A}, or

(C₃-C₁₀)-cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl radicals, which are unsubstituted or substituted one, two, three, or four times by R^{7A}, or

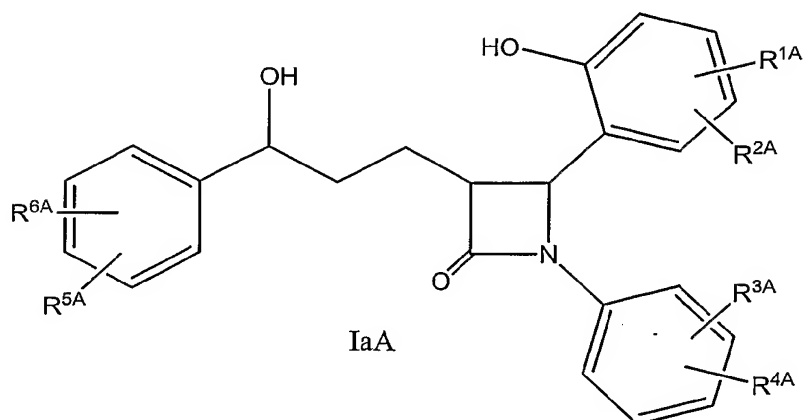
-S(O)_{ma}-(where ma=0-2), -O-, -(C=O)-, -(C=S)-, -CH=CH-, -C≡C-, -N[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl]-, -N(phenyl)-, -N[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl-Phenyl]-, -N(CO-(CH₂)₁₋₁₀-COOH)- or -NH-;

R^{104A} represents one, two, three or four residues chosen independently from H, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -O-loweralkyl, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, CF₃, nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate;

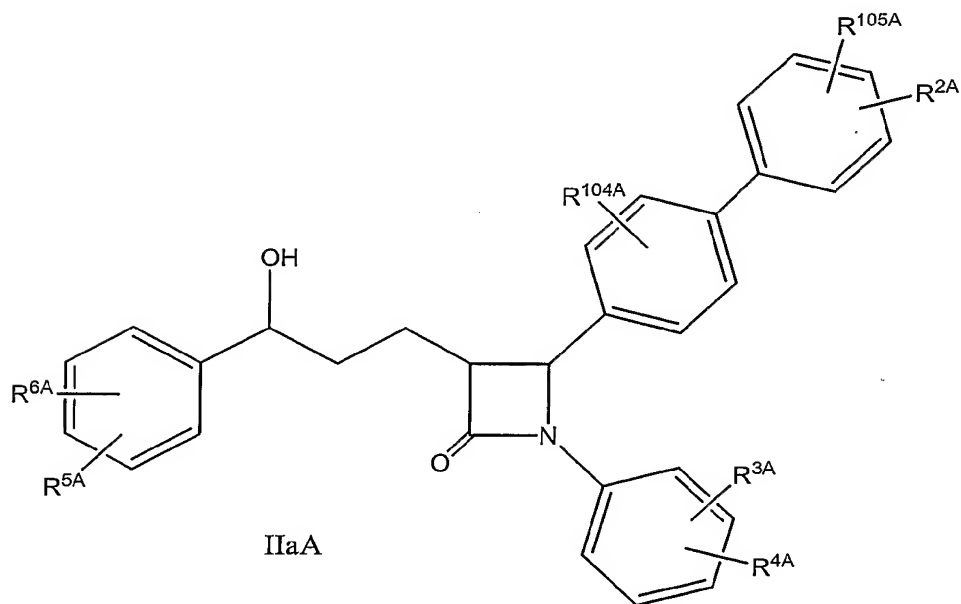
R^{105A} is chosen from H, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -O-loweralkyl, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, CF₃, nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, in any stereoisomeric form, or a mixture of any such compounds in any ratio.

2. A compound according to claim 1 of formula IaA



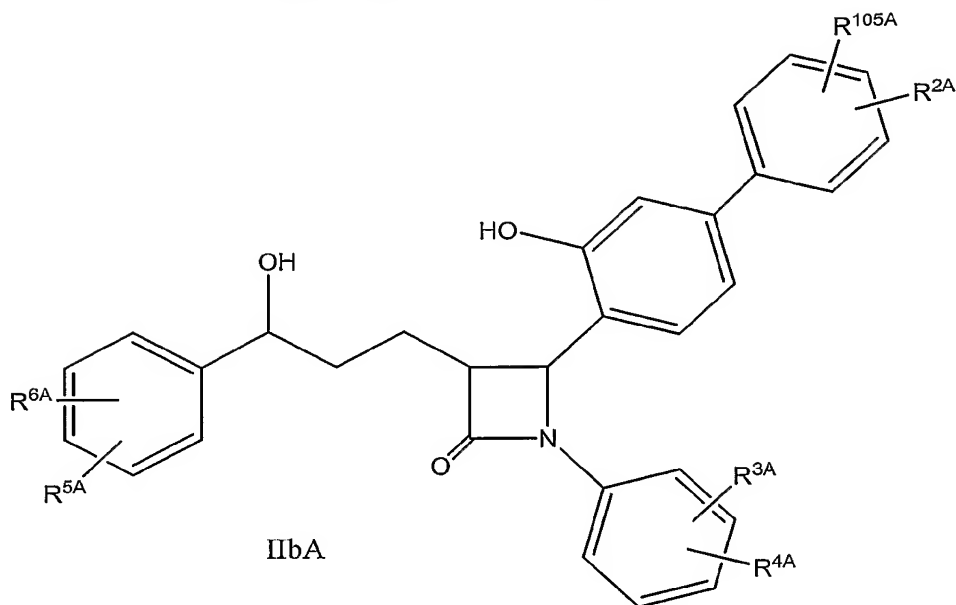
3. A compound according to claim 1 of formula IIaA:



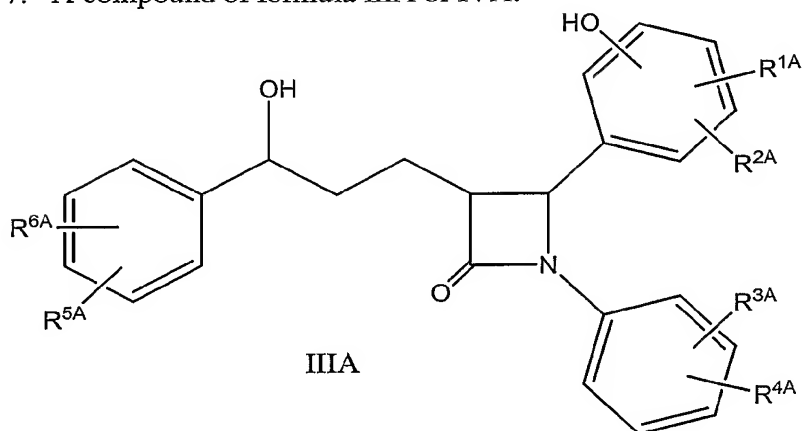
4. A compound according to claim 3 wherein R^{104A} is chosen from -OH, -SH, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate and R^{105A} is chosen from H, -OH, -SH, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate.

5. A compound according to claim 3 wherein R^{104A} is -OH.

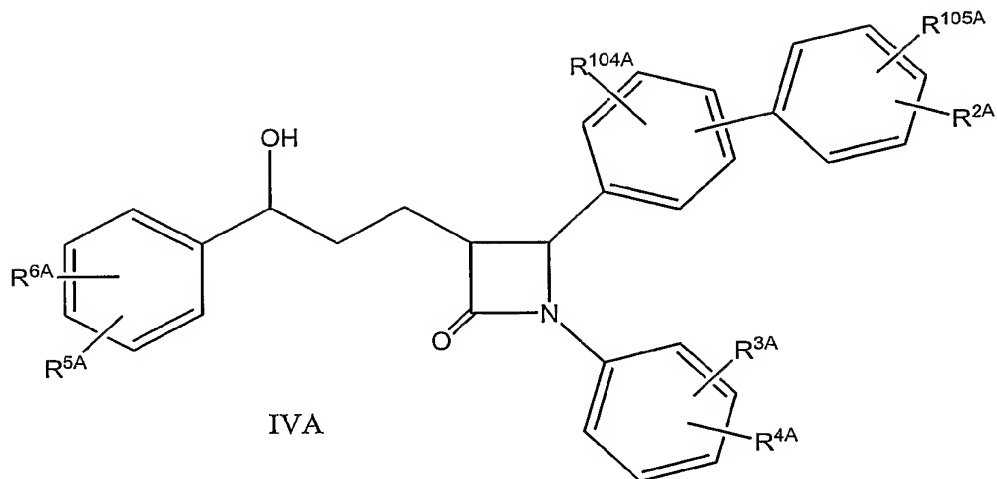
6. A compound according to claim 5 of formula IIbA:



7. A compound of formula IIIA or IVA:



- 335 -



wherein

R^{1A} , R^{2A} , R^{3A} , R^{4A} , R^{5A} , and R^{6A} , independently of one another, are chosen from:

(C_0-C_{30}) -alkylene-(LAG)_{qa}; or

(C_0-C_{30}) -alkylene-(LAG)_{qa}, wherein at least one carbon atom of the alkylene radical is replaced by a radical chosen from: $-S(O)_{ma}-$ (wherein $ma=0-2$), $-O-$, $-(C=O)-$, $-(C=S)-$, $-CH=CH-$, $-C\equiv C-$, $-N[(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}]$, $-N(\text{phenyl})$, $-N[(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl-Phenyl}]$, $-N(CO-(CH_2)_{1-10}-COOH)-$ and $-NH-$; or

H, F, Cl, Br, I, OH, CF_3 , NO_2 , N_3 , CN, COOH, $COO(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, $CONH_2$, $CONH(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, $CON[(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}]_2$, $(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, $(C_2-C_6)\text{-alkenyl}$, $(C_2-C_6)\text{-alkynyl}$, or $O-(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, wherein the alkyl radical is unsubstituted or at least one hydrogen in the alkyl radical is replaced by fluorine; or $C(=NH)(NH_2)$, PO_3H_2 , SO_3H , SO_2NH_2 , $SO_2NH(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, $SO_2N[(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}]_2$, $S-(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, $S-(CH_2)_{na}\text{-Phenyl}$, $SO-(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, $SO-(CH_2)_{na}\text{-Phenyl}$, $SO_2-(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, or $SO_2-(CH_2)_{na}\text{-Phenyl}$, wherein $na=0-6$, and wherein the phenyl radical is unsubstituted or substituted one or two times, each substituent chosen independently from: F, Cl, Br, I, OH, CF_3 , NO_2 , CN, OCF_3 , $O-(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, $(C_1-C_6)\text{-alkyl}$, and NH_2 ; and

NH₂, NH-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, N((C₁-C₆)-alkyl)₂, NH(C₁-C₇)-acyl, phenyl, or O-(CH₂)_{na}-Phenyl, wherein na=0-6, and wherein the phenyl ring is unsubstituted or substituted one, two, or three times, each substituent chosen independently from: F, Cl, Br, I, OH, CF₃, NO₂, CN, OCF₃, O-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, (C₁-C₆)-alkyl, NH₂, NH(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, N((C₁-C₆)-alkyl)₂, SO₂CH₃, COOH, COO-(C₁-C₆)-alkyl, and CONH₂;

wherein (LAG) is -(CH₂)₀₋₁₀-SO₃H; -(CH₂)₀₋₁₀-P(O)(OH)₂, -(CH₂)₀₋₁₀-O-P(O)(OH)₂, or -(CH₂)₀₋₁₀-COOH and wherein qa is 1-5; and

wherein at least one of the radicals R^{1A} to R^{6A} must have the meaning:

(C₀-C₃₀)-alkylene-(LAG)_{qa}; or

(C₀-C₃₀)-alkylene-(LAG)_{qa}, wherein at least one carbon atom of the alkylene radical is replaced by a radical chosen from: -S(O)_{ma}- (wherein ma=0-2), -O-, -(C=O)-, -(C=S)-, -CH=CH-, -C≡C-, -N[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl]-, -N(phenyl)-, -N[(C₁-C₆)-alkyl-Phenyl]-, -N(CO-(CH₂)₁₋₁₀-COOH)- and -NH-;

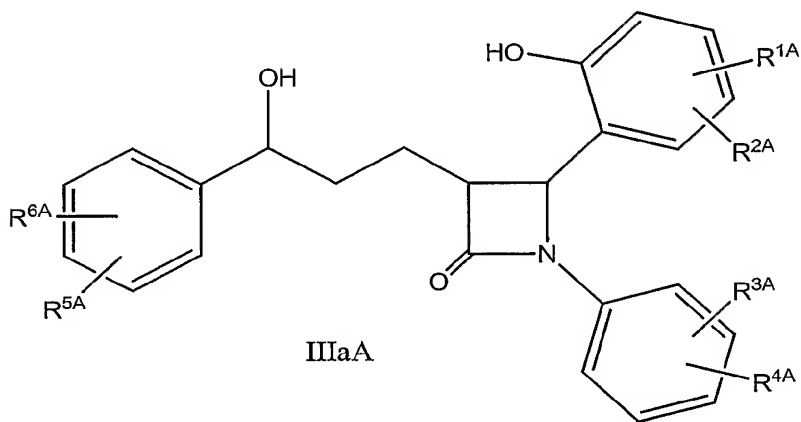
R^{104A} represents one, two, three or four residues chosen independently from H, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -O-loweralkyl, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, CF₃, nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate;

R^{105A} is chosen from H, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -O-loweralkyl, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, CF₃, nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl,

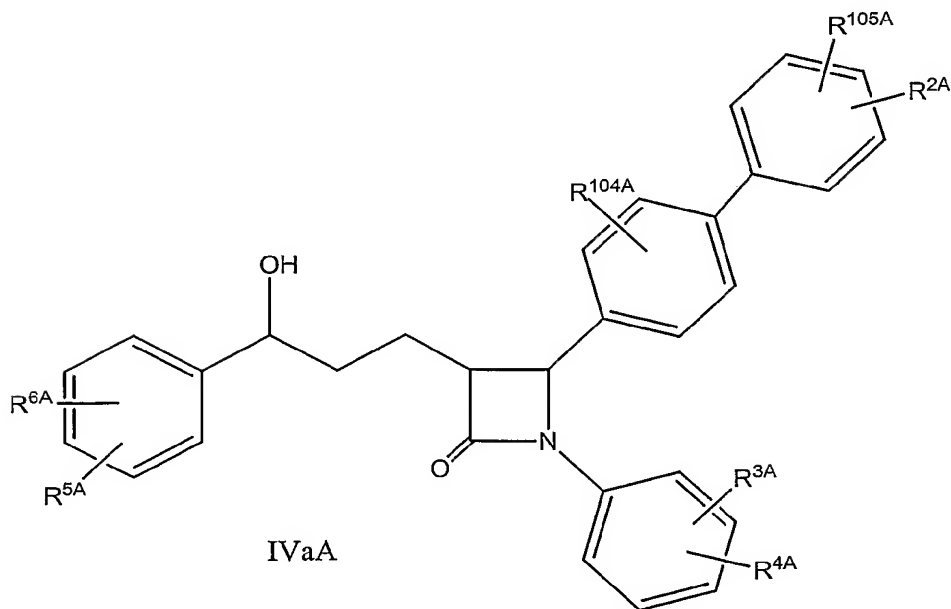
carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, $-\text{PO}_3\text{H}_2$, $-\text{SO}_3\text{H}$, $-\text{B}(\text{OH})_2$, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, in any stereoisomeric form, or a mixture of any such compounds in any ratio.

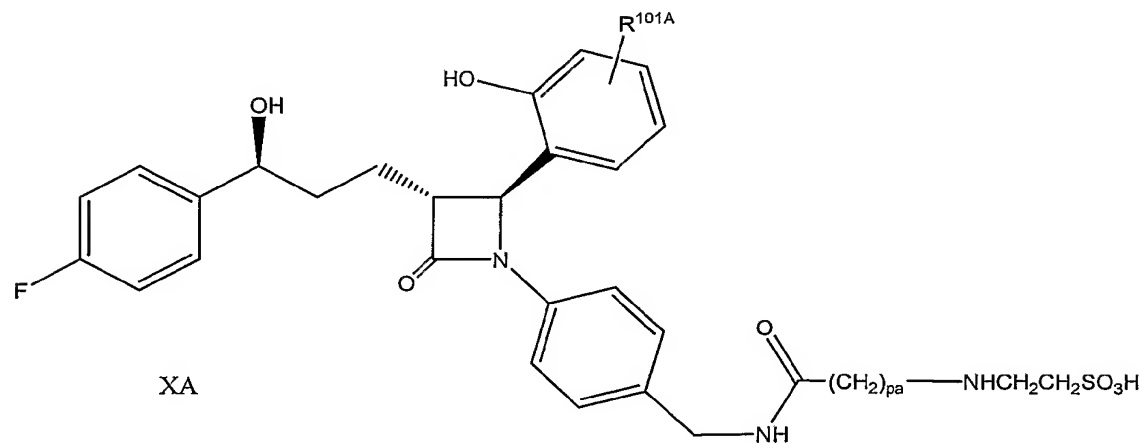
8. A compound according to claim 7 of formula IIIaA:



9. A compound according to claim 7 of formula IVaA:



10. A compound according to claim 9 wherein R^{104A} is chosen from -OH, -SH, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate and R^{105A} is chosen from H, -OH, -SH, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate.
11. A compound according to claim 10 wherein R^{104A} is -OH.
12. A compound according to any of claims 7 to 11 wherein R^{1A} , R^{3A} and R^{5A} are H; R^{6A} is F; R^{2A} is H, OH, or OCH₃; and R^{4A} is (C₀-C₃₀)-alkylene-(LAG).
13. A compound according to any of claims 7 to 12 wherein R^{4A} is -CH₂NHC(=O)(CH₂)₂₋₂₀NHCH₂CH₂SO₃H.
14. A compound of formula XA

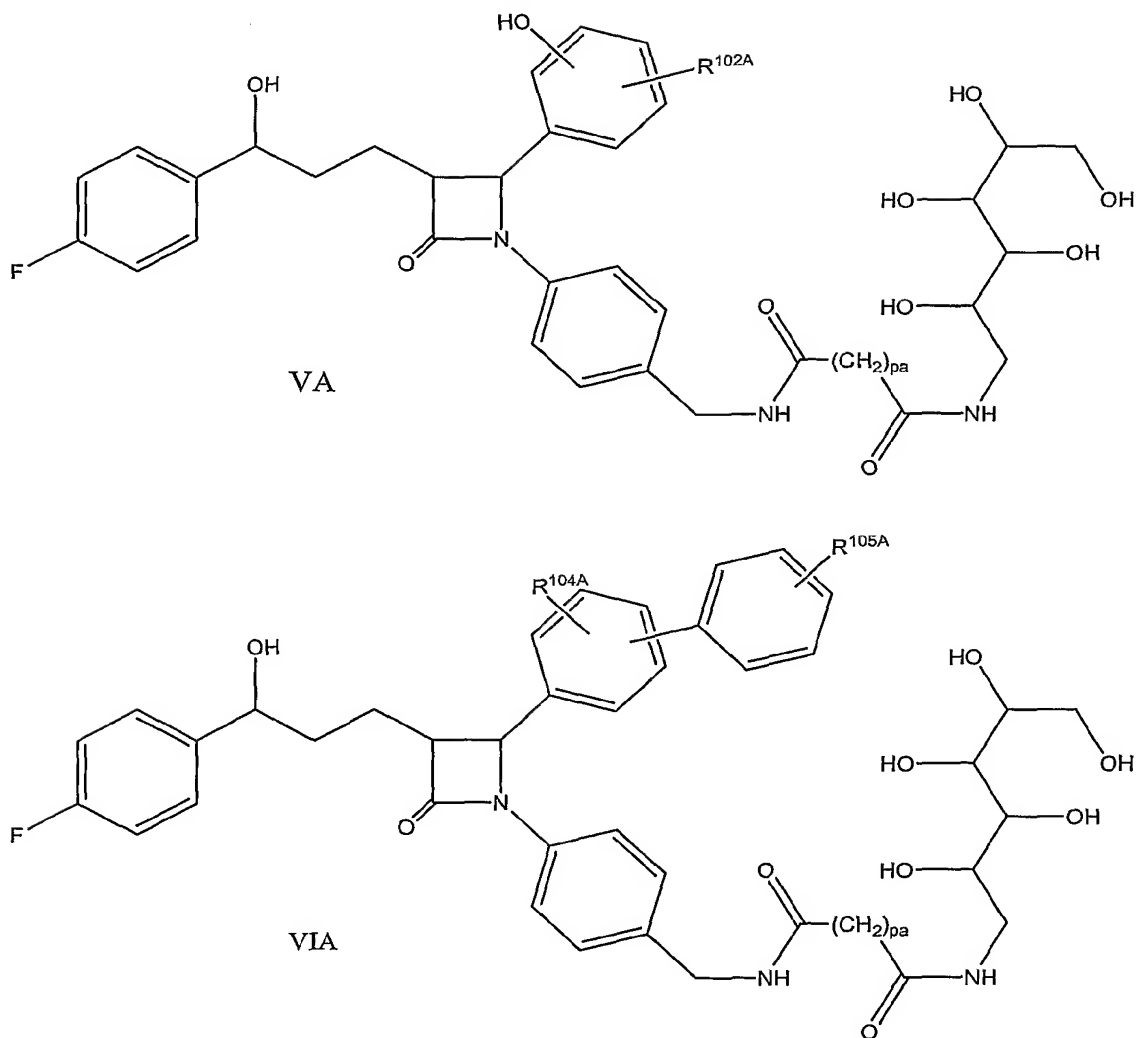


wherein

R^{101A} is chosen from H, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, OCF₂H, OCF₃, CF₂H, CH₂F, -O-loweralkyl, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate; and

pa is 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12.

15. A compound of formula VA or VIA:



wherein

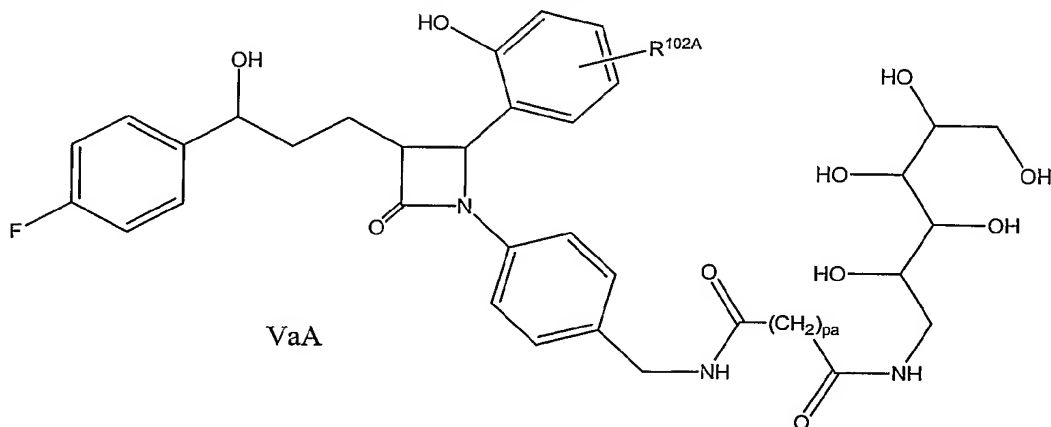
R^{102A} is chosen from H, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, OCF_2H , OCF_3 , CF_2H , CH_2F , -O-loweralkyl, $-PO_3H_2$, $-SO_3H$, $-B(OH)_2$, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate;

R^{104A} represents one, two, three or four residues chosen independently from H, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -O-loweralkyl, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, CF₃, nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate; and

R^{105A} represents one, two, three, four or five residues chosen independently from hydrogen, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -O-loweralkyl, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, CF₃, nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate; and

pa is 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 , 11 or 12..

16. A compound according to claim 15 of formula VaA or VIaA;



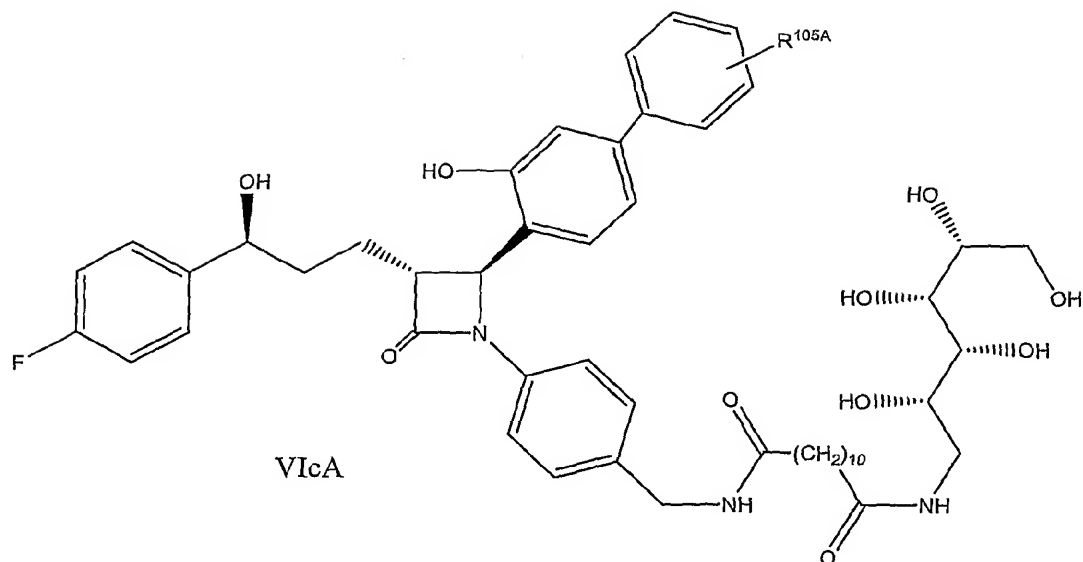
VIaA

17. A compound according to claim 16 of formula VbA or VIbA:

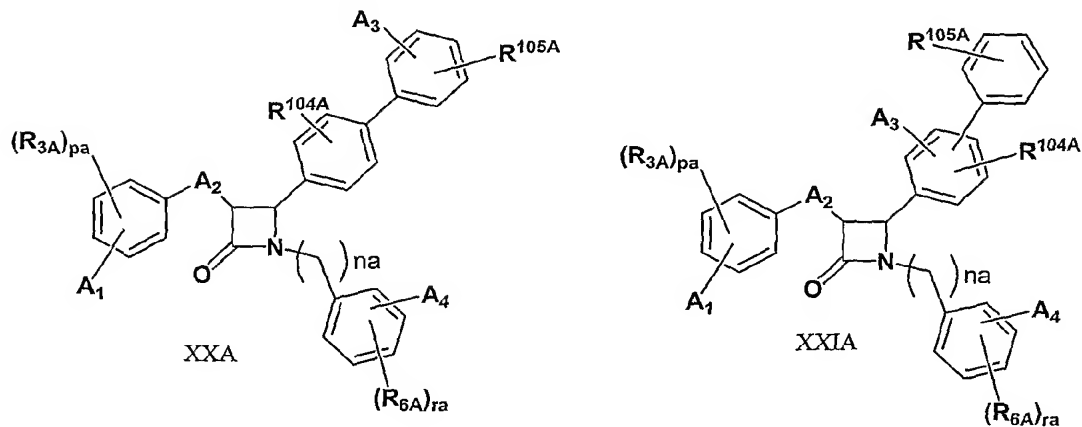
Chemical structure of VbA, a substituted β -lactam. The structure features a central four-membered β -lactam ring. One carbon of the ring is substituted with a 4-fluorophenyl group and a 1-hydroxy-3-(4-fluorophenyl)propyl group. The nitrogen of the ring is substituted with a 4-((2S,3S,4S,5S,6S)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydroxyhexan-2-yl)urea group. The other carbon of the ring is substituted with a 4-hydroxyphenyl group, which is further substituted with an R^{102A} group.

-
- Chemical structure of compound 102a, a C-glycoside derivative. The structure features a central 4-phenyl-2,5-dihydroisoxazole-3-one ring. The 2-position is linked via a wedged bond to a 4-hydroxyphenyl group, which also bears an R^{102A} substituent. The 5-position is linked via a dashed bond to a 1-(4-fluorophenyl)ethan-1-ol group. The 4-position is linked to a phenyl ring, which is further connected to a long chain containing a urea linkage and a polyhydroxyalkyl side chain.

- 343 -



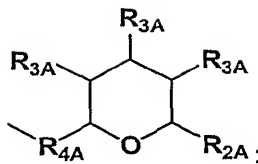
19. A compound of formula XXA or XXIA



wherein

A₁, A₃ and A₄ are chosen independently from hydrogen, halogen, (C₁-C₅)alkyl, (C₁-

- 344 -



C₅)alkoxy, -COOR_{1A}, -OC(CH₃)₂COOR_{1A} and

A₂ is (C₁-C₅)alkyl, (C₁-C₅)alkoxy, (C₂-C₅)alkenyl, hydroxy(C₁-C₅)alkyl or oxo(C₁-C₅)alkyl;

R_{1A} is hydrogen or (C₁-C₅)alkyl;

R_{2A} is chosen from -CH₂OH, -CH₂OC(O)R_{1A}, and -COOR_{1A};

R_{3A} and R_{6A} are chosen independently from -OH and -OC(O)R_{1A};

R_{4A} is -(CH₂)_{ka}R_{5A}(CH₂)_{sa};

R_{5A} is a direct bond, -CH=CH-, -OCH₂-, -C(=O)-, or -CH(OH)-;

R^{104A} is chosen from H, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -O-loweralkyl, -SH, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate;

R^{105A} represents one, two, three, four or five residues chosen independently from

halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -O-loweralkyl, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy,

hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, CF₃, nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino,

dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl,

arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxy, carbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide,

acylamino, amidino, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a

sugar carbamate;

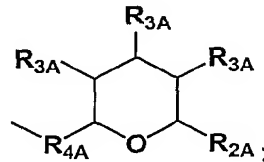
ka is zero, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10;

na is zero, one or two;

pa is zero, one or two;

ra is zero, one or two;

sa is zero, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10, with the proviso that the sum of ka and sa is 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10; and

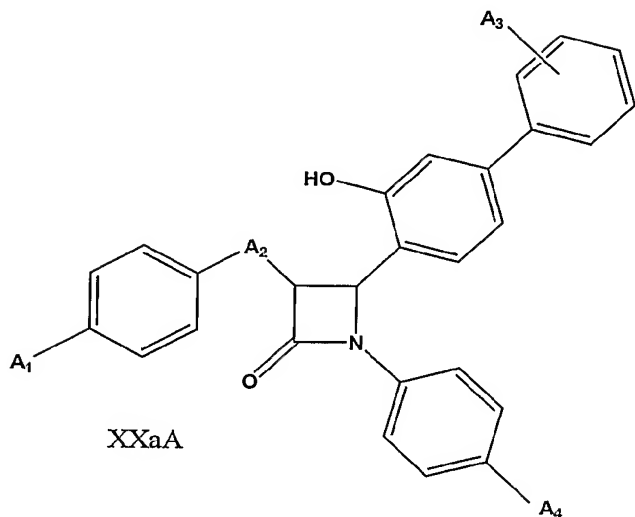


with the proviso that at least one of A₁, A₃ and A₄ must be

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, in any stereoisomeric form, or a mixture of

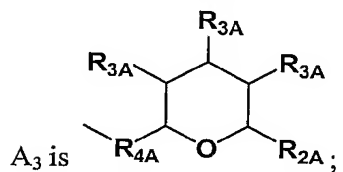
any such compounds in any ratio.

20. A compound of formula XXaA:



wherein

A₁, and A₄ are chosen independently from hydrogen, fluorine, methyl and methoxy;



R_{2A} is chosen from -CH₂OH, -CH₂OC(O)R_{1A}, and -COOR_{1A};

R_{3A} is independently at each occurrence -OH or -OC(O)R_{1A};

R_{1A} is hydrogen or (C₁-C₅)alkyl;

R_{4A} is -(CH₂)_{ka}R_{5A}(CH₂)_{sa};

R_{5A} is a direct bond, -CH=CH-, -OCH₂-, -C(=O)-, or -CH(OH)-;

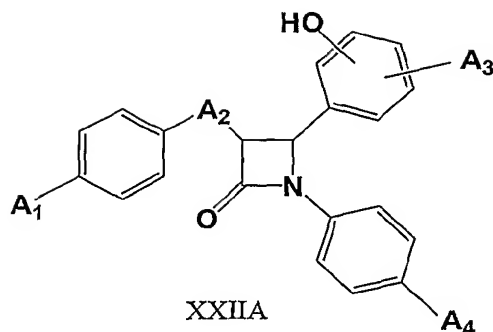
ka is zero, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10;

sa is zero, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10, with the proviso that the sum of ka and sa is 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10; and

A₂ is chosen from -CH₂CH₂CH₂-; -CH₂CH₂C(=O)- and -CH₂CH₂CH(OH)-.

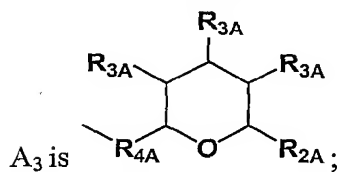
21. A compound of formula XXIIA:

- 346 -



wherein

A₁, and A₄ are chosen independently from hydrogen, fluorine, methyl and methoxy;



R_{2A} is chosen from -CH₂OH, -CH₂OC(O)R_{1A}, and -COOR_{1A};

R_{3A} is independently at each occurrence -OH or -OC(O)R_{1A};

R_{1A} is hydrogen or (C₁-C₅)alkyl;

R_{4A} is -(CH₂)_{ka}R_{5A}(CH₂)_{sa};

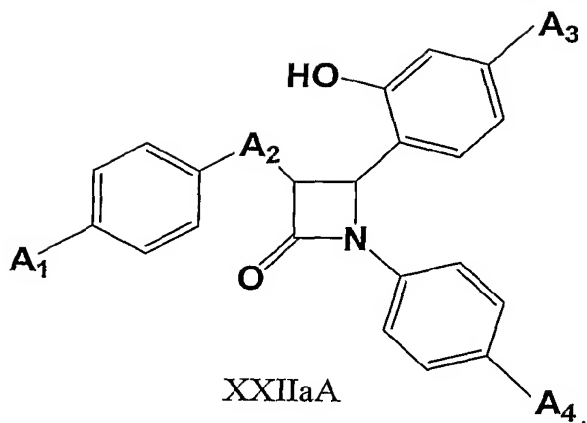
R_{5A} is a direct bond, -CH=CH-, -OCH₂-, -C(=O)-, or -CH(OH)-;

ka is zero, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10;

sa is zero, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10, with the proviso that the sum of ka and sa is 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10; and

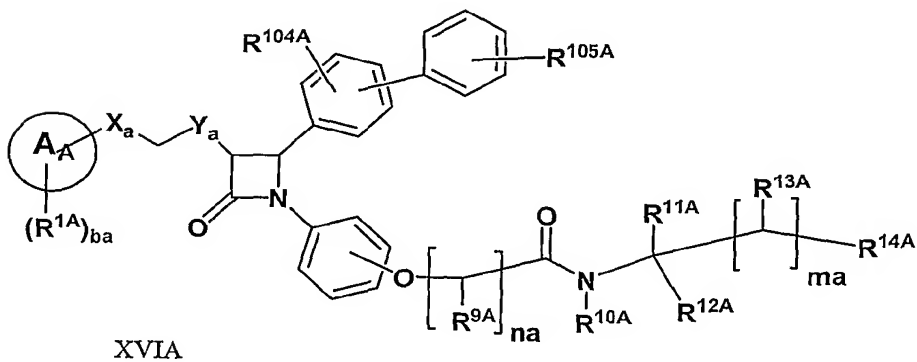
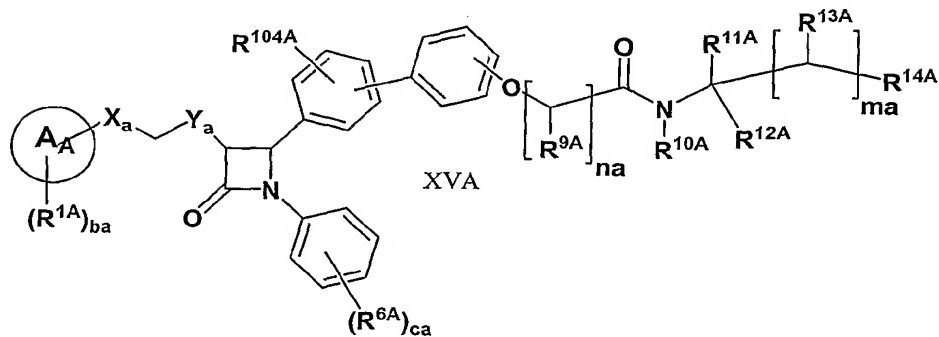
A₂ is chosen from -CH₂CH₂CH₂-; -CH₂CH₂C(=O)- and -CH₂CH₂CH(OH)-.

22. A compound according to claim 21 of formula XXIIaA



23. A compound according to any of claims 20, 21 or 22 wherein
 R_{2A} is $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$;
 R_{3A} is $-\text{OH}$; and
 R_{4A} is $-(\text{CH}_2)-$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$, or $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$.

24. A compound of formula XVA or XVIA:



wherein:

Ring A_A is selected from phenyl or thienyl;

X_a is selected from -CR^{2A}R^{3A}-, -O-, -NR^{WA}- and -S(O)_{aa}-; wherein R^{WA} is hydrogen or C₁₋₆alkyl, and aa is 0-2;

Y_a is selected from -CR^{4A}R^{5A}-, -O-, -NR^{za}- and -S(O)_{aa}-; wherein R^{ZA} is hydrogen or C₁₋₆alkyl, and aa is 0-2; wherein there is at least one -CR^{2A}R^{3A}- or -CR^{4A}R^{5A}- group ;

R^{1A} is independently selected from halo, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkoxy and C₁₋₆alkylS(O)_{aa} wherein aa is 0 to 2; wherein R^{1A} is independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more halo, C₁₋₆alkoxy and hydroxy;

ba is 0-3; wherein the values of R^{1A} may be the same or different;

R^{2A} and **R^{3A}** are independently selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkoxy and C₁₋₆alkanoyloxy; wherein R^{2A} and R^{3A} may be independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more halo or hydroxy; or R^{2A} and R^{3A} together form an oxo group;

R^{4A} and **R^{5A}** are independently selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkoxy and C₁₋₆alkanoyloxy; or R^{4A} and R^{5A} together form an oxo group;

R^{6A} is independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carboxy, formyl, carbamoyl, carbamoyloxy, mercapto, sulphamoyl, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₂₋₆alkenyl, C₂₋₆alkenyloxy, C₂₋₆alkynyl, C₁₋₆alkoxy, C₁₋₆alkanoyl, C₁₋₆alkanoyloxy, N-(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, N,N-(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂amino, C₁₋₆alkanoylamino, C₁₋₆alkanoyl-N-(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, C₁₋₆alkylsulphonylamino, C₁₋₆alkylsulphonyl-N-(C₁₋₆alkyl) amino, N-(C₁₋₆alkyl)carbamoyl, N,N-(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂carbamoyl, N-(C₁₋₆alkyl)carbamoyloxy, N,N-(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂carbamoyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylS(O)_{aa} wherein aa is 0 to 2, C₁₋₆alkoxycarbonyl, C₁₋₆alkoxycarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkoxycarbonyl-N-(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, C₁₋₆alkoxycarbonyloxy, C₁₋₆alkoxycarbonylamino, ureido, N'-(C₁₋₆)ureido, N-(C₁₋₆alkyl)ureido, N,N'-C₁₋₆alkyl)₂ureido, N'-(C₁₋₆alkyl)-N-(C₁₋₆alkyl)ureido, N',N'-(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂-N-(C₁₋₆alkyl)ureido, N-(C₁₋₆alkyl)sulphamoyl, N,N-(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂sulphamoyl and phenyl; wherein R^{6A} is independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more halo, C₁₋₆alkoxy, hydroxy, amino, carboxy,

C₁₋₆alkoxycarbonyl, carbamoyl, N-(C₁₋₆alkoxy)carbamoyl, N,N-(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂carbamoyl, C₁₋₆alkanoylamino, C₁₋₆alkanoyl-N-(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, phenyl, phenoxy, benzoyl, phenylC₁₋₆alkyl and phenylC₁₋₆alkoxy;

ca is 0-5; wherein the values of R^{6A} may be the same or different;

R^{9A} is hydrogen, C₁₋₄alkyl, carbocyclyl or heterocyclyl; wherein R^{9A} may be optionally substituted on carbon by one or more substituents selected from R^{23A}; and wherein if said heterocyclyl contains an -NH- group, that nitrogen may be optionally substituted by a group selected from R^{24A};

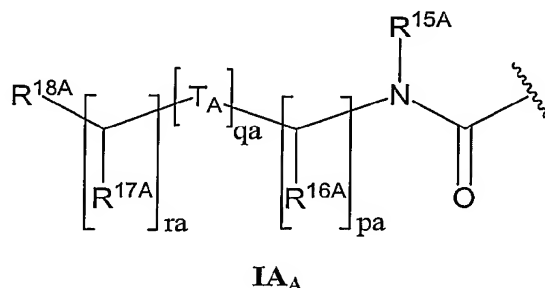
R^{10A} is hydrogen or C₁₋₄alkyl;

R^{11A} and **R^{12A}** are independently selected from hydrogen, C₁₋₄alkyl, carbocyclyl or heterocyclyl; or R^{11A} and R^{12A} together form C₂₋₆alkylene; wherein R^{11A}, R^{12A} and the combination of R^{11A} and R^{12A} taken together may be independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more substituents selected from R^{25A}; and wherein if said heterocyclyl contains an -NH- moiety, that nitrogen may be optionally substituted by one or more R^{26A};

R^{13A} is hydrogen, C₁₋₄alkyl, carbocyclyl or heterocyclyl; wherein R^{13A} may be optionally substituted on carbon by one or more substituents selected from R^{27A}; and wherein if said heterocyclyl contains an -NH- moiety, that nitrogen may be optionally substituted by one or more R^{28A};

R^{14A} is hydrogen, halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxyl, amino, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, hydroxyaminocarbonyl, C₁₋₁₀alkyl, C₂₋₁₀alkenyl, C₂₋₁₀alkynyl, C₁₋₁₀alkoxy, C₁₋₁₀alkoxycarbonyl, C₁₋₁₀alkanoyl, C₁₋₁₀alkanoyloxy, N-(C₁₋₁₀alkyl)amino, N,N-(C₁₋₁₀alkyl)₂amino, N,N,N-(C₁₋₁₀alkyl)₃ammonio, C₁₋₁₀alkanoylamino, N-(C₁₋₁₀alkyl)carbamoyl, N,N-(C₁₋₁₀alkyl)₂carbamoyl, C₁₋₁₀alkylS(O)_{aa} wherein aa is 0 to 2, N-(C₁₋₁₀alkyl)sulphamoyl, N,N-(C₁₋₁₀alkyl)₂sulphamoyl, N-(C₁₋₁₀alkyl)sulphamoylamino, N,N-(C₁₋₁₀alkyl)₂sulphamoylamino, C₁₋₁₀alkoxycarbonylamino, carbocyclyl, carbocyclylC₁₋₁₀alkyl, heterocyclyl, heterocyclylC₁₋₁₀alkyl, carbocyclyl-(C₁₋₁₀alkylene)_{ea}-R^{29A}-(C₁₋₁₀alkylene)_{fa}, heterocyclyl-(C₁₋₁₀alkylene)_{ga}-R^{30A}-(C₁₋₁₀alkyl)_{ha}, carboxy, sulpho, sulphino, phosphono, -P(O)(OR^{31A})(OR^{32A}), -P(O)(OH)(OR^{31A}), -P(O)(OH)(R^{31A}), or P(O)(OR^{31A})(R^{32A}),

wherein R^{31A} and R^{32A} are independently selected from C_{1-6} alkyl; wherein R^{14A} may be optionally substituted on carbon by one or more substituents selected from R^{33A} ; and wherein if said heterocyclyl contains an -NH- group, that nitrogen may be optionally substituted by a group selected from R^{34A} ; or R^{14A} is a group of formula (IA_A):



wherein:

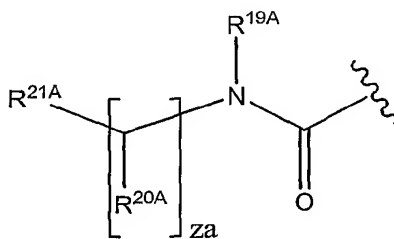
T_A is $-N(R^{35A})-$, $-N(R^{35A})C(O)-$, $-O-$, and $-S(O)_{aa}-$; wherein aa is 0-2 and R^{35A} is hydrogen or C_{1-4} alkyl ;

R^{15A} is hydrogen or C_{1-4} alkyl ;

R^{16A} and R^{17A} are independently selected from hydrogen, halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, C_{2-6} alkynyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyloxy, $N-(C_{1-6}alkyl)amino$, $N,N-(C_{1-6}alkyl)_2amino$, $C_{1-6}alkanoylamino$, $N-(C_{1-6}alkyl)carbamoyl$, $N,N-(C_{1-6}alkyl)_2carbamoyl$, $C_{1-6}alkylS(O)_{aa}$ wherein aa is 0 to 2, $C_{1-6}alkoxycarbonyl$, $N-(C_{1-6}alkyl)sulphamoyl$, $N,N-(C_{1-6}alkyl)_2sulphamoyl$, carbocyclyl, heterocyclyl, sulpho, sulphino, amidino, phosphono, $-P(O)(OR^{36A})(OR^{37A})$, $-P(O)(OH)(OR^{36A})$, $-P(O)(OH)(R^{36A})$ or $-P(O)(OR^{36A})(R^{37A})$, wherein R^{36A} and R^{37A} are independently selected from C_{1-6} alkyl; wherein R^{16A} and R^{17A} may be independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more substituents selected from R^{38A} ; and wherein if said heterocyclyl contains an -NH- group, that nitrogen may be optionally substituted by a group selected from R^{39A} ;

R^{18A} is selected from hydrogen, halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, hydroxyaminocarbonyl, C_{1-10} alkyl, C_{2-10} alkenyl, C_{2-10} alkynyl, C_{1-10} alkoxy, C_{1-10} alkanoyl, C_{1-10} alkanoyloxy, $N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)amino$, $N,N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)_2amino$, $C_{1-10}alkanoylamino$, $N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)carbamoyl$, $C_{1-10}alkoxycarbonyl$, $N,N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)_2carbamoyl$, $C_{1-10}alkylS(O)_{aa}$ wherein aa is 0 to 2, $C_{1-10}alkoxycarbonyl$, $N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)sulphamoyl$, $N,N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)_2sulphamoyl$, carbocyclyl, heterocyclyl, sulpho, sulphino, amidino, phosphono, $-P(O)(OR^{36A})(OR^{37A})$, $-P(O)(OH)(OR^{36A})$, $-P(O)(OH)(R^{36A})$ or $-P(O)(OR^{36A})(R^{37A})$, wherein R^{36A} and R^{37A} are independently selected from C_{1-6} alkyl; wherein R^{16A} and R^{17A} may be independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more substituents selected from R^{38A} ; and wherein if said heterocyclyl contains an -NH- group, that nitrogen may be optionally substituted by a group selected from R^{39A} ;

$_{10}\text{alkyl})_2\text{carbamoyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-10}\text{alkylS(O)}_{aa}$ wherein aa is 0 to 2, $\text{N-(C}_{1-10}\text{alkyl)sulphamoyl}$, $\text{N,N-(C}_{1-10}\text{alkyl)}_2\text{sulphamoyl}$, $\text{N-(C}_{1-10}\text{alkyl)sulphamoylamino}$, $\text{N,N-(C}_{1-10}\text{alkyl)}_2\text{sulphamoylamino}$, carbocyclyl, carbocyclyl $\text{C}_{1-10}\text{alkyl}$, heterocyclyl, heterocyclyl $\text{C}_{1-10}\text{alkyl}$, carbocyclyl- $(\text{C}_{1-10}\text{alkylene})_{ea}\text{-R}^{40A}\text{-(C}_{1-10}\text{alkylene})_{fa}$ or heterocyclyl- $(\text{C}_{1-10}\text{alkylene})_{ga}\text{-R}^{41A}\text{-(C}_{1-10}\text{alkylene})_{ha}$, carboxy, sulphy, sulphino, phosphono, $-\text{P(O)(OR}^{42A})(\text{OR}^{43A})$, $-\text{P(O)(OH)(OR}^{42A})$, $-\text{P(O)(OH)(R}^{42A})$ or $-\text{P(O)(OR}^{42A})(\text{R}^{43A})$ wherein R^{42A} and R^{43A} are independently selected from $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$; wherein R^{18A} may be optionally substituted on carbon by one or more substituents selected from R^{44A} ; and wherein if said heterocyclyl contains an $-\text{NH}-$ group, that nitrogen may be optionally substituted by a group selected from R^{45A} ; or R^{18A} is a group of formula **(IB_A)**:

**IB_A**

wherein:

R^{19A} is selected from hydrogen or $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{alkyl}$;

R^{20A} is selected from hydrogen, halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkenyl}$, $\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkynyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkoxy}$, $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkanoyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkanoyloxy}$, $\text{N-(C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl)amino}$, $\text{N,N-(C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl)}_2\text{amino}$, $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkanoylamino}$, $\text{N-(C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl)carbamoyl}$, $\text{N,N-(C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl)}_2\text{carbamoyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkylS(O)}_{aa}$ wherein aa is 0 to 2, $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkoxycarbonyl}$, $\text{N-(C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl)sulphamoyl}$, $\text{N,N-(C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl)}_2\text{sulphamoyl}$, carbocyclyl, heterocyclyl, sulphy, sulphino, amidino, phosphono, $-\text{P(O)(OR}^{46A})(\text{OR}^{47A})$, $-\text{P(O)(OH)(OR}^{46A})$, $-\text{P(O)(OH)(R}^{46A})$ or $-\text{P(O)(OR}^{46A})(\text{R}^{47A})$, wherein R^{46A} and R^{47A} are independently selected from $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$; where R^{20A} may be independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more substituents selected from R^{48A} ; and wherein if said heterocyclyl contains an $-\text{NH}-$ group, that nitrogen may be optionally substituted by a group selected from R^{49A} ;

R^{21A} is selected from halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, hydroxyaminocarbonyl, C_{1-10} alkyl, C_{2-10} alkenyl, C_{2-10} alkynyl, C_{1-10} alkoxy, C_{1-10} alkoxycarbonyl, C_{1-10} alkanoyl, C_{1-10} alkanoyloxy, $N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)amino$, $N,N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)_2amino$, $N,N,N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)_3ammonio$, $C_{1-10}alkanoylamino$, $N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)carbamoyl$, $N,N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)_2carbamoyl$, $C_{1-10}alkylS(O)_{aa}$ wherein aa is 0 to 2, $N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)sulphamoyl$, $N,N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)_2sulphamoyl$, $N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)sulphamoylamino$, $N,N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)_2sulphamoylamino$, $C_{1-10}alkoxycarbonylamino$, carbocyclyl, carbocyclyl $C_{1-10}alkyl$, heterocyclyl, heterocyclyl $(C_{1-10}alkyl)$, carbocyclyl $-(C_{1-10}alkene)_{ea}-R^{50A}-(C_{1-10}alkylene)_{fa}$, heterocyclyl $(C_{1-10}alkylene)_{ga}-R^{51A}-(C_{1-10}alkene)_{ha-}$, carboxy, sulphy, sulphino, phosphono, $-P(O)(OR^{52A})(OR^{53A})$, $-P(O)(OH)(OR^{52A})$, $-P(O)(OH)(R^{52A})$ or $-P(O)(OR^{53A})(R^{53A})$ wherein R^{52A} and R^{53A} are independently selected from $C_{1-6}alkyl$; wherein R^{21A} may be independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more R^{54A} ; and wherein if said heterocyclyl contains an -NH- group, that nitrogen may be optionally substituted by a group selected from R^{55A} ;

pa is 1-3; wherein the values of R^{16A} may be the same or different;

qa is 0-1;

ra is 0-3; wherein the values of R^{17A} may be the same or different;

ma is 0-2; wherein the values of R^{13A} may be the same or different;

na is 1-2; wherein the values of R^{9A} may be the same or different;

za is 0-3; wherein the values of R^{20A} may be the same or different;

R^{23A} , R^{25A} , R^{27A} , R^{33A} , R^{38A} , R^{44A} , R^{48A} and R^{54A} are independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, amino, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, hydroxyaminocarbonyl, $C_{1-10}alkyl$, $C_{2-10}alkenyl$, $C_{2-10}alkynyl$, $C_{1-10}alkoxy$, $C_{1-10}alkanoyl$, $C_{1-10}alkanoyloxy$, $C_{1-10}alkoxycarbonyl$, $N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)amino$, $N,N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)_2amino$, $N,N,N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)_3ammonio$, $C_{1-10}alkanoylamino$, $N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)carbamoyl$, $N,N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)_2carbamoyl$, $C_{1-10}alkylS(O)_{aa}$ wherein aa is 0 to 2, $N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)sulphamoyl$, $N,N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)_2sulphamoyl$, $N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)sulphamoylamino$, $N,N-(C_{1-10}alkyl)_2sulphamoylamino$, $C_{1-10}alkoxycarbonylamino$, carbocyclyl, carbocyclyl $C_{1-10}alkyl$, heterocyclyl, heterocyclyl $C_{1-10}alkyl$, carbocyclyl $-(C_{1-10}alkylene)_{ea}-R^{56A}-(C_{1-10}alkylene)_{fa-}$, heterocyclyl $-(C_{1-10}alkylene)_{ga}-R^{57A}-(C_{1-10}alkylene)_{ha-}$, carboxy, sulphy,

sulphino, amidino, phosphono, $-P(O)(OR^{58A})(OR^{59A})$, $-P(O)(OH)(OR^{58A})$, $-P(O)(OH)(R^{58A})$ or $-P(O)(OR^{59A})(R^{59A})$, wherein R^{58A} and R^{59A} are independently selected from C_{1-6} alkyl; wherein R^{23A} , R^{25A} , R^{27A} , R^{33A} , R^{38A} , R^{44A} , R^{48A} and R^{54A} may be independently optionally substituted on carbon by one or more R^{60A} ; and wherein if said heterocyclyl contains an $-NH-$ group, that nitrogen may be optionally substituted by a group selected from R^{61A} ;

R^{24A} , R^{26A} , R^{28A} , R^{34A} , R^{39A} , R^{45A} , R^{49A} , R^{55A} and R^{61A} are independently selected from C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, C_{1-6} alkylsulphonyl, sulphamoyl, $N-(C_{1-6}$ alkyl)sulphamoyl, $N,N-(C_{1-6}$ alkyl)₂sulphamoyl, C_{1-6} alkoxycarbonyl, carbamoyl, $N-(C_{1-6}$ alkyl)carbamoyl, $N,N-(C_{1-6}$ alkyl)₂carbamoyl, benzyl, phenethyl, benzoyl, phenylsulphonyl and phenyl;

R^{29A} , R^{30A} , R^{40A} , R^{41A} , R^{50A} , R^{51A} , R^{56A} and R^{57A} are independently selected from $-O-$, $-NR^{62A}-$, $-S(O)_{xa}-$, $-NR^{62A}C(O)NR^{63A}-$, $-NR^{62A}C(S)NR^{63A}-$, $-OC(O)N=C-$, $-NR^{62A}C(O)-$ or $-C(O)NR^{62A}-$; wherein R^{62A} and R^{63A} are independently selected from hydrogen or C_{1-6} alkyl, and xa is 0-2;

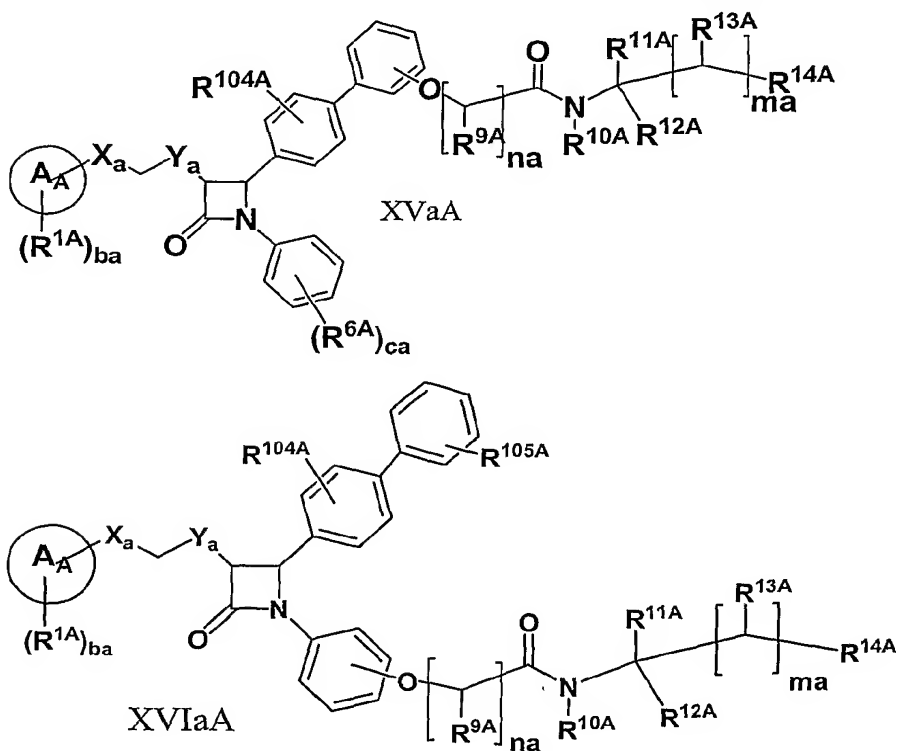
R^{60A} is selected from halo, hydroxy, cyano, carbamoyl, ureido, amino, nitro, carboxy, carbamoyl, mercapto, sulphamoyl, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy, methyl, ethyl, methoxy, ethoxy, vinyl, allyl, ethynyl, methoxycarbonyl, formyl, acetyl, formamido, acetylamino, acetoxy, methylamino, dimethylamino, N -methylcarbamoyl, N,N -dimethylcarbamoyl, methylthio, methylsulphanyl, mesyl, N -methylsulphamoyl and N,N -dimethylsulphamoyl ;

R^{104A} is chosen from H, halogen, $-OH$, loweralkyl, $-O$ -loweralkyl, $-SH$, $-PO_3H_2$, $-SO_3H$, $-B(OH)_2$, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate;

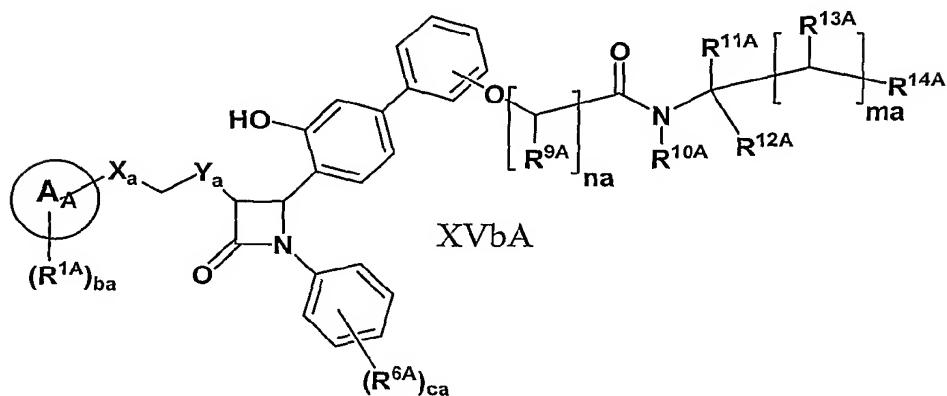
R^{105A} represents one, two, three, four or five residues chosen independently from halogen, $-OH$, loweralkyl, $-O$ -loweralkyl, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, $-CN$, CF_3 , nitro, $-SH$, $-S$ -loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, $-PO_3H_2$, $-SO_3H$, $-B(OH)_2$, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate; and

ea, **fa**, **ga** and **ha** are independently selected from 0-2;
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, solvate of such a salt or a prodrug thereof.

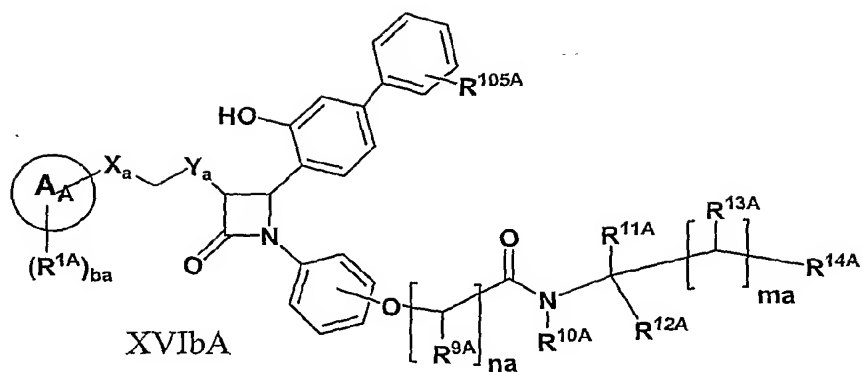
25. A compound according to claim 24 of formula XVaA or XVIaA:



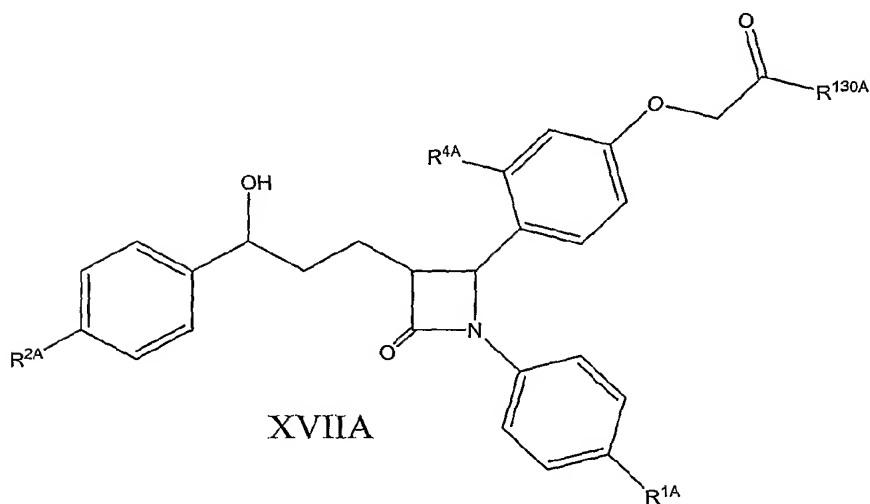
26. A compound according to claim 25 of formula XVbA or XVIbA:



- 355 -



27. A compound of formula XVIIA



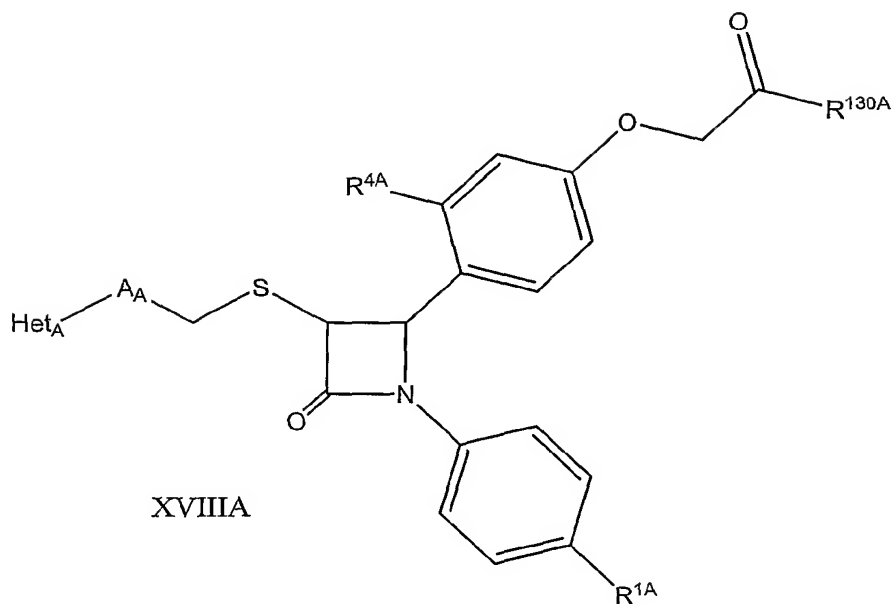
wherein

R^{1A} and R^{2A} are chosen independently from H, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, OCF_2H , OCF_3 , CF_2H , CH_2F , -O-loweralkyl, $-PO_3H_2$, $-SO_3H$, $-B(OH)_2$, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate;

R^{4A} is chosen from -OH, $-PO_3H_2$, $-SO_3H$, and $-B(OH)_2$;

R^{130A} is a hydroxyalkylamine, an oxaalkylamine, an amino acid or a peptide.

28. A compound of formula XVIIIA:



wherein

R^{1A} is chosen from H, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, OCF_2H , OCF_3 , CF_2H , CH_2F , -O-loweralkyl, $-PO_3H_2$, $-SO_3H$, $-B(OH)_2$, a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate;

R^{4A} is chosen from -OH, $-PO_3H_2$, $-SO_3H$, and $-B(OH)_2$;

R^{130A} is a hydroxyalkylamine, an oxaalkylamine, an amino acid or a peptide;

A_A is chosen from $-CH_2-$, $-CHOH-$ and $-C(=O)-$; and

Het_A is chosen from phenyl, substituted phenyl, thienyl and substituted thienyl.

29. A compound according to claim 27 wherein

R^{1A} is H or F;

R^{2A} is H or F;

R^{4A} is OH; and

R^{130A} is chosen from -Phg-SerOH, -PhgOH, -GlyOH, -Gly-GlyOH, $-NHCH_2CH_2OH$ and $-NHCH_2CH_2OCH_3$.

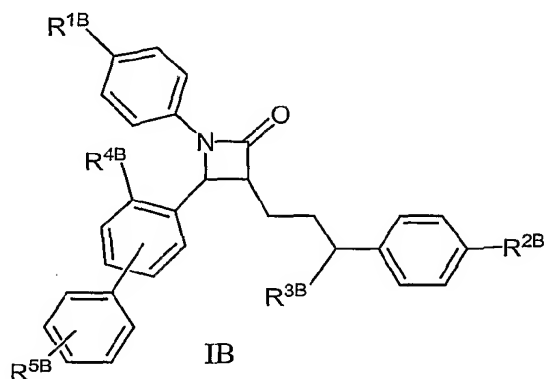
30. A compound according to claim 28 wherein

R^{1A} is H or F;

R^{4A} is OH; and

R^{130A} is chosen from -Phg-SerOH, -PhgOH, -GlyOH, -Gly-GlyOH, -NHCH₂CH₂OH and -NHCH₂CH₂OCH₃.

31. A compound of formula IB



wherein

R^{1B} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -OCF₂H, -OCF₃, -CF₂H, -CH₂F, loweralkoxy, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, -CF₃, nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, phenyl, benzyl, phenoxy, benzyloxy, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, and a residue selected from the group consisting of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide, and a sugar carbamate;

R^{2B} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -OCF₂H, -OCF₃, -CF₂H, -CH₂F, loweralkoxy, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, -CF₃, nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, -PO₃H₂, -SO₃H, -B(OH)₂, and a residue selected from the group consisting of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate;

R^{3B} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, $-OH$, and a glucuronide residue, R^{4B} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, $-OH$, loweralkyl, loweralkoxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, $-CN$, $-CF_3$, nitro, $-SH$, $-S$ -loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, $-PO_3H_2$, $-SO_3H$, $-B(OH)_2$, $-OSO_2-R^{6Ba}$, $-SO_2-R^{6Ba}$, and a residue selected from the group consisting of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide, and a sugar carbamate;

R^{5B} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, $-OH$, loweralkyl, -loweralkoxy, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, $-CN$, $-CF_3$, nitro, $-SH$, $-S$ -loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, $-PO_3H_2$, $-SO_3H$, $-B(OH)_2$, $-OSO_2-R^{6B}$, $-SO_2-R^{6B}$, and a residue selected from the group consisting of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide, and a sugar carbamate; and

R^{6B} and R^{6Ba} are each residues independently selected from the group consisting of a sugar, a glucuronide, a polyol, and a sugar carbamate;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, in any stereoisomeric form, or a mixture of any such compounds in any ratio.

32. A compound according to claim 31, wherein

R^{1B} and R^{2B} are selected independently from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, $-OH$, and lower alkoxy;

R^{4B} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, $-OH$, $-OSO_2-R^{6Ba}$ and $-SO_2-R^{6Ba}$;

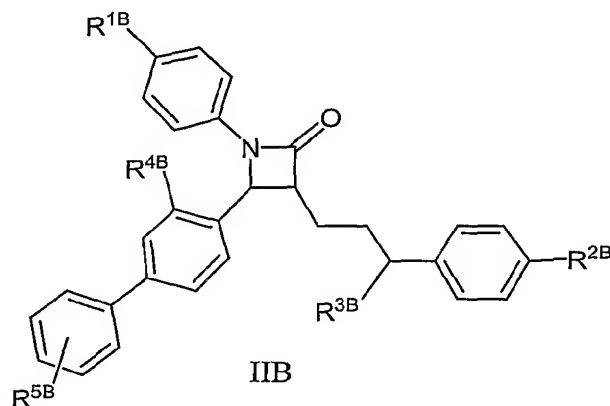
R^{5B} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, $-OH$, $-OSO_2-R^{6B}$ and $-SO_2-R^{6B}$;

and

R^{6B} and R^{6Ba} are each residues independently selected from the group consisting of a sugar, a glucuronide, a polyol, and a sugar carbamate;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, in any stereoisomeric form, or a mixture of any such compounds in any ratio. *

33. A compound according to claims 31 or 32 of formula IIB



34. A compound according to any of claims 31-33, wherein R^{1B} is hydrogen.

35. A compound according to any of claims 31-33, wherein R^{1B} is fluorine.

36. A compound according to any of claims 31-35, wherein R^{2B} is fluorine.

37. A compound according to any of claims 31-36, wherein R^{5B} is hydrogen.

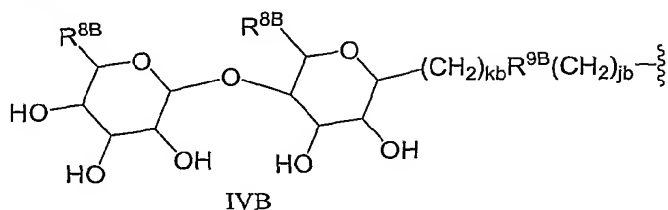
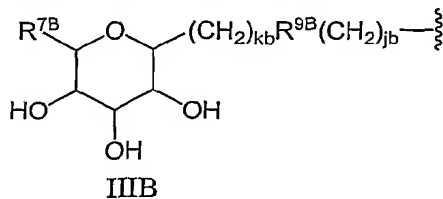
38. A compound according to any of claims 31-36, wherein R^{5B} is -OH.

39. A compound according to claim 38, wherein R^{5B} is in the meta position.

40. A compound according to claim 38, wherein R^{5B} is in the para position.

41. A compound according to any of claims 31-36, wherein R^{5B} is -OSO₂-R^{6B} or -SO₂-R^{6B}.

42. A compound according to claim 41, wherein R^{6B} is a sugar residue selected from the group having formulae IIIB and IVB



in any stereoisomeric form, wherein R^{7B} is selected from the group consisting of $-OH$, lower alkoxy and lower alkylene- $-OH$;

R^{8B} is lower alkylene- $-OH$;

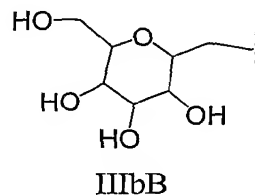
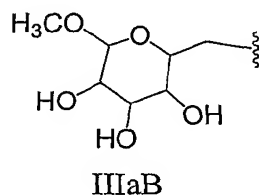
R^{9B} is selected from a direct bond, $-C=C-$, $-OCH_2-$, $-C(=O)-$ and $-CHOH-$;

j_b is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5;

k_b is zero, 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5; and

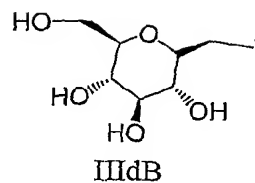
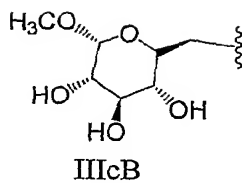
wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment.

43. A compound according to claim 42 wherein the sugar residue R^{6B} has formula IIIaB or IIIbB

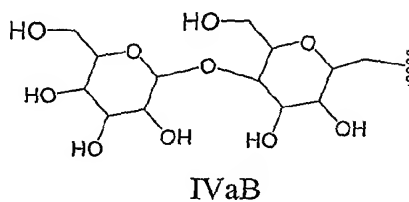


44. A compound according to claim 43, wherein the sugar residue R^{6B} has formula IIIcB or IIIdB

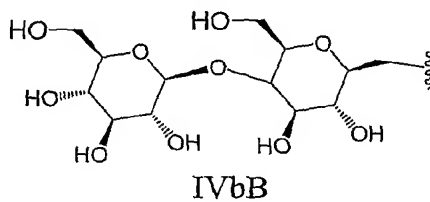
- 361 -



45. A compound according to claim 42, wherein the sugar residue R^{6B} has formula IVaB

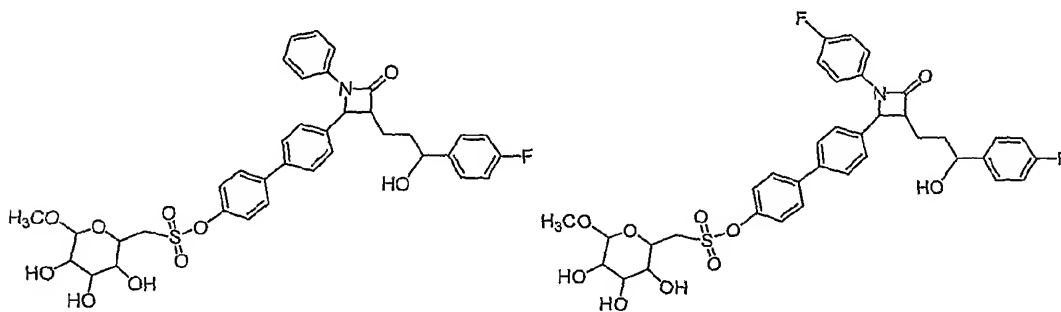


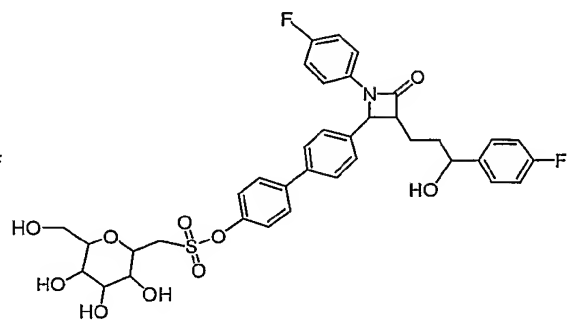
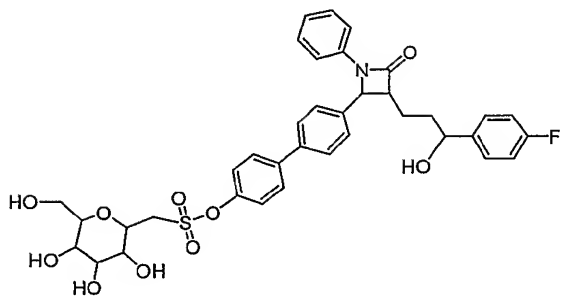
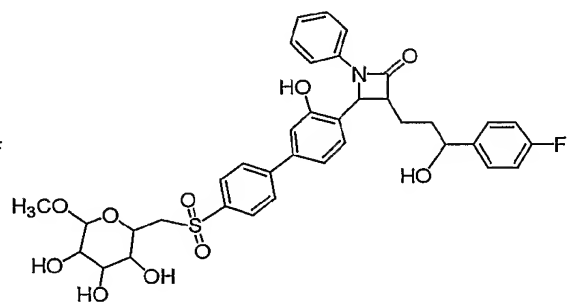
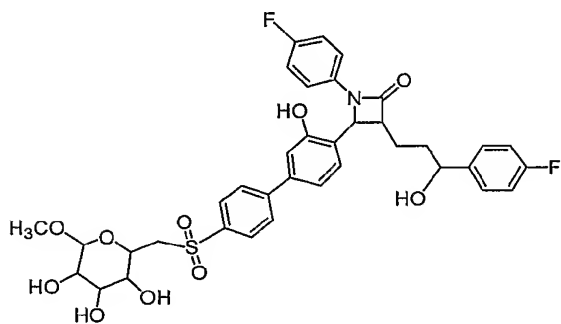
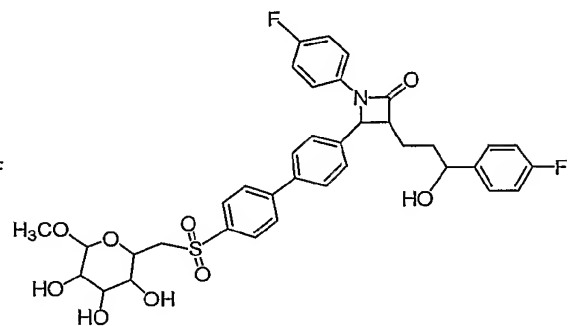
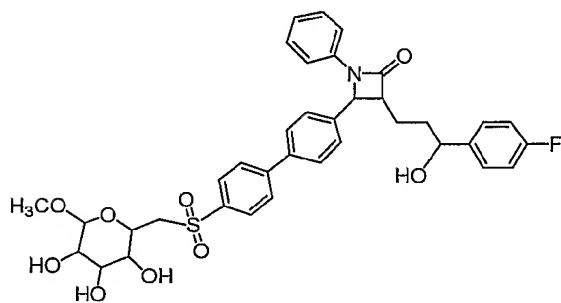
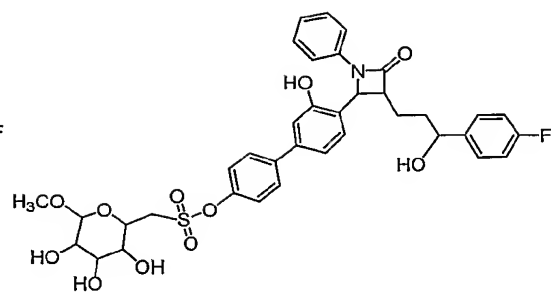
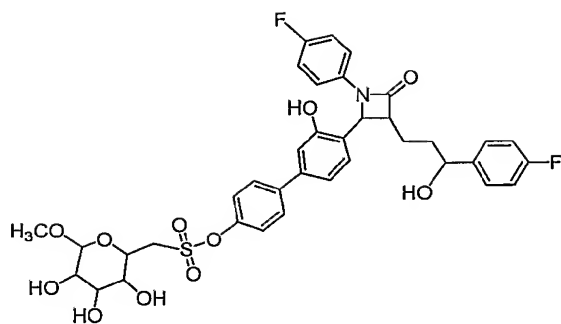
46. A compound according to claim 45, wherein the sugar residue R^{6B} has formula IVbB



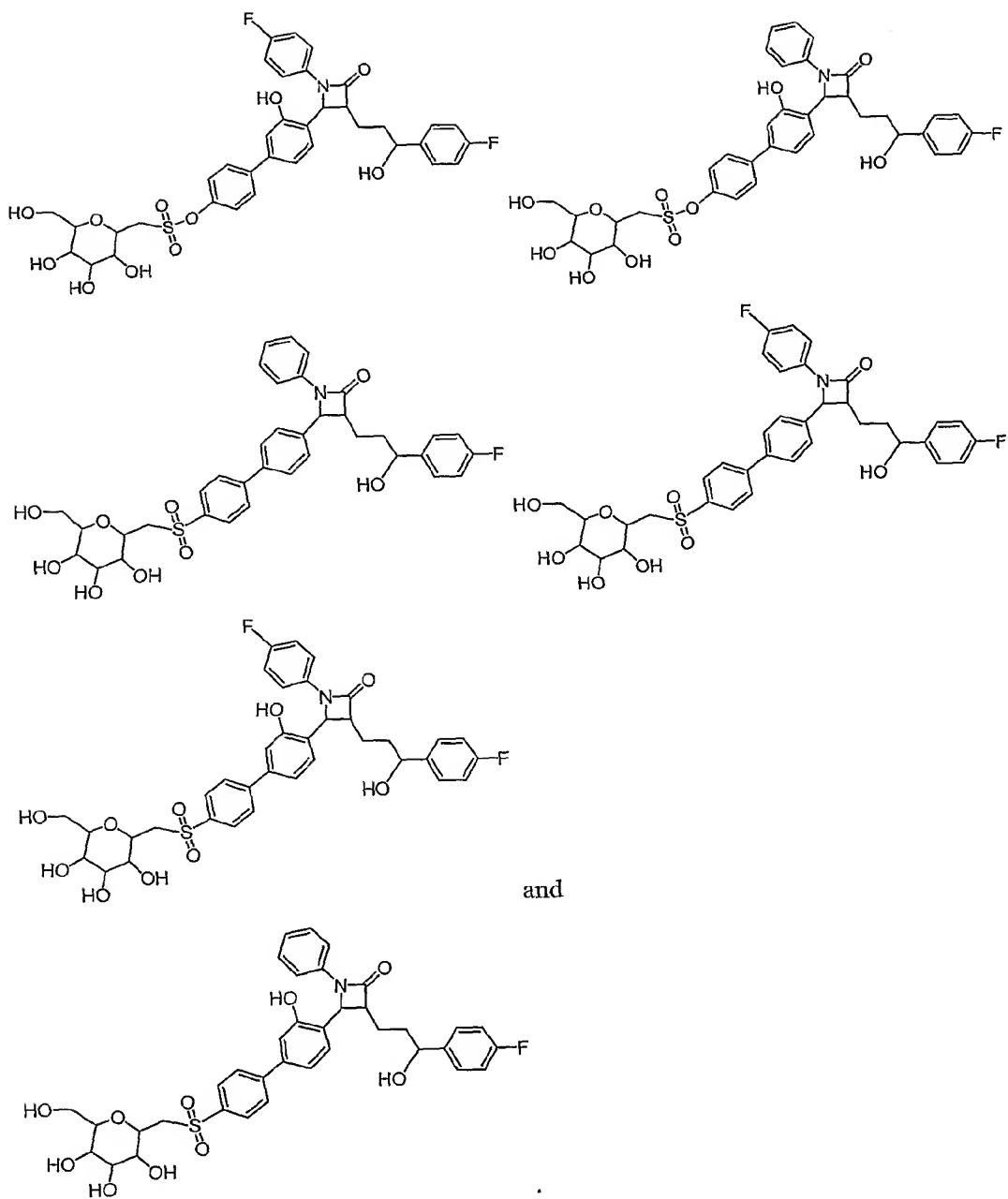
47. A compound according to any of claims 31-36 or 41-46, wherein R^{5B} is in the para position.

48. A compound selected from the group consisting of:

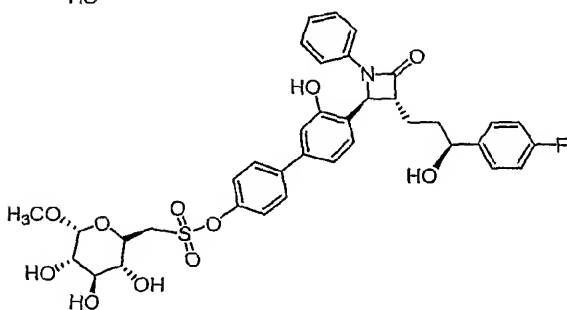
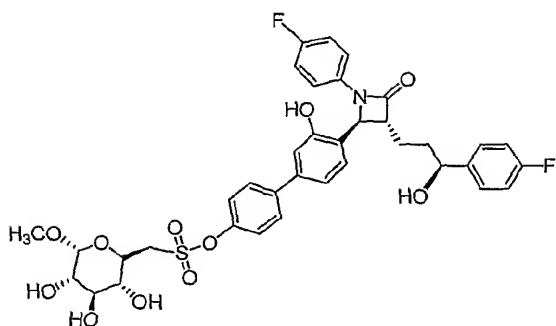
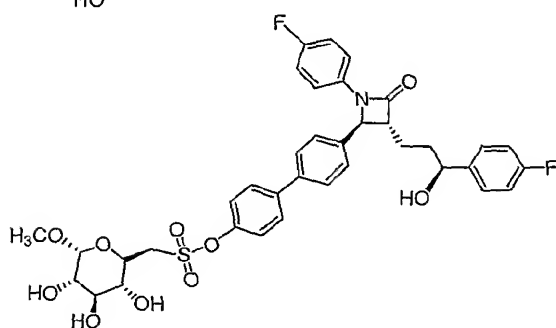
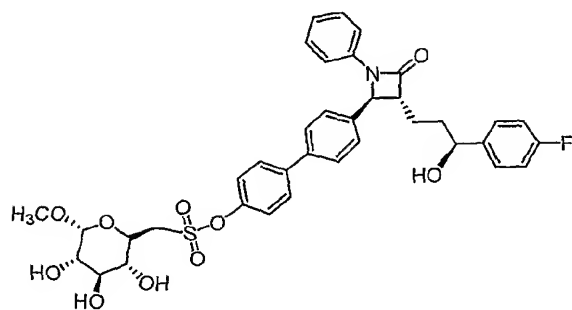




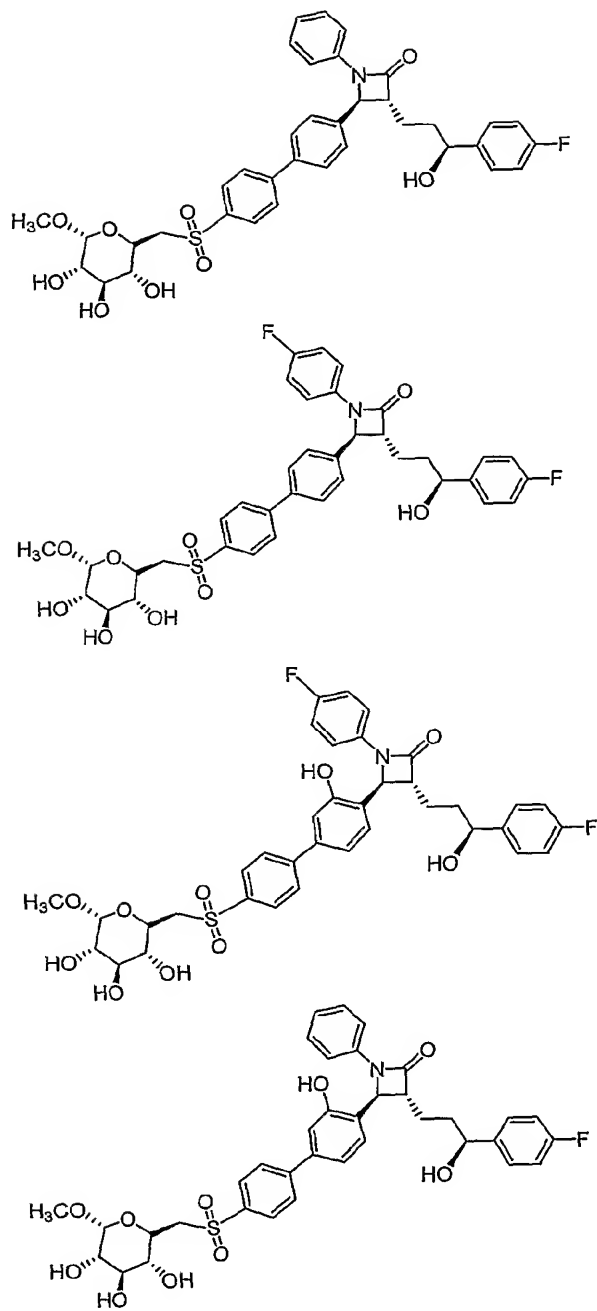
- 363 -

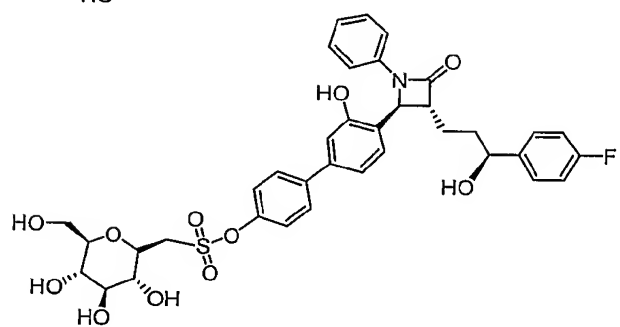
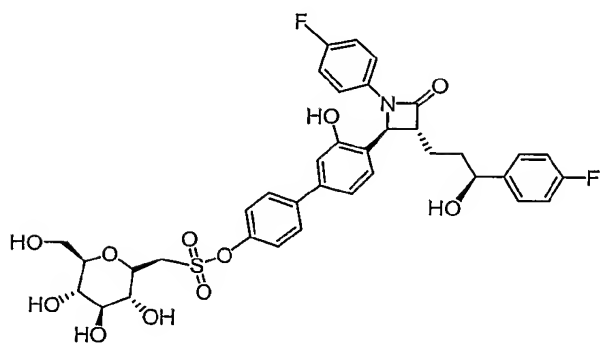
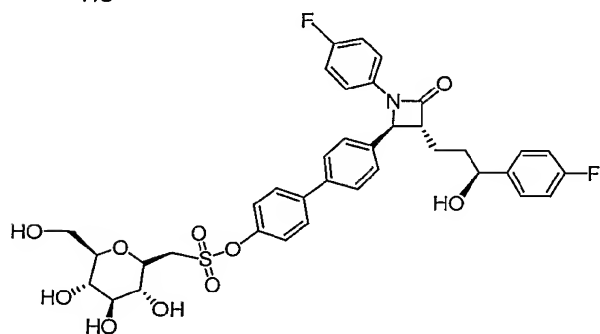
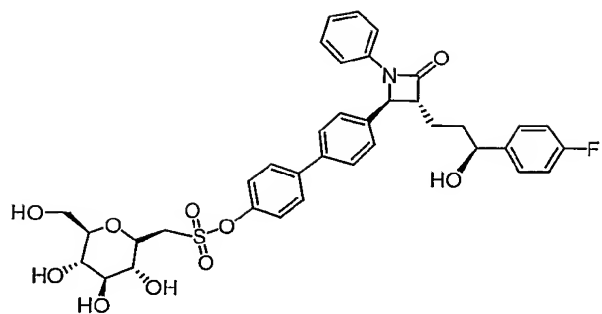


49. A compound selected from the group consisting of:

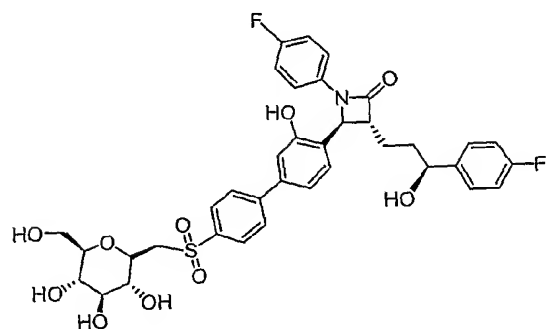
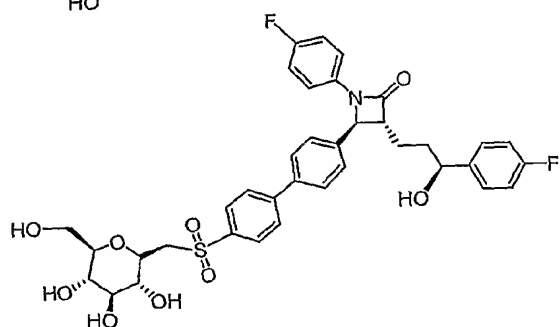
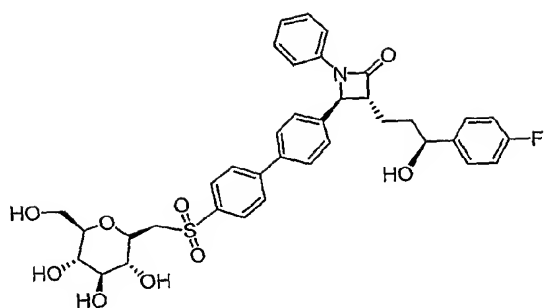


- 365 -

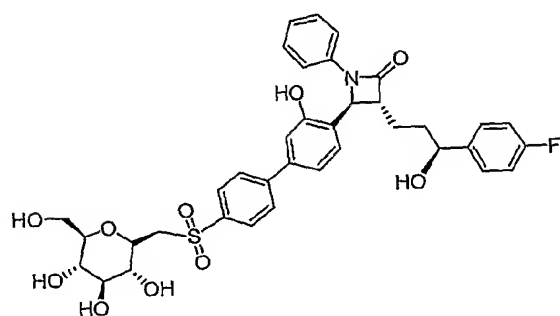




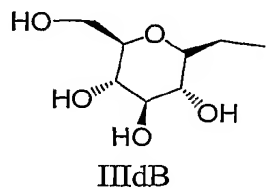
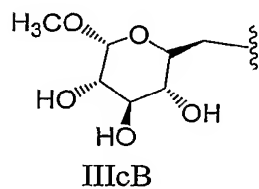
- 367 -



and

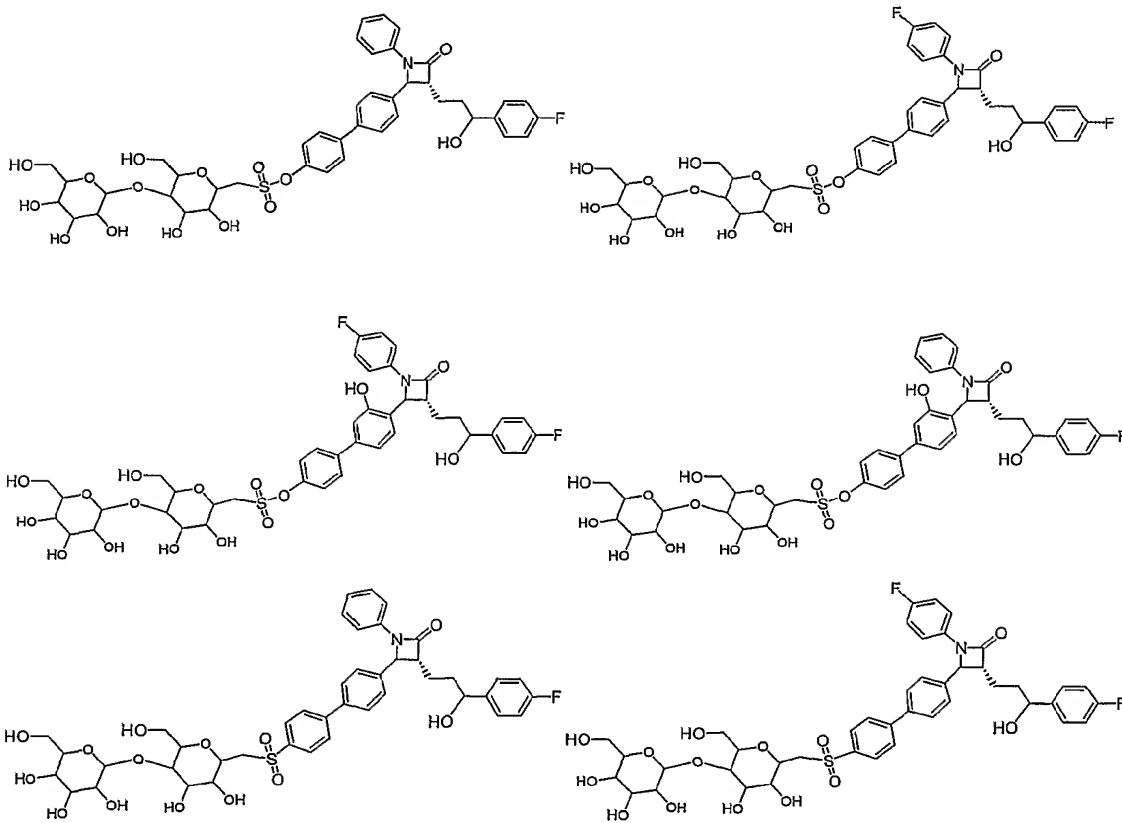


50. A compound according to claim 48, wherein the 3-Position of the azetidinone ring is of the (*R*)-configuration; the 4-Position of the azetidinone ring is of the (*S*)-configuration; and the sugar residue formula IIIcB or IIIdB

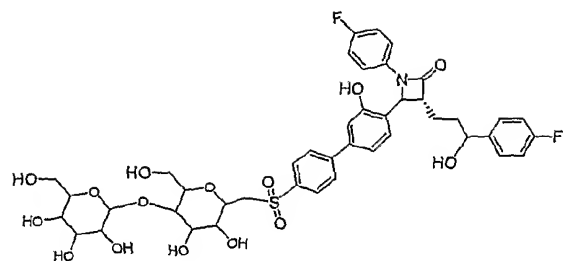


wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment.

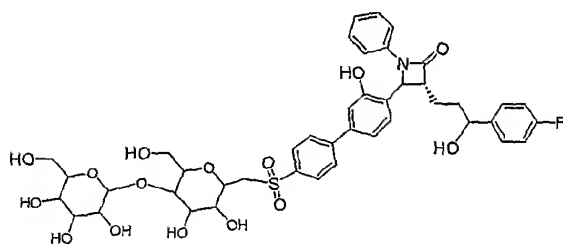
51. A compound selected from the group consisting of:



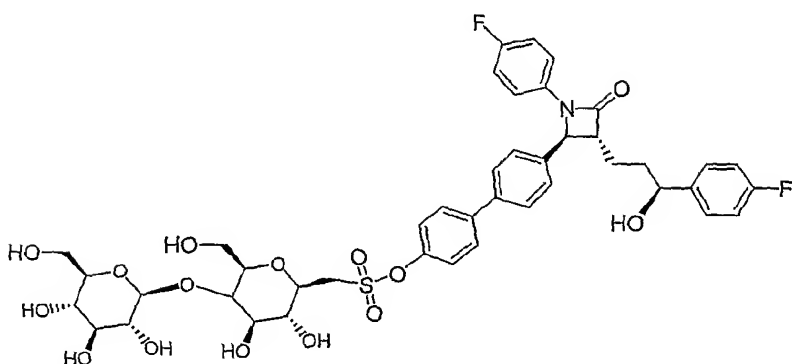
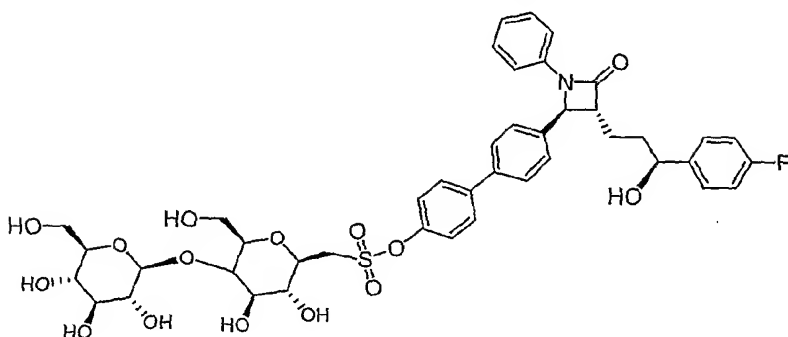
- 369 -



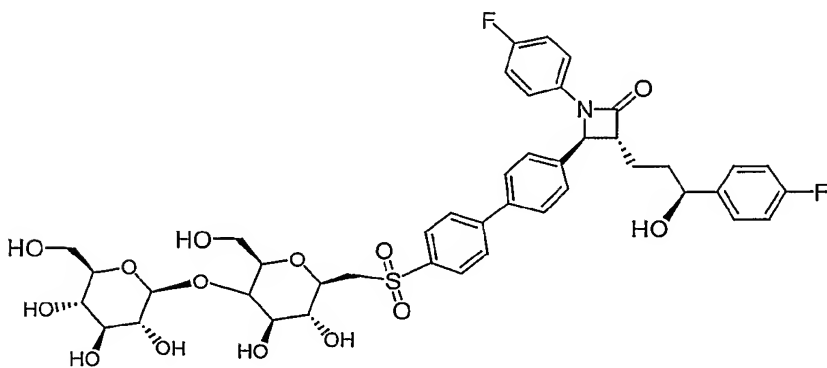
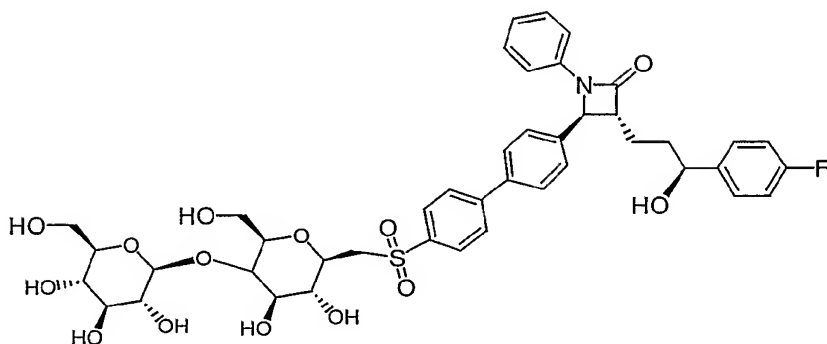
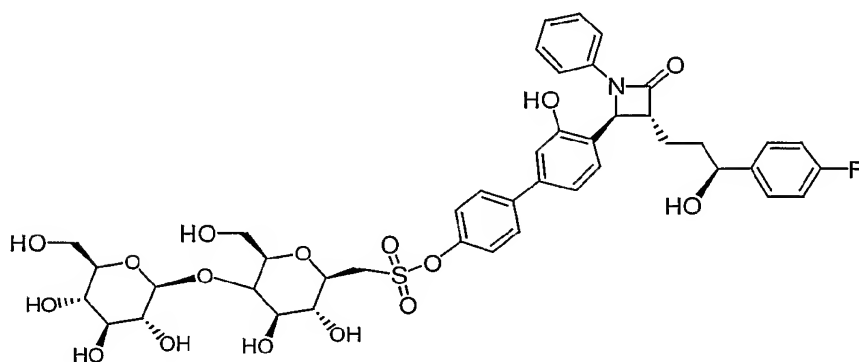
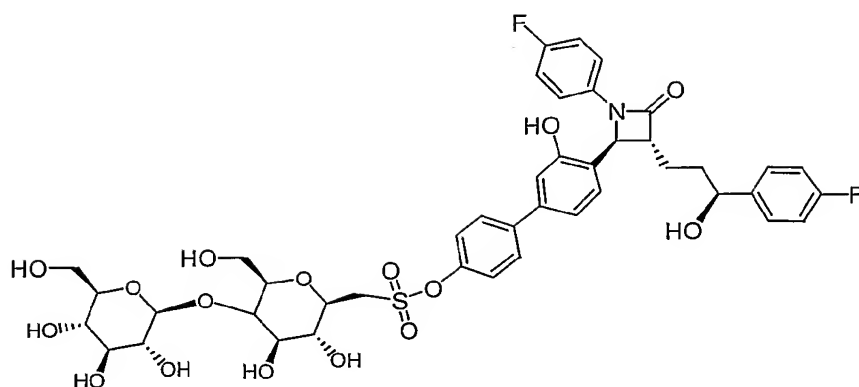
and



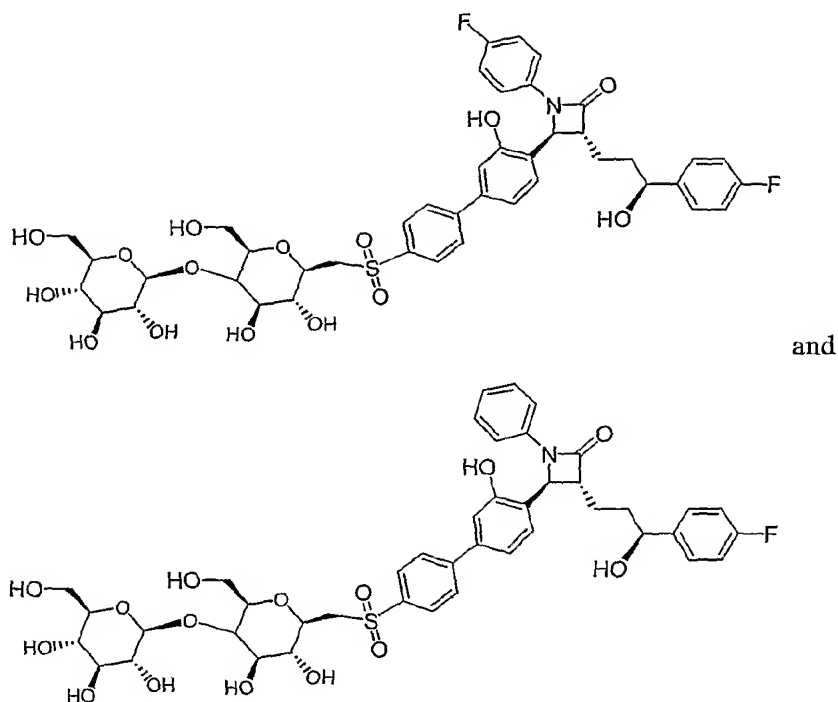
52. A compound selected from the group consisting of:



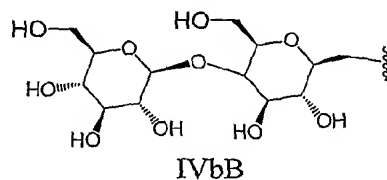
- 370 -



- 371 -



53. A compound according to claim 51, wherein the 3-Position of the azetidinone ring is of the (*R*)-configuration; the 4-Position of the azetidinone ring is of the (*S*)-configuration; and the sugar residue is a residue of cellobiose having formula IVbB:



wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment.

54. A compound according to claim 41, wherein R^{6B} is a residue of a glucuronide.

55. A compound according to claim 54, wherein R^{5B} is in the para position.

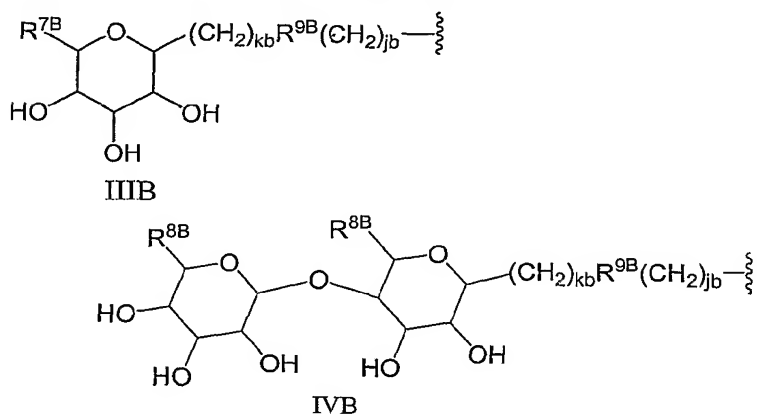
56. A compound according to claim 41, wherein R^{6B} is a residue of a sugar carbamate.

57. A compound according to claim 56, wherein R^{5B} is in the para position.

58. A compound according to any of claims 31-47 and 54-57, wherein R^{4B} is $-OH$.

59. A compound according to any of claims 31-47 and 54-57, wherein R^{4B} is $-OSO_2-R^{6Ba}$
or
 $-SO_2-R^{6Ba}$.

60. A compound according to claim 59, wherein R^{6Ba} is a sugar residue selected from the group having formulae IIIB and IVB



in any stereoisomeric form, wherein R^{7B} is selected from the group consisting of $-OH$, lower alkoxy and lower alkylene- $-OH$;

R^{8B} is lower alkylene- $-OH$;

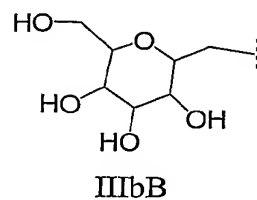
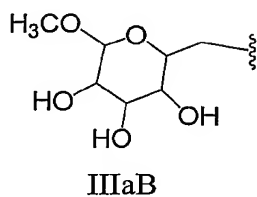
R^{9B} is selected from a direct bond, $-C=C-$, $-OCH_2-$, $-C(=O)-$ and $-CHOH-$;

j_b is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5;

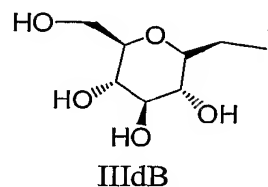
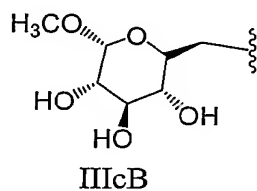
k_b is zero, 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5; and

wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment.

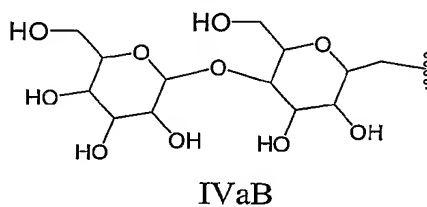
61. A compound according to claim 60, wherein the sugar residue R^{6Ba} has formula IIIaB or IIIbB



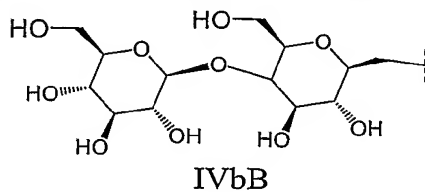
62. A compound according to claim 61, wherein the sugar residue R^{6Ba} has formula IIIcB or IIIdB



63. A compound according to claim 60, wherein the sugar residue R^{6Ba} has formula IVaB

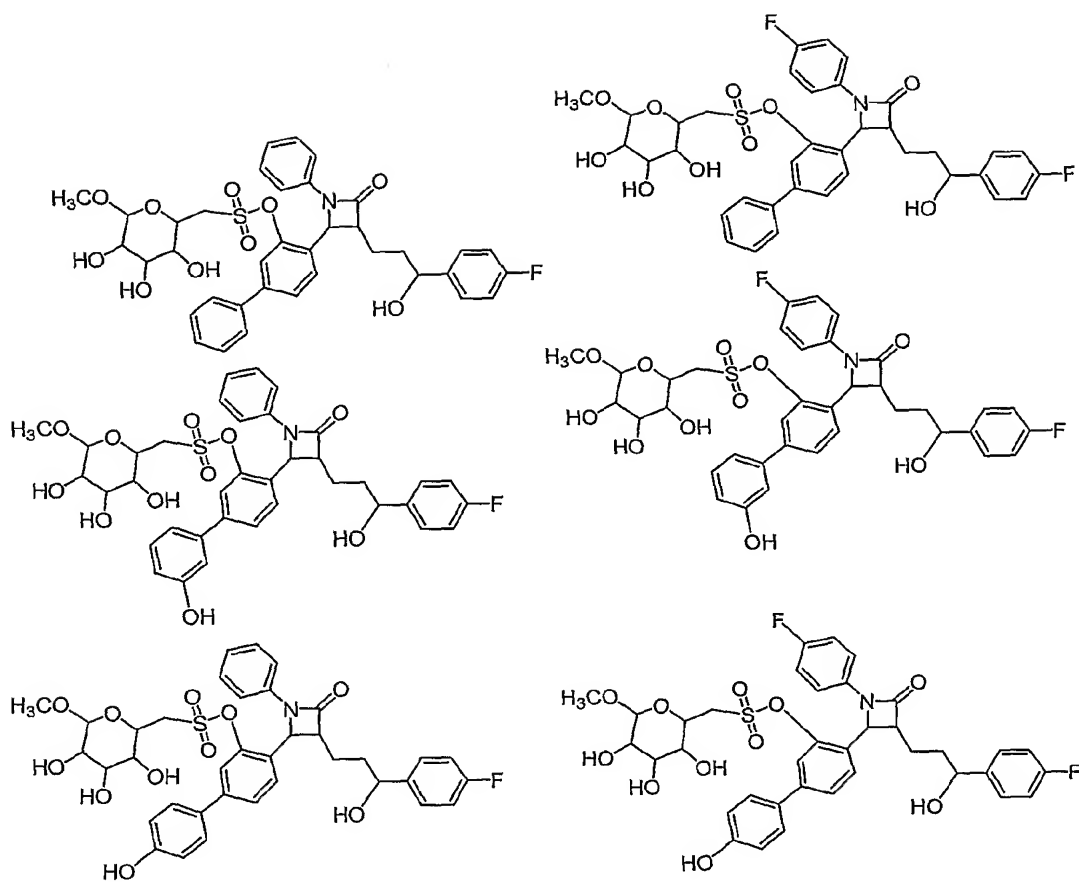


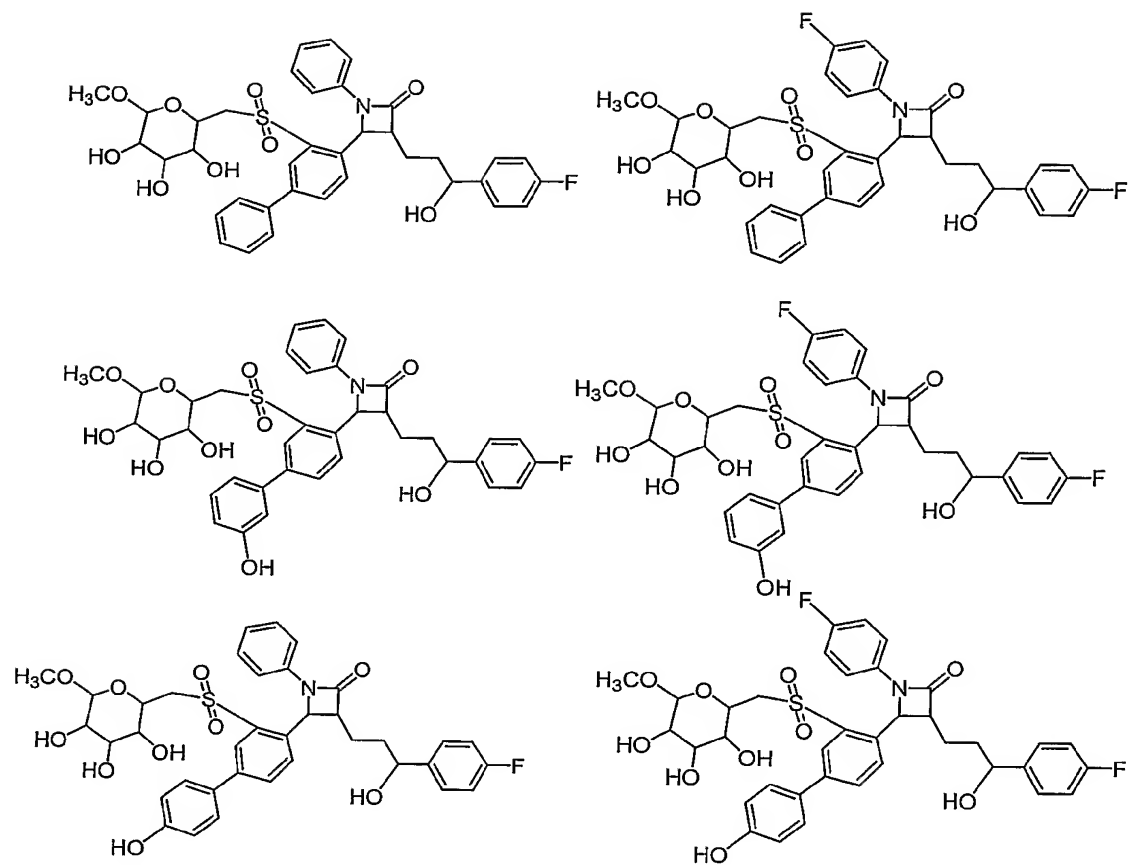
64. A compound according to claim 63, wherein the sugar residue R^{6Ba} has formula IVbB



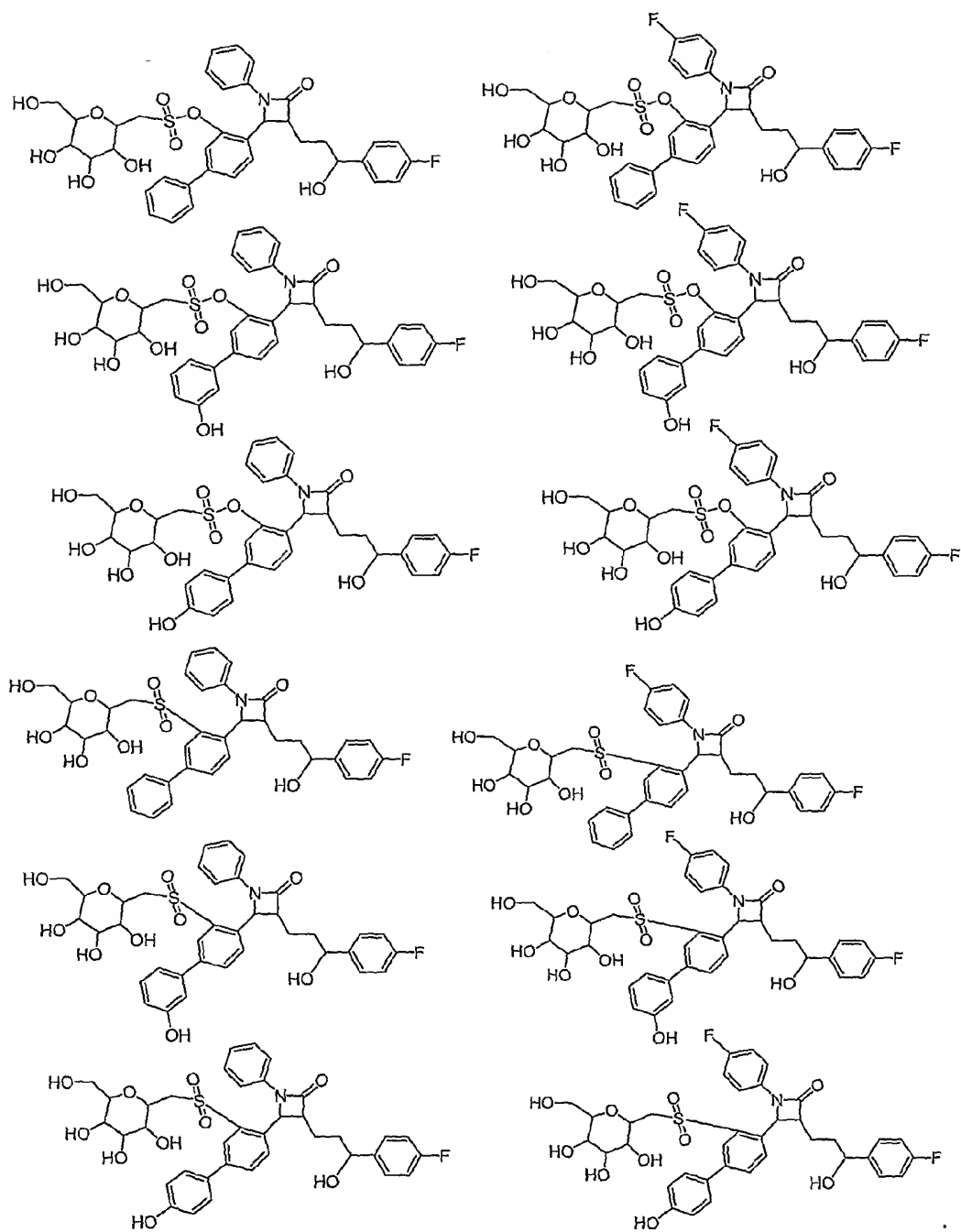
65. A compound selected from the group consisting of

- 374 -

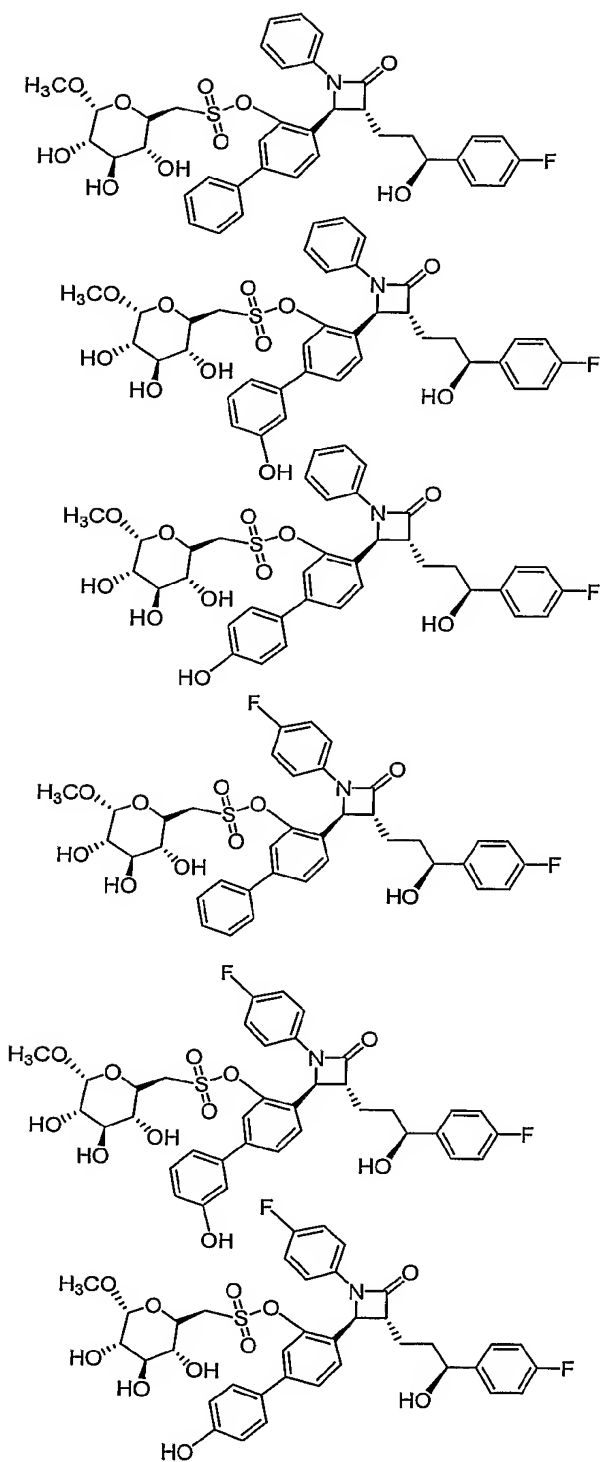


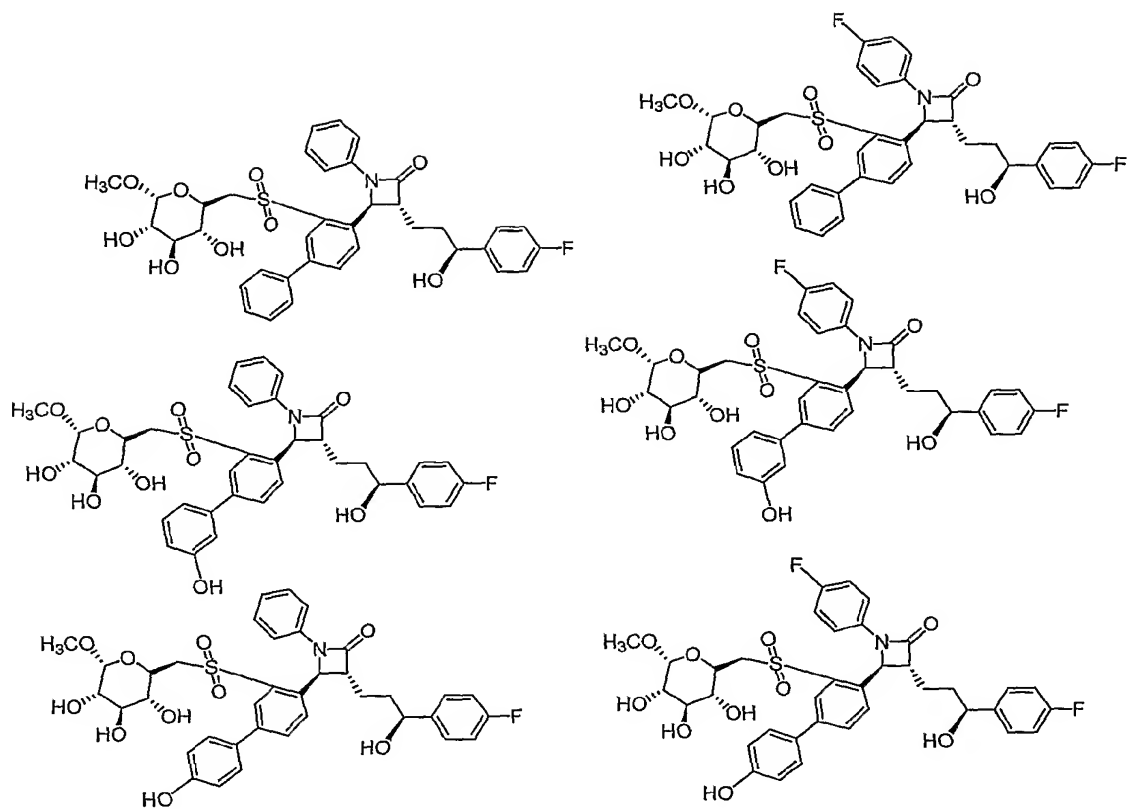


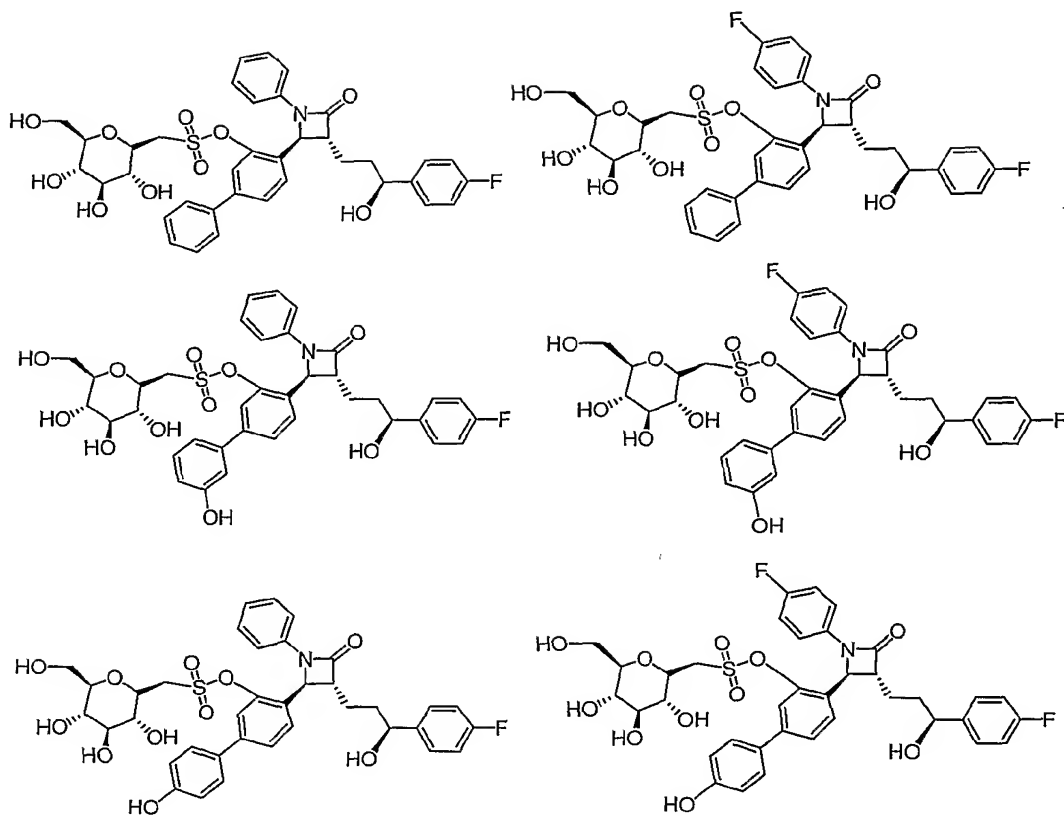
- 376 -



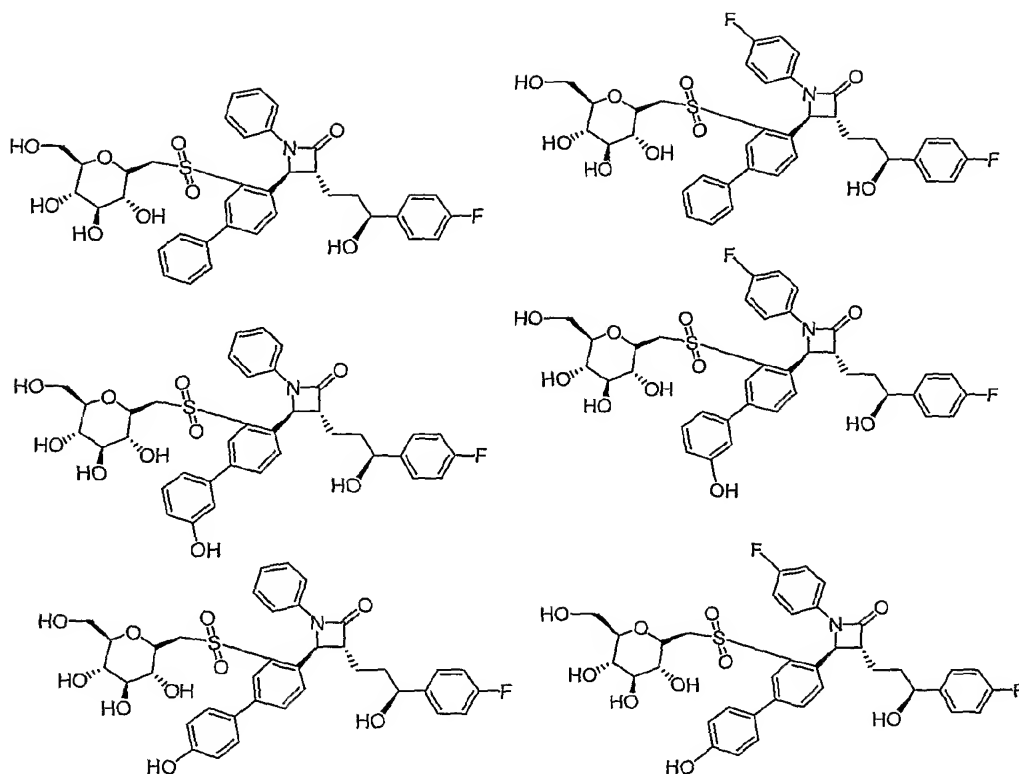
66. A compound selected from the group consisting of:



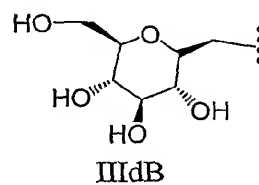
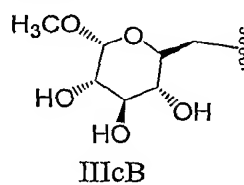




- 380 -



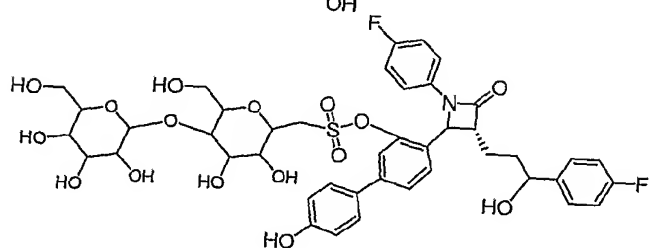
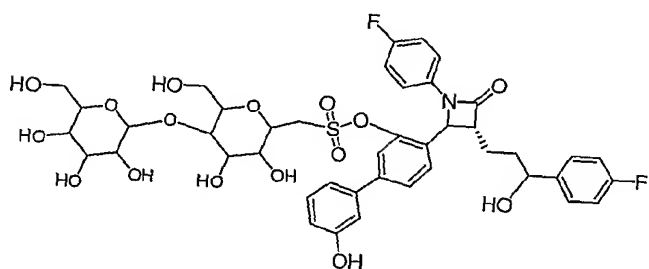
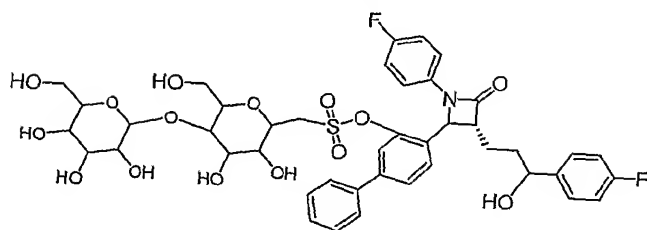
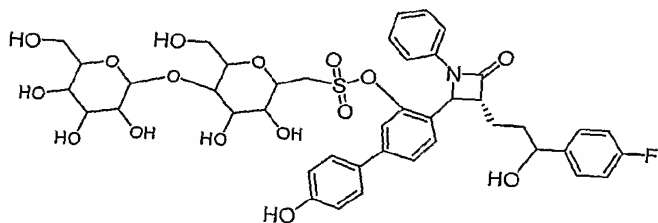
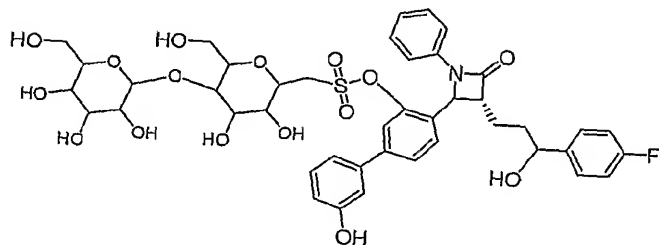
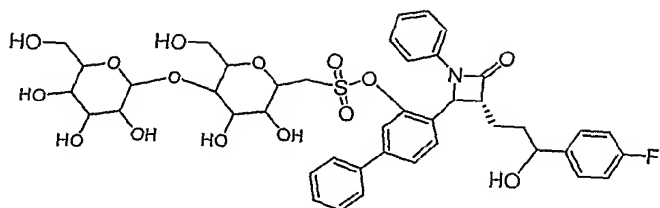
67. A compound according to claim 65, wherein the 3-Position of the azetidinone ring is of the (*R*)-configuration; the 4-Position of the azetidinone ring is of the (*S*)-configuration; and the sugar residue has formula IIIcB or IIIdB



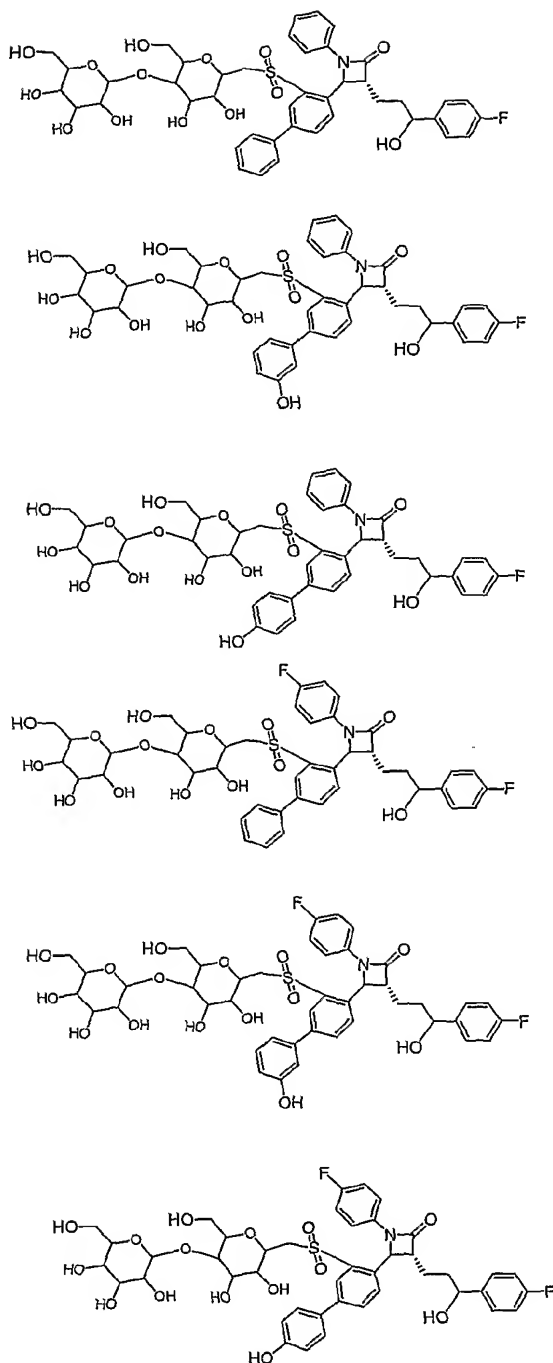
wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment.

68. A compound selected from the group consisting of:

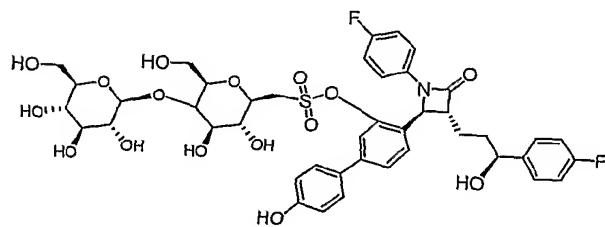
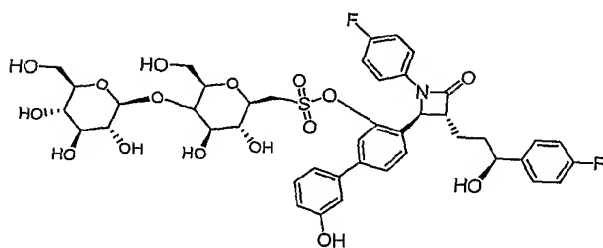
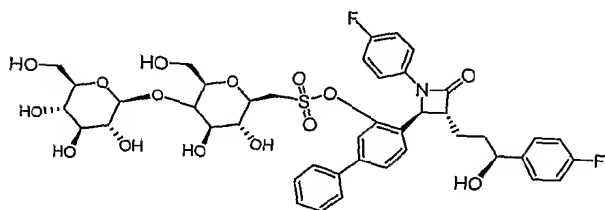
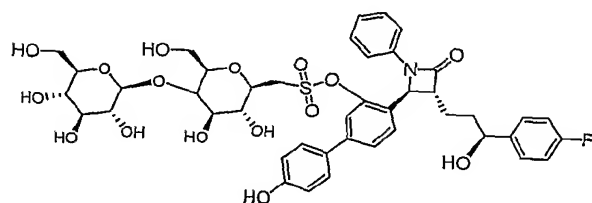
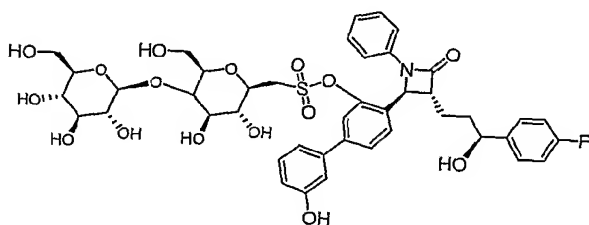
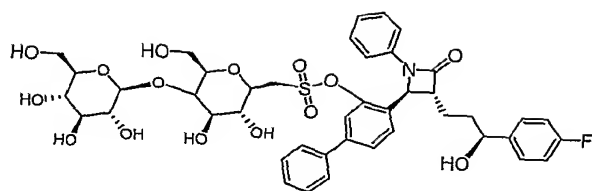
- 381 -



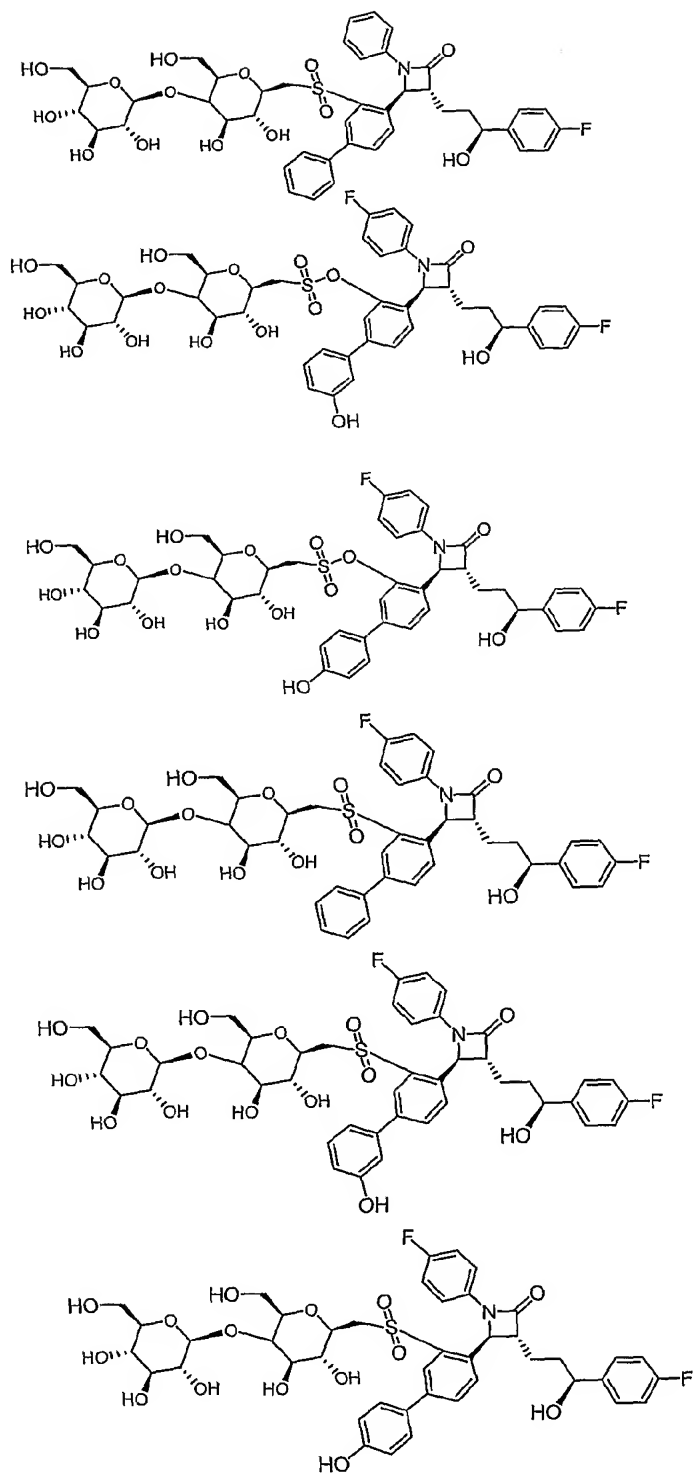
- 382 -



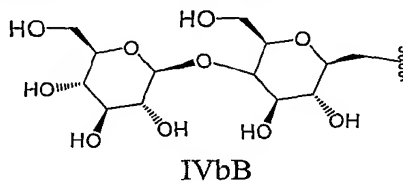
69. A compound selected from the group consisting of:



- 384 -



70. A compound according to claim 68, wherein the 3-Position of the azetidinone ring is of the (*R*)-configuration; the 4-Position of the azetidinone ring is of the (*S*)-configuration; and the sugar residue is a residue of cellibiose having formula IVbB:



wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment.

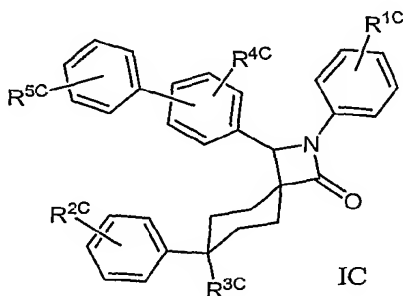
71. A compound according to claim 59, wherein R^{6Ba} is a residue of a glucuronide.

72. A compound according to claim 59, wherein R^{6Ba} is a residue of a sugar carbamate.

73. A compound according to any of claims 31-47, 54-64 and 71-72, wherein R^{3B} is -OH.

74. A compound according to any of claims 31-47, 54-64 and 71-72, wherein R^{3B} is a glucuronide residue.

75. A compound of formula IC



wherein

R^{1C} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, -OH, loweralkyl, -OCF₂H, -OCF₃, -CF₂H, -CH₂F, loweralkoxy, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, -CN, -CF₃, nitro, -SH, -S-loweralkyl, amino, alkylamino,

dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, phenyl, benzyl, phenoxy, benzyloxy, $-\text{PO}_3\text{H}_2$, $-\text{SO}_3\text{H}$, $-\text{B}(\text{OH})_2$, and a residue selected from the group consisting of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide, and a sugar carbamate;

$\text{R}^{2\text{C}}$ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, $-\text{OH}$, loweralkyl, $-\text{OCF}_2\text{H}$, $-\text{OCF}_3$, $-\text{CF}_2\text{H}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{F}$, loweralkoxy, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{CF}_3$, nitro, $-\text{SH}$, $-\text{S-loweralkyl}$, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, $-\text{PO}_3\text{H}_2$, $-\text{SO}_3\text{H}$, $-\text{B}(\text{OH})_2$, and a residue selected from the group consisting of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide and a sugar carbamate;

$\text{R}^{3\text{C}}$ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, $-\text{OH}$, halogen, and a glucuronide residue,

$\text{R}^{4\text{C}}$ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, $-\text{OH}$, loweralkyl, loweralkoxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{CF}_3$, nitro, $-\text{SH}$, $-\text{S-loweralkyl}$, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, $-\text{PO}_3\text{H}_2$, $-\text{SO}_3\text{H}$, $-\text{B}(\text{OH})_2$, and a residue selected from the group consisting of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide, and a sugar carbamate;

$\text{R}^{5\text{C}}$ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, $-\text{OH}$, loweralkyl, loweralkoxy, methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, hydroxyloweralkyl, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{CF}_3$, nitro, $-\text{SH}$, $-\text{S-loweralkyl}$, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, aminosulfonyl, alkylaminosulfonyl, dialkylaminosulfonyl, alkylsulfonyl, arylsulfonyl, acyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyalkyl, carboxamido, alkylsulfoxide, acylamino, amidino, $-\text{PO}_3\text{H}_2$, $-\text{SO}_3\text{H}$, $-\text{B}(\text{OH})_2$, $-\text{OSO}_2\text{-R}^{6\text{C}}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-R}^{6\text{C}}$, and a residue selected from the group consisting of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide, and a sugar carbamate; and

$\text{R}^{6\text{C}}$ is a residue selected from the group consisting of a sugar, a glucuronide, a polyol, and a sugar carbamate;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, in any stereoisomeric form, or a mixture of any such compounds in any ratio.

76. A compound according to claim 75, wherein

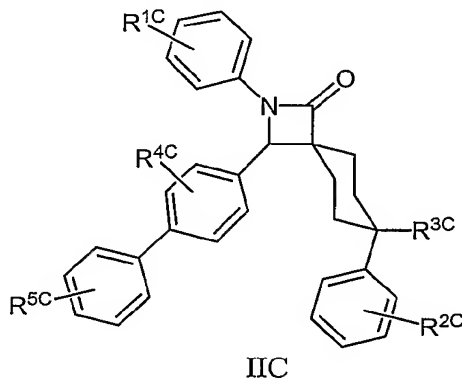
R^{1C} and R^{2C} are selected independently from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, -OH, and lower alkoxy;

R^{3C} and R^{4C} are selected independently from the group consisting of hydrogen, -OH, and a glucuronide residue; and

R^{5C} is selected from the group consisting of -OH, $-PO_3H_2$, $-SO_3H$, $-OSO_2-R^{6C}$, $-SO_2-R^{6C}$, and a residue selected from the group consisting of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide, and a sugar carbamate;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, in any stereoisomeric form, or a mixture of any such compounds in any ratio.

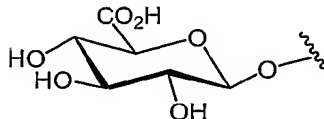
77. A compound according to claim 75 or 76 having formula IIC



78. A compound according to any of claims 75-77, wherein R^{3C} is -OH.

79. A compound according to any of claims 75-77, wherein R^{3C} is hydrogen.

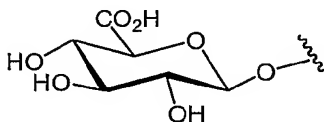
80. A compound according to any of claims 75-77, wherein R^{3C} is a glucuronide residue having formula



wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment.

81. A compound according to any of claims 75-80, wherein R^{4C} is $-OH$.

82. A compound according to any of claims 75-80, wherein R^{4C} is a glucuronide residue having formula



wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment.

83. A compound according to claim 81 or 82, wherein R^{4C} is in the ortho position relative to the azetidinone ring.

84. A compound according to any of claims 75-83, wherein R^{2C} is fluorine.

85. A compound according to claim 84, wherein R^{2C} is in the para position.

86. A compound according to any of claims 75-83, wherein R^{2C} is hydrogen.

87. A compound according to any of claims 75-86, wherein R^{1C} is fluorine.

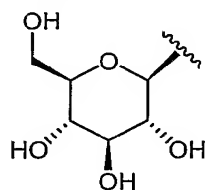
88. A compound according to claim 87, wherein R^{1C} is in the para position.

89. A compound according to any of claims 75-86, wherein R^{1C} is hydrogen.

90. A compound according to any of claims 75-89, wherein R^{5C} is selected from the group consisting of $-OH$, and a residue selected from the group consisting of a sugar, a polyol, a glucuronide, and a sugar carbamate.

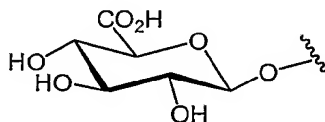
91. A compound according to claim 90, wherein R^{5C} is $-OH$.

92. A compound according to claim 90, wherein R^{5C} is D-glucitol having formula



wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment.

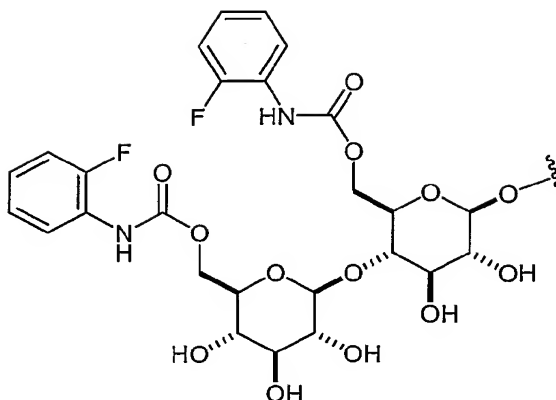
93. A compound according to claim 90, wherein R^{5C} is a glucuronide residue having formula



wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment.

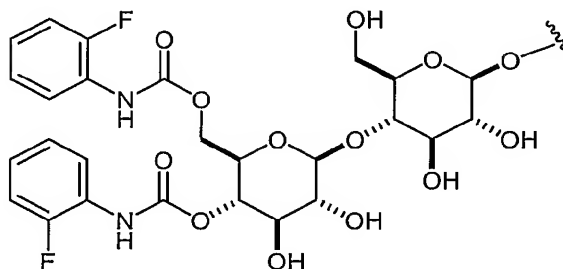
94. A compound according to claim 90, wherein R^{5C} is a sugar carbamate residue having formula

- 390 -



wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment.

95. A compound according to claim 90, wherein R^{5C} is a sugar carbamate residue having formula



wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment.

96. A compound according to any of claims 90-95, wherein R^{5C} is in the para position.

97. A compound according to any of claims 90-95, wherein R^{5C} is in the meta position.

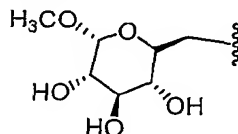
98. A compound according to any of claims 75-89, wherein R^{5C} is selected from the group consisting of $-PO_3H_2$ and $-SO_3H$.

99. A compound according to claim 98, wherein R^{5C} is in the para position.

- 391 -

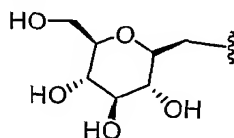
100. A compound according to any of claims 75-89, wherein R^{5C} is selected from the group consisting of $-\text{OSO}_2\text{-}R^{6C}$ and $-\text{SO}_2\text{-}R^{6C}$.

101. A compound according to claim 100, wherein R^{6C} is a sugar residue having formula



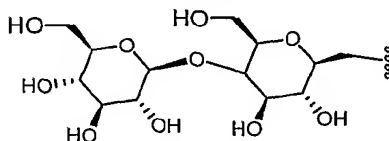
wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment.

102. A compound according to claim 100, wherein R^{6C} is a sugar residue having formula



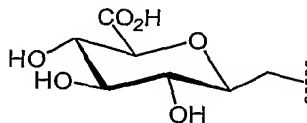
wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment.

103. A compound according to claim 100, wherein R^{6C} is a sugar residue having formula



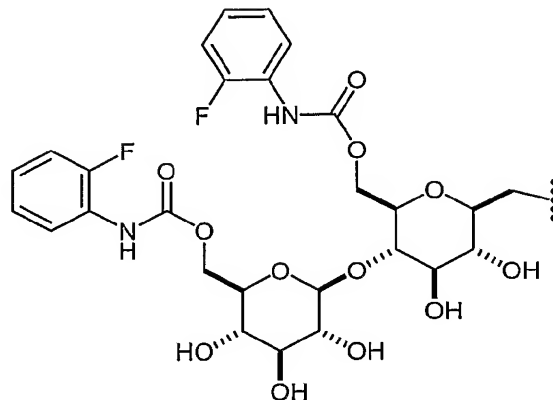
wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment.

104. A compound according to claim 100, wherein R^{6C} is a glucuronide residue having formula



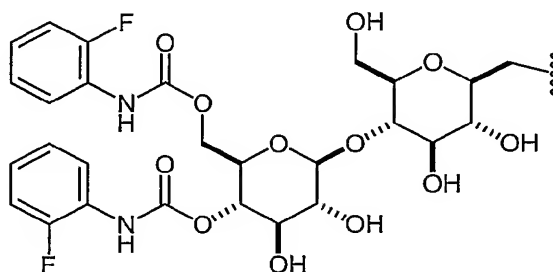
wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment.

105. A compound according to claim 100, wherein R^{6C} is a sugar carbamate residue having formula



wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment.

106. A compound according to claim 100, wherein R^{6C} is a sugar carbamate residue having formula



wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment.

107. A compound according to any of claims 100-106, wherein R^{5C} is in the para position.

108. A compound according to any of claims 100-106, wherein R^{5C} is in the meta position.

109. A compound according to any of claims 75-108, wherein the 3-Position of the azetidinone ring is of the (*S*)-configuration.

110. A compound according to any of claims 75-108, wherein the 3-Position of the azetidinone ring is of the (*R*)-configuration.
111. A pharmaceutical formulation comprising a compound according to any of claims 1-110 and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.
112. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 111, wherein said composition further comprises at least one additional agent.
113. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 112, wherein said at least one additional agent is selected from the group consisting of dyslipidemic agents; anti-diabetic agents; anti-hypertensive agents; anti-obesity agents; agents used to treat autoimmune diseases; agents used to treat demyelination and associated conditions; agents used to treat Alzheimer's disease; blood modifiers; hormone replacement agents and compositions; chemotherapeutic agents; peptides which mitigate one or more symptoms of atherosclerosis; and agents used to treat bone loss and associated disorders.
114. A method for treating hypercholesterolemia comprising administering to a mammal a therapeutically effective amount of a compound according to any of claims 1-110.
115. A method for: (1) treating a condition for which a cholesterol absorption inhibitor is indicated; (2) preventing or treating a cholesterol related disease; (2) inhibiting the absorption of or reducing plasma or tissue concentration of one or more sterols or stanols; (3) preventing or treating xanthosolemia; (4) preventing or treating (i) vascular diseases/disorders and conditions, (ii) dyslipidemia, (iii) mixed dyslipidemia, (iv) hypo α -lipoproteinemia, (v) LDL pattern B, (vi) LDL pattern A, (vii) primary dysbetalipoproteinemia (Frederickson Type III), (viii) hyperlipidemia, (ix) hypertension, (x) angina pectoris, (xi) cardiac arrhythmias, (xii) congestive heart failure, and (xiii) stroke; (5) reducing the incidence of cardiovascular disease-related events; (6) preventing

or treating vascular conditions and associated thrombotic events; (7) preventing or treating vascular inflammation; (8) reducing blood plasma or serum concentrations of C-reactive protein; (9) preventing, treating, or ameliorating symptoms of Alzheimer's Disease (AD); (10) regulating production or levels of at least one amyloid β ($A\beta$) peptide; (11) regulating the amount of ApoE isoform 4 in the bloodstream and/or brain; (12) preventing or treating cognitive related disorders (including dementia); (13) preventing or treating obesity; (14) preventing or decreasing the incidence of xanthomas; (15) preventing or minimizing muscular degeneration and related side effects associated with certain HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors (statins); (16) preventing or treating diabetes and associated conditions; (17) preventing or treating at least one autoimmune disorder; (18) preventing or treating demyelination and associated disorders; (19) preventing or treating cholesterol associated tumors; (20) inhibiting the expression of at least one multiple ("multi")-drug resistance gene or protein in an animal cell; (21) enhancing the effectiveness of a chemotherapeutic agent in a subject having cancer; (22) reversing a multi-drug resistance phenotype exhibited by an animal cell; (23) modulating lipid raft structure; (24) preventing or treating osteopenia disorders (bone loss disorders); (25) preventing or treating (i) malignant lesions, (ii) premalignant lesions, (iii) gastrointestinal malignancies, liposarcomas and various other epithelial tumors, (iv) cancer-induced asthenia (fatigue), (v) irritable bowel syndrome, (vi) Crohn's disease, (vii) gastric ulceritis, (viii) gallstones, (ix) HIV infection, (x) infectious diseases, (xi) drug-induced lipodystrophy, or (xii) proliferative diseases such as psoriasis; (26) preventing or treating a cancer; (27) preventing or treating (i) a PPAR-associated disease, (ii) low levels of blood, lymph and/or cerebrospinal fluid apo E, (iii) low blood, lymph and/or cerebrospinal fluid levels of apo A-I, (iv) high levels of blood VLDL, (v) high levels of blood LDL, (vi) high levels of blood triglyceride, (vii) high levels of blood apo B, (viii) high levels of blood apo C-III or (ix) reduced ratio of post-heparin hepatic lipase to lipoprotein lipase activity; (28) treating or preventing (i) renal diseases including but not limited to glomerular diseases, (ii) tubular diseases, (iii) tubulointerstitial diseases, (iv) acute and rapidly progressive renal failure, (v) chronic renal failure, (vi) nephrolithiasis, (vi) tumors, (vii) septicemia and impotence; (29) treating or preventing in a post-

menopausal woman a condition or disease to which post-menopausal women are particularly susceptible; (30) treating or preventing organ rejection in a subject who has undergone an organ transplant; (31) treating or preventing systemic lupus erythematosus, (32) treating or preventing a disease associated with hemodialysis; (33) treating or preventing hyperhomocysteine levels; (34) treating or preventing hypothyroidism; (35) treating or preventing obstructive liver disease; (36) treating or preventing kidney disease; or (37) treating or preventing a disease associated with percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty, comprising administering to a patient in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a compound according to any of claims 1-110.

116. A method according to claim 114 or 115, wherein said compound is administered in combination with at least one additional agent.

117. A method according to claim 116, wherein said at least one additional agent is selected from the group consisting of dyslipidemic agents; anti-diabetic agents; anti-hypertensive agents; anti-obesity agents; agents used to treat auto-immune diseases; agents used to treat demyelination and associated conditions; agents used to treat Alzheimer's disease; blood modifiers; hormone replacement agents and compositions; chemotherapeutic agents; peptides which mitigate one or more symptoms of atherosclerosis; and agents used to treat bone loss and associated disorders.

118. A method according to claim 116 or 117, wherein said compound and said at least one additional agent are administered at the same time.

119. A method according to claim 116 or 117, wherein said compound and said at least one additional agent are administered at different times.